

BYZANTINE GREEK SERIES • VOLUME 8

ON GOVERNING THE EMPIRE

CONSTANTINE VII PORPHYROGENNETOS

ΠΡΟΣ ΤΟΝ ΙΔΙΟΝ
ΥΙΟΝ ΡΩΜΑΝΟΝ

On Governing the Empire

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

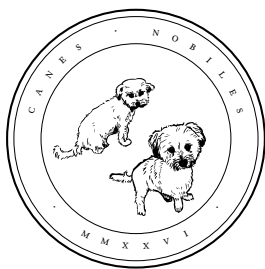


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 8 of the Canes Nobiles Byzantine Greek interlinear texts

The Byzantine Greek text follows I. Bekker's edition, Constantinus Porphyrogenitus,
De thematibus et de administrando imperio (Bonn, 1840)

Set from page scans of the edition

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

CONTENTS

Prologue · To His Son Romanos	7
I · The Pechenegs and the Emperor	11
II · The Pechenegs and the Rus	13
III · The Pechenegs and the Turks	15
IV · The Pechenegs, the Rus, and the Turks	16
V · The Pechenegs and the Bulgarians	17
VI · The Pechenegs and the Chersonites	18
VII · Imperial Agents Sent from Cherson	19
VIII · Agents Sent by Warship from the City	21
IX · The Rus Voyage to Constantinople	24
X · How Khazaria Is to Be Fought	33
XI · Cherson and Bosphorus	34
XII · Black Bulgaria and Khazaria	35
XIII · The Nations Near the Turks; What Not to Grant	36
XIV · The Genealogy of Muhammad	52
XV · The Fatimids	55
XVI · The Saracens' Going Forth	56
XVII · From Theophanes: Muhammad	57
XVIII · Abu Bakr	59
XIX · Umar	60
XX · Uthman	61
XXI · From Theophanes: Muawiya and His Line	62
XXII · From Theophanes: Justinian and the Later Caliphs	73
XXIII · Iberia and Spain	79

XXIV · Spain	83
XXV · From Theophanes: The Vandals in Africa	84
XXVI · The Genealogy of King Hugh	91
XXVII · The Theme of Lombardy	97
XXVIII · The Settling of Venice	105
XXIX · Dalmatia and Its Nations	109
XXX · An Account of Dalmatia	132
XXXI · The Croats	144
XXXII · The Serbs	151
XXXIII · The Zachlumi	163
XXXIV · The Terbouniotes and Kanalites	165
XXXV · The Diocletians	167
XXXVI · The Pagani	168
XXXVII · The Pechenegs	170
XXXVIII · The Origin of the Turks	176
XXXIX · The Kabaroi	182
XL · The Clans of the Kabaroi and Turks	183
XLI · Moravia	189
XLII · Geography from Thessalonike to Sarkel	191
XLIII · Taron	200
XLIV · Apachounes and Manzikert	215
XLV · The Iberians	224
XLVI · The Iberians and Adranoutzion	238
XLVII · The Cypriots' Migration	251
XLVIII · Canon 39 of the Sixth Council; Greek Fire	253
XLIX · The Slavs of Patras	256
L · The Slavs of the Peloponnese; Themes and Offices	262
LI · The Imperial Dromons	282
LII · The Levy of Horses in the Peloponnese	298
LIII · The History of Cherson	299

PROLOGUE · TO HIS SON ROMANOS

A wise son gladdens his father, and the Lord gives kings their thrones; let Romanos hear and learn. Constantine sets out what he must know: which nations can help or harm the Romans, and by whom each may be fought and subdued; their greed and their demands; their descent, customs, lands, and distances; the dealings between the Romans and other nations; and what has been changed in the state over time. He has written it so that his son may handle them wisely. The nations will dread him, God will shield him, and his throne will stand like the sun. The prologue closes in prayer for the son's reign, his house, and his enemies' fall.

Υἱὸς σοφὸς εὐφραίνει πατέρα, καὶ πατὴρ φιλόστοργος
(a)-son wise gladdens (a)-father and (a)-father loving
ἐπὶ υἱῷ τέρεται φρονίμῳ. κύριος γὰρ δίδωσι νοῦν
over (a)-son delights sensible (the)-Lord for gives mind
ἡνίκα δεῖ εἰπεῖν, καὶ προστίθισιν οὖς τοῦ ἀκούειν.
when (one)-must to-speak and adds (an)-ear of-the to-bear
παρ' αὐτῷ θησαυρὸς σοφίας, καὶ ἐξ αὐτοῦ δίδοται
with him (is)-(a)-treasure of-wisdom and from him is-given
πᾶν δώρημα τέλειον. καθιστᾷ βασιλεῖς ἐπὶ θρόνου, καὶ
every gift perfect he-sets kings upon (the)-throne and
κυρίαν τοῦ παντὸς δίδωσιν αὐτοῖς. νῦν οὖν ἄκουσόν μου,
lordship of-the all gives to-them now then bear me
υἱέ, καὶ τήνδε μεμαθηκῶς τὴν διδαχὴν ἔση σοφὸς
son and this having-learned the teaching you-will-be wise
παρὰ φρονίμοις καὶ φρόνιμος παρὰ σοφοῖς λογισθήσῃ·
among (the)-sensible and sensible among (the)-wise you-will-be-reckoned
εὐλογήσουσί σε οἱ λαοί, καὶ μακαριοῦσί σε πλήθη ἐθνῶν.
will-bless you the peoples and will-call-blessed you multitudes of-nations
διδάχθητι ἃ χρεὶς σε πρὸ πάντων εἶδέναι, καὶ
be-taught (the-things)-which (it)-is-needful you before all to-know and
νουνεχῶς τῶν τῆς βασιλείας οἰάκων ἀντιλαβοῦ. περὶ
sensibly of-the of-the empire helms take-bold concerning

τῶν ἐνεστώτων μελέτησον καὶ περὶ τῶν μελλόντων
the present-things take-thought and concerning the things-to-come
 διδάχθητι, ἵνα πείραν μετ' εὐβουλίας ἀθροίσῃς, καὶ
be-taught so-that experience with good-counsel you-may-gather and
 μεγαλεπήβολος ἔσῃ περὶ τὰ πράγματα. ἰδοὺ ἐκτίθημί
great-in-enterprise you-will-be concerning the affairs behold I-set-out
 σοι διδασκαλίαν ὥστε τῇ ἐκ ταύτης πείρᾳ καὶ γνώσει
for-you (a)-teaching so-that by-the from this experience and knowledge
 συνετισθέντα περὶ τὰς βελτίστας βουλὰς καὶ τὸ κοινῇ
having-been-made-wise concerning the best counsels and the in-common
 συμφέρον μὴ διαμαρτάνειν. πρῶτα μὲν ποῖον ἔθνος κατὰ
advantageous not to-miss first indeed what nation in
 τί μὲν ὠφελῆσαι δύναται Ῥωμαίους κατὰ τί δὲ βλάψαι,
what indeed to-benefit is-able (the)-Romans in what and to-harm
 καὶ πῶς ἕκαστον τούτων, καὶ παρὰ ποίου δύναται ἔθλους
and how each of-these and by what is-able nation
 καὶ πολεμῆσθαι καὶ ὑποτάσσεσθαι, ἔπειτα περὶ τῆς
both to-be-warred-upon and to-be-subjected then concerning the
 ἀπλήστου καὶ ἀκορέστου αὐτῶν γνώμης, καὶ ὧν
insatiable and unsatisfied their mind and (of-the-things)-which
 παραλόγως ἐξαιτοῦνται λαμβάνειν, εἰθ' οὕτως καὶ περὶ
unreasonably they-demand to-receive then thus also concerning
 διαφορᾶς ἐτέρων ἐθνῶν, γενεαλογίας τε ἐθνῶν καὶ βίου
(the)-difference of-other nations genealogy both of-nations and of-life
 διαγωγῆς, καὶ θέσεως καὶ κράσεως τῆς κατοικουμένης
conduct and position and climate of-the inhabited
 παρ' αὐτῶν γῆς καὶ περιγῆσεως αὐτῆς, καὶ σταδιασμοῦ
by them land and description its and measurement
 πρὸς τούτοις, καὶ περὶ τῶν ἔν τινι καιρῷ μεταξὺ
in-addition-to these also concerning the at some time between
 Ῥωμαίων καὶ διαφόρων ἐθνῶν συμβεβηκότων, καὶ μετὰ
(the)-Romans and various nations having-happened and after

ταῦτα ὅσα ἐν τῇ καθ' ἡμᾶς πολιτείᾳ, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐν
these(-things) whatever in the among us polity but also in
 πάσῃ τῇ Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῇ κατὰ τινας χρόνους ἐκαινοτομήθη.
all the of-(the)-Romans rule at certain times was-innovated
 ταῦτα ἐσοφισάμην κατ' ἐμαυτὸν καὶ εἶπα γνωστά σοι
these(-things) I-devised by myself and said known to-you
 ποιῆσαι τῷ ἡγαπημένῳ μου υἱῷ, ἵν' ἔχῃς εἰδέναι
to-make the beloved my son so-that you-may-be-able to-know
 τὴν ἐκάστου τούτων διαφορὰν, καὶ πῶς ἢ μεταχειρίζεσθαι
the of-each of-these difference and how either to-handle
 ταῦτα καὶ οἰκειοῦσθαι ἢ πολεμεῖν καὶ ἀντιτάσσεσθαι.
these and to-win-over or to-war and to-oppose
 πτοηθήσονται γὰρ σε ὡς μεγαλοφυῇ, καὶ ὡς ἀπὸ πυρὸς
they-will-be-terrified for you as great-natured and as from fire
 φεύξονται ἀπὸ σοῦ· φιμωθήσονται τὰ χεῖλη αὐτῶν, καὶ ὡς
they-will-flee from you will-be-muzzled the lips their and as
 ὑπὸ βελῶν τοῖς σοῖς κατατρωθήσονται ῥήμασιν. ὁφθήσῃ
by arrows by-the your they-will-be-wounded words you-will-appear
 αὐτοῖς φοβερός, καὶ ἀπὸ προσώπου σου τρόμος λήψεται
to-them terrible and from (the)-face your trembling will-seize
 αὐτούς. καὶ σου ὁ παντοκράτωρ ὑπερασπιεῖ, καὶ συνετιεῖ
them and of-you the almighty will-shield and will-make-wise
 σε ὁ πλάσας σε· κατευθυνεῖ σου τὰ διαβήματα, καὶ
you the (one)-having-formed you will-direct your the steps and
 ἐδράσει σε ἐπὶ βάσιν ἀσάλευτον. ὁ θρόνος σου ὡς
will-establish you upon (a)-foundation unshaken the throne your as
 ὁ ἥλιος ἐναντίον αὐτοῦ, καὶ οἱ ὀφθαλμοὶ αὐτοῦ ἔσονται
the sun before him and the eyes his will-be
 βλέποντες ἐπὶ σε, καὶ οὐδὲν οὐ μὴ ἄψηταί σου τῶν
looking upon you and nothing not — will-touch you of-the
 χαλεπῶν, καθότι αὐτός σε ἐξελέξατο καὶ ἀπὸ μήτρας
hard-things since he you chose and from (the)-womb

ἀφώρισεν, καὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ βασιλείαν ὡς ἀγαθῷ ὑπὲρ
set-apart and the his kingdom as to-(a)-good-man above
 πάντας σοι ἔδωκε, καὶ τέθεικεν ὡς σκοπὴν ἐπὶ βουνοῦ
all to-you he-gave and has-set as (a)-watchtower upon (a)-hill
 καὶ ὡς χρυσοῦν ἀνδριάντα ἐφ' ὑψηλοῦ, καὶ ὡς πόλιν ἐπ'
and as (a)-golden statue on (a)-high-place and as (a)-city on
 ὄρους ἀνύψωσεν, ὥστε δωροφορεῖσθαι ὑπ' ἔθνων καὶ
(a)-mountain be-raised-up so-that to-be-brought-gifts by nations and
 προσκινεῖσθαι ὑπὸ τῶν κατοικούντων τὴν γῆν. ἀλλὰ σὺ
to-be-bowed-down-to by those dwelling-in the earth but you
 κύριε ὁ θεός μου, οὗ ἡ βασιλεία ἀνώλεθρος καὶ αἰώνιος,
Lord — God my whose the kingdom (is)-indestructible and eternal
 εἷης κατευοδῶν τὸν διὰ σοῦ ἐξ ἐμοῦ γεννηθέντα,
may-you-be prospering the(-one) through you from me begotten
 καὶ ἔστω ἡ ἐπισκοπὴ τοῦ προσώπου σου ἐπ' αὐτόν, καὶ
and let-be the watching of-the face your upon him and
 τὸ οὖς σου ἐπικλινέσθω ταῖς τούτου δεήσεσι. σκεπασάτω
the ear your let-incline to-the his prayers let-shelter
 αὐτὸν ἡ χεὶρ σου, καὶ βασιλευέτω ἕνεκεν ἀληθείας, καὶ
him the hand your and let-him-reign for-the-sake-of truth and
 ὁδηγήσῃ αὐτὸν ἡ δεξιὰ σου. κατευθυνθείησαν αἱ ὁδοὶ
may-guide him the right-hand your may-be-directed the ways
 αὐτοῦ ἐνώπιόν σου τοῦ φυλάξασθαι τὰ δικαιώματά σου.
his before you of-the to-keep the ordinances your
 πρὸ προσώπου αὐτοῦ πεσοῦνται πολέμιοι, καὶ λείξουσιν
before (the)-face his will-fall enemies and will-lick
 χοῦν οἱ ἐχθροὶ αὐτοῦ. κατασκιασθείη τὸ στέλεχος τοῦ
dust the foes his may-be-overshadowed the stock of-the
 γένους αὐτοῦ πολυγονίας φύλλοις, καὶ ἡ σκιά τοῦ
family his of-fruitfulness with-leaves and the shadow of-the

καρποῦ αὐτοῦ ἐπικαλύψαι ὄρη βασιλεία, ὅτι διὰ
 fruit his may-cover mountains royal because through
 σοῦ βασιλεύουσι βασιλεῖς δοξάζοντές σε εἰς τὸν αἰῶνα.
 you reign kings glorifying you to the age

I • THE PECHENEGS AND THE EMPEROR

Constantine says he writes in plain, everyday speech, not in Attic display, because his aim is to teach. It always profits the emperor to keep peace with the Pechenegs. He should send an envoy each year with fitting gifts, receive hostages in return, and have them honored in the city. For the Pechenegs border on Cherson, and if they are hostile they can raid it and the Regions.

περὶ τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν, καὶ πρὸς πόσα
 concerning the Pechenegs and toward how-many-things
 συμβάλλονται μετὰ τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων εἰρηνεύοντες.
 they-contribute with the emperor of-(the)-Romans being-at-peace
 Ἄκουσον τοίνυν, υἱέ, ἃ μοι δοκεῖ σε μὴ ἀγνοεῖν,
 hear therefore son (the-things)-which to-me seems you not to-be-ignorant-of
 καὶ νοήμων γενοῦ, ἵνα κτήσῃ κυβέρνησιν. φημὶ γὰρ
 and intelligent become so-that you-may-acquire governance I-say for
 καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἅπασιν εἶναι καλὸν τῶν ὑποτεταγμένων
 also for-the others all to-be good of-the subjects
 τὴν μάθησιν, διαφερόντως δὲ σοὶ τῷ ὑπὲρ τῆς
 the learning especially and for-you the(-one) for the
 πάντων σωτηρίας ὀφείλονται διαμεριμνᾶν καὶ τὴν κοσμικὴν
 of-all safety owing to-take-thought and the worldly
 ὁλκάδα πηδαλιουχεῖν τε καὶ κυβερνᾶν. εἰ δὲ σαφεῖ καὶ
 ship to-steer both and to-pilot if and in-clear and
 κατημαξευμένῳ λόγῳ καὶ οἶον εἰκῇ ῥέοντι πεζῷ καὶ
 well-worn speech and as-it-were at-random flowing plain and

ἀπλοϊκῶ πρὸς τὴν τῶν προκειμένων ἐχρησάμην δήλωσιν,
simple for the of-the matters-at-hand I-have-used setting-forth
 μηδὲν θαυμάσης υἱέ· οὐ γὰρ ἐπίδειξιν καλλιγραφίας ἢ
in-no-way wonder son not for (a)-display of-fine-writing or
 φράσεως ἡττικισμένης καὶ τὸ διηρμένον διογκούσης καὶ
of-diction atticized and the elevated swelling and
 ὑψηλοῦ ποιῆσαι ἐσπούδασα, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον διὰ κοινῆς καὶ
lofty to-make I-was-eager but rather through common and
 καθωμιλημένης ἀπαγγελίας διδάξαι σε ἔσπευσα ἅπερ
everyday speech to-teach you I-hastened (the-things)-which
 οἶμαι δεῖν σε μὴ ἀγνοεῖν, καὶ ἃ τὴν
I-think (it)-is-needful you not to-be-ignorant-of and (the-things)-which the
 ἐκ μακρᾶς ἐμπειρίας σύνεσίν τε καὶ φρόνησιν εὐμαρῶς
from long experience understanding both and prudence easily
 σοι δύναται προξενεῖν. ὑπολαμβάνω γὰρ κατὰ πολὺν
for-you are-able to-procure I-suppose for in many-ways
 συμφέρειν αἰὲν τῷ βασιλεῖ Ῥωμαίων εἰρήνην ἐθέλειν
to-be-advantageous always for-the emperor of-(the)-Romans peace to-wish
 ἔχειν μετὰ τοῦ ἔθνους τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν, καὶ φιλικὰς
to-have with the nation of-the Pechenegs and friendly
 πρὸς αὐτοὺς ποιεῖσθαι συνθήκας τε καὶ σπονδάς, καὶ
toward them to-make treaties both and pacts and
 ἀποστέλλειν καθ' ἕκαστον χρόνον ἐντεῦθεν πρὸς αὐτοὺς
to-send by each year from-here to them
 ἀποκρισιάριον μετὰ ξενίων ἀρμοζόντων καὶ πρὸς τὸ
(an)-envoy with gifts fitting and for the
 ἔθνος ἐπιτηδεῖων, καὶ ἀναλαμβάνεσθαι ἐκεῖθεν ὁμήρους
nation suitable and to-receive from-there hostages
 ἧτοι ὀφιδας καὶ ἀποκρισιάριον, οἵτινες ἐν τῇ θεοφυλάκτῳ
that-is pledges and (an)-envoy who in the God-guarded
 ταύτῃ πόλει μετὰ τοῦ καθυπουργοῦντος εἰς ταῦτα
this city with the(-one) attending to these(-things)

συνελεύσονται, καὶ βασιλικῶν εὐεργεσιῶν καὶ φιλοτιμιῶν
will-come-together and of-imperial benefactions and gifts
 τῶν ἐπαξίων πάντων τοῦ βασιλεύοντος ἀπολαύσουσιν, ὅτι
the worthy of-all of-the reigning(-one) will-enjoy because
 γειτνιάζει τὸ τοιοῦτον ἔθνος τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν τῷ μέρει
borders the such nation of-the Pechenegs on-the region
 τῆς Χερσῶνος, καὶ εἰ μὴ φιλίως ἔχουσι πρὸς ἡμᾶς,
— of-Cherson and if not in-friendly-way they-are toward us
 δύνανται κατὰ τῆς Χερσῶνος ἐξέρχεσθαι καὶ κουρσεύειν καὶ
they-are-able against — Cherson to-go-out and to-raid and
 ληΐζεσθαι αὐτὴν τε τὴν Χερσῶνα καὶ τὰ λεγόμενα κλίματα.
to-plunder itself both — Cherson and the called regions

II • THE PECHENEGS AND THE RUS

The Pechenegs border on the Rus and often plunder Russia when the two are not at peace. The Rus therefore seek peace with them: they buy cattle, horses, and sheep from them, and they cannot go to war abroad while the Pechenegs could attack their homes. Nor can the Rus come to Constantinople, for at the river barrages they must carry their boats overland, and there the Pechenegs fall on them and slaughter them.

περὶ τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν καὶ τῶν Ῥῶς.
concerning the Pechenegs and the Rus
 Ὅτι καὶ τοῖς Ῥῶς οἱ Πατζινακῖται γείτονες καὶ ὄμοροι
that also to-the Rus the Pechenegs neighbors and bordering
 καθεστήκασιν, καὶ πολλάκις, ὅταν μὴ πρὸς ἀλλήλους
have-become and often when not with each-other
 εἰρηνεύουσι, πραιδεύουσι τὴν Ῥωσίαν καὶ ἱκανῶς αὐτὴν
they-are-at-peace they-plunder — Russia and considerably it
 παραβλάπτουσι καὶ λυμαίνονται.
they-harm and ravage

ὅτι καὶ οἱ Ῥῶς διὰ σπουδῆς ἔχουσιν εἰρήνην ἔχειν μετὰ
that also the Rus with eagerness hold peace to-have with
 τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν· ἀγοράζουσι γὰρ ἐξ αὐτῶν βόας καὶ
the Pechenegs they-buy for from them cattle and
 ἵππους καὶ πρόβατα, καὶ ἐκ τούτων εὐμαρέστερον διαζῶσι
horses and sheep and from these more-easily they-live
 καὶ τρυφερώτερον, ἐπεὶ μηδὲν τῶν προειρημένων ζώων
and more-luxuriously since none of-the aforementioned animals
 ἐν τῇ Ῥωσίᾳ κατέστηκεν. ἀλλ' οὐδὲ πρὸς ὑπερορίους
in — Russia exists but not-even to beyond-the-border
 πολέμους ἀπέρχεσθαι δύνανται ὅλως οἱ Ῥῶς εἰ μὴ μετὰ
wars to-go-away are-able at-all the Rus if not with
 τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν εἰρηνεύοντες, διότι δύνανται ἐν τῷ
the Pechenegs being-at-peace because they-are-able in the
 ἐκείνους τῶν οἰκείων ὑποχωρεῖν αὐτοὶ ἐπερχόμενοι
those from-the own(-lands) to-withdraw themselves coming-upon
 τὰ ἐκείνων ἀφανίζειν τε καὶ λυμαίνεσθαι. διὸ
the(-things) of-those to-destroy both and to-ravage therefore
 μᾶλλον αἰὲν σπουδὴν οἱ Ῥῶς τίθενται, διὰ τε τὸ μὴ
rather always eagerness the Rus put because-of both the not
 παραβλάπτεσθαι παρ' αὐτῶν καὶ διὰ τὸ ἰσχυρὸν εἶναι
to-be-barmed by them and because-of the strong to-be
 τὸ τοιοῦτον ἔθνος, συμμαχίαν παρ' αὐτῶν λαμβάνειν καὶ
the such nation alliance from them to-receive and
 ἔχειν αὐτοὺς εἰς βοήθειαν, ὥς ἂν καὶ τῆς ἔχθρας αὐτῶν
to-have them for help so-that — both of-the enmity their
 ἀπαλλάττωνται καὶ τῆς βοηθείας καταπολαύοιεν.
they-may-be-rid and of-the help may-enjoy
 ὅτι οὐδὲ πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν ταύτην τῶν Ῥωμαίων
that not-even to the reigning this of-the Romans
 πόλιν οἱ Ῥῶς παραγίνεσθαι δύνανται εἰ μὴ μετὰ τῶν
city the Rus to-come are-able if not with the

Πατζινακιτῶν εἰρηνεύοντες, οὔτε πολέμου χάριν οὔτε
Pechenegs being-at-peace neither of-war for-the-sake nor
 πραγματείας, ἐπειδὴ ἐν τῷ μετὰ τῶν πλοίων εἰς τοὺς
of-trade since in the with the ships at the
 φραγμοὺς τοῦ ποταμοῦ γίνεσθαι τοὺς Ῥῶς καὶ μὴ
barrages of-the river to-arrive the Rus and not
 δύνασθαι διελθεῖν, εἰ μὴ ἐξαγάγωσι τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὰ
to-be-able to-pass-through if not they-take-out of-the river the
 πλοῖα αὐτῶν καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ὤμων βαστάζοντες διαβήσωσιν,
ships their and upon the shoulders carrying they-take-across
 ἐπιτίθενται τότε αὐτοῖς οἱ τοῦ τοιούτου ἔθνους τῶν
set-upon then them those of-the such nation of-the
 Πατζινακιτῶν, καὶ ῥαδίως, ἅτε πρὸς δύο πόρους
Pechenegs and easily inasmuch-as against two labors
 ἀντέχειν μὴ δύνανται, τροποῦνται καὶ κατασφάζονται.
to-hold-out not they-are-able they-are-routed and are-slaughtered

III · THE PECHENEGS AND THE TURKS

The Turks greatly fear the Pechenegs, who have often defeated them and nearly destroyed them, and so the Pechenegs hold them in check.

περὶ τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν καὶ Τούρκων.
concerning the Pechenegs and Turks
 Ὅτι καὶ τὸ τῶν Τούρκων γένος μέγας πτοεῖται
that also the of-the Turks race greatly is-terrified
 καὶ δέδιδε τοὺς εἰρημένους Πατζινακίτας διὰ τὸ
and fears the said Pechenegs because-of the
 πολλάκις ἡττηθῆναι παρ' αὐτῶν καὶ τελείως σχεδὸν
often to-have-been-defeated by them and completely almost

παραδοθῆναι ἀφανισμῷ. καὶ διὰ τοῦτο ἀεὶ φοβεροὶ
to-have-been-handed-over to-annihilation and because-of this always fearsome
 τοῖς Τούρκοις οἱ Πατζινακῖται νομίζονται, καὶ συστέλλονται
to-the Turks the Pechenegs are-considered and are-held-in-check
 ὑπ' αὐτῶν.
by them

IV · THE PECHENEGS, THE RUS, AND THE TURKS

While the emperor is at peace with the Pechenegs, neither the Rus nor the Turks can attack the Romans or demand great sums for peace, for they fear that the emperor could turn the Pechenegs against them. The Pechenegs, bound by friendship and won by letters and gifts, can easily invade both their lands, enslave their women and children, and plunder their country.

περὶ τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν καὶ Ῥῶς καὶ Τούρκων.
concerning the Pechenegs and Rus and Turks
 Ὅτι τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων μετὰ τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν
that the emperor of-(the)-Romans with the Pechenegs
 εἰρηνεύοντος οὔτε Ῥῶς πολέμου νόμῳ κατὰ τῆς Ῥωμαίων
being-at-peace neither (the)-Rus of-war by-law against the of-(the)-Romans
 ἐπικρατείας οὔτε οἱ Τούρκοι δύνανται ἐπελθεῖν· ἀλλ' οὔτε
dominion nor the Turks are-able to-come-upon but neither
 ὑπὲρ τῆς εἰρήνης μεγάλα καὶ ὑπέρογκα χρήματά τε καὶ
for the peace great and excessive monies both and
 πράγματα παρὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων δύνανται ἀπαιτεῖν, δεδιότες
goods from the Romans are-able to-demand fearing
 τὴν διὰ τοῦ τοιούτου ἔθνους παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως κατ' αὐτῶν
the through the such nation from the emperor against them
 ἰσχὺν ἐν τῷ ἐκείνους κατὰ Ῥωμαίων ἐκστρατεῦειν. οἱ δὲ
strength in the those against (the)-Romans to-march-out the and

Πατζινακίται καὶ τῇ πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα φιλία συνδούμενοι
Pechenegs both by-the toward the emperor friendship being-bound
 καὶ παρ' ἐκείνου διὰ γραμμάτων καὶ δώρων ἀναπειθόμενοι
and by him through letters and gifts being-persuaded
 δύνανται ῥαδίως κατὰ τῆς χώρας τῶν τε Ῥῶς καὶ τῶν
are-able easily against the land of-the both Rus and of-the
 Τούρκων ἐπέρχεσθαι, καὶ ἐξανδραποδίζεσθαι τὰ τούτων
Turks to-come-upon and to-enslave the their
 γύναια καὶ παιδάρια, καὶ ληΐζεσθαι τὴν χώραν αὐτῶν.
women and children and to-plunder the land their

V • THE PECHENEGS AND THE BULGARIANS

The emperor can seem more fearsome to the Bulgarians and force them to keep quiet by keeping peace with the Pechenegs, who border on them and can march against Bulgaria whenever they wish. The Bulgarians, having often been defeated and plundered by them, have learned that peace with the Pechenegs is to their advantage.

περὶ τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν καὶ Βουλγάρων.

concerning the Pechenegs and Bulgarians
 Ὅτι καὶ τοῖς Βουλγάροις φοβερώτερος ἂν εἶναι δόξειεν ὁ
that also to-the Bulgarians more-fearsome — to-be would-seem the
 τῶν Ῥωμαίων βασιλεύς, καὶ ἀνάγκην ἡσυχίας ἐπιτιθέναι
of-the Romans emperor and (a)-necessity of-quiet to-impose
 τούτοις δύναται, ἐκ τοῦ μετὰ τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν εἰρηνεύειν,
on-them is-able from the with the Pechenegs to-be-at-peace
 ἐπειδὴ καὶ πρὸς αὐτοὺς τοὺς Βουλγάρους οἱ εἰρημένοι
since also to them the Bulgarians the said
 Πατζινακίται πλησιάζουσι, καὶ ἡνίκα βουλευθῶσι ἢ δι'
Pechenegs are-near and when they-wish either for
 οἰκεῖον κέρδος ἢ τῇ πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων χάριτι,
own gain or for-the toward the emperor of-(the)-Romans favor

εὐχερῶς δύνανται κατὰ Βουλγαρίας ἐκστρατεῦν, καὶ ἀπὸ
easily they-are-able against Bulgaria to-march-out and from
 τοῦ περιόντος πλήθους καὶ τῆς ἰσχύος αὐτῶν ὑπερνικᾶν
the superior multitude and the strength their to-overcome
 αὐτοὺς καὶ ἡττᾶν. διὰ τοῦτο καὶ οἱ Βούλγαροι ἀγῶνα
them and to-defeat because-of this also the Bulgarians struggle
 καὶ σπουδὴν διηνεκῶς ἔχουσι τοῦ εἰρηνεύειν καὶ ὁμονοεῖν
and eagerness continually have of-the to-be-at-peace and to-be-of-one-mind
 μετὰ τῶν Πατζνακιτῶν· ἐκ τοῦ γὰρ πολλάκις ὑπ' αὐτῶν
with the Pechenegs from the for often by them
 καταπολεμηθῆναι καὶ πραιδευθῆναι τῇ πείρᾳ ἐγνώκασιν
to-have-been-warred-down and to-have-been-plundered by-the experience they-have-learned
 καλὸν καὶ συμφέρον εἶναι τὸ εἰρηνεύειν αἰεὶ πρὸς αὐτούς.
good and advantageous to-be the to-be-at-peace always toward them

VI • THE PECHENEGS AND THE CHERSONITES

Another group of Pechenegs lives near Cherson. They trade with the Chersonites and carry out missions for them and for the emperor to Russia, Khazaria, Zichia, and beyond, for an agreed fee paid in silks, ribbons, cloths, brocades, pepper, and leather. Being free and as it were independent, they do no service without pay.

περὶ τῶν Πατζνακιτῶν καὶ Χερσωνιτῶν.
concerning the Pechenegs and Chersonites
 Ὅτι καὶ ἕτερος λαὸς τῶν τοιούτων Πατζνακιτῶν τῷ μέρει
that also another people of-the such Pechenegs to-the region
 τῆς Χερσῶνος παράκειται, οἵτινες καὶ πραγματεύονται μετὰ
— of-Cherson lies-near who also trade with
 τῶν Χερσωνιτῶν, καὶ ποιοῦσι τὰς δουλείας αὐτῶν τε καὶ
the Chersonites and do the services their both and
 τοῦ βασιλέως εἰς τε τὴν Ῥωσίαν καὶ Χαζαρίαν καὶ τὴν
of-the emperor into both — Russia and Khazaria and —

Ζιχίαν καὶ εἰς πάντα τὰ ἐκείθεν μέρη, δηλονότι λαμβάνοντες
Zichia and into all the there parts evidently receiving
 παρὰ τῶν Χερσωνιτῶν τὸν προσυμπεφωνημένον μισθὸν
from the Chersonites the previously-agreed pay
 ὑπὲρ τῆς τοιαύτης διακονίας κατὰ τὸ ἀνήκον τῆς δουλείας
for the such service according-to the befitting of-the service
 καὶ τοῦ κόπου αὐτῶν, οἷον βλαττία, πράνδια, χαρέρια,
and of-the labor their such-as purple-cloths ribbons loose-cloths
 σήμεντα, πέπερι, δερμάτια ἀληθινὰ ἀρδিকা, καὶ ἕτερα εἶδη
brocades pepper leathers scarlet Parthian and other kinds
 τὰ ὑπ' αὐτῶν ἐπιζητούμενα, καθὼς ἂν ἕκαστος Χερσωνίτης
the by them sought-after as — each Chersonite
 ἕκαστον Πατζινακίτην πείσῃ συμφωνῶν ἢ πεισθῇ·
each Pecheneg may-persuade agreeing or be-persuaded
 ἐλεύθεροι γὰρ ὄντες καὶ οἷον αὐτόνομοι οἱ τοιοῦτοι
free for being and as-it-were independent the such
 Πατζινακίται οὐδεμίαν δουλείαν ἄνευ μισθοῦ ποιούσιν ποτε.
Pechenegs no service without pay do ever

VII · IMPERIAL AGENTS SENT FROM CHERSON

An imperial agent who reaches Cherson must at once send to Patzinakia for hostages and escorts. He leaves the hostages in the fortress and travels with the escorts. The Pechenegs, insatiable for rarities, demand presents for themselves, their wives, their parents, and their horses, and the escorts demand pay again on the way back.

περὶ τῶν ἀποστελλομένων βασιλικῶν ἀπὸ Χερσῶνος ἐν
concerning the being-sent imperial-agents from Cherson into
 Πατζινακίᾳ.
Patzinakia

Ὅτι ἡνίκα περάσῃ βασιλικὸς εἰς Χερσῶνα ἔνεκα
that when crosses (an)-imperial-agent to Cherson for-the-sake-of
 τῆς τοιαύτης διακονίας, ὁφείλει εὐθὺς ἀποστέλλειν εἰς
the such service he-ought at-once to-send into
 Πατζινακίαν καὶ ἐπιζητεῖν ὄψιδας παρ' αὐτῶν καὶ
Patzinakia and to-ask-for hostages from them and
 διασώστας, καὶ ἐρχομένων αὐτῶν τοὺς μὲν ὄψιδας εἰς
escorts and coming them the indeed hostages in
 τὸ κάστρον Χερσῶνος κρατουμένους καταλιμπάνειν, αὐτὸς
the fortress of-Cherson held to-leave-behind he
 δὲ μετὰ τῶν διασωστῶν πρὸς Πατζινακίαν ἀπέρχεσθαι
and with the escorts to Patzinakia to-go-away
 καὶ τὰ ἐντεταλμένα ἐπιτελεῖν. οἱ δὲ τοιοῦτοι Πατζινακῖται
and the commanded-things to-accomplish the and such Pechenegs
 ἄπληστοι ὄντες καὶ τῶν παρ' αὐτοῖς σπανίων ὀξεῖς
insatiable being and of-the among them rare-things keen
 ἐπιθυμηταὶ ἀναίδην ἐπιζητοῦσι ξενάλια ἱκανά, οἱ μὲν
desirers shamelessly ask-for presents considerable the indeed
 ὄψιδες ἄλλα μὲν λόγῳ αὐτῶν καὶ ἄλλα λόγῳ τῶν
hostages some indeed on-account their and others on-account of-the
 αὐτῶν γυναικῶν, οἱ δὲ ἀποσώσται τὰ μὲν ὑπὲρ τοῦ
their wives the and escorts the(-ones) indeed for the
 κόπου αὐτῶν τὰ δὲ ὑπὲρ τοῦ κόπου τῶν ἀλόγων αὐτῶν.
labor their the(-ones) and for the labor of-the beasts their
 εἶτα εἰσερχομένου τοῦ βασιλικοῦ εἰς τὴν χώραν αὐτῶν
then entering the imperial-agent into the land their
 ζητοῦσι πρότερον τὰ τοῦ βασιλέως δῶρα· καὶ πάλιν ὅτε
they-ask-for first the of-the emperor gifts and again when
 χωρήσουσι τοὺς ἀνθρώπους αὐτῶν, ζητοῦσι τὰ τῶν
they-make-room-for the men their they-ask-for the(-gifts) of-the
 γυναικῶν αὐτῶν καὶ τῶν γονέων αὐτῶν. ἀλλὰ καὶ ὅσοι
wives their and of-the parents their but also as-many-as

ἐν τῷ ἀποσώζειν αὐτὸν ὑποστρέφοντα πρὸς Χερσῶνα
 in the to-escort him returning to Cherson
 κατέλθωσι μετ' αὐτοῦ, ζητοῦσι παρ' αὐτοῦ ῥογευθῆναι
 come-down with him ask from him to-be-paid
 διὰ τὸν κόπον αὐτῶν τε καὶ τῶν ἀλόγων αὐτῶν.
 because-of the labor their both and of-the beasts their

VIII · AGENTS SENT BY WARSHIP FROM THE CITY

Pechenegs also live toward Bulgaria, along the Dnieper and the Dniester, and an agent sent by warship can reach them without going to Cherson. Staying on board, he summons them, exchanges hostages, receives their oaths, and gives the imperial gifts. They can be hired against the Rus, the Bulgarians, or the Turks. When the cleric Gabriel urged the Turks to drive out the Pechenegs, their chiefs cried out that they would not fight them, for the Pechenegs are many and bad children. A closing note adds that the Pechenegs cross the Dnieper after spring and always summer there.

περὶ τῶν ἀπὸ τῆς θεοφυλάκτου πόλεως ἀποστελλομένων
 concerning the from the God-guarded city being-sent
 βασιλικῶν μετὰ χελανδίων διὰ τε τοῦ Δανουβίου καὶ
 imperial-agents with warships through both the Danube and
 Δάναπρι καὶ Δάναστρι ποταμοῦ ἐν Πατζινακία.
 Dnieper and Dniester river into Patzinakia
 Ὅτι καὶ εἰς τὸ μέρος τῆς Βουλγαρίας καθέζεται λαὸς
 that also in the region — of-Bulgaria dwells (a)-people
 τῶν Πατζινακίων ἐπὶ τὸ μέρος τοῦ Δάναπρι καὶ τοῦ
 of-the Pechenegs toward the region of-the Dnieper and of-the
 Δάναστρι καὶ τῶν ἑτέρων τῶν ἐκεῖσε ὄντων ποταμῶν,
 Dniester and of-the other the there being rivers
 καὶ βασιλικοῦ ἀποστελλομένου ἐντεῦθεν μετὰ χελανδίων
 and (an)-imperial-agent being-sent from-here with warships

δύναται καὶ χωρὶς τοῦ εἰς Χερσῶνα ἀπελθεῖν ἐνταῦθα
is-able even without the to Cherson to-go-away here
 συντόμως καὶ ταχέως εὕρισκεν τοὺς αὐτοὺς Πατζινακίτας·
quickly and swiftly to-find the same Pechenegs
 οὓς καὶ εὐρὼν μηνύει διὰ ἀνθρώπου αὐτοῦ ὁ βασιλικὸς
whom also having-found informs through (a)-man his the imperial-agent
 ἐντὸς τῶν χελανδίων μένων καὶ μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ τὰ βασιλικά
inside the warships remaining and with himself the imperial
 ἐπιφερόμενος καὶ φυλάττων ἐν τοῖς χελανδίοις πράγματα.
bringing and guarding in the warships goods
 καὶ κατέρχονται πρὸς αὐτόν, καὶ ὅτε κατέλθωσι, δίδωσι
and they-come-down to him and when they-come-down gives
 πρὸς αὐτοὺς ὁ βασιλικὸς ἀνθρώπους αὐτοῦ ὄψιδας, καὶ
to them the imperial-agent men his (as)-hostages and
 λαμβάνει καὶ αὐτὸς ἀπὸ τῶν τοιούτων Πατζινακικῶν
receives also he from the such Pechenegs
 ἐτέρους ὄψιδας, καὶ κρατεῖ αὐτοὺς εἰς τὰ χελάνδια,
other hostages and holds them in the warships
 καὶ τότε συμφωνεῖ μετ' αὐτῶν· καὶ ὅτε ποιήσουσιν οἱ
and then agrees with them and when make the
 Πατζινακῖται πρὸς τὸν βασιλικὸν τοὺς ὅρκους κατὰ τὰ
Pechenegs to the imperial-agent the oaths according-to the
 ζάκανα αὐτῶν, ἐπιδίδωσιν αὐτοῖς τὰς βασιλικὰς δωρεάς,
customs their he-hands-over to-them the imperial gifts
 καὶ ἀναλαμβάνεται φίλους ἐξ αὐτῶν ὅσους βούλεται,
and takes friends from them as-many-as he-wishes
 καὶ ὑποστρέφει. οὕτω δὲ χρή συμφωνεῖν μετ' αὐτῶν
and returns thus and (one)-must agree with them
 ὥστε, ὅπου ἂν χρεωποιηθῇ αὐτοὺς ὁ βασιλεὺς, ποιήσωσι
so-that wherever — has-need-of them the emperor they-may-do
 δουλείαν, εἴτε εἰς τοὺς Ῥῶς εἴτε εἰς τοὺς Βουλγάρους
service whether against the Rus or against the Bulgarians

εἴτε καὶ εἰς τοὺς Τούρκους· εἰσὶ γὰρ δυνατοὶ τοῦ πάντας
or also against the Turks they-are for able of-the all
 τούτους πολεμεῖν, καὶ πολλάκις κατ' αὐτῶν ἐλθόντες
these to-war and often against them having-come
 φοβεροὶ νῦν καθεστήκασιν. καὶ τοῦτο δῆλον καὶ ἐντευθέν
fearsome now they-have-become and this (is)-clear also from-here
 ἐστίν. τοῦ γὰρ κληρικοῦ Γαβριήλ ποτε πρὸς τοὺς Τούρκους
is of-the for cleric Gabriel once to the Turks
 ἀποσταλέντος ἀπὸ κελεύσεως βασιλικῆς, καὶ πρὸς αὐτοὺς
having-been-sent by command imperial and to them
 εἰπόντος ὅτι ὁ βασιλεὺς δηλοποιεῖ ὑμᾶς ἀπελθεῖν καὶ
having-said that the emperor makes-known-to you to-go-away and
 ἀποδιῶξαι τοὺς Πατζινακίτας ἀπὸ τοῦ τόπου αὐτῶν καὶ
to-drive-out the Pechenegs from the place their and
 καθεσθῆναι ὑμᾶς (ὁμοίως γὰρ καὶ πρότερον ἐκεῖσε ἐκαθέζεσθε)
to-settle you you for also formerly there were-settled
 πρὸς τὸ εἶναι πλησίον τῆς βασιλείας μου, καὶ ὅτε θέλω
for the to-be near of-the empire my and when I-wish
 ἀποστέλλω, καὶ ἐν τάχει εὐρίσκω ὑμᾶς, πάντες οἱ ἄρχοντες
I-send and in speed I-find you all the chiefs
 τῶν Τούρκων μιᾷ φωνῇ ἐξεβόησαν ὅτι ἡμεῖς μετὰ τοὺς
of-the Turks with-one voice cried-out that we with the
 Πατζινακίτας ἑαυτοὺς οὐ βάλλομεν· οὐ γὰρ δυνάμεθα
Pechenegs ourselves not throw not for we-are-able
 πολεμεῖν πρὸς αὐτούς, ὅτι καὶ χώρα μεγάλη καὶ λαὸς
to-war against them because both (the)-land (is)-great and (the)-people
 πολὺς καὶ κακὰ παιδία εἰσὶ. καὶ τοῦ λοιποῦ τὸν λόγον
many and bad children they-are and for-the rest(-of-time) the word
 τοῦτον πρὸς ἡμᾶς μὴ εἴπῃς· οὐ γὰρ ἀγαπῶμεν αὐτόν.
this to us not say not for we-love it

ὅτι καὶ οἱ Πατζνακῖται ἐκεῖθεν τοῦ Δανάπρεως ποταμοῦ
that also the Pechenegs beyond the Dnieper river
 μετὰ τὸ ἔαρ διέρχονται, καὶ αἰὲ ἐκέισε καλλοκαιρίζουσι.
after the spring cross and always there spend-the-summer

IX · THE RUS VOYAGE TO CONSTANTINOPLE

The dugouts that come to Constantinople gather each spring at Kiev, where the Rus buy them from the Slavs who cut them in winter. In June they sail down the Dnieper. At each of the seven barrages, named in Russian and in Slavonic, they put men ashore, punt or drag the boats past the rocks, and at the fourth carry them six miles overland while watching for the Pechenegs. On St. Gregory's island they sacrifice cocks under a great oak. They rest and refit at St. Aitherios, then coast past the Danube mouths to Mesembria. In winter the princes go out on rounds among the tributary Slavs and return to Kiev in April. A closing note adds that the Uzes can make war on the Pechenegs.

περὶ τῶν ἀπὸ τῆς Ῥωσίας ἐρχομένων Ῥῶς μετὰ τῶν
concerning the from — Russia coming Rus with the
 μονοξύλων ἐν Κωνσταντινουπόλει.

dugouts to Constantinople

Ὅτι τὰ ἀπὸ τῆς ἔξω Ῥωσίας μονόξυλα κατερχόμενα
that the from the outer Russia dugouts coming-down

ἐν Κωνσταντινουπόλει εἰσὶ μὲν ἀπὸ τοῦ Νεμογαρδάς,
to Constantinople are indeed from — Nemogarda

ἐν ᾧ Σφενδοσθλάβος ὁ υἱὸς Ἰγγωρ τοῦ ἄρχοντος
in which Sviatoslav the son of-Igor the prince

Ῥωσίας ἐκαθέζετο, εἰσὶ δὲ καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ κάστρον τὴν
of-Russia was-settled are and also from the fortress —

Μιλινίσκαν καὶ ἀπὸ Τελιούτζαν καὶ Τζερνιγῶγαν καὶ ἀπὸ
Miliniska and from Teliutza and Tzernigoga and from

τοῦ Βουσεγραδέ. ταῦτα οὖν ἅπαντα διὰ τοῦ ποταμοῦ
— Vousegrade these then all through the river

κατέρχονται Δανάπρεως, καὶ ἐπισυνάγονται ἐπὶ τὸ κάστρον
come-down of-(the)-Dnieper and are-gathered at the fortress
 τὸ Κιοάβα τὸ ἐπονομαζόμενον Σαμβατάς. οἱ δὲ
 — *Kiev the(-one) named Samvatas the and*
 Σκλάβοι οἱ πακτιῶται αὐτῶν, οἱ Κριβηταιηνοὶ λεγόμενοι
Slavs the tributaries their the Krivitzians called
 καὶ οἱ Λενζανῆνοι καὶ οἱ λοιποὶ Σκλαβίνιοι, εἰς τὰ
and the Lenzanenes and the other Slavonians in the
 ὄρη αὐτῶν κόπτουσι τὰ μονόξυλα ἐν τῷ τοῦ χειμῶνος
mountains their cut the dugouts in the of-the winter
 καιρῷ, καὶ καταρτίσαντες αὐτῶν τοῦ καιροῦ ἀνοιγομένον,
season and having-fitted-out them the season opening
 ἡνίκα διαλυθῇ ὁ παγετός, εἰς τὰς πλησίον οὐσας λίμνας
when has-melted the frost into the near being lakes
 εἰσάγουσιν αὐτά. καὶ ἐπειδὴ ἐκεῖνα εἰσβάλλουσιν εἰς
they-bring them and since those empty into
 ποταμὸν τὸν Δάναπριν, ἀπὸ τῶν ἐκεῖσε οὗτοι εἰς τὸν
(the)-river the Dnieper from the there these into the
 αὐτὸν ποταμὸν εἰσέρχονται καὶ ἀπέρχονται εἰς τὸ Κιοάβα,
same river enter and go-away to — Kiev
 καὶ σύρουσιν εἰς τὴν ἐξάρτησιν, καὶ ἀπεμπολοῦσιν αὐτὰ
and drag(-them) to the fitting-out and sell them
 εἰς τοὺς Ῥῶς. οἱ δὲ Ῥῶς σκαφίδια καὶ μόνα ταῦτα
to the Rus the and Rus hulls and only these
 ἀγοράζοντες, τὰ παλαιὰ αὐτῶν μονόξυλα καταλύοντες ἐξ
buying the old their dugouts dismantling from
 αὐτῶν βάλλουσι καὶ πέλλας καὶ σκαρμῶν εἰς αὐτὰ καὶ
them they-put both oars and rowlocks into them and
 λοιπὰς χρείας, ἐξοπλίζουσιν αὐτά. καὶ Ἰουνίου μηνὸς διὰ
other needs they-equip them and of-June month through
 τοῦ ποταμοῦ Δανάπρεως ἀποκινοῦντες κατέρχονται εἰς τὸ
the river Dnieper setting-out they-come-down to —

Βιτετζέβη, ὅπερ ἐστὶ πακτιωτικὸν κάστρον τῶν Ῥῶς. καὶ
Vitetzevi which is (a)-tributary fortress of-the Rus and
 συναθροίζόμενοι ἐκεῖσε μέχρι δύο καὶ τριῶν ἡμερῶν, ἥνικα
gathering there up-to two and three days when
 ἂν ἅπαντα ἀποσυναχθῶσι τὰ μονόξυλα, τότε ἀποκινούσι
— all have-been-assembled the dugouts then they-set-out
 καὶ κατέρχονται διὰ τοῦ εἰρημένου Δανάπρεως ποταμοῦ.
and come-down through the said Dnieper river
 καὶ πρῶτον μὲν ἔρχονται εἰς τὸν πρῶτον φραγμὸν τὸν
and first indeed they-come to the first barrage the(-one)
 ἐπονομαζόμενον Ἑσσουπή, ὃ ἐρμηνεύεται Ῥωσισιτὶ καὶ
named Essoupi which is-interpreted in-Russian and
 Σκλαβινιστὶ μὴ κοιμᾶσθαι. ὃ δὲ τούτου φραγμὸς τοσοῦτόν
in-Slavonic not to-sleep the and of-this barrage so
 ἐστὶ στενὸς ὅσον τὸ πλάτος τοῦ τζυκανιστηρίου· μέσον
is narrow as the breadth of-the polo-ground in-(the)-middle
 δὲ αὐτοῦ πέτραι εἰσὶ ριζικαῖαι ὑψηλαὶ νησίῳν δίκην
and of-it rocks are rooted high of-islets in-the-manner-of
 ἀποφαινόμεναι. πρὸς αὐτὰς οὖν ἐρχόμενον τὸ ὕδωρ καὶ
appearing against them then coming the water and
 πλημμυροῦν, καέκειθεν ἀποκρημνιζόμενον πρὸς τὸ κάτω
flooding and-from-there plunging-down to the lower
 μέρος, ἦχον μέγαν καὶ φόβον ἀποτελεῖ. καὶ διὰ τοῦτο
part noise great and fear produces and because-of this
 μέσον αὐτῶν οὐ τολμῶσιν οἱ Ῥῶς διελθεῖν, ἀλλὰ πλησίον
between them not dare the Rus to-pass-through but near
 σκαλῶσαντες, καὶ τοὺς μὲν ἀνθρώπους ἐκβαλόντες εἰς τὴν
having-put-in and the indeed men having-put-out onto the
 ξηράν, τὰ δὲ λοιπὰ πράγματα ἔασαντες εἰς τὰ μονόξυλα,
dry-land the and other goods having-left in the dugouts
 εἴθ' οὕτως γυμνοί, τοῖς ποσὶν αὐτῶν ψηλαφούντες,
then thus naked with-the feet their feeling-their-way

ἵνα μή τιμι λίθῳ προσκρούσωσιν. τοῦτο δὲ ποιοῦσιν
so-that not on-some stone they-may-strike this and do
 οἱ μὲν πλώραν, οἱ δὲ μέσον, οἱ δὲ καὶ
some indeed (at)-(the)-prow others and (at)-(the)-middle the(-others) and also
 εἰς τὴν πρύμναν μετὰ κονταρίων κοντοβευόμενοι. καὶ
at the stern with poles punting and
 μετὰ τοιαύτης ἀπάσης ἀκριβείας διέρχονται τὸν τοιοῦτον
with such all exactness they-pass-through the such
 πρῶτον φραγμὸν διὰ τῆς γωνίας καὶ τῆς ὄχθης τοῦ
first barrage by the edge and the bank of-the
 ποταμοῦ. ἡνίκα δὲ διέλθωσι τὸν τοιοῦτον φραγμόν,
river when and they-have-passed-through the such barrage
 πάλιν ἀπὸ τῆς ξηρᾶς ἀναλαμβάνόμενοι τοὺς λοιποὺς
again from the dry-land taking-up the others
 ἀποπλέουσι, καὶ κατέρχονται εἰς τὸν ἕτερον φραγμὸν
they-sail-off and come-down to the other barrage
 τὸν ἐπιλεγόμενον Ῥωσισι μὲν Οὐλβορσι Σκλαβινιστὶ
the(-one) called in-Russian indeed Oulvorsi in-Slavonic
 δὲ Ὀστροβουνίπραχ, ὅπερ ἐρμηνεύεται τὸ νησίον τοῦ
and Ostrovouniprach which is-interpreted the islet of-the
 φραγμοῦ. ἔστι κακεῖνος ὅμοιος τῷ πρώτῳ, χαλεπὸς τε καὶ
barrage is and-that-one like to-the first hard both and
 δυσδιέξοδος. καὶ πάλιν ἐκβαλόντες τὸν λαὸν διαβιβάζουσι
hard-to-get-through and again having-put-out the people they-take-across
 τὰ μονόξυλα καθὼς καὶ πρότερον. ὁμοίως δὲ διέρχονται
the dugouts as also before likewise and they-pass-through
 καὶ τὸν τρίτον φραγμὸν τὸν λεγόμενον Γελανδρί, ὃ
also the third barrage the(-one) called Gelandri which
 ἐρμηνεύεται Σκλαβινιστὶ ἦχος φραγμοῦ. εἴθ' οὕτως τὸν
is-interpreted in-Slavonic noise of-(the)-barrage then thus the
 τέταρτον φραγμόν, τὸν μέγαν, τὸν ἐπιλεγόμενον Ῥωσισι
fourth barrage the great the(-one) called in-Russian

μὲν Ἀειφάρ, Σκλαβινιστὶ δὲ Νεασήτ, διότι φωλεύουσιν οἱ
indeed Aelfar in-Slavonic and Neasit because nest the
 πελεκᾶνοι εἰς τὰ λιθάρια τοῦ φραγμοῦ. ἐν τούτῳ οὖν τῷ
pelicans in the stones of-the barrage at this then the
 φραγμῷ σκαλώνουσιν ἅπαντα εἰς τὴν γῆν ὀρθόπλωρα,
barrage put-in all to the land prow-first
 καὶ ἐξέρχονται οἱ ὠρισμένοι ἄνδρες φυλάττειν τὴν βίγλαν
and go-out the appointed men to-keep the watch
 μετ' αὐτῶν, καὶ ἀπέρχονται, καὶ τὰς βίγλας οἱτοὶ διὰ
with them and go-away and the watches these because-of
 τοὺς Πατζινακίτας ἀγρύπνως φυλάττουσιν. οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ
the Pechenegs sleeplessly keep the and others
 τὰ πράγματα ἅπερ ἔχουσιν εἰς τὰ μονόξυλα ἀναλαβόμενοι,
the goods which they-have in the dugouts having-taken-up
 τὰ ψυχάρια μετὰ τῶν ἀλύσεων διὰ τοῦ ξηροῦ αὐτὰ
the slaves with the chains through the dry-land them
 διαβιβάζουσι μίλια ἕξ, ἕως ἂν διέλθωσι τὸν φραγμόν.
take-across miles six until — they-have-passed-through the barrage
 εἰθ' οὕτως οἱ μὲν σύροντες οἱ δὲ καὶ εἰς τοὺς ὤμους
then thus some indeed dragging others and also on the shoulders
 βαστάζοντες τὰ αὐτῶν μονόξυλα εἰς τὸ τοῦ φραγμοῦ
carrying the their dugouts to the of-the barrage
 ἐκείθεν μέρος διαβιβάζουσι, καὶ οὕτως ρίπτοντες αὐτὰ
beyond part take-across and thus throwing them
 εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν καὶ τὰ πετζιμένα αὐτῶν ἐμβλησκόμενοι
into the river and the baggage their loading-in
 εἰσέρχονται καὶ αὖθις ἐναποπλέουσιν. ἀπερχόμενοι δὲ εἰς
they-embark and again sail-off going-away and to
 τὸν πέμπτον φραγμόν τὸν ἐπονομαζόμενον Ῥωσιστὶ μὲν
the fifth barrage the(-one) named in-Russian indeed
 Βαρουφόρος Σκλαβινιστὶ δὲ Βουλνηπράχ, διότι μεγάλην
Varouforos in-Slavonic and Voulniprach because (a)-great

λίμνην ἀποτελεῖ, πάλιν εἰς τὰς τοῦ ποταμοῦ γωνίας τὰ
lake it-forms again at the of-the river edges the
 αὐτῶν μονόξυλα διαβιβάσαντες καθὼς καὶ εἰς τὸν πρῶτον
their dugouts having-taken-across as also at the first
 φραγμὸν καὶ εἰς τὸν δεύτερον, καταλαμβάνουσι τὸν ἕκτον
barrage and at the second they-reach the sixth
 φραγμόν, λεγόμενον μὲν Ῥωσισὶ Λεάντι Σκλαβινιστὶ
barrage called indeed in-Russian Leanti in-Slavonic
 δὲ Βερούτζη, ὃ ἐστὶ βράσμα νεροῦ, καὶ διαβαίνουσι
and Veroutzi which is (a)-boiling of-water and they-pass-through
 καὶ αὐτὸν ὁμοίως. καὶ ἀπὸ τούτου ἀποπλέουσι καὶ πρὸς
also it likewise and from this they-sail-off also to
 τὸν ἕβδομον φραγμὸν τὸν ἐπιλεγόμενον Ῥωσισὶ μὲν
the seventh barrage the(-one) called in-Russian indeed
 Στρούβουν Σκλαβινιστὶ δὲ Ναπρεζή, ὃ ἐρμηνεύεται
Strouvoun in-Slavonic and Naprezi which is-interpreted
 μικρὸς φραγμός, καὶ διαβαίνοντες εἰς τὸ λεγόμενον
small barrage and passing-through to the called
 πέραμα τοῦ Κραρίου, ἐν ᾧ διαπερῶσιν ἀπὸ Ῥωσίας οἱ
crossing — of-Krarion at which cross from Russia the
 Χερσωνῖται, καὶ οἱ Πατζινაკῖται ἐπὶ Χερσῶνα, ἔχον τὸ
Chersonites and the Pechenegs toward Cherson having the
 αὐτὸ πέραμα τὸ μὲν πλάτος ὅσον τοῦ Ἱπποδρομίου,
same crossing the indeed breadth as-much-as of-the Hippodrome
 τὸ δὲ ὕψος ἀπὸ κάτω ἕως ὅτου παρακύπτουσιν οἱ φίλοι,
the and height from below up-to where peer-over the friends
 ὅσον καὶ φθάνειν σαγίτταν τοῦ τοξεύοντος ἔνθεν
as-far-as also to-reach (an)-arrow of-the(-one) shooting from-here
 ἐκεῖσε· ὅθεν καὶ εἰς τὸν τοιοῦτον τόπον κατέρχονται
to-there whence also to the such place come-down
 οἱ Πατζινაკῖται, καὶ πολεμοῦσι τοὺς Ῥῶς. μετὰ δὲ
the Pechenegs and war-upon the Rus after and

τὸ διελθεῖν τὸν τοιοῦτον τόπον τὴν νῆσον τὴν
the to-pass-through the such place the island the(-one)
 ἐπιλεγομένην ὃ ἅγιος Γρηγόριος καταλαμβάνουσιν, ἐν ᾗ
called the holy Gregory they-reach on which
 νήσῳ καὶ τὰς θυσίας αὐτῶν ἐπιτελοῦσιν διὰ τὸ ἐκεῖσε
island also the sacrifices their they-perform because-of the there
 ἵστασθαι παμμεγέθη δρῦν. καὶ θύουσι πετεινοὺς ζῶντας.
to-stand (a)-huge oak and they-sacrifice cocks living
 πηγνύουσι δὲ καὶ σαγίττας γυρόθεν, ἄλλοι δὲ καὶ ψωμῖα
they-fix and also arrows around others and also bits-of-bread
 καὶ κρέατα, καὶ ἐξ ὧν ἔχει ἕκαστος, ὥς τὸ ἔθος
and meats and of (the-things)-which has each as the custom
 αὐτῶν ἐπικρατεῖ. ρίπτουσι δὲ καὶ σκαρφία περὶ τῶν
their prevails they-throw and also lots concerning the
 πετεινῶν, εἴτε σφάζει αὐτοὺς εἴτε καὶ φαγεῖν εἴτε καὶ
cocks whether to-slaughter them or also to-eat or also
 ζῶντας ἑάσειν. ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ νησιῦ τούτου Πατζινακίτην
living to-let(-go) from and the islet this (a)-Pecheneg
 οἱ Ῥῶς οὐ φοβοῦνται, ἕως ἂν φθάσωσιν εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν
the Rus not fear until — they-reach to the river
 τὸν Σελινάν. εἴθ' οὕτως ἀποκινούντες ἐξ αὐτοῦ μέχρι
the Selinas then thus setting-out from it up-to
 τεσσάρων ἡμερῶν ἀποπλέουσιν, ἕως οὗ καταλάβωσιν εἰς
four days they-sail-off until — they-reach to
 τὴν λίμνην τοῦ ποταμοῦ στόμιον οὐσαν· ἐν ᾗ ἔστι καὶ
the lake of-the river mouth being in which is also
 ἡ νῆσος τοῦ ἁγίου Αἰθερίου. καταλαβόντες οὖν οὗτοι τὴν
the island of-the holy Aitherios having-reached then these the
 τοιαύτην νῆσον προσαναπαύουσιν ἑαυτοὺς ἐκεῖσε ἕως δύο
such island they-rest themselves there for two
 καὶ τριῶν ἡμερῶν, καὶ πάλιν τὰ ἑαυτῶν μονόξυλα εἰς
and three days and again the their-own dugouts with

ὅσας ἂν λείπωνται χρείας περιποιούνται, τὰ τε ἄρμενα
as-many-as — they-may-lack needs they-supply the both sails
 καὶ τὰ κατάρτια καὶ τὰ αὐχένια ἅπερ ἐπιφέρονται. ἐπεὶ
and the masts and the rudders which they-bring since
 δὲ τὸ στόμιον τοῦ τοιούτου ποταμοῦ ἐστὶν ἡ τοιαύτη
and the mouth of-the such river is the such
 λίμνη, καθὼς εἴρηται, καὶ κρατεῖ μέχρι τῆς θαλάσσης,
lake as has-been-said and extends up-to the sea
 καὶ πρὸς τὴν θάλασσαν κείται ἡ νῆσος τοῦ ἁγίου
and toward the sea lies the island of-the holy
 Αἰθερίου, ἐκ τῶν ἐκεῖσε ἀπέρχονται πρὸς τὸν Δάναπριν
Aithérios from the there they-go-away to the Dnieper
 ποταμόν, καὶ διασωθέντες ἐκεῖσε πάλιν ἀναπαύονται.
river and having-come-safely there again they-rest
 ἡνίκα δὲ γένηται καιρὸς ἐπιτήδειος, ἀποσκαλῶσαντες
when and comes (a)-season suitable having-put-off
 ἔρχονται εἰς τὸν ποταμόν τὸν ἐπιλεγόμενον Ἄσπρον,
they-come to the river the(-one) called Aspros
 καὶ ὁμοίως καὶ ἐκεῖσε ἀναπαυσάμενοι πάλιν ἀποκινούντες
and likewise there-too having-rested again setting-out
 ἔρχονται εἰς τὸν Σελινάν, εἰς τὸ τοῦ Δανουβίου ποταμοῦ
they-come to the Selinas to the of-the Danube river
 λεγόμενον παρακλάδιον. καὶ ἕως οὗ διέλθωσι τὸν
called branch and until — they-have-passed-through the
 Σελινὰν ποταμόν, παρατρέχουσιν αὐτοῖς οἱ Πατζινάκται·
Selinas river run-alongside them the Pechenegs
 καὶ ἐὰν πολλάκις ἡ θάλασσα μονόξυλα εἰς τὴν γῆν
and if perhaps the sea dugouts onto the land
 ἀπορρήψῃ, σκαλώνουσιν ὅλα, ἵνα τοῖς Πατζινάκταις
casts-up they-put-in all so-that to-the Pechenegs
 ἀντιπαραταχθῶσιν ὁμοῦ. ἀπὸ δὲ τὸν Σελινὰν οὐ φοβούνται
they-may-be-drawn-up-against together from and the Selinas not they-fear

τινα, ἀλλὰ τὴν τῆς Βουλγαρίας γῆν ἐνδυσάμενοι εἰς τὸ
anyone but the — of-Bulgaria land having-entered to the
 τοῦ Δανουβίου στόμον ἔρχονται. ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ Δανουβίου
of-the Danube mouth they-come from and the Danube
 καταλαμβάνουσιν εἰς τὸν Κωνοπάν, καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ Κωνοπά
they-reach to — Konopas and from — Konopas
 εἰς Κωνσταντίαν εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν Βάρνας, καὶ ἀπὸ Βάρνας
to Constantia to the river of-Varna and from Varna
 ἔρχονται εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν τὴν Διτζίναν, ἅπερ πάντα εἰσὶ
they-come to the river the Ditzina which all are
 γῆς τῆς Βουλγαρίας. ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς Διτζίνας εἰς τὰ
of-(the)-land — of-Bulgaria from and the Ditzina to the
 τῆς Μεσημβρίας μέρη καταλαμβάνουσι, καὶ οὕτω μέχρι
— of-Mesembria parts they-reach and thus up-to
 τούτων ὁ πολυώδυνος αὐτῶν καὶ περίφοβος δυσδιέξοδος
these the much-painful their and terrifying hard-to-get-through
 τε καὶ χαλεπὸς ἀποπεραίνεται πλοῦς.

both and hard is-completed voyage
 Ἡ δὲ χειμέριος τῶν αὐτῶν Ῥῶς καὶ σκληρὰ διαγωγὴ
the and wintry of-the same Rus and harsh way-of-life
 ἐστὶν αὕτη. ἥνικα ὁ Νοέμβριος μὴν εἰσέλθῃ, εὐθέως οἱ
is this when the November month has-come-in at-once the
 αὐτῶν ἄρχοντες ἐξέρχονται μετὰ πάντων τῶν Ῥῶς ἀπὸ
their princes go-out with all the Rus from
 τὸν Κίαβον, καὶ ἀπέρχονται εἰς τὰ πολύδια ἃ λέγεται
— Kiev and go-away to the circuits which is-called
 Γύρα, ἥγουν εἰς τὰς Σκλαβινίας τῶν τε Βερβιάνων καὶ
Gyra that-is to the Slaviniias of-the both Vervians and
 τῶν Δρουγουβιτῶν καὶ Κριβιτζῶν καὶ τῶν Σερβίων καὶ
of-the Drougouwives and Krivitzians and of-the Serbs and
 λοιπῶν Σκλάβων, οἵτινές εἰσι πακτιῶνται τῶν Ῥῶς. δι'
other Slavs who are tributaries of-the Rus through

ὅλου δὲ τοῦ χειμῶνος ἐκείσε διατρεφόμενοι, πάλιν ἀπὸ
whole and the winter there being-maintained again from
 μηνὸς Ἀπριλλίου διαλυομένου τοῦ πάγους τοῦ Δανάπρεως
(the)-month of-April melting the ice of-the Dnieper
 ποταμοῦ κατέρχονται πρὸς τὸν Κίαβον. καὶ εἴθ' οὕτως
river they-come-down to — Kiev and then thus
 ἀπολαμβάνονται τὰ αὐτῶν μονόξυλα καθὼς προείρηται,
they-take-up the their dugouts as has-been-said-before
 καὶ ἐξοπλίζονται, καὶ πρὸς Ῥωμανίαν κατέρχονται.
and they-equip and to Romania come-down
 Ὅτι οἱ Οὐζοὶ δύνανται τοῖς Πατζινακίταις πολεμεῖν.
that the Uzes are-able the Pechenegs to-war-upon

X · HOW KHAZARIA IS TO BE FOUGHT

The Uzes can make war on the Khazars, and so can the ruler of Alania, whose land lies next to the nine regions of Khazaria on which the whole livelihood of Khazaria depends.

περὶ τῆς Χαζαρίας, πῶς δεῖ πολεμεῖσθαι καὶ παρὰ
concerning — Khazaria how (it)-must be-warred-upon and by
 τινων.

whom

Ὅτι οἱ Οὐζοὶ δύνανται πολεμεῖν τοὺς Χαζάρους ὡς αὐτοῖς
that the Uzes are-able to-war-upon the Khazars as them
 πλησιάζοντες. ὁμοίως καὶ ὁ ἐξουσιοκράτωρ Ἀλανίας, ὅτι
bordering likewise also the exousiocrator of-Alania because
 τὰ ἐννέα κλίματα τῆς Χαζαρίας τῇ Ἀλανίᾳ παράκεινται,
the nine regions — of-Khazaria — to-Alania lie-near
 καὶ δύνανται ὁ Ἀλανός, εἰ ἄρα καὶ βούλεται, ταῦτα
and is-able the Alan if then indeed he-wishes these

πραιδεύειν καὶ μεγάλην βλάβην καὶ ἔνδειαν ἐντεῦθεν τοῖς
to-plunder and great harm and want from-this to-the
 Χαζάρους ποιεῖν· ἐκ γὰρ τῶν ἐννέα κλιμάτων τούτων
Khazars to-cause from for the nine regions these
 ἡ πᾶσα ζωὴ καὶ ἀφθονία τῆς Χαζαρίας καθέστηκεν.
the whole livelihood and abundance — of-Khazaria consists

XI · CHERSON AND BOSPORUS

If the ruler of Alania is not at peace with the Khazars and values the emperor's friendship more, he can do them great harm whenever they will not keep peace with the emperor, ambushing them on their roads to Sarkel, the Regions, and Cherson. If he sets himself to hinder them, Cherson and the Regions enjoy deep peace, for the Khazars, fearing the Alans and unable to fight two enemies at once, will be forced to keep it.

περὶ τοῦ κάστρου Χερσῶνος, καὶ τοῦ κάστρου Βοσπόρου.
concerning the fortress of-Cherson and the fortress of-Bosporus
 Ὅτι τοῦ ἐξουσιοκράτορος Ἀλανίας μετὰ τῶν Χαζάρων
that the exousiocrator of-Alania with the Khazars
 μὴ εἰρηνεύοντος, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον προτιμωτέραν τιθεμένου
not being-at-peace but rather more-to-be-valued holding
 τὴν φιλίαν τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων, ἐὰν οἱ Χάζαροι οὐ
the friendship of-the emperor of-(the)-Romans if the Khazars not
 βούλονται τὴν πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα φιλίαν καὶ εἰρήνην
wish the toward the emperor friendship and peace
 τηρεῖν, δύναται μεγάλως αὐτοὺς κακοῦν, τὰς τε ὁδοὺς
to-keep he-is-able greatly them to-harm the both roads
 ἐνεδρεύων καὶ ἀφυλάκτως αὐτοῖς ἐπιτιθέμενος ἐν τῷ
lying-in-wait-on and unguardedly them attacking in the
 διέρχεσθαι πρὸς τε τὸ Σάρκελ καὶ τὰ κλίματα καὶ
to-pass-through to both — Sarkel and the regions and

τὴν Χερσῶνα. καὶ εἰ ποιήσεται σπουδὴν ὁ τοιοῦτος
 — Cherson and if makes eagerness the such
 ἐξουσιοκράτωρ τοῦ κωλύειν αὐτούς, μεγάλης καὶ βαθείας
 exousiocrator of-the to-binder them great and deep
 εἰρήνης μετέχουσιν ἢ τε Χερσῶν καὶ τὰ κλίματα·
 peace share — both Cherson and the regions
 φοβούμενοι γὰρ οἱ Χάζαροι τὴν τῶν Ἀλανῶν ἐπίθεσιν,
 fearing for the Khazars the of-the Alans attack
 καὶ μὴ εὐρίσκοντες ἄδειαν μετὰ φοσσάτου ἐπιτίθεσθαι τῇ
 and not finding freedom with (an)-army to-attack —
 Χερσῶνι καὶ τοῖς κλίμασι ὥς μὴ πρὸς ἀμφοτέρους ἐν
 Cherson and the regions as not against both at
 ταυτῷ πολεμεῖν ἐξισχύοντες, εἰρηνεύειν ἀναγκασθήσονται.
 the-same-time to-war being-strong-enough to-be-at-peace they-will-be-compelled

XII · BLACK BULGARIA AND KHAZARIA

Black Bulgaria can also make war on the Khazars.

περὶ τῆς μαύρης Βουλγαρίας καὶ Χαζαρίας.
 concerning the black Bulgaria and Khazaria
 Ὅτι καὶ ἡ μαύρη λεγομένη Βουλγαρία δύναται τοῖς
 that also the black called Bulgaria is-able the
 Χαζάροις πολεμεῖν.
 Khazars to-war-upon

The Franks, the Pechenegs, great Moravia, and the Croats border on the Turks. Constantine teaches his son to refuse the northern nations' greedy requests. Imperial robes and crowns were sent by an angel to Constantine the Great and must stay in Hagia Sophia; Leo, who wore one unbidden, died of a carbuncle. Liquid fire, revealed by an angel, may never be given away. Nor may an emperor marry into a foreign nation except the Franks: Leo broke this rule with the chagan's daughter, and Romanos, an unlettered man, gave his granddaughter to the Bulgarian Peter.

περὶ τῶν πλησιαζόντων ἔθνων τοῖς Τούρκοις.

concerning the neighboring nations to-the Turks

Ὅτι τοῖς Τούρκοις τὰ τοιαῦτα ἔθνη παράκεινται,

that to-the Turks the such nations lie-near

πρὸς μὲν τὸ δυτικώτερον μέρος αὐτῶν ἡ Φραγγία,

toward indeed the more-western part their — Frankland

πρὸς δὲ τὸ βορειώτερον οἱ Πατζινακῖται, καὶ πρὸς τὸ

toward and the more-northern the Pechenegs and toward the

μεσημβρινὸν μέρος ἡ μεγάλη Μοραβία ἥτοι ἡ χώρα

southern part the great Moravia that-is the land

τοῦ Σφενδοπλόκου, ἣτις καὶ παντελῶς ἠφανίσθη παρὰ

— of-Sphendoplokos which also utterly was-destroyed by

τῶν τοιούτων Τούρκων καὶ παρ' αὐτῶν κατεσχέθη. οἱ

the such Turks and by them was-occupied the

δὲ Χρωβάτοι πρὸς τὰ ὄρη τοῖς Τούρκοις παράκεινται.

and Croats toward the mountains to-the Turks lie-near

Ὅτι δύνανται καὶ οἱ Πατζινακῖται τοῖς Τούρκοις ἐπιτίθεσθαι

that are-able also the Pechenegs the Turks to-attack

καὶ μεγάλως πραιδεύειν καὶ παραβλάπτειν αὐτούς, καθὼς

and greatly to-plunder and to-harm them as

καὶ ἐν τῷ περὶ Πατζινακιτῶν κεφαλαίῳ προεῖρηται.

also in the concerning (the)-Pechenegs chapter has-been-said-before

Ἐπίστησον, υἱέ, διανοίας ὄμμα τῆς σῆς λόγοις ἐμοῖς, καὶ
set son of-mind (the)-eye the your to-words my and
 γνῶθι ἃ σοὶ ἐντέλλομαι, καὶ ἔξεις ἐν καιρῷ
know (the-things)-which to-you I-command and you-will-be-able in season
 ὡς ἐκ πατρικῶν θησαυρῶν προφέρειν πλοῦτον φρονήσεως
as from paternal treasures to-bring-forth (a)-wealth of-prudence
 καὶ ἐπιδείκνυσθαι χύμα συνέσεως. ἴσθι οὖν ὅτι τοῖς βορείοις
and to-display (a)-flood of-understanding know then that to-the northern
 ἅπασιν γένεσι φύσιν ὥσπερ καθέστηκεν τὸ ἐν χρήμασι
all races (a)-nature as-it-were has-become the in monies
 λίχον καὶ ἄπληστον καὶ μηδέποτε κορεννύμενον, ὅθεν πάντα
greedy and insatiable and never satisfied whence all-things
 ἐπιζητεῖ καὶ πάντων ἐφίεται καὶ οὐκ ἔχει τὰς ἐπιθυμίας
it-seeks and all-things desires and not has the desires
 ὄρω περιγραφομένης, ἀλλ' αἰετὸ τοῦ πλείονος ἐπιθυμεῖ,
by-(a)-limit bounded but always of-the more desires
 καὶ ἀντὶ μικρᾶς ὠφελείας μεγάλα κέρδη προσπορίζεσθαι
and in-return-for small benefit great gains to-acquire
 βούλεται. διὸ δεῖ τὰς τούτων ἀκαίρους αἰτήσεις καὶ
wishes therefore (one)-must the their untimely requests and
 παρρησιαστικὰς ἀξιώσεις διὰ λόγων πιθανῶν καὶ φρονίμων
outspoken claims by words persuasive and prudent
 καὶ συνετῶν ἀπολογιῶν ἀνατρέπειν καὶ ἀνακρούεσθαι,
and intelligent defenses to-overturn and to-repulse
 αἵτινες, ὅσον ἀπὸ τῆς πείρας ἡμεῖς καταλαβεῖν ἠδυνήθημεν,
which as-far-as from the experience we to-grasp have-been-able
 ὡς ἐν τύπῳ περιλαβεῖν, τοιαῦταί τινες ἔσονται.
as in outline to-comprise such some will-be
 Εἰ ἀξιώσουσί ποτε καὶ αἰτήσονται εἴτε Χάζαροι εἴτε
if they-claim ever and ask either Khazars or
 Τοῦρκοι εἴτε καὶ Ῥῶς ἢ ἕτερόν τι ἔθνος τῶν βορείων
Turks or also Rus or other some nation of-the northern

καὶ Σκυθικῶν, οἷα πολλὰ συμβαίνει, ἐκ τῶν βασιλείων
 and Scythian such-as many happens of the imperial
 ἐσθήτων ἢ στεμμάτων ἢ στολῶν ἕνεκά τινος δουλείας
 vestments or diadems or robes for-the-sake of-some service
 καὶ ὑπουργίας αὐτῶν ἀποσταλῆναι αὐτοῖς, οὕτω χρή
 and assistance their to-be-sent to-them thus (it)-is-needful
 σε ἀπολογίσασθαι, ὅτι αἱ τοιαῦται στολαὶ καὶ τὰ
 you to-excuse(-yourself) that the such robes and the
 στέμματα ἃ παρ' ἡμῶν καμελαύκια ὀνομάζεται οὔτε
 diadems which by us kamelaukia are-named neither
 παρὰ ἀνθρώπων κατεσκευάσθησαν οὔτε ἐξ ἀνθρωπίνων
 by men were-made nor from human
 τεχνῶν ἐπειοήθησαν ἢ ἐξεργάσθησαν· ἀλλ' ὥς ἀπὸ
 arts were-devised or were-wrought but as from
 παλαιᾶς ἱστορίας ἐν ἀπορρήτοις λόγοις γεγραμμένον
 (an)-ancient history in secret writings written
 εὑρίσκομεν, ἡνίκα ὁ θεὸς βασιλέα ἐποίησε Κωνσταντῖνον
 we-find when — God emperor made Constantine
 ἐκεῖνον τὸν μέγαν τὸν πρῶτον Χριστιανὸν βασιλεύσαντα,
 that the great the first Christian having-reigned
 δι' ἀγγέλου αὐτῷ τὰς τοιαύτας στολὰς ἐξαπέστειλεν
 through (an)-angel to-him the such robes he-sent
 καὶ τὰ στέμματα ἃ παρ' ἡμῶν καμελαύκια λέγεται, καὶ
 and the diadems which by us kamelaukia are-called and
 διωρίσατο αὐτῷ θεῖναι ταῦτα ἐν τῇ μεγάλῃ τοῦ θεοῦ ἀγία
 ordained him to-lay these in the great — of-God holy
 ἐκκλησίᾳ ἧτις ἐπ' ὀνόματι αὐτῆς ἐνυποστάτου σοφίας
 church which in name of-the-very hypostatic wisdom
 θεοῦ ἀγία σοφία κατονομάζεται, καὶ μὴ καθ' ἐκάστην αὐτὰ
 of-God holy wisdom is-named and not by each(-day) them
 ἀμφιέννυσθαι, ἀλλ' ὅτε δημοτελὴς καὶ μεγάλη τυγχάνη
 to-put-on but when public and great happens

δεσποτικῇ ἑορτῇ. διὸ δὴ θεοῦ προστάγματι ταῦτα
 (a)-dominical feast therefore indeed of-God by-(the)-command these
 ἀπέθετο, ἅτινα καὶ ἄνωθεν τῆς ἁγίας τραπέζης ἐν τῷ
 he-laid-up which also above the holy table in the
 θυσιαστηρίῳ τοῦ αὐτοῦ ναοῦ ἀποκρέματα καὶ εἰς κόσμον
 sanctuary of-the same temple hang and for adornment
 τῆς ἐκκλησίας καθέστηκεν. τὰ δὲ λοιπὰ ἱμάτια καὶ σαγία
 of-the church have-been-set the and other garments and mantles
 βασιλικά τῆς ἱερᾶς ταύτης τραπέζης ἄνωθεν ἐπικεινται
 imperial of-the holy this table above lie
 ἐφαπλούμενα. ἡνίκα δὲ καταλάβῃ τοῦ κυρίου ἡμῶν καὶ
 spread-out when and arrives of-the Lord our and
 θεοῦ Ἰησοῦ Χριστοῦ ἑορτῇ, ἀναλαμβάνεται τε ἐκ τοιούτων
 God Jesus Christ (a)-feast takes both from such
 στολῶν καὶ στεμμάτων τὰ πρὸς τὸν καιρὸν ἐπιτήδεια
 robes and diadems the(-ones) for the season suitable
 καὶ ἀρμόζοντα ὁ πατριάρχης καὶ ἀποστέλλει πρὸς τὸν
 and fitting the patriarch and sends to the
 βασιλέα, καὶ ἀμφιέννυται αὐτὰ ἐκεῖνος ὡς ὑπηρέτης θεοῦ
 emperor and puts-on them he as servant of-God
 καὶ διάκονος ἐν τῇ προελεύσει καὶ μόνον, καὶ πάλιν
 and deacon in the procession and only and again
 μετὰ τὴν χρεῖαν ἀντιστρέφει αὐτὰ πρὸς τὴν ἐκκλησίαν,
 after the use he-returns them to the church
 καὶ ἀπόκειται ἐν αὐτῇ. ἀλλὰ καὶ κατάρα τοῦ ἁγίου καὶ
 and they-are-laid-up in it but also (a)-curse of-the holy and
 μεγάλου Κωνσταντίνου ἔστιν ἐν τῇ ἁγίᾳ ταύτῃ τραπέζῃ
 great Constantine is on the holy this table
 τῆς τοῦ θεοῦ ἐκκλησίας ἐγγεγραμμένη, καθὼς αὐτῷ ὁ θεὸς
 of-the — of-God church inscribed as him — God
 διὰ τοῦ ἀγγέλου διωρίσατο, ἵνα ἔαν βουληθῇ βασιλεὺς
 through the angel ordained that if wishes (an)-emperor

διά τινὰ χρείαν ἢ περίστασιν ἢ ἐπιθυμίαν ἄκαιρον ἐξ
because-of some need or circumstance or desire untimely from
 αὐτῶν ἐπᾶραι καὶ ἢ αὐτὸς καταχρήσασθαι ἢ ἑτέροις
them to-take-up and either himself to-make-use or to-others
 χαρίσασθαι, ὥς πολέμιος καὶ τῶν τοῦ θεοῦ προσταγμάτων
to-give(-them) as (an)-enemy and of-the — of-God commands
 ἐχθρὸς ἀναθεματίζεται καὶ τῆς ἐκκλησίας ἀποκηρύττεται.
foe he-be-anathematized and from-the church be-proclaimed-outcast
 εἰ δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς ἕτερα ὅμοια καμεῖν βουληθῇ, ἵνα καὶ
if and also be other like-ones to-make wishes that also
 αὐτὰ ἢ τοῦ θεοῦ ἐκκλησία ἀναλαμβάνηται, τῶν ἀρχιερέων
them the — of-God church may-take-up of-the high-priests
 πάντων εἰς ταῦτα παρρησιαζομένων καὶ τῆς συγκλήτου· καὶ
all to these being-outspoken and of-the senate and
 μὴ ἔχειν ἐξουσίαν μήτε τὸν βασιλέα μήτε τὸν πατριάρχην
not to-have authority neither the emperor nor the patriarch
 μήτε ἕτερόν τινα τὰς τοιαύτας ἀναλαμβάνεσθαι στολὰς
nor other anyone the such to-take-up robes
 ἢ τὰ στέμματα ἀπὸ τῆς ἁγίας τοῦ θεοῦ ἐκκλησίας.
or the diadems from the holy — of-God church
 καὶ φόβος μέγας ἐπήρτηται τοῖς βουλομένοις ἀνατρέπειν
and fear great hangs-over those wishing to-overturn
 τι τῶν τοιούτων θεϊκῶν διατάξεων· εἰς γὰρ τις τῶν
any of-the such divine ordinances one for certain of-the
 βασιλέων, Λέων ὀνόματι, ὃς καὶ ἀπὸ Χαζαρίας γυναικα
emperors Leo by-name who also from Khazaria (a)-wife
 ἡγάγετο, ἀβούλῳ τόλμῃ χρησάμενος ἐν τῶν τοιούτων
took ill-advised daring having-used one of-the such
 ἀνελάβετο στεμμάτων δεσποτικῆς μὴ παρούσης ἐορτῆς,
took diadems dominical not being-present (a)-feast
 καὶ δίχα γνώμης τοῦ πατριάρχου τοῦτο περιεβάλετο, καὶ
and without (the)-consent of-the patriarch this put-on and

εὐθέως ἄνθρακα ἐπὶ τοῦ μετώπου ἐκβαλὼν καὶ ταῖς
at-once (a)-carbuncle on the forehead having-broken-out and by-the
 ἐκ τούτου ὀδύναις κατατρυχόμενος κακινκάκως ἀπέρρηξε
from this pains being-worn-out wretchedly he-broke-off
 τὸ ζῆν καὶ πρὸ καιροῦ τὸν θάνατον ἐπεσπάσατο. καὶ
the to-live and before (his)-time the death drew-on-himself and
 τοῦ τοιούτου συντόμως ἐκδικηθέντος τολμήματος ἔκτοτε
the such swiftly having-been-avenged daring from-then
 τύπος ἐγένετο ὥστε ἐν τῷ μέλλειν στέφεσθαι τὸν βασιλέα
(a)-rule came-about so-that in the to-be-about to-be-crowned the emperor
 πρότερον ὀμνύνει καὶ ἀσφαλίζεισθαι ὅτι οὐδὲν ἐναντίον τῶν
first to-swear and to-give-assurance that nothing contrary-to the
 προστεταγμένων καὶ ἐκ παλαιοῦ φυλαττομένων τολμήσῃ
commanded-things and from of-old kept he-will-dare
 ποιήσῃ ἢ ἐννοήσασθαι, καὶ οὕτως ὑπὸ τοῦ πατριάρχου
to-do or to-think and thus by the patriarch
 στέφεσθαι καὶ τὰ ἀρμόζοντα τῇ καθεστώσῃ ἐορτῇ
to-be-crowned and the(-things) fitting to-the established feast
 ἐπιτελεῖν τε καὶ διαπράττεσθαι.

Ὡσαύτως χρή σε καὶ περὶ τοῦ ὕγρου πυρὸς τοῦ
likewise (it)-is-needful you also concerning the liquid fire the(-one)
 διὰ τῶν σιφώνων ἐκφερομένου μεριμνᾶν τε καὶ μελετᾶν,
through the siphons discharged to-take-thought both and to-study
 ὥς εἴπερ ποτὲ τολμήσωσί τινες καὶ αὐτὸ ἐπιζητῆσαι,
so-that if ever dare some also it to-ask-for
 καθὼς καὶ παρ' ἡμῶν πολλάκις ἐζήτησαν, τοιούτοις αὐτοὺς
as also from us often they-have-asked with-such them
 ἔχουσιν ἀποκροῦεσθαι καὶ ἀποπέμπεσθαι ῥήμασιν,
you-may-be-able to-repulse and to-send-away words
 ὅτι καὶ αὐτὸ δι' ἀγγέλου τῷ μεγάλῳ καὶ πρώτῳ
that also it through (an)-angel to-the great and first

βασιλεῖ Χριστιανῶ ἁγίῳ Κωνσταντίνῳ ἐφανερώθη καὶ
emperor Christian holy Constantine was-revealed and
 ἐδιδάχθη, παραγγελίας δὲ μεγάλας καὶ περὶ τούτου
was-taught commands and great also concerning this
 παρὰ τοῦ αὐτοῦ ἀγγέλου ἐδέξατο, ὡς παρὰ πατέρων καὶ
from the same angel he-received as from fathers and
 πάππων πιστωθέντες πληροφορούμεθα, ἵνα ἐν μόνοις
grandfathers having-been-assured we-are-informed that among only
 τοῖς Χριστιανοῖς καὶ τῇ ὑπ' αὐτῶν βασιλευμένῃ πόλει
the Christians and in-the by them ruled city
 κατασκευάζεται, ἀλλαχοῦ δὲ μηδαμῶς, μήτε εἰς ἕτερον
it-may-be-made elsewhere and in-no-way neither to other
 ἔθνος τὸ οἶον δῆποτε παραπέμπηται μήτε διδάσκηται.
nation the what-kind soever may-be-transmitted nor may-be-taught
 ὅθεν καὶ τοῖς μετ' αὐτὸν ὁ μέγας οὗτος βασιλεὺς
whence also to-those after him the great this emperor
 ἐξασφαλιζόμενος περὶ τούτου ἐν τῇ ἁγίᾳ τραπέζῃ τῆς
making-sure concerning this on the holy table of-the
 τοῦ θεοῦ ἐκκλησίας ἀρὰς ἐγγραφῆναι πεποίηκεν, ἵνα ὁ
— of-God church curses to-be-inscribed caused that the(-one)
 ἐκ τοῦ τοιούτου πυρὸς εἰς ἕτερον ἔθνος δοῦναι τολμήσας
of the such fire to other nation to-give having-dared
 μήτε Χριστιανὸς ὀνομάζεται μήτε ἀξίας τινὸς ἢ ἀρχῆς
neither Christian be-named nor of-dignity any or of-office
 ἀξιούται, ἀλλ' εἴ τινα καὶ ἔχων τύχῃ, καὶ ἀπὸ ταύτης
be-deemed-worthy but if any also having be-happens also from this
 ἐκβάλληται καὶ εἰς αἰῶνα αἰώνων ἀναθεματίζεται καὶ
be-cast-out and to (the)-age of-ages be-anathematized and
 παραδειγματίζεται, εἴτε βασιλεὺς εἴτε πατριάρχης εἴτε τις
be-made-an-example whether emperor or patriarch or some
 ἄλλος οἷος οὖν ἄνθρωπος εἴτε ἄρχων εἴτε ἀρχόμενος
other whatever soever man whether ruler or ruled

τυγχάνοι ὁ τὴν τοιαύτην ἐντολὴν παραβαίνειν
may-happen-to-be the(-one) the such command to-transgress
 πειρώμενος. καὶ προυτρέψατο πάντας τοὺς ζῆλον καὶ
attempting and he-exhorted all those zeal and
 φόβον θεοῦ ἔχοντας ὡς κοινὸν ἐχθρὸν καὶ παραβάτην
fear of-God having as (a)-common enemy and transgressor
 τῆς μεγάλης ταύτης ἐντολῆς τὸν τοιοῦτο ἐπιχειροῦντα
of-the great this command the(-one) such-a-thing attempting
 ποιεῖν ἀναιρεῖν σπουδάζειν καὶ ἐκτίστω τῷ χαλεπῷ
to-do to-destroy to-be-eager and to-most-hateful the hard
 παραπέμπεσθαι θανάτῳ. συνέβη δέ ποτε τῆς κακίας ἀεὶ
to-be-sent death it-happened and once the wickedness always
 χώραν εὐρισκούσης τινὰ τῶν ἡμετέρων στρατηγῶν,
room finding (a)-certain(-one) of-the our generals
 δῶρα παρὰ τινων ἐθνικῶν πάμπολλα εἰληφότα, μεταδοῦναι
gifts from certain heathens very-many having-received to-share
 αὐτοῖς ἐκ τοῦ τοιούτου πυρός, καὶ μὴ ἀνεχομένου τοῦ
with-them from the such fire and not enduring —
 θεοῦ ἀνεκδίκητον καταλιπεῖν τὴν παράβασιν, ἐν τῷ μέλλειν
God unavenged to-leave the transgression in the to-be-about
 αὐτὸν ἐν τῇ ἀγίᾳ τοῦ θεοῦ εἰσιέναι ἐκκλησίᾳ πῦρ ἐκ τοῦ
him into the holy — of-God to-go church fire from the
 οὐρανοῦ κατελθὼν τοῦτον κατέφαγε καὶ ἀνήλωσεν. καὶ
heaven having-come-down him devoured and consumed and
 ἀπὸ τότε φόβος μέγας καὶ τρόμος ἐν ταῖς ἀπάντων ἐνετέθη
from then fear great and trembling in the of-all was-put
 ψυχαῖς, καὶ οὐκέτι οὐδεὶς τοῦ λοιποῦ, οὔτε βασιλεὺς
souls and no-longer anyone for-the rest(-of-time) neither emperor
 οὔτε ἄρχων, οὔτε ἰδιώτης οὔτε στρατηγός, οὔτε οἶος
nor ruler nor private-man nor general nor whatever

οὐν ὅλως ἄνθρωπος κατετόλμησέ τι τοιοῦτον ἐνθυμηθῆναι,
then at-all man dared any such-thing to-consider
 μήτι γε καὶ ἔργῳ ἐπιχειρῆσαι ποιῆσαι ἢ διαπράξασθαι.
much-less even also in-deed to-attempt to-do or to-accomplish
 Ἄλλ' ἄγε δὴ μετάβηθι, καὶ πρὸς ἕτερον εἶδος αἰτήσεως
but come indeed pass-over also to another kind of-request
 παραλόγου καὶ ἀπρεποῦς εὐπρεπεῖς καὶ ἀρμόζοντας λόγους
unreasonable and unseemly seemly and fitting words
 ἀναζήτη καὶ ἀναμάνθανε. εἰ γάρ ποτε ἔθνος τι ἀπὸ τῶν
seek-out and learn if for ever nation some from the
 ἀπίστων τούτων καὶ ἀτίμων βορείων γενῶν αἰτήσεται
faithless these and dishonorable northern races ask
 συμπενθεριάσαι μετὰ τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων καὶ ἢ
to-ally-by-marriage with the emperor of-(the)-Romans and either
 θυγατέρα αὐτοῦ εἰς νύμφην λαβεῖν ἢ ἐπιδοῦναι οἰκείαν
(a)-daughter his for (a)-bride to-take or to-give own
 θυγατέρα ἢ γυναῖκα χρηματίσαι βασιλέως ἢ βασιλέως
daughter or wife to-become of-(an)-emperor or of-(an)-emperor's
 υἱοῦ, χρή σε τοιούτοις ῥήμασι καὶ τὴν τοιαύτην αὐτῶν
son (it)-is-needful you with-such words also the such their
 παράλογον ἀποκρούσασθαι αἴτησιν, λέγοντα ὅτι καὶ περὶ
unreasonable to-repulse request saying that also concerning
 ταύτης τῆς ὑποθέσεως παραγγελία καὶ διάταξις φοβερὰ
this the matter (a)-charge and ordinance fearful
 καὶ ἀπαραποίητος τοῦ μεγάλου καὶ ἀγίου Κωνσταντίνου
and unalterable of-the great and holy Constantine
 ἐναπογέγραπται ἐν τῇ ἱερᾷ τραπέζῃ τῆς καθολικῆς
is-inscribed on the holy table of-the catholic
 τῶν Χριστιανῶν ἐκκλησίας τῆς ἁγίας σοφίας, τοῦ
of-the Christians church of-the holy wisdom of-the
 μηδέποτε βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων συμπενθεριάσαι μετὰ ἔθνους
never (an)-emperor of-(the)-Romans to-ally-by-marriage with (a)-nation

παρηλλαγμένοις καὶ ξένοις ἔθεσι χρωμένου τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς
 altered and foreign customs using from-the Roman
 καταστάσεως, μάλιστα δὲ ἀλλοπίστου καὶ ἀβαπτίστου,
 order especially and of-other-faith and unbaptized
 εἰ μὴ μετὰ μόνων τῶν Φράγγων· τούτους γὰρ μόνους
 if not with only the Franks these for alone
 ὑπεξείλετο ὁ μέγας ἐκεῖνος ἀνὴρ Κωνσταντῖνος ὁ ἅγιος,
 he-excepted the great that man Constantine the holy
 ὅτι καὶ αὐτὸς τὴν γένεσιν ἀπὸ τῶν τοιούτων ἔσχε μερῶν
 because also he the origin from the such had parts
 ὡς συγγενείας καὶ ἐπιμιξίας πολλῆς τυγχανούσης Φράγγοις
 as kinship and intermixture much happening to-Franks
 τε καὶ Ῥωμαίους· καὶ διὰ τοῦτο μετὰ τούτων μόνων
 both and to-(the)-Romans and because-of this with these only
 προτρέψατο συνιστῶν γαμικὰ συναλλάγια τοὺς βασιλεῖς
 he-exhorted establishing marriage contracts the emperors
 Ῥωμαίων διὰ τὴν ἄνωθεν τῶν μερῶν ἐκείνων καὶ
 of-(the)-Romans because-of the from-of-old of-the parts those and
 γενῶν περιφάνειαν καὶ εὐγένειαν, μετ' ἄλλου δὲ τοῦ οἴου
 races renown and noble-birth with other and the what-kind
 δήποτε ἔθνους μὴ δυναμένους τοῦτο ποιεῖν, ἀλλ' ὁ
 soever nation not being-able this to-do but the(-one)
 τοῦτο ποιῆσαι τολμήσας ἵνα ὡς παραβάτης πατρικῶν
 this to-do having-dared that as transgressor of-ancestral
 εἰσηγήσεων καὶ βασιλείων θεσμῶν ἀλλότριος κρίνοιτο τῶν
 injunctions and of-imperial laws alien he-be-judged from-the
 Χριστιανῶν καταλόγων καὶ τῷ ἀναθέματι παραδίδοιτο.
 Christian rolls and to-the anathema be-banded-over
 ὁ δὲ προμνημονευθεὶς Λέων ἐκεῖνος ὁ βασιλεὺς, ὁ
 the and before-mentioned Leo that the emperor the(-one)
 καὶ τὸ στέμμα, καθὼς ἀνωτέρω προεῖρηται, παρανόμως
 also the diadem as above has-been-said-before unlawfully

καὶ τολμηρῶς ἀπὸ τῆς ἐκκλησίας δίχα γνώμης τοῦ τότε
and daringly from the church without (the)-consent of-the then
 πατριαρχεύοντος λαβὼν καὶ περιθέμενος καὶ τὴν δίκην
being-patriarch having-taken and having-put-on and the penalty
 συντόμως δοὺς ἀξίαν τῆς αὐτοῦ πονηρᾶς ἐγχειρήσεως,
swiftly having-paid worthy of-the his wicked attempt
 ἐτόλμησε καὶ τὴν τοιαύτην ἐντολὴν τοῦ ἁγίου βασιλέως
dared also the such command of-the holy emperor
 ἐκεῖνου, ἥτις, ὡς ἤδη δεδήλωται, ἐν τῇ ἁγία τραπέζῃ
that which as already has-been-shown on the holy table
 ἀναγεγραμμένη καθέστηκεν, παρὰ φαῦλον θέσθαι καὶ ὡς
inscribed stands as worthless to-set and as
 μηδὲν λογίσασθαι, καὶ ὡς ἅπαξ ἔξω τοῦ θεοῦ φόβου καὶ
nothing to-reckon and as once outside of-the divine fear and
 τῶν ἐντολῶν αὐτοῦ πεποιήκεν ἑαυτόν, συνεστήσατο καὶ
of-the commands his he-has-made himself contracted also
 μετὰ τοῦ χαγάνου Χαζαρίας γαμικὸν συναλλάγιον, καὶ τὴν
with the chagan of-Khazaria (a)-marriage contract and the
 θυγατέρα αὐτοῦ εἰς γυναῖκα ἐδέξατο, καὶ μέγα ἐκ τούτου
daughter his for wife received and great from this
 ὄνειδος καὶ τῇ Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῇ καὶ ἑαυτῷ προσετρίψατο
reproach both on-the of-(the)-Romans rule and on-himself be-brought
 ὡς τὰ προγονικὰ παραγγέλματα ἀκυρώσας καὶ παρ' οὐδὲν
as the ancestral precepts having-annulled and at nothing
 λογισάμενος. πλὴν οὐδὲ ὀρθόδοξος Χριστιανὸς ἦν ἐκεῖνος,
having-reckoned however not-even orthodox Christian was that-man
 ἀλλ' αἰρετικὸς καὶ εἰκονομάχος. διὸ χάριν τῶν
but (a)-heretic and iconoclast therefore for-the-sake-of the
 τοιούτων αὐτοῦ παρανόμων ἀσεβημάτων ἐν τῇ τοῦ θεοῦ
such his lawless impieties in the — of-God
 ἐκκλησίᾳ διηνεκῶς ἀποκηρύττεται καὶ ἀναθεματίζεται ὡς
church continually be-is-proclaimed-outcast and is-anathematized as

καὶ τῆς τοῦ θεοῦ καὶ τῆς τοῦ ἁγίου καὶ μεγάλου βασιλέως
both of-the — of-God and of-the of-the holy and great emperor
 Κωνσταντίνου διατάξεως παραβάτης καὶ ἀνατροπέως. πῶς
Constantine ordinance transgressor and overturner how
 γάρ ἐστι τῶν ἐνδεχομένων Χριστιανούς μετὰ ἀπίστων
for is-it of-the possible-things (for)-Christians with unbelievers
 γαμικὰς κοινωνίας ποιεῖν καὶ συμπενθεριάζειν, τοῦ κανόνος
marriage partnerships to-make and to-ally-by-marriage the canon
 τοῦτο κωλύοντος καὶ τῆς ἐκκλησίας ἀπάσης ἀλλότριον
this forbidding and the church whole alien
 αὐτὸ λογιζομένης καὶ ἔξω τῆς Χριστιανικῆς καταστάσεως;
it reckoning and outside of-the Christian order
 ἢ τίς τῶν ἐγκρίτων καὶ εὐγενῶν καὶ σοφῶν βασιλέων
or who of-the eminent and noble and wise emperors
 Ῥωμαίων κατεδέξατο; εἰ δὲ ἀντίπωσιν, πῶς ὁ κύριος
of-(the)-Romans accepted(-it) if and they-object how the lord
 Ῥωμανὸς ὁ βασιλεὺς μετὰ Βουλγάρων συνεπενθερίασεν
Romanos the emperor with Bulgarians allied-by-marriage
 καὶ τὴν ἰδίαν ἐκγόνην δέδωκεν τῷ κυρίῳ Πέτρῳ τῷ
and the own granddaughter gave to-the lord Peter the
 Βουλγάρῳ, δεῖ ἀπολογήσασθαι ὅτι ὁ κύριος Ῥωμανὸς
Bulgarian (one)-must reply that the lord Romanos
 ὁ βασιλεὺς ἰδιώτης καὶ ἀγράμματος ἄνθρωπος ἦν,
the emperor (a)-private-man and unlettered man was
 καὶ οὔτε τῶν ἄνωθεν ἐν βασιλείοις τετραμμένων οὔτε
and neither of-those from-of-old in palaces brought-up nor
 τῶν παρηκολουθηκότων ἐξ ἀρχῆς τοῖς Ῥωμαϊκοῖς
of-those having-followed from (the)-beginning the Roman
 ἔθισμοις οὔτε ἀπὸ γένους βασιλείου καὶ εὐγενοῦς, καὶ
customs nor from race imperial and noble and
 διὰ τοῦτο αὐθαδέστερον καὶ ἑξουσιαστικώτερον τὰ
because-of this more-willfully and more-high-bandedly the

πολλὰ κατεπράττετο, καὶ ἐν τούτῳ οὔτε τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ
many-things he-did and in this neither the church
 ἀπαγορευούσῃ ὑπήκουσεν οὔτε τῇ ἐντολῇ καὶ διαταγῇ τοῦ
forbidding he-obeyed nor the command and ordinance of-the
 μεγάλου Κωνσταντίνου κατηκολούθησεν, ἀλλ' ἐκ γνώμης
great Constantine he-followed but from (a)-mind
 αὐθάδους καὶ αὐτοβούλου καὶ τῶν καλῶν ἀμαθοῦς καὶ
willful and self-willed and of-the good-things ignorant and
 μὴ βουλομένης ἔπεσθαι τῷ πρέποντι καὶ καλῷ μηδὲ
not wishing to-follow the becoming and good nor
 ταῖς πατροπαραδότοις στοιχεῖν διατάξεσι τοῦτο ποιῆσαι
the ancestral to-keep-to ordinances this to-do
 τετόλμηκεν, ταύτην μόνην εὐλογον δηλονότι προβαλλόμενος
has-dared this alone reasonable evidently putting-forward
 πρόφασιν, τοσοῦτον πλῆθος αἰχμαλώτων Χριστιανῶν διὰ
pretext so-great (a)-multitude of-captives Christian through
 τῆς τοιαύτης πράξεως ἀναρρῦεσθαι, καὶ τὸ Χριστιανὸς
the such action to-ransom and the Christians
 εἶναι καὶ τοὺς Βουλγάρους ὁμοπίστους ἡμῶν, ἄλλως τε
to-be also the Bulgarians of-one-faith with-us especially —
 καὶ ὅτι οὐδὲ αὐτοκράτορος καὶ ἐνθέσμου βασιλέως
also because not-even of-(an)-autocrat and lawful emperor
 θυγάτηρ ἢ ἐκδιδομένη ἐτύγχανεν, ἀλλὰ τρίτου καὶ
(a)-daughter the(-one) given-in-marriage happened-to-be but of-(a)-third and
 ἐσχάτου καὶ ἔτι ὑποχειρίου καὶ μηδεμίαν ἐξουσίαν ἐν τοῖς
last and still subordinate and no authority in the
 τῆς ἀρχῆς μετέχοντος πράγμασι καὶ οὐδὲν διέφερεν τὸ
of-the rule sharing affairs and nothing differed the
 τοιοῦτον τοῦ καὶ ἄλλην τινα τῶν βασιλικῶν συγγενίδων
such-thing from-the also other some of-the imperial kinswomen
 τῶν πορρωτέρω τε καὶ ἐγγὺς τῆς βασιλείας εὐγενείας
of-the more-remote both and near of-the imperial nobility

τυγχανουσῶν, καὶ διὰ τινὰ κοινωφελῇ δουλείαν, καὶ
happening-to-be and because-of some common-good service and
 τοῦ ἐσχάτου καὶ μηδὲν σχεδὸν ἔξουσιάζοντος. ἐπεὶ ἔξω
of-the last and nothing almost having-authority since outside
 τοῦ κανόνος καὶ τῆς ἐκκλησιαστικῆς παραδόσεως καὶ τῆς
of-the canon and of-the ecclesiastical tradition and of-the
 τοῦ μεγάλου ἁγίου βασιλέως Κωνσταντίνου διαταγῆς τε
of-the great holy emperor Constantine ordinance both
 καὶ ἐντολῆς τοῦτο πεποίηκεν, πολλὰ καὶ ζῶν ὠνειδίσθη
and command this he-did many-things also living was-reproached
 ὁ προρρηθεὶς κύρις Ῥωμανὸς καὶ διεβλήθη καὶ ἐμισήθη
the aforesaid lord Romanos and was-slandered and was-hated
 παρά τε τῆς συγκλήτου βουλῆς καὶ τοῦ δήμου παντὸς
by both the senatorial council and the people all
 καὶ τῆς ἐκκλησίας αὐτῆς, ὥς καὶ τὸ μῖσος ἐπὶ τοῦ
and the church itself so-that also the hatred at the
 τέλους γενέσθαι καταφανές, καὶ μετὰ θάνατον ὁμοίως
end to-become evident and after death likewise
 ἔξουθενεῖται καὶ διαβάλλεται καὶ ὑπὸ καταγνώμην τίθεται
he-is-despised and is-slandered and under condemnation is-placed
 καὶ οὗτος, ἀνάξιον πρᾶγμα καὶ ἀπρεπὲς εἰς τὴν εὐγενῇ
and this unworthy thing and unseemly into the noble
 πολιτείαν Ῥωμαίων καινοτομήσας. ἕκαστον γὰρ ἔθνος
polity of-(the)-Romans having-innovated each for nation
 διάφορα ἔχον ἔθνη καὶ διαλλάττοντας νόμους τε καὶ
different having customs and differing laws both and
 θεσμοὺς ὀφείλει τὰ οἰκεία κρατεῖν καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτοῦ
ordinances ought the(-things) own to-bold and from the same
 ἔθνους τὰς πρὸς ἀνάκρισιν βίου κοινωνίας ποιεῖσθαι καὶ
nation the for union of-life partnerships to-make and
 ἐνεργεῖν. ὥσπερ γὰρ ἕκαστον ζῶον μετὰ τῶν ὁμογενῶν
to-effect as for each animal with the same-kind

τὰς μίξεις ἐργάζεται, οὕτω καὶ ἕκαστον ἔθνος οὐκ ἐξ
the matings performs so also each nation not from
 ἀλλοφύλων καὶ ἀλλογλώσσων ἀλλ' ἐκ τῶν ὁμογενῶν
other-tribes and other-tongues but from the same-kind
 τε καὶ ὁμοφώνων τὰ συνουκίεσσι τῶν γάμων ποιεῖσθαι
both and same-speaking the cohabitations of-the marriages to-make
 καθέστηκε δίκαιον. ἐντεῦθεν γὰρ καὶ ἡ πρὸς ἀλλήλους
has-become just from-this for both the toward each-other
 ὁμοφροσύνη καὶ συνομιλία καὶ προσφιλεῖς συνδιατριβὴ καὶ
concord and converse and friendly association and
 συμβίωσις περιγίνεσθαι πέφυκε· τὰ δὲ ἀλλότρια ἔθνη καὶ
living-together to-arise is-wont the and alien customs and
 διαλλάττοντα νόμιμα ἀπεχθείας μᾶλλον καὶ προσκρούσεις
differing usages enmities rather and offenses
 καὶ μίση καὶ στάσεις εἶωθεν ἀπογεννᾶν, ἅπερ οὐ
and hatreds and seditions are-accustomed to-beget which not
 φιλίας καὶ κοινωνίας ἀλλ' ἔχθρας καὶ διαστάσεις φιλεῖ
friendships and fellowships but enmities and divisions are-wont
 ἀπεργάζεσθαι. καὶ ὅτι μὴ δεῖ τὰ κακῶς παρὰ
to-produce and that not (one)-must the(-things) badly by
 τινῶν ἐξ ἀμαθείας ἢ αὐθαδείας καταπραχθέντα τοὺς
some from ignorance or willfulness done those
 ἐννόμως ἄρχειν βουλομένους μιμεῖσθαι τε καὶ ζηλοῦν,
lawfully to-rule wishing to-imitate both and to-emulate
 ἀλλὰ τῶν ἐννόμως καὶ δικαίως βεβασιλευκότων τὰς
but of-those lawfully and justly having-reigned the
 ἀοιδίμους πράξεις ἔχειν ὡς εἰκόνας ἀγαθὰς εἰς παράδειγμα
famous deeds to-have as images good for (an)-example
 προκειμένας μιμήσεως, καὶ κατ' ἐκείνας πειρᾶσθαι καὶ
set-before of-imitation and according-to those to-try also
 αὐτὸν ἀπευθύνειν πάντα τὰ παρ' αὐτοῦ ἐνεργούμενα,
himself to-direct all the(-things) by him being-done

ἐπεὶ καὶ τὸ διὰ τὰς τοιαύτας αὐτοβούλους πράξεις αὐτοῦ
since also the because-of the such self-willed deeds his
 ἐπελθὼν αὐτῷ τέλος, φημὶ δὲ τῷ κυρῷ Ῥωμανῷ,
having-come-upon him end I-mean and to-the lord Romanos
 ἱκανὸν ἔστι πρὸς σωφρονισμὸν παράδειγμα τῷ
sufficient is for correction (an)-example to-the(-one)
 βουλομένῳ τὰ κακῶς παρ' ἐκείνουπραχθέντα ζηλοῦν.
wishing the(-things) badly by that-man done to-emulate
 Χρεὼν δὲ μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων καὶ ταῦτά σε γινώσκειν,
(it)-is-needful and with the other-things also these(-things) you to-know
 υἱὲ πολυέραστε, ἅτε τῆς τούτων γνώσεως μεγάλως σοι
son much-loved since the of-these knowledge greatly to-you
 συμβαλέσθαι δυναμένης καὶ θαυμαστότερον ἀποδείξει.
to-contribute being-able and more-admirable to-show(-you)
 τὰ δέ ἐστι περὶ διαφορᾶς πάλιν ἐτέρων ἐθνῶν,
the(-things) and are concerning (the)-difference again of-other nations
 γενεαλογίας τε αὐτῶν καὶ ἔθων καὶ βίου διαγωγῆς, καὶ
genealogy both their and customs and of-life conduct and
 θέσεως καὶ κράσεως τῆς παρ' αὐτῶν κατοικουμένης γῆς,
position and climate of-the by them inhabited land
 καὶ περιηγήσεως αὐτῆς καὶ σταδιασμοῦ, καθὼς ἐξῆς
and description its and measurement as in-order
 πλατύτερον διερμηνεύσεται.
more-broadly will-be-set-out

Mubammad descends from Ishmael. Poor and orphaned, he served the rich widow Khadija as a camel-driver and married her. He learned from Jews and Christians, and when his epilepsy grieved her he claimed to see the angel Gabriel; an Arian monk vouched for him. She proclaimed him a prophet, the deceit reached Abu Bakr, and she died leaving him rich. His heresy held Yathrib; he taught that whoever kills an enemy or is killed enters paradise, and his followers pray to Aphrodite's star, Koubar.

περὶ τῆς γενεαλογίας τοῦ Μουχούμετ.

concerning the genealogy — of-Mubammad

Γενεαλογῆται ὁ δυσσεβὴς καὶ ἀκάθαρτος Μουχούμετ, ὃν
is-traced the impious and unclean Mubammad whom

λέγουσιν οἱ Σαρακηνοὶ προφῆτην αὐτῶν εἶναι, ἐκ φυλῆς
say the Saracens prophet their to-be from (a)-tribe

γενικωτάτης Ἰσμαὴλ υἱοῦ Ἀβραὰμ καταγόμενον. Ζηναρὸς
most-general of-Ishmael son of-Abraham descended Zenaros

γὰρ ὁ τοῦ Ἰσμαὴλ ἀπόγονος πατὴρ αὐτῶν ἀναγορεύεται
for the — of-Ishmael descendant father their is-proclaimed

πάντων. οὗτος οὖν γεννᾷ υἱοὺς δύο, Μούνδαρον καὶ Ῥαβείαν.
of-all this-man then begets sons two Moundaros and Rabeias

ὁ δὲ Μούνδαρος τίκει Κούσαρον καὶ Κάϊσον καὶ Θυμίμην
— and Moundaros begets Kousaros and Kaïsos and Thymimes

καὶ Ἀσανδον καὶ ἄλλους τινὰς ἀνωνύμους, οἱ καὶ τὴν
and Asandos and others some unnamed who also the

Μαδιανίτιν ἔρημον κληρωσάμενοι ἐκτηνοτρόφουν, ἐν σκηναῖς
Midianite desert having-been-allotted kept-flocks in tents

κατοικοῦντες. εἰσὶ δὲ καὶ ἐνδότεροι τούτων, οὐκ ἐκ τῆς
dwelling there-are and also further-inland of-these not from the

φυλῆς αὐτῶν ἀλλὰ τοῦ Ἰεκτᾶν, οἱ λεγόμενοι Ὅμηρεῖται,
tribe their but — of-Joktan those called Homerites

τουτέστιν Ἀμανῖται. ἀναδείκνυται δὲ οὕτως. ἀπόρου
that-is Amanites he-is-shown-forth and thus without-means
 ὄντος αὐτοῦ τοῦ Μουχούμετ καὶ ὀρφανοῦ, ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ
being him — Muhammad and (an)-orphan it-seemed to-him
 μισθοδοτήσασθαι γυναικί τινι πλουσίᾳ καὶ συγγενεῖ αὐτοῦ,
to-hire-himself to-(a)-woman certain rich and kinswoman his
 καλουμένη Χαδίγια, πρὸς τὸ καμηλεύειν καὶ πραγματεύεσθαι
called Khadija for the to-drive-camels and to-trade
 ἐν Αἰγύπτῳ μετὰ τῶν ἀλλοφύλων καὶ ἐν Παλαιστίνῃ.
in Egypt among the foreigners and in Palestine
 εἶτα κατὰ μικρὸν παρρησιασάμενος καὶ ὑπελθὼν τῇ
then by little becoming-bold and having-crept-in to-the
 γυναικὶ χήρᾳ οὔσῃ λαμβάνει αὐτὴν εἰς γυναῖκα. καὶ
woman (a)-widow being he-takes her for wife and
 δὴ ἐπιχωριάζων ἐν Παλαιστίνῃ, καὶ συναναστρεφόμενος
indeed staying in Palestine and associating
 Ἰουδαίους τε καὶ Χριστιανοὺς, ἐθηρᾶτο λόγους καὶ
with-Jews both and with-Christians he-hunted-after sayings and
 γραφικὰς λύσεις τινάς. ἔχων δὲ τὸ πάθος τῆς ἐπιληψίας,
scriptural solutions some having and the affliction of-the epilepsy
 ἐλυπείτο σφόδρα ἡ γυνὴ αὐτοῦ ὡς περιφανὴς καὶ πλουσία
was-grieved greatly the wife his as (a)-distinguished and rich(-woman)
 καὶ τῷ τοιούτῳ ἀνδρὶ συναφθεῖσα, οὐ μόνον ἀπόρῳ
also to-the such man joined not only without-means
 ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐπιληπτικῷ· ἦν καὶ τροπωσάμενος φάσκων
but also epileptic whom also having-won-over saying
 ὅτι φοβερὰν ὄπτασίαν ἀγγέλου θεωρῶ Γαβριὴλ ὀνόματι,
that (a)-fearful vision of-(an)-angel I-behold Gabriel by-name
 καὶ μὴ ὑποφέρων αὐτοῦ τὴν θέαν ὀλιγωρῶ καὶ πίπτω,
and not enduring his the sight I-grow-faint and I-fall
 ἐπιστεύθη, συμβιβοδομαρτυροῦντος αὐτῷ Ἀρειανοῦ τινὸς
he-was-believed bearing-false-witness-with him (an)-Arian certain

μοναχοῦ ψευδωνύμου δι' αἰσχροκέρδειαν. καὶ οὕτως ἡ γυνή
monk falsely-named for base-gain and thus the woman
 πλανηθεῖσα καὶ ἄλλαις γυναιξὶν ὁμοφύλοις κηρύξασα
having-been-deceived and to-other women of-the-same-tribe having-proclaimed
 προφήτην αὐτὸν εἶναι, προῆλθε τὸ ψεῦδος τῆς ἀπάτης καὶ
prophet him to-be advanced the lie of-the deceit also
 εἰς ἄνδρα φύλαρχον τοῦνομα Βουβάχαρ. ἡ οὖν γυνή θανοῦσα
to (a)-man (a)-tribal-chief by-name Abu-Bakr the then woman having-died
 καὶ τοῦτον διάδοχον καὶ κληρονόμον καταλείψασα τῶν
and this-man successor and beir having-left of-the(-things)
 ἑαυτῆς, ἐγένετο περιφανὴς καὶ ἄγαν ὑπερούσιος, καὶ κατέσχευ
her-own became distinguished and very wealthy and possessed
 ἡ πονηρὰ πλάνη τε καὶ αἵρεσις αὐτοῦ τὰ μέρη τῆς Αἰθρίβου,
the wicked error both and heresy his the parts — of-Yathrib
 καὶ ἐδίδαξεν οὗτος ὁ παράφρων καὶ πεφνακισμένος τοὺς
and taught this the madman and deluded those
 αὐτῷ πειθομένους ὅτι ὁ φονεύων ἐχθρὸν ἢ ὑπὸ ἐχθροῦ
him obeying that the(-one) killing (an)-enemy or by (an)-enemy
 φονευόμενος εἰς τὸν παράδεισον εἰσέρχεται, καὶ ἄλλα
being-killed into the paradise enters and other(-things)
 ὅσα φλυαρεῖ. προσεύχονται δὲ καὶ εἰς τὸ τῆς Ἀφροδίτης
as-many-as he-babbles they-pray and also to the — of-Aphrodite
 ἄστρον, ὃ καλοῦσι Κουβάρ, καὶ ἀναφωνοῦσιν ἐν τῇ
star which they-call Koubar and cry-out in the
 προσευχῇ αὐτῶν οὕτως “ἀλλὰ οὐὰ κουβάρ,” ὃ ἐστὶν ὁ
prayer their thus alla oua koubar which is —
 θεὸς καὶ Ἀφροδίτη. τὸν γὰρ θεὸν ἀλλὰ προσονομάζουσι, τὸ
God and Aphrodite — for God alla they-name the
 δὲ οὐὰ ἀντὶ τοῦ καὶ συνδέσμου τιθέασιν, καὶ τὸ κουβάρ
and oua instead-of the kai conjunction they-put and the koubar
 καλοῦσι τὸ ἄστρον, καὶ λέγουσιν οὕτως “ἀλλὰ οὐὰ κουβάρ.”
they-call the star and say thus alla oua koubar

The Fatimids descend from Mubammad's daughter Fatima and live north of Mecca. With them Mubammad subdued many cities; a thousand make an army unbeatable. They ride camels and fight unarmored, in rose-colored cloaks, with long spears and huge bows.

περὶ τοῦ γένους τῶν Φατεμῶν.

concerning the race of-the Fatimids

Ἰστέον ὅτι ἡ Φατέμ θυγάτηρ ἦν τοῦ Μουχούμετ καὶ

(one)-must-know that — Fatima daughter was — of-Mubammad and

ἀπ' ἐκείνης γεννῶνται οἱ Φατεμίται. οὐκ εἰσὶ δὲ οὗτοι

from her are-born the Fatimids not are and these

ἐκ τοῦ Φατέμη ἀπὸ τῆς Λιβύης χώρας, ἀλλὰ κατοικοῦσι

from — Fatima from the of-Libya land but they-dwell

πρὸς τὰ βορειότερα μέρη τοῦ Μέκε βαθύτερα τάφου

toward the more-northern parts — of-Mecca further-inland of-(the)-tomb

τοῦ Μουχούμετ. εἰσὶ δὲ ἔθνος Ἀραβικὸν πρὸς πολέμους

— of-Mubammad they-are and (a)-nation Arabian for wars

καὶ μάχας ἀκριβῶς ἐξησκημένον· μετὰ γὰρ τοῦ τοιούτου

and battles thoroughly trained with for the such

γένους ἐπολέμησεν ὁ Μουχούμετ, καὶ πολλὰς πόλεις καὶ

race warred — Mubammad and many cities and

χώρας ἐπόρθησεν καὶ καθυπέταξεν. εἰσὶ γὰρ ἡνδρειωμένοι

lands sacked and subjected they-are for brave

καὶ πολεμισταί, ὅτι εἰ εὔρεθῶσι μέχρι μιᾶς χιλιάδος εἰς

and warlike so-that if they-be-found up-to one thousand in

φοσάτον, τὸ τοιοῦτον φοσάτον ἀήττητον καὶ ἀκαταμάχητον

(an)-army the such army unbeaten and unconquerable

γίνεται. οὐ καβαλλικεύουσι δὲ ἵππους ἀλλὰ καμήλους. ἐν

becomes not they-ride and horses but camels in

δὲ τῷ καιρῷ τοῦ πολέμου οὐκ ἐνδύονται θώρακας οὔτε
and the time of-the war not they-put-on breastplates nor
 κλιβάνια ἀλλὰ περιβόλαια ῥοδωτά, καὶ ἔχουσι δόρατα
corselets but cloaks rose-colored and they-have spears
 μακρὰ καὶ ἀσπίδας ἀνδρομήκεις καὶ τόξα ξύλινα παμμεγέθη,
long and shields man-high and bows wooden huge
 σχεδὸν μὴ δυνάμενα τείνεσθαι παρ' ὀλίγων ἀνδρῶν.
almost not able to-be-drawn by few men

XVI • THE SARACENS' GOING FORTH

From Stephen the mathematician's canon: the Saracens went forth in the twelfth year of Heraclius, in the year of the world 6130, and Muhammad ruled them for nine years.

ἐκ τοῦ κανόνος ὃν ἐθεμάτισεν Στέφανος ὁ μαθηματικὸς
from the canon which drew-up Stephen the mathematician
 περὶ τῆς τῶν Σαρακηνῶν ἐξόδου, ἐν ποίῳ χρόνῳ
concerning the of-the Saracens going-forth in what time
 τῆς τοῦ κόσμου συστάσεως ἐγένετο, καὶ τίς ἦν τότε ὁ
of-the of-the world founding it-happened and who was then the
 βασιλεὺς Ῥωμαίων.

emperor of-(the)-Romans

Ἐξῆλθον οἱ Σαρακηνοὶ μηνὶ Σεπτεμβρίῳ τρίτῃ,
went-forth the Saracens in-(the)-month September (the)-third
 Ἰνδικτιῶνος δεκάτης, εἰς τὸ δωδέκατον ἔτος Ἡρακλείου.
of-(the)-indiction tenth in the twelfth year of-Heraclius
 ἔτος ἀπὸ κτίσεως κόσμου ,ςρλ'. τὸ δὲ θεμάτιν
(the)-year from (the)-creation of-(the)-world 6130 the and establishment
 τῶν αὐτῶν Σαρακηνῶν ἐγένετο εἰς μῆνα Σεπτέμβριον
of-the same Saracens happened in (the)-month September

τρίτην, ἡμέρα πέμπτη. εἰς τοὺς αὐτοὺς χρόνους πρῶτος
(the)-third on-day fifth in the same times (the)-first
 ἀρχηγὸς τῶν Ἀράβων Μουάμεθ, ὃν οἱ Ἄραβες καλοῦσι
chief of-the Arabs Muhammad whom the Arabs call
 Μουχούμετ, ὃ καὶ προφήτης αὐτῶν χρηματίσας,
Muhammad the(-one) also prophet their having-been-styled
 ἐκράτησε τῆς ἀρχῆς τῶν Ἀράβων ἔτη ἑννέα.
held the rule of-the Arabs years nine

XVII • FROM THEOPHANES: MUHAMMAD

*Muhammad died in 6139, leaving his kinsman Abu Bakr to succeed him. Some
 Hebrews took him for the Messiah until they saw him eat camel, yet taught him
 circumcision. His heresy held Yathrib ten years secretly, ten by war, and nine
 openly. He taught that the slayer or the slain enters a paradise of food, drink,
 and women, with a river of wine, honey, and milk.*

ἐκ τοῦ χρονικοῦ τοῦ μακαρίου Θεοφάνους.
from the chronicle of-the blessed Theophanes
 Τούτῳ τῷ ἔτει, ἧγουν ςρλθ', ἀπεβίω Μουάμεθ ὁ τῶν
in-this the year that-is 6139 died Muhammad the of-the
 Σαρακηνῶν ἀρχηγὸς καὶ ψευδοπροφήτης, προχειρισάμενος
Saracens chief and false-prophet having-appointed
 αὐτ' αὐτοῦ Ἀβουβάχαρον τὸν καὶ Βουτάκτωρα,
in-place-of him Abu-Bakr the(-one) also Boutaktor
 συγγενῇ αὐτοῦ. οἱ δὲ πεπλανημένοι Ἑβραῖοι ἐν ἀρχῇ
kinsman his the and deceived Hebrews at (the)-beginning
 τῆς παρουσίας αὐτοῦ ἐνόμισαν εἶναι τοῦτον τὸν παρ' αὐτοῖς
of-the coming his supposed to-be this-man the by them
 προσδοκώμενον Χριστόν, ὥς καί τινες τῶν προυχόντων
expected Christ so-that also some of-the leading-men

αὐτῶν προσελθεῖν αὐτῷ καὶ δέξασθαι τὴν αὐτοῦ θρησκείαν
their to-come-to him and to-receive the his religion
 καὶ καταλιπεῖν τὴν τοῦ θεόπου Μωσέως. θεωρήσαντες
and to-abandon the(-religion) of-the God-seeing Moses having-seen
 δὲ αὐτὸν ἀπὸ καμήλου ἐσθίοντα ἔγνωσαν ὅτι οὐκ ἔστιν
but him from (a)-camel eating they-knew that not he-is
 ὦν ἐνόμισαν. ἐδίδασκον δὲ αὐτὸν ἀθέμιτα κατὰ
(the-one)-whom they-supposed they-taught and him unlawful-things against
 τῶν Χριστιανῶν, καὶ διῆγον σὺν αὐτῷ. οὗτοί εἰσιν οἱ
the Christians and lived with him these are those
 διδάσκοντες αὐτὸν παραδέχεσθαι μέρη τινὰ τοῦ νόμου, τὴν
teaching him to-accept parts some of-the law the
 τε περιτομὴν καὶ ἄλλα τινά, ἅπερ παραφυλάττονται οἱ
both circumcision and other(-things) some which observe the
 Σαρακηνοί. πρῶτος οὖν Ἀβουβάχαρ ἠκολούθησεν αὐτὸν καὶ
Saracens first then Abu-Bakr followed him and
 προφήτην ἐκήρυξεν, διὸ καὶ διάδοχον αὐτὸν κατέλειπεν.
(a)-prophet proclaimed(-him) therefore also successor him he-left
 ἐκράτησεν δὲ ἡ αἵρεσις αὐτοῦ τὰ μέρη τῆς Αἰθρίβου,
beld and the heresy his the parts — of-Yathrib
 πρῶην μὲν ἐν κρυπτῷ ἔτη δέκα, τὸ δὲ ἔσχατον διὰ
formerly indeed in secret years ten the and last through
 πολέμου ὁμοίως ἔτη δέκα, καὶ φανερώς ἔτη ἐννέα. ἐδίδαξε
war likewise years ten and openly years nine he-taught
 δὲ τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ ὑπηκόους ὅτι ὁ ἀποκτείνας ἐχθρὸν ἢ
and the of-himself subjects that the(-one) having-killed (an)-enemy or
 ὑπὸ ἐχθροῦ ἀποκτεινόμενος ἀκωλύτως εἰς τὸν παράδεισον
by (an)-enemy being-killed unbindered into the paradise
 εἰσέρχεται. τὸν δὲ παράδεισον σαρκικῆς βρώσεως καὶ
enters the and paradise of-fleshly eating and
 πόσεως καὶ μίξεως γυναικῶν ἔλεγεν, ποταμὸν δὲ οἶνον
drinking and intercourse with-women he-said (a)-river and of-wine

καὶ μέλιτος καὶ γάλακτος καταρρεῖν, καὶ γυναικῶν τὴν
and of-honey and of-milk to-flow-down and of-women the
 ὄρασις ἀσύγκριτον, οὐ τῶν παρόντων ἀλλ' ἄλλων. καὶ
sight incomparable not of-those present but of-others and
 τὴν μίξιν πολυχρόνιον ἔφασκεν καὶ διαρκῆ τὴν ἡδονήν,
the intercourse long-lasting he-declared and enduring the pleasure
 καὶ ἄλλα τινὰ ἀσωτίας καὶ μωρίας ἔμπλεα. συμπαθεῖν
and other-things some of-profligacy and of-folly full to-sympathize
 τε ἀλλήλοις καὶ βοηθεῖν ἀδικουμένοις.
both with-each-other and to-help those-wronged

XVIII • ABU BAKR

Abu Bakr took Gaza and ruled for three years, and Umar succeeded him.

δεύτερος ἀρχηγὸς τῶν Ἀράβων Ἀβουβάχαρ ἔτη γ'.
second chief of-the Arabs Abu-Bakr years 3
 Οὗτος ὁ Ἀβουβάχαρ πρῶτος λαμβάνει τὴν πόλιν Γάζαν
this — Abu-Bakr first takes the city Gaza
 καὶ πᾶσαν αὐτῆς τὴν περίχωρον. τελευτᾷ δὲ ὁ αὐτὸς
and all its the surrounding-country dies and the same
 Ἀβουβάχαρ ἀμηνεύσας ἔτη τρία, καὶ παραλαμβάνει τὴν
Abu-Bakr having-been-emir years three and takes-over the
 ἀρχὴν Οὔμαρ, καὶ κρατεῖ τῶν Ἀράβων ἔτη δώδεκα.
rule Umar and holds-power over-the Arabs years twelve

Umar besieged Jerusalem for two years and took it by guile, promising Sophronios to spare the churches. Seeing him, Sophronios called him the abomination of desolation. Umar sought out Solomon's temple as a place of prayer for his blasphemy.

τρίτος ἀρχηγὸς Ἀράβων Οὔμαρ.

third chief of-Arabs Umar

Ὁ αὐτὸς οὖν Οὔμαρ ἀπεστράτευσε κατὰ τῆς Παλαιστίνης,

the same then Umar marched against — Palestine

καὶ παρακαθίσας ἐν αὐτῇ ἐπολιόρκησε τὴν Ἱερουσαλήμ

and having-sat-down in it besieged — Jerusalem

διετὴ χρόνον, καὶ παρέλαβεν αὐτὴν δόλῳ. Σωφρόνιος

(a)-two-year time and took it by-guile Sophronios

γὰρ ὁ Ἱεροσολύμων ἐπίσκοπος θείῳ κινούμενος ζήλῳ

for the of-Jerusalem bishop by-divine moved zeal

καὶ ἀγχινοῖα διαπρέπων λόγον ἔλαβε παρ' αὐτοῦ ὑπὲρ

and in-shrewdness excelling (a)-word received from him for

τῶν ἐκκλησιῶν τῆς πάσης Παλαιστίνης ἀσφαλέστατον,

the churches of-the whole Palestine most-secure

ὥστε ἀκαθαιρέτους μεῖναι τὰς ἐκκλησίας καὶ ἀπορθητούς.

so-that undestroyed to-remain the churches and unsacked

τουτοῦτον ἰδὼν ὁ Σωφρόνιος ἔφη “ἐπ’ ἀληθείας τοῦτό ἐστι

him having-seen — Sophronios said in truth this is

τὸ βδέλυγμα τῆς ἐρημώσεως τὸ ῥήθεν διὰ Δανιὴλ

the abomination of-the desolation the(-one) spoken through Daniel

τοῦ προφήτου, ἐστὸς ἐν τόπῳ ἁγίῳ.” οὗτος τὸν ναὸν

the prophet standing in (a)-place holy this-man the temple

ἐζήτησε τῶν Ἰουδαίων, ὃν ᾠκοδόμησε Σολομών, πρὸς

sought of-the Jews which built Solomon for

τὸ ποιῆσαι αὐτὸν προσκυνητήριον τῆς αὐτοῦ βλασφημίας.

the to-make it (a)-place-of-worship of-the his blasphemy

καὶ ἔστιν ἕως τῆς σήμερον.

and it-is until the today

XX · UTHMAN

Uthman took Africa by war and returned after agreeing a tribute with the Africans. His general Muawiya loosed the Colossus of Rhodes and sacked Cyprus, took the island of Arados, burned its city, and left it uninhabited; he pulled down the Colossus, and a Jewish merchant of Edessa bought its bronze and loaded it on nine hundred camels. Muawiya also marched against Constantinople and ravaged Ephesus, Halicarnassus, Smyrna, and the other cities of Ionia, and after Uthman's death he was chief of the Arabs, the fifth, for twenty-four years.

τέταρτος ἀρχηγὸς Ἀράβων Οὐθμάν.

fourth chief of-Arabs Uthman

Οὗτος λαμβάνει τὴν Ἀφρικὴν πολέμῳ, καὶ στοιχήσας φόρους

this-man takes — Africa by-war and having-agreed tributes

μετὰ τῶν Ἀφρων ὑπέστρεψεν. τούτου στρατηγὸς χρηματίζει

with the Africans returned his general is-styled

Μαβίας ὁ παραλύσας τὸν κολοσσὸν Ῥόδου καὶ

Muawiya the(-one) having-loosed the colossus of-Rhodes and

πορθήσας Κύπρον τὴν νῆσον καὶ πάσας τὰς πόλεις αὐτῆς.

having-sacked Cyprus the island and all the cities its

οὗτος παραλαμβάνει καὶ νῆσον τὴν Ἀραδον, καὶ τὴν πόλιν

this-man takes also (the)-island — Arados and the city

αὐτῆς ἐέπρησεν, καὶ τὴν νῆσον ἀοίκητον κατέστησεν ἕως

its burned and the island uninhabited made until

τοῦ νῦν. οὗτος τὴν νῆσον Ῥόδον καταλαβὼν καθεῖλε τὸν

the now this-man the island Rhodes having-seized pulled-down the

αὐτῆς κολοσσὸν μετὰ χίλια τξ' ἔτη τῆς αὐτοῦ ἰδρύσεως, ὃν
 its colossus after thousand 360 years of-the its erection which
 Ἰουδαῖός τις ἔμπορος ὠνησάμενος Ἐδεσηνὸς ἐννακοσίας
 (a)-Jew certain merchant having-bought of-Edessa nine-hundred
 καμήλους ἐφόρτωσεν αὐτοῦ τὸν χαλκόν. οὗτος ὁ Μαβίας
 camels loaded(-with) its the bronze this — Muawiya
 ἐπεστράτευσεν καὶ κατὰ Κωνσταντινουπόλεως, καὶ ἐλυμήνατο
 marched also against Constantinople and ravaged
 τὴν τε Ἐφεσον καὶ Ἁλικαρνασσὸν καὶ Σμύρναν καὶ τὰς
 — both Ephesus and Halicarnassus and Smyrna and the
 λοιπὰς πόλεις Ἰωνίας· ὃς καὶ γέγονεν τῶν Ἀράβων ἀρχηγὸς
 other cities of-Ionia who also became of-the Arabs chief
 πέμπτος μετὰ τὴν Οὐθμὰν τελευτὴν ἔτη εἴκοσι τέσσαρα.
 fifth after the of-Uthman death years twenty four

XXI · FROM THEOPHANES: MUAWIYA AND HIS LINE

The Mardaites seized the Lebanon, and Muawiya sought peace, paying tribute to Constantine. The Arab rule split between Ali and Muawiya, and Muawiya won. After his line was destroyed by the Black-wearers, a descendant fled to Spain. Yazid, Marwan, and Abd al-Malik followed Muawiya, and Justinian succeeded Constantine. Constantine tells how Muawiya rose from admiral to ruler, besieged Constantinople for seven years in vain and pulled down the Colossus of Rhodes, and how two arbiters settled the quarrel with Ali by a trick with their rings. Maslama and Suleiman later attacked Constantinople and were driven off by God's providence, and even Suleiman revered the icon of the Mother of God.

ἐκ τοῦ χρονικοῦ Θεοφάνους· ἔτος ἀπὸ κτίσεως κόσμου
 from the chronicle of-Theophanes (the)-year from (the)-creation of-(the)-world
 ,ςροά'.

6171

Ἰστέον ὅτι πρὸς τῇ τελευτῇ Μαβίου τῶν Ἀράβων
(one)-must-know that toward the end of-Muawiya of-the Arabs
 πέμπτου ἀρχηγοῦ εἰσῆλθον οἱ Μαρδαῖται εἰς τὸν Λίβανον,
fifth chief entered the Mardaites into the Lebanon
 καὶ ἐκράτησαν ἀπὸ τοῦ Μαύρου ὄρους ἕως τῆς ἁγίας
and held(-it) from the Black Mountain as-far-as the holy
 πόλεως, καὶ ἐχειρώσαντο τὰς τοῦ Λιβάνου περιωπίας· καὶ
city and subdued the of-the Lebanon heights and
 πολλοὶ δοῦλοι καὶ αὐτόχθονες πρὸς αὐτοὺς κατέφυγον,
many slaves and natives to them fled
 ὥστε δι' ὀλίγου χρόνου εἰς πολλὰς χιλιάδας γενέσθαι.
so-that in (a)-short time to many thousands to-come
 καὶ τοῦτο μαθὼν Μαβίας καὶ οἱ σύμβουλοι αὐτοῦ
and this having-learned Muawiya and the counselors his
 ἐφοβήθησαν σφόδρα. καὶ ἀποστέλλει πρέσβεις πρὸς τὸν
feared greatly and sends envoys to the
 αὐτοκράτορα Κωνσταντῖνον ζητῶν εἰρήνην. ἐπὶ ταύτῃ τῇ
autocrat Constantine seeking peace on this the
 προφάσει πέμπεται παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως Κωνσταντίνου
pretext is-sent by the emperor Constantine
 τοῦ ὀρθοδόξου, τοῦ Πωγωνάτου, Ἰωάννης ὁ ἐπὶ κλην
the orthodox the Pogonatos John the(-one) surnamed
 Πιτζικαύδης. τούτου δὲ καταλαβόντος ἐν Συρίᾳ, Μαβίας
Pitzikaudes him and having-arrived in Syria Muawiya
 ἐδέξατο αὐτὸν μετὰ μεγάλης τιμῆς, καὶ συνεφωνήθη πρὸς
received him with great honor and it-was-agreed by
 ἀμφοτέρους ἔγγραφον γενέσθαι εἰρήνης μεθ' ὅρκου λόγον
both written to-be-made of-peace with oath (a)-statement
 ἐπὶ συμφώνου ἑτησίου πάκτου, παρέχεσθαι τῷ τῶν
on (an)-agreed annual tribute to-be-furnished to-the of-the
 Ῥωμαίων βασιλεῖ παρὰ τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν χρυσοῦ χιλιάδας
Romans emperor by the Hagarenes of-gold thousands

τρεῖς καὶ ἄνδρας αἰχμαλώτους ὡ' καὶ ἵππους εὐγενεῖς ν'.
three and men captives 800 and horses noble 50
 ἐπὶ τούτου διηρέθη ἡ τῶν Ἀράβων ἀρχὴ εἰς μέρη δύο,
upon this was-divided the of-the Arabs rule into parts two
 καὶ εἰς μὲν τὴν Αἰθριβον ἐκράτησε τὴν ἀρχὴν ὁ Ἀλῆ,
and in indeed — Yathrib held the rule — Ali
 τὴν δὲ Αἴγυπτον καὶ Παλαιστίνην καὶ Δαμασκὸν ἐκράτει
— and Egypt and Palestine and Damascus held
 ὁ Μαβίας. καὶ οἱ μὲν τὴν Αἰθριβον οἰκοῦντες μετὰ
— Muawiya and those indeed — Yathrib inhabiting with
 τῶν υἱῶν τοῦ Ἀλῆ ἐστράτευσαν κατὰ τοῦ Μαβίου, ὁ δὲ
the sons — of-Ali marched against — Muawiya — and
 Μαβίας ἀνθωπλίσατο κατ' αὐτῶν καὶ συνῆψεν πόλεμον
Muawiya armed-himself-in-turn against them and joined war
 παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν Εὐφράτην, καὶ ἡττήθη τὸ μέρος Ἀλῆ,
beside the river Euphrates and was-defeated the party of-Ali
 καὶ παρέλαβεν ὁ Μαβίας τὴν Αἰθριβον καὶ πᾶσαν τὴν
and took-over — Muawiya — Yathrib and all the
 γῆν Συρίας. ἐκράτησε δὲ ἡ αὐτοῦ γενεὰ ἔτη ο'.
land of-Syria held-power and the his family years 70
 Καὶ μετ' αὐτὸν ἐξῆλθον οἱ λεγόμενοι Μαυροφόροι ἀπὸ
and after him went-forth those called Black-wearers from
 Περσίδος, οἱ κρατοῦντες ἕως τῆς σήμερον, καὶ ἐπολέμησαν
Persia those holding-power until the today and warred-upon
 τὴν γενεὰν τοῦ Μαβίου καὶ ἠφάνισαν αὐτήν, ἔσφαξαν δὲ
the family — of-Muawiya and destroyed it they-slaughtered and
 καὶ Μαρουάμ τὴν κεφαλὴν αὐτῶν. ὑπελείφθησαν δὲ ὀλίγοι
also Marwan the head their were-left and few
 τοῦ Μαβίου, καὶ ἐδιώχθησαν παρὰ τῶν Μαυροφόρων ἕως
— of-Muawiya and were-pursued by the Black-wearers as-far-as
 τῆς Ἀφρικῆς μετὰ καὶ ἐνὸς ἐγγόνου τοῦ Μαβίου. ὁ δὲ
— Africa with also one descendant — of-Muawiya the and

αὐτὸς ἕκγονος τοῦ Μαβίου μετ' ὀλίγων τινῶν διεπέρασεν εἰς
same descendant — of-Muawiya with few some crossed to
 τὴν Ἰσπανίαν ἐν ταῖς ἡμέραις Ἰουστινιανοῦ τοῦ ῥινοτμήτου,
— Spain in the days of-Justinian the nose-cut
 οὐχὶ δὲ τοῦ Πωγωνάτου. τοῦτο δὲ παρὰ τοῖς ἡμετέροις
not and of-the Pogonatos this and by the our
 ἱστορικοῖς οὐ γέγραπται· ἀφ' οὗ γὰρ παρελήφθη ἡ
historians not has-been-written from (the-time)-when for was-taken the
 μεγάλη Ῥώμη παρὰ τῶν Γόθων, ἤρξατο ἀκρωτηριάζεσθαι
great Rome by the Goths began to-be-mutilated
 τὰ Ῥωμαϊκὰ πράγματα, καὶ οὐδεὶς τῶν ἱστορικῶν τῶν
the Roman affairs and no-one of-the historians of-the
 τῆς Ἰσπανίας μερῶν ἐποιήσατο μνεῖαν οὔτε τῆς γενεᾶς
— of-Spain parts made mention nor of-the family
 τοῦ Μαβίου. ἔχει δὲ τοῦ μακαρίου Θεοφάνους ἡ ἱστορία
— of-Muawiya has and of-the blessed Theophanes the history
 οὕτως. ἀπεβίω οὖν ὁ Μαβίας ὁ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν ἀρχηγός,
thus died then — Muawiya the of-the Saracens chief
 γεγονὼς στρατηγὸς ἔτη κς', ἀμηνεύσας δὲ ἔτη κδ'. καὶ
having-been general years 26 having-been-emir and years 24 and
 ἐκράτησε τῆς ἀρχῆς τῶν Ἀράβων Ἰζίδ ὁ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ ἔτη
held the rule of-the Arabs Yazid the son his years
 ς'. τούτου τελευτήσαντος ἐταράχθησαν οἱ Ἄραβες τῆς
6 him having-died were-troubled the Arabs —
 Αἰθρίβου, καὶ διεγερθέντες κατέστησαν ἑαυτοῖς ἀρχηγὸν
of-Yathrib and having-been-roused set-up for-themselves (as)-chief
 Ἀβδελὰν τὸν υἱὸν Ζουβέρ. τοῦτο ἀκούσαντες οἱ τὴν
Abdallab the son of-Zubayr this having-beard those —
 Φοινίκην καὶ Παλαιστίνην καὶ Δαμασκὸν κατοικοῦντες
Phoenicia and Palestine and Damascus inhabiting
 Ἀγαρηνοὶ ἔρχονται πρὸς Οὐσὰν ἀμηνᾶν Παλαιστίνης, καὶ
Hagarenes come to Hassan emir of-Palestine and

προβάλλονται Μαρουάμ, καὶ ἰστώσιν αὐτὸν ἀρχηγόν, καὶ
put-forward Marwan and set him-up (as)-chief and
 κρατεῖ τῆς ἀρχῆς μῆνας θ'. τούτου δὲ τελευτήσαντος
he-holds the rule months 9 him and having-died
 Ἀβιμέλεχ ὁ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ διαδέχεται τὴν ἀρχήν, καὶ κρατεῖ
Abd-al-Malik the son his succeeds-to the rule and holds(-it)
 ἔτη κβ' καὶ μῆνας ς', καὶ χειροῦται τοὺς τυράννους, καὶ
years 22 and months 6 and subdues the usurpers and
 ἀποκτείνει τὸν Ἀβδελὰν υἱὸν Ζουβερ καὶ διάδοχον. ἐν
kills — Abdallah son of-Zubayr and successor in
 τούτοις τελευτᾷ Κωνσταντῖνος ὁ βασιλεὺς ὁ υἱὸς τοῦ
these(-days) dies Constantine the emperor the son of-the
 Πωγωνάτου, κρατήσας τὴν Ῥωμαίων ἀρχὴν ἔτη ιζ', καὶ
Pogonatos having-held the of-(the)-Romans rule years 17 and
 ἐβασίλευσεν αὐτ' αὐτοῦ Ἰουστινιανὸς ὁ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ.
reigned in-place-of him Justinian the son his
 Ἰστέον ὅτι ὁ τῶν Ἀράβων ἀρχηγὸς Μαβίας, πέμπτος
(one)-must-know that the of-the Arabs chief Muawiya fifth
 ἀπὸ τοῦ Μουάμεθ ἐκράτησε τῆς ἀρχῆς τῶν Ἀράβων,
from — Muhammad held the rule of-the Arabs
 οὐκ ἐκ τοῦ γένους ἦν τοῦ Μουάμεθ, ἀλλ' ἐξ ἐτέρας
not from the family was — of-Muhammad but from another
 φυλῆς. καὶ πρῶτον μὲν ἐχειροτονήθη στρατηγὸς καὶ
tribe and first indeed he-was-appointed general and
 ναύαρχος παρὰ Οὐθμὰν ἀρχηγοῦ τῶν Ἀράβων, καὶ
admiral by Utbman chief of-the Arabs and
 ἀπεστάλη κατὰ τῆς Ῥωμαίων πολιτείας μετὰ χειρὸς
was-sent against the of-(the)-Romans state with (a)-hand
 ἰσχυρᾶς καὶ καταφράκτων νηῶν ,ασ', καὶ εἰσῆλθεν ἕως
strong and of-armored ships 1200 and he-came as-far-as
 τῆς Ῥόδου, κάκειθεν ἐξοπλισάμενος ἀνῆλθεν ἕως
— Rhodes and-from-there having-equipped-himself went-up as-far-as

Κωνσταντινούπολιν, καὶ διατρίψας χρόνον ἱκανόν, ἦτοι
Constantinople and having-spent time considerable that-is
 ἔτη ζ', λεηλατήσας τε τὰ ἔξω τοῦ Βυζαντίου
years 7 having-plundered both the(-parts) outside — of-Byzantium
 ὑπέστρεψεν ἄπρακτος. ἐλθὼν δὲ ἐν τῇ Ῥόδῳ καθεῖλε
he-returned unsuccessful having-come and to — Rhodes he-pulled-down
 τὸν κολοσσὸν τὸν ἐν αὐτῇ ἱστάμενον. ἄγαλμα δὲ
the colossus the(-one) in it standing (a)-statue and
 ἦν τοῦ ἡλίου χαλκοῦν κεχρυσωμένον ἀπὸ κεφαλῆς ἕως
it-was of-the sun bronze gilded from head to
 ποδῶν, ἔχον ὕψος πῆχεις π' καὶ πλάτος ἀναλόγως τοῦ
feet having (a)-height cubits 80 and breadth in-proportion-to the
 ὕψους, καθὼς μαρτυρεῖ τὸ ἐπίγραμμα τὸ πρὸς τὴν
height as testifies the inscription the(-one) at the
 βάσιν τῶν ποδῶν αὐτοῦ γεγραμμένον, ἔχον οὕτως τὸν
base of-the feet its written having thus the
 ἐν Ῥόδῳ κολοσσὸν ὀκτάκις δέκα Λάχης ἐποίει πηχέων
in Rhodes colossus eight-times ten Laches made of-cubits
 ὁ Λίνδιος. ἔλαβε δὲ τὸν χαλκὸν αὐτοῦ καὶ διεπέρασεν
the Lindian he-took and the bronze its and took-across
 ἐν τῇ Συρίᾳ, καὶ ἔστησεν αὐτὸν εἰς ἀγορὰν παντὶ τῷ
to — Syria and set it in (the)-market for-every the(-one)
 βουλομένῳ· ὠνήσατο δὲ αὐτὸν Ἑβραῖος ὁ Ἐμεσηνός,
wishing bought and it (a)-Hebrew the Emesene
 ἐπιφορτώσας αὐτὸν ἀπὸ θαλάσσης καμήλους ἐννακοσίας
having-loaded it from (the)-sea camels nine-hundred
 καὶ ὀγδοήκοντα. τελευτήσαντος οὖν τοῦ Οὐθμὰν διεδέξατο
and eighty having-died then — Uthman succeeded-to
 τὴν τῶν Ἀράβων ἀρχὴν ὁ Μαβίας, ἐκράτησε δὲ τῆς
the of-the Arabs rule — Muawiya held-power and over-the
 ἁγίας πόλεως καὶ τῶν τῆς Παλαιστίνης μερῶν, τὴν τε
holy city and of-the — of-Palestine parts — both

Δαμασκὸν καὶ Ἀντιόχειαν καὶ πάσας τὰς τῆς Αἰγύπτου
Damascus and Antioch and all the — of-Egypt
 πόλεις. ὁ δὲ Ἀλήμ, ὃς ἦν γαμβρὸς τοῦ Μουάμεθ ἐπὶ
cities — and Ali who was son-in-law — of-Mubammad by
 θυγατρὶ τῇ καλουμένῃ Φατιμέ, ἐκράτησε τῆς Αἰθρίβου
(a)-daughter the(-one) called Fatima held-power — over-Yathrib
 καὶ πάσης τῆς τραχείας Ἀραβίας. ἐν ταύταις οὖν ταῖς
and all the rough Arabia in these then the
 ἡμέραις διηγέρθησαν πρὸς πόλεμον κατ' ἀλλήλων ὃ τε
days were-roused to war against each-other — both
 Ἀλήμ καὶ ὁ Μαβίας, ἐρίζοντες περὶ τῆς ἀρχῆς, τίς
Ali and — Muawiya contending concerning the rule which
 αὐτῶν κυριεύσει πάσης Συρίας. συνήχθησαν δὲ παρὰ τὸν
of-them will-be-lord of-all Syria they-were-gathered and beside the
 Εὐφράτην ποταμόν, καὶ συνάπτουσι πόλεμον ἰσχυρὸν μετ'
Euphrates river and join war strong with
 ἀλλήλων. τοῦ δὲ πολέμου κρατοῦντος καὶ πολλῶν ἐξ
each-other the and war prevailing and many from
 ἀμφοτέρων πιπτόντων, ἔκραξαν τὰ πλήθη τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν
both falling cried-out the multitudes of-the Hagarenes
 τῶν δύο μερῶν “τίνι τρόπῳ σφάζομεν καὶ σφαζόμεθα
the two parts in-what way do-we-slaughter and are-slaughtered
 καὶ ἀφανίζεται τὸ γένος ἡμῶν ἐκ τῆς τῶν ἀνθρώπων
and is-destroyed the race our from the of-the men
 βιοτῆς; ἀλλὰ χωρισθήτωσαν δύο γέροντες ἐξ ἀμφοτέρων
life but let-be-set-apart two old-men from both
 τῶν μερῶν, καὶ ὃν ἂν προκρίνωσι ἐχέτω τὴν
the parts and whom-ever — they-prefer let-him-have the
 ἀρχήν.” ὁ δὲ Ἀλήμ καὶ ὁ Μαβίας ἠρέσκησαν ἐπὶ τῷ
rule — and Ali and — Muawiya were-pleased at the
 λόγῳ αὐτῶν, καὶ ἐκβάλλοντες ἐκ τῶν χειρῶν τοὺς
word their and taking-off from the hands the

ἑαυτῶν δακτυλίους δεδώκασι τοῖς δυσὶ γέρουσιν, ὅπερ ἐστὶ
their-own rings gave(-them) to-the two old-men which is
 σημεῖον τῆς ἀρχῆς τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν, καὶ παρέσχον τὴν
(a)-sign of-the rule of-the Hagarenes and handed-over the
 ἐξουσίαν αὐτῶν εἰς τὴν θέλησιν τῶν δύο γερόντων, τὸ
authority their to the will of-the two old-men the
 πρᾶγμα ἔνορκον ποιησάμενοι, καὶ τοῦτο στοιχήσαντες ἵνα
matter sworn having-made and this having-agreed that
 ὃν ἂν προκρίνωσιν οἱ γέροντες, ἐκεῖνος ἔσται κύριος
whom-ever — prefer the old-men that-one will-be lord
 καὶ ἀρχηγὸς πάντων τῶν Σαρακηνῶν. καὶ εἰσελθόντων
and chief of-all the Saracens and having-entered
 τῶν δύο γερόντων ἀνὰ μέσον τῆς παρεμβολῆς τοῦ
the two old-men into (the)-middle of-the camp of-the
 πολέμου τῶν δύο μερῶν, καὶ σταθέντων ἐν τῷ μεταίχμῳ
war of-the two parts and having-stood in the space-between
 τοῦ στρατοπέδου ἀντιπροσώπου, τοῦ μὲν Ἀλῆμ ὁ γέρων
of-the army facing-each-other — indeed of-Ali the old-man
 ὑπῆρχε κατὰ τὸ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν ἔθνος εὐλαβής, οἷους
was according-to the of-the Saracens nation devout such-as
 ἐκεῖνοι λέγουσι καδῆς, τουτέστι πιστοὺς καὶ ἡγιασμένους,
those-men call kadis that-is faithful and sanctified
 ὁ δὲ τοῦ Μαβίου γέρων ἐν σχήματι μόνῳ ἦν
the and — of-Muawiya old-man in (the)-outward-form only was
 εὐλαβής, τὰ δ' ἄλλα δολερὸς καὶ αὐθάδης καὶ πονηρία
devout in-the and other-things crafty and willful and in-wickedness
 πάντας ὑπερβάλλων ἀνθρώπους. εἶπε δὲ ὁ τοῦ Μαβίου
all surpassing men said and the — of-Muawiya
 γέρων πρὸς τὸν γέροντα τοῦ Ἀλῆμ ὅτι σὺ πρῶτος εἶπες
old-man to the old-man — of-Ali that you first say
 ὅπερ βούλῃ ὥστε φρόνιμος καὶ εὐλαβής καὶ μακρὰ τοῖς
what you-wish as prudent and devout and far by-the

ἐμοῖς χρόνοις ὑπερβαλλόμενος. καὶ ἀπεκρίθη ὁ γέρων
my years surpassing and answered the old-man
 τοῦ Ἀλήμ τοῦτο, ὅτι ἐξέβαλον τὸν Ἀλήμ ἐκ τῆς ἀρχῆς,
— of-Ali this that I-have-cast-out — Ali from the rule
 ὡς ἐξήγαγον τὸν δακτύλιον αὐτοῦ ἐκ τῆς χειρὸς αὐτοῦ
as I-have-drawn-off the ring his from the hand his
 καὶ εἰσήγαγον εἰς τὸν ἐμὸν δάκτυλον. ἐκβάλλω καὶ τὸν
and have-put(-it) onto the my finger I-cast-off also the
 δακτύλιον τοῦ Ἀλήμ ἐκ τοῦ δακτύλου μου, συνεκβαλὼν
ring — of-Ali from the finger my casting-out-together
 αὐτὸν καὶ τῆς ἀρχῆς αὐτοῦ. καὶ ἀνταπεκρίθη ὁ τοῦ
him also from-the rule his and answered-in-turn the —
 Μαβίου γέρων ὡς ὅτι εἰσήγαγον τὸν Μαβίαν εἰς τὴν
of-Muawiya old-man as that I-have-put — Muawiya into the
 ἀρχήν, ὥσπερ εἰσήγαγον τὸν δακτύλιον αὐτοῦ εἰς τὸν
rule as I-have-put the ring his onto the
 δάκτυλόν μου. εἰσαγάγω καὶ τὸν δακτύλιον τοῦ Μαβίου
finger my so-I-put also the ring — of-Muawiya
 εἰς τὸν δάκτυλον αὐτοῦ. καὶ τότε διεχωρίσθησαν ἀπ’
onto the finger his and then they-were-parted from
 ἀλλήλων. παραλαμβάνει οὖν ὁ Μαβίας τὴν ἐξουσίαν
each-other takes-over then — Muawiya the authority
 Συρίας, ἐπειδὴ ὁμωμόκεσαν ἀλλήλοις οἱ ἀμνηραῖοι πάντες
of-Syria since had-sworn to-each-other the emirs all
 ὡς ὅ τι ἂν εἴπωσιν οἱ γέροντες, ἵνα ἐπώμεθα
that what-thing ever — say the old-men that we-shall-follow
 εἰς τοὺς λόγους αὐτῶν. ὁ γοῦν Ἀλήμ παραλαβὼν
at the words their — at-any-rate Ali having-taken
 τὸν λαὸν αὐτοῦ ἀπῆλθεν εἰς τὰ μέρη Αἰθρίβου μετὰ
the people his went-away to the parts of-Yathrib with
 πάσης τῆς συγγενείας αὐτοῦ, κακεῖσε τελευτᾷ τὸν βίον.
all the kin his and-there ends the life

μετὰ δὲ τὸν θάνατον τοῦ Ἀλήμ, λήρον ἡγησάμενοι οἱ
after and the death — of-Ali nonsense having-considered the
 τούτου υἱοὶ τὴν τοῦ πατρὸς αὐτῶν βουλήν, ἐπανεστήσαν
his sons the of-the father their counsel rose-up
 κατὰ τοῦ Μαβίου καὶ συνῆψαν πόλεμον ἰσχυρὸν μετὰ
against — Muawiya and joined war strong with
 τοῦ Μαβίου, καὶ ἡττηθέντες ἔφυγον ἀπὸ τοῦ προσώπου
— Muawiya and having-been-defeated fled from the face
 αὐτοῦ, καὶ ἀποστείλας Μαβίας ἀπέκτεινεν ἅπαντας. καὶ
his and having-sent Muawiya killed all and
 ἔκτοτε ἦλθε πᾶσα ἡ ἀρχὴ τῶν Ἀράβων εἰς τὸν Μαβίαν.
from-then came all the rule of-the Arabs to — Muawiya
 ἰστέον δὲ ὅτι οὗτος ὁ Μαβίας ἔκγονος ἦν τοῦ
(one)-must-know and that this — Muawiya (a)-descendant was —
 Σοφιάμ ἔκγονος δὲ τοῦ Μαβίου ὑπῆρχεν ὁ Μάσαλμας
of-Sufyan descendant and — of-Muawiya was — Maslama
 ὁ κατὰ Κωνσταντινούπολιν ἐκστρατεύσας, οὗ τινὸς
the(-one) against Constantinople having-marched of whom
 καὶ δι' αἰτήσεως ἐκτίσθη τὸ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν μαγίσδιον
also through (a)-request was-built the of-the Saracens mosque
 ἐν τῷ βασιλικῷ πραιτωρίῳ. οὐκ ἦν δὲ οὗτος ἀρχηγὸς
in the imperial praetorium not was and this-man chief
 τῶν Ἀράβων, ἀλλὰ Σουλεμὰν ὑπῆρχεν ὁ ἀρχηγὸς
of-the Arabs but Suleiman was the chief
 τῶν Σαρακηνῶν, ὁ δὲ Μάσαλμας ἐν τάξει στρατηγοῦ
of-the Saracens — and Maslama in (the)-rank of-general
 ἐχρημάτιζεν. ἦλθε δὲ Σουλεμὰν μετὰ τοῦ στόλου αὐτοῦ
was-styled came and Suleiman with the fleet his
 κατὰ Κωνσταντινούπολιν, ὁ δὲ Μάσαλμας διὰ ξηρᾶς, καὶ
against Constantinople — and Maslama by land and
 διεπέρασεν ἐν Λαμφιάκῳ ἐπὶ τὰ μέρη τῆς Θράκης, ἄγων
crossed at Lampsakos to the parts — of-Thrace leading

μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ στρατιώτας χιλιάδας π'. καὶ διὰ τῆς τοῦ
with himself soldiers thousands 80 and through the —
 θεοῦ προνοίας ὃ τε στόλος Σουλεημὰν τοῦ ἀρχηγοῦ τοῦ
of-God providence the both fleet of-Suleiman the chief of-the
 Ἀράβων καὶ ὁ πεζὸς στρατὸς τοῦ Μασάλαμα ὑπέστρεψαν
Arabs and the foot army — of-Maslama returned
 ἅπαντες μετ' αἰσχύνῃς, ἡττηθέντες καὶ καταπολεμηθέντες
all with shame having-been-defeated and warred-down
 παρὰ τε τοῦ στόλου καὶ τῶν στρατιωτῶν τῶν βασιλέως.
by both the fleet and the soldiers of-the emperor
 καὶ εἰρήνευσεν ἡ καθ' ἡμᾶς πολιτεία ἐπὶ μήκιστον χρόνον,
and was-at-peace the among us state for (a)-very-long time
 στρατηγούσης καὶ περιεπούσης τῆς δεσποίνης ἡμῶν καὶ
commanding and protecting the lady our and
 ἀειπαρθένου Μαρίας τῆς θεοτόκου τήνδε τὴν πόλιν· ἧς καὶ
ever-virgin Mary the God-bearer this the city whose also
 τὴν ἄχραντον καὶ ἀγίαν εἰκόνα καὶ αὐτὸς ὁ Σουλεημὰν
the undefiled and holy icon also himself — Suleiman
 ᾗδέσθη καὶ ἐνετράπη καὶ τοῦ ἵππου κατέπεσεν.
revered and was-abashed and from-the horse fell-down

Justinian II made peace with Abd al-Malik and removed the Mardaites from the Lebanon, weakening the empire, and broke the peace with the Bulgarians. Africa fell to the Arabs. Muawiya's grandson took Spain, and from his line came the Arabs who later seized Crete. The list of caliphs runs to Harun, after whose death civil war wasted Syria, Egypt, and Libya and laid waste the churches of Jerusalem and the great lauras of Chariton, Sabas, and the rest. Here Theophanes' chronology ends.

ἐκ τοῦ χρονογράφου τοῦ μακαρίου Θεοφάνους περὶ τῶν
 from the chronographer the blessed Theophanes concerning the
 αὐτῶν καὶ περὶ Μαβίου καὶ τῆς γενεᾶς αὐτοῦ, ὅπως
 same and concerning Muawiya and the family his how
 διεπέρασεν ἐν Ἰσπανίᾳ. Ῥωμαίων βασιλεὺς Ἰουστίνος ὁ
 it-crossed to Spain of-(the)-Romans emperor Justin the
 ῥινότμητος.

nose-cut

Αὕτη ἐστὶν ἀρχὴ τῆς βασιλείας αὐτοῦ, καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα
 this is (the)-beginning of-the reign his and after these-(things)
 ἐξεβλήθη ὑπὸ Λεοντίου, καὶ πάλιν ἀντεισῆλθεν ἐκβαλὼν
 he-was-cast-out by Leontios and again re-entered having-cast-out
 τὸν Λεόντιον καὶ Ἀψίμαρον, καὶ ἀμφοτέρους αὐτοὺς ἐν τῇ
 — Leontios and Apsimaros and both them in the
 ἵπποδρομίᾳ θριαμβεύσας καὶ ἀποκτείνας. τούτῳ τῷ ἔτει
 hippodrome having-led-in-triumph and having-killed in-this the year
 ἀποστέλλει Ἀβιμέλεχ πρὸς Ἰουστινιανὸν βεβαιῶσαι τὴν
 sends Abd-al-Malik to Justinian to-confirm the
 εἰρήνην οὕτως ἵνα ὁ βασιλεὺς παύσῃ τὸ τῶν Μαρδαϊτῶν
 peace thus that the emperor stop the of-the Mardaites
 τάγμα ἐκ τοῦ Λιβάνου καὶ διακωλύσῃ τὰς ἐπιδρομὰς
 corps from the Lebanon and prevent the raids
 αὐτῶν, καὶ Ἀβιμέλεχ δώσῃ τοῖς Ῥωμαίοις καθ' ἑκάστην
 their and Abd-al-Malik give to-the Romans by each(-day)

νομίσματα χίλια καὶ ἵππον εὐγενῇ ἓνα καὶ Αἰθίοπα δούλον
nomismata thousand and horse noble one and Ethiopian slave
 ἓνα, καὶ ἵνα ἔχωσι κοινὰ κατὰ τὸ ἴσον τοὺς φόρους τῆς
one and that they-have in-common according-to the equal the tributes —
 Κύπρου καὶ Ἀρμενίας καὶ Ἰβηρίας. καὶ ἔπεμψεν ὁ βασιλεὺς
of-Cyprus and Armenia and Iberia and sent the emperor
 Παῦλον τὸν μαγιστριανὸν πρὸς Ἀβιμέλεχ ἀσφαλίσασθαι
Paul the magistrianus to Abd-al-Malik to-secure
 τὰ στοιχηθέντα, καὶ γέγονεν ἔγγραφος ἀσφάλεια μετὰ
the(-things) agreed and came-about (a)-written security with
 μαρτύρων, καὶ φιλοτιμηθεὶς ὁ μαγιστριανὸς ὑπέστρεψεν. καὶ
witnesses and having-been-honored the magistrianus returned and
 πέμψας ὁ βασιλεὺς προσελάβετο τοὺς Μαρδαίτας χιλιάδας
having-sent the emperor took-in the Mardaites thousands
 ἑβ', τὴν Ῥωμαϊκὴν δυναστείαν ἀκρωτηριάσας· πᾶσαι γὰρ νῦν
12 the Roman dominion having-mutilated all for now
 αἱ οἰκούμεναι παρὰ τῶν Ἀράβων εἰς τὰς ἀκροπόλεις
the(-places) inhabited by the Arabs in the frontier-towns
 ἀπὸ Μοψουεστίας καὶ ἕως τετάρτης Ἀρμενίας ἀνίσχυροι
from Mopsuestia and as-far-as fourth Armenia weak
 καὶ ἀοίκητοι ἐτύγχανον διὰ τὴν ἔφοδον τῶν Μαρδαϊτῶν,
and uninhabited happened-to-be because-of the attack of-the Mardaites
 ὧν παρασταλέντων πάνδεινα κακὰ πέπονθεν ἡ Ῥωμανία
whom having-been-removed all-terrible evils has-suffered — Romania
 ὑπὸ τῶν Ἀράβων μέχρι τοῦ νῦν. τῷ δ' αὐτῷ ἔτει εἰσελθὼν
by the Arabs until the now in-the and same year having-entered
 ὁ βασιλεὺς εἰς Ἀρμενίαν ἐκεῖ ἐδέξατο τοὺς ἐν τῷ Λιβάνῳ
the emperor into Armenia there received those in the Lebanon
 Μαρδαίτας, χάλκεον τεῖχος διαλύσας. παρέλυσε δὲ καὶ τὴν
Mardaites (a)-bronze wall having-dissolved he-broke and also the
 μετὰ τῶν Βουλγάρων παγιωθείσαν εἰρήνην, διαταράξας
with the Bulgarians made-firm peace having-confounded

τοὺς ὑπὸ τοῦ οἰκείου πατρὸς ἐνορδίνως γεγονότας
the by the own father duly-ordered having-been-made
 τύπους. ἔτι κρατοῦντος τοῦ Ἀβιμέλεχ ἐπεστράτευσαν οἱ
arrangements still holding-power — Abd-al-Malik marched the
 Ἄραβες τῇ Ἀφρικῇ, καὶ ταύτην παρέλαβον, καὶ ἐκ τοῦ
Arabs — against-Africa and it took and from the
 οἰκείου στρατοῦ ταξατίωνα ἐν αὐτῇ κατέστησαν. Λεόντιος
own army (a)-garrison in it established Leontios
 δὲ ἦν τῷ τότε χρόνῳ ἐκβαλὼν τὸν Ἰουστινιανὸν τῆς
and was at-the then time having-cast-out — Justinian from-the
 Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῆς, καὶ ἐξορίσας αὐτὸν ἐν Χερσῶνι τῆς
of-(the)-Romans rule and having-exiled him to Cherson the
 βασιλείας ἐκράτησεν. Ἀψιμάρου δὲ τοῦ Τιβερίου τὸν
empire held Apsimaros and — Tiberius —
 Λεόντιον διαδεξαμένου τῆς βασιλείας καὶ τὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων
Leontios having-succeeded-to the empire and the of-the Romans
 σκήπτρα κρατήσαντος τέθνηκεν Ἀβιμέλεχ ὁ τῶν Ἀράβων
scepters having-held died Abd-al-Malik the of-the Arabs
 ἀρχηγός, καὶ ἐκράτησεν Οὐαλὶδ ὁ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ ἔτη ἐννέα.
chief and held-power Walid the son his years nine
 Τῷ δ' αὐτῷ ἔτει πάλιν ὑπέστρεψεν Ἰουστινιανὸς εἰς τὴν
in-the and same year again returned Justinian to the
 βασιλείαν, καὶ ῥαθύμως καὶ ἀμελῶς ταύτην διακυβερνῶν,
empire and lazily and carelessly it governing
 τῆς Ἀφρικῆς ἐπεκράτησαν ὁλοσχερῶς οἱ Ἀγαρηνοί. τότε ὁ
— of-Africa took-control wholly the Hagarenes then the
 τοῦ Μαβίου ἑγγονος μετὰ ὀλιγοστοῦ τινὸς λαοῦ διεπέρασεν
— of-Muawiya grandson with very-small some people crossed
 ἐν Ἰσπανίᾳ, καὶ ἐπισυνάξας πάντας τοὺς ἐκ τοῦ γένους
to Spain and having-gathered all those from the family
 αὐτοῦ ἐκράτησε τῆς Ἰσπανίας μέχρι τῆς σήμερον. ὅθεν
his held-power — over-Spain until the today whence

οἱ τὴν Ἰσπανίαν κατοικοῦντες Ἀγαρηνοὶ Μαβιᾶται
those — Spain inhabiting Hagarenes Muawiyads
κατονομάζονται. τούτων ἀπόγονοι τυγχάνουσιν οἱ τὴν
are-named of-these descendants are those —
Κρήτην οἰκοῦντες Ἀγαρηνοί· ὅτε γὰρ Μιχαὴλ ὁ τραυλὸς
Crete inhabiting Hagarenes when for Michael the stammerer
τῆς τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῆς ἐπεκράτησεν καὶ ἡ τοῦ Θωμᾶ
of-the of-the Romans rule took-control and the — of-Thomas
ἀνταρσία ἐγένετο μέχρι τριετοῦς χρόνου ἐπικρατήσασα,
rebellion happened for (a)-three-year time having-prevailed
τότε τοῦ βασιλέως ἀσχολουμένου ἐπὶ τοῖς συμβεβηκόσι
then the emperor being-occupied with the having-happened
πράγμασιν εὐρόντες διορίαν οἱ τὴν Ἰσπανίαν οἰκοῦντες
affairs having-found respite those — Spain inhabiting
Ἀγαρηνοὶ στόλον ἱκανὸν ἐξαρτύσαντες καὶ ἀρξάμενοι ἀπὸ
Hagarenes (a)-fleet considerable having-fitted-out and having-begun from
τῶν τῆς Σικελίας μερῶν πάσας τὰς Κυκλάδας νήσους
the — of-Sicily parts all the Cyclades islands
ἡρῶμωσαν, καὶ ἐλθόντες ἐν Κρήτῃ, καὶ ταύτην εὐκαιρον
laid-waste and having-come to Crete and it opportune
καὶ ἀνειμένην εὐρόντες, μηδενὸς ἀνταιρομένου ἢ μαχομένου
and unguarded having-found no-one rising-up or fighting
ταύτην παρέλαβον, καὶ διακρατοῦσιν ἕως τῆς σήμερον.
it took and keep-bold-off(-it) until the today
Τὸν δὲ Οὐαλὶδ διαδέχεται ὁ Σολεημάν, καὶ κρατεῖ ἔτη
— and Walid succeeds — Suleiman and holds-power years
τρία. ἐπὶ τούτῳ ἐπεστράτευσεν Μάσαλας ὁ στρατηγὸς
three under this marched Maslama the general
Σουλεημάν μετὰ στρατοῦ διὰ ξηρᾶς, Οὔμαρος δὲ διὰ
of-Suleiman with (an)-army by land Umar and by
θαλάττης, καὶ τῇ τοῦ θεοῦ συνεργείᾳ ἄπρακτοι μετ’
sea and by-the — of-God assistance unsuccessful with

αἰσχύνῃς ὑπέστρεψαν. τὸν δὲ Σουλεημὰν διαδέχεται Οὐμαρ,
shame they-returned — and Suleiman succeeds Umar
 καὶ κρατεῖ τῆς τῶν Ἀράβων ἀρχῆς ἔτη δύο. τὸν δὲ Οὐμαρ
and holds the of-the Arabs rule years two — and Umar
 διαδέχεται Ἀζήδ, καὶ κρατεῖ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἐπὶ ἐνιαυτοὺς
succeeds Yazid and holds the rule for years
 τέσσαρας. τοῦτον δὲ διαδέχεται Ἰσάμ, καὶ κρατεῖ τῆς
four this-man and succeeds Hisham and holds the
 ἀρχῆς ἔτη ιθ'. τούτου τελευτήσαντος κρατεῖ τῆς ἀρχῆς
rule years 19 him having-died holds the rule
 Μαρούαμ ἔτη ἕξ. Μαρούαμ δὲ τελευτήσαντος Ἀβδελὰς τῆς
Marwan years six Marwan and having-died Abdallah of-the
 τῶν Ἀράβων ἀρχῆς κύριος γίνεται, καὶ κρατεῖ ἔτη κα'.
of-the Arabs rule lord becomes and holds-power years 21
 τούτου τελευτήσαντος Μαδὶς ἀρχηγὸς Ἀράβων γίνεται,
him having-died Mabdi chief of-Arabs becomes
 καὶ κρατεῖ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἔτη ἐννέα. τούτου παρελθόντος,
and holds the rule years nine him having-passed-away
 Ἀαρὼν τῆς τῶν Ἀράβων ἀρχῆς κύριος γίνεται, καὶ κρατεῖ
Harun of-the of-the Arabs rule lord becomes and holds
 τῆς ἀρχῆς ἔτη κγ'. ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ, ἡγουν τῆς
the rule years 23 in this the time that-is of-the
 τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῆς Εἰρήνης καὶ Κώνσταντος, ἔτος
of-the Romans rule of-Irene and of-Constans (the)-year
 ἀπὸ κτίσεως κόσμου ,ςσπη'. τῷ δ' αὐτῷ ἔτει Ἀαρὼν
from (the)-creation of-(the)-world 6288 in-the and same year Harun
 ὁ τῶν Ἀράβων ἀρχηγὸς τέθνηκεν εἰς τὴν ἐνδοτέραν
the of-the Arabs chief died in the inner
 Περσίδα τὴν καλουμένην Χωρασάν, καὶ διεδέξατο τὴν
Persia the(-land) called Khorasan and succeeded-to the
 ἀρχὴν Μοάμεθ ὁ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ, ἀφυῆς κατὰ πάντα καὶ
rule Mubammad the son his untalented in all-things and

ἀσυνάρτητος ὑπάρχων· πρὸς ὃν Ἀβδελας ὁ ἀδελφὸς
incoherent being against whom Abdallah the brother
 αὐτοῦ στασιάσας ἐκ τῆς αὐτῆς χώρας τοῦ Χωρασάν
his having-rebelled from the same land — of-Khorasan
 ἅμα ταῖς πατρικαῖς δυνάμεσιν ἐμφυλίου πολέμου
together-with the paternal forces of-civil war
 γέγονεν αἴτιος. κἀντεῦθεν οἱ κατὰ τὴν Συρίαν καὶ
became (the)-cause and-from-this those in — Syria and
 Αἴγυπτον καὶ Λιβύην εἰς διαφόρους κατατμηθέντες ἀρχὰς
Egypt and Libya into various having-been-cut-up rules
 τά τε δημόσια πράγματα καὶ ἀλλήλους κατέστρεψαν,
the both public affairs and each-other overthrew
 σφαγαῖς καὶ ἀρπαγαῖς καὶ παντοίαις ἀτοπίαῖς πρὸς τε
with-slaughters and plunderings and all-kinds-of outrages against both
 ἑαυτοὺς καὶ τοὺς ὑπ' αὐτοὺς Χριστιανοὺς συγκεχυμένοι.
themselves and the under them Christians confounded
 ἔνθεν δὴ καὶ αἱ τῆς ἁγίας Χριστοῦ τοῦ θεοῦ ἡμῶν
whence indeed also the of-the holy of-Christ — God our
 πόλεως ἐκκλησίαι ἡρήμωνται, τά τε μοναστήρια τῶν δύο
city churches have-been-laid-waste the both monasteries of-the two
 μεγάλων λαυρῶν τοῦ ἐν ἁγίοις Χαρίτωνος καὶ Κυριακοῦ
great lauras of-the among (the)-saints Chariton and Kyriakos
 καὶ τοῦ ἁγίου Σάβα, καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ κοινόβια τῶν ἁγίων
and of-the holy Sabas and the other communities of-the holy
 Εὐθυμίου καὶ Θεοδοσίου. ἐπεκράτησε δὲ τῆς τοιαύτης
Euthymios and Theodosios prevailed and of-the such
 ἀναρχίας ἢ κατ' ἀλλήλων καὶ ἡμῶν μαιφονία ἔτη πέντε.
anarchy the against each-other and us bloodshed years five
 Ἔως ὧδε ἐκανόνισε τοὺς χρόνους τῶν Ἀράβων ὁ
up-to here set-in-order the times of-the Arabs the
 ἐν ἁγίοις Θεοφάνης, ὁ τὴν μονὴν συστήσας τοῦ
among (the)-saints Theophanes the(-one) the monastery having-founded of-the

καλουμένου μεγάλου Ἀγροῦ, μητρόθεις τυγχάνων τοῦ
 called Great Field maternal-uncle being of-the
 μεγάλου καὶ εὖσεβοῦς καὶ χριστιανικωτάτου βασιλέως
 great and pious and most-Christian emperor
 Κωνσταντίνου, υἱοῦ Λέοντος τοῦ σοφωτάτου καὶ ἀγαθοῦ
 Constantine son of-Leo the most-wise and good
 βασιλέως, ἐγγόνου δὲ Βασιλείου τοῦ ἐκ Μακεδονίας,
 emperor grandson and of-Basil the(-one) from Macedonia
 τοῦ ἐν μακαρίᾳ τῇ μνήμῃ τὰ σκῆπτρα τῆς τῶν
 the(-one) in blessed the memory the scepters of-the of-the
 Ῥωμαίων βασιλείας κρατήσαντος.
 Romans empire having-held

XXIII • IBERIA AND SPAIN

There are two Iberias: one by the Pillars of Heracles, named for the river Iber, and one near the Persians. Quotations from Apollodoros, Herodoros, Artemidoros, Markianos, and others describe the western one's peoples, its Roman provinces, and the forms of its name; Phylarchos says the Iberians, though very rich, drink only water.

περὶ Ἰβηρίας καὶ Ἰσπανίας.

concerning Iberia and Spain
 Ἰβηρίαι δύο, ἣ μὲν πρὸς ταῖς Ἡρακλείαις στήλαις,
 Iberias two the(-one) indeed by the Herculean pillars
 ἀπὸ Ἰβηρος ποταμοῦ, οὗ μέμνηται Ἀπολλόδωρος ἐν
 from (the)-Iber river of-which mentions Apollodoros in
 τῇ περὶ γῆς β'. “ἐντὸς δὲ Πυρήνης Ἰβηρ τ' ἐστὶ
 the on (the)-earth 2 within and (the)-Pyrene (the)-Iber and is
 μέγας ποταμὸς φερόμενος ἐνδοτέρω.” ταύτης δὲ πολλὰ
 (a)-great river borne further-inland this and many

φασιν ἔθνη διαιρεῖσθαι, καθάπερ Ἡρόδωρος ἐν τῇ δεκάτῃ
they-say nations to-be-divided as Herodorus in the tenth
 τῶν καθ' Ἡρακλέα γέγραφεν ἱστορία, οὕτως. “τὸ δὲ
of-the about Heracles has-written history thus the and
 Ἰβηρικὸν γένος τοῦτο, ὅπερ φημὶ οἰκεῖν τὰ παράλια τοῦ
Iberian race this which I-say to-inhabit the coasts of-the
 διάπλου, διώρισται ὀνόμασιν ἐν γένος ἐὼν κατὰ φύλα.
passage is-distinguished by-names one race being by tribes
 πρῶτον μὲν οἱ ἐπὶ τοῖς ἐσχάτοις οἰκοῦντες τὰ
first indeed those at the farthest dwelling the(-parts)
 πρὸς δυσμέων Κύνητες ὀνομάζονται, ἀπ' ἐκείνων δὲ ἤδη
toward (the)-west Kynetes are-named from those and now
 πρὸς βορέαν ἰόντι Γλήτες, μετὰ δὲ Ταρτήσιοι, μετὰ
toward (the)-north to-one-going Gletes after and Tartesians after
 δὲ Ἐλβυσῖνοι, μετὰ δὲ Μαστιηνοί, μετὰ δὲ Καλπιανοί,
and Elbysinians after and Mastienes after and Kalprians
 ἔπειτα δὲ ἤδη ὁ Ῥοδανός.” Ἀρτεμίδωρος δὲ ἐν τῇ β'
then and now the Rhodanus Artemidoros and in the 2
 τῶν γεωγραφουμένων οὕτω διαιρεῖσθαι φησίν. “ἀπὸ δὲ
of-the geographical-books thus to-be-divided says(-it) from and
 τῶν Πυρηναίων ὁρῶν ἕως τῶν κατὰ Γάδειρα τόπων
the Pyrenean mountains up-to the at Gadeira places
 ἐνδοτέρω καὶ συνωνύμως Ἰβηρία τε καὶ Σπανία καλεῖται.
further-inland and synonymously Iberia both and Spania is-called
 διήρηται δὲ ὑπὸ Ῥωμαίων εἰς δύο ἐπαρχίας ***
it-has-been-divided and by (the)-Romans into two provinces (lacuna)
 διατείνουσα ἀπὸ τῶν Πυρηναίων ὁρῶν ἅπανα μέχρι
extending from the Pyrenean mountains all up-to
 τῆς καινῆς Καρχηδόνος καὶ τῶν τοῦ Βαίτιος πηγῶν·
the new Carthage and the of-the Baetis springs
 τῆς δὲ δευτέρας ἐπαρχίας τὰ μέχρι Γαδείρων καὶ
of-the and second province the(-parts) up-to Gadeira and

Λουσιτανίας.” λέγεται δὲ καὶ Ἰβηρίτης. Παρθένιος ἐν
Lusitania is-called and also Iberite Parthenios in
 Λευκαδίας “Ἰβηρίτῃ πλεύσειεν αἰγιαλῶ.” ἡ δὲ ἑτέρα
(the)-Leucadiae Iberite may-be-sail shore the and other
 Ἰβηρία πρὸς Πέρσας ἐστί. τὸ ἔθνος Ἰβηρες, ὡς Πίερης
Iberia toward (the)-Persians is the nation Iberians as Pieres
 Βύζηρες. Διονύσιος “ἀγχοῦ στηλῶν μεγαθύμων ἔθνος
Byzeres Dionysios near (the)-pillars of-the-great-hearted (a)-nation
 Ἰβήρων,” καὶ Ἀριστοφάνης Τριφάλῃτι “μανθάνοντες τοὺς
of-Iberians and Aristophanes in-(the)-Triphales learning the
 Ἰβηρας τοὺς Ἀριστάρχου πάλαι” καὶ “τοὺς Ἰβηρας
Iberians the(-ones) of-Aristarchos of-old and the Iberians
 οὓς χορηγεῖς μοι βοηθῆσαι δρόμῳ.” καὶ Ἀρτεμίδωρος ἐν
whom you-supply me to-help at-a-run and Artemidoros in
 δευτέρῳ τῶν γεωγραφουμένων· “γραμματικῇ δὲ χρώνται
(the)-second of-the geographical-books letters and they-use
 τῇ τῶν Ἰταλῶν οἱ παρὰ θάλατταν οἰκοῦντες τῶν
the of-the Italians those by (the)-sea dwelling of-the
 Ἰβήρων.” καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς Ἰβηρος γενικῆς Ἰβηρὶς τὸ θηλυκόν·
Iberians and from the Iberos genitive Iberis the feminine
 “Ἑλληνίς, οὐκ Ἰβηρίς” Μένανδρος Ἀσπίδι. λέγεται καὶ
Hellenis not Iberis Menander in-the-Shield is-said also
 Ἰβηρικὸς· Διονύσιος “πόντος μὲν πρώτιστος Ἰβηρικὸς
Iberikos Dionysios sea indeed first-of-all Iberian
 ἀρχομένοισι.” διηρεῖτο δὲ Ἰβηρία εἰς δύο, νῦν δὲ εἰς
to-those-beginning was-divided and Iberia into two now and into
 τρία, ὡς Μαρκιανὸς ἐν περίπλῳ αὐτῆς· “πρότερον μὲν
three as Markianos in (the)-periplus its formerly indeed
 οὖν ἡ Ἰβηρία εἰς δύο διηρεῖτο ὑπὸ Ῥωμαίων, νυνὶ δὲ
then — Iberia into two was-divided by (the)-Romans now and
 εἰς τρία, Βαιτικὴν Λουσιτανίαν καὶ Ταρρακωνησίαν.”
into three Baetica Lusitania and Tarraconensis

ἀπὸ τῆς γενικῆς Ἰβηρος εὐθείαν Ἀπολλώνιος, ὡς τοῦ
from the genitive Iberos (a)-nominative Apollonios as of-the
 φύλακος – ὁ φύλακος. ἐν τοῖς παρωνύμοις, φησίν, ἀπὸ
phylakos the phylakos in the paronyms says from
 γενικῶν εὐθεῖαι παράγονται. τὸ μὲν ὕδωρ δύο συλλαβάς,
genitives nominatives are-derived the indeed hydor two syllables
 ὁμοίως τῇ εὐθείᾳ, κατὰ τὸν τόνον παροξυνόμενον, καὶ
likewise to-the nominative in the accent paroxytone and
 ἢ ἐν ἀπλῶ σχήματι ἢ ἐν συνθέτῳ. ἀπλὸν μὲν οὖν
either in simple form or in compound simple indeed then
 μάρτυρ μάρτυρος – ὁ μάρτυρος, χάροψ χάροπος – ὁ
martyr martyros the martyros charops charopos the
 Χάροπος “Χαρόποιο τ’ ἄνακτος,” Τροῖζην Τροϊζήνος – ὁ
Charopos of-Charops and lord Troizen Troizenos the
 Τροϊζήνος “υἱὸς Τροϊζήνοιο,” Ἰβηρ Ἰβηρος – ὁ Ἰβηρος,
Troizenos son of-Troizen Iber Iberos the Iberos
 ἀφ’ οὗ παρὰ Κουαδράτῳ ἐν Ῥωμαϊκῆς χιλιάδος εἶ ἔστιν
from which in Quadratus in of-(the)-Roman thousand-years 5 is
 Ἰβήροισιν, οὕτως “καίτοι Λίγυσι θ’ ἅμα καὶ Ἰβήροισι
Iberoisin thus although with-Ligurians and together and with-Iberians
 πολεμέοντες.” τὸ αὐτὸ καὶ Ἀβρων ἐν παρωνύμοις φησί.
warring the same also Habron in paronyms says
 καὶ αὐτὸς Ἰβηρος τραγοπῶγων ἐν Μαλθακοῖς εἴρηται
and himself Iberos goat-bearded in (the)-Malthakoi is-said
 Κρατίνου. λέγονται οἱ Ἰβηρες ὑδροποτεῖν, ὡς Ἀθήναιος ἐν
of-Kratinos are-said the Iberians to-drink-water as Athenaios in
 Δειπνοσοφιστῶν β’ οὕτω. “Φύλαρχος μὲν ἐν τῇ ζ’ καὶ τοὺς
of-(the)-Deipnosophists 2 thus Phylarchos indeed in the 7 also the
 Ἰβηράς φησιν ὑδροποτεῖν πάντας, καίτοι πλουσιωτάτους
Iberians says to-drink-water all although richest
 πάντων ἀνθρώπων τυγχάνοντας· κέκτηνται γὰρ ἄργυρον
of-all men being they-possess for silver

καὶ χρυσὸν πλείστον. μονοσιτεῖν τε αὐτοὺς ἀεὶ λέγει
 and gold very-much to-eat-once-a-day and them always he-says
 διὰ μικρολογίαν, ἐσθῆτάς τε φορεῖν πολυτελεστάτας.”
 because-of meanness clothes and to-wear most-costly

XXIV • SPAIN

Spain is named for the giant Hispanus. There are two Spains, the greater and the lesser; in the lesser the Roman general Quintus, beaten by Viriathus, made a truce with him. The Greeks first called the whole land Iberia after the river, and later it was called Pania.

περὶ Ἰσπανίας.

concerning Spain

Πόθεν εἴρηται Ἰσπανία; ἀπὸ Ἰσπάνου γίγαντος οὕτω
whence is-called Spain from Hispanus (a)-giant so
 καλουμένου. Ἰσπανίαι δύο τῆς Ἰταλίας ἐπαρχίαι, ἡ
called Spains two — of-Italy provinces the(-one)
 μὲν μεγάλη ἡ δὲ μικρά. ταύτης ἐμνήσθη Χάραξ ἐν
indeed great the and small this mentioned Charax in
 ι' χρονικῶν. “ἐν Ἰσπανίᾳ τῇ μικρᾷ τῇ ἔξω Λουσιτανῶν
10 of-chronicles in Spain the small the outer (the)-Lusitanians
 πάλιν ἀποστάντων ἐπέμφθη ὑπὸ Ῥωμαίων στρατηγὸς
again having-revolted was-sent by (the)-Romans (a)-general
 ἐπ’ αὐτοὺς Κυνῆτος.” ὁ αὐτὸς ὁμοῦ περὶ τῶν δύο
against them Quintus the same together concerning the two
 “Κυνῆτος ὁ τῶν Ῥωμαίων πολέμαρχος ἐν ἀμφοτέραις
Quintus the of-the Romans war-leader in both
 ταῖς Ἰσπανίαις ἡσώμενος δὲ ὑπὸ Οὐριάθου σπονδὰς πρὸς
the Spains being-defeated and by Viriathus (a)-truce with
 αὐτὸν ἐποίησατο.” ταύτην κεκλησθαί φησιν Ἰβηρίαν ἐν
him made this to-have-been-called says(-he) Iberia in

Ἑλληνικῶν γ'. "τὴν δὲ Ἰσπανίαν Ἕλληνες τὰ πρῶτα
of-Hellenica 3 — and Spain (the)-Greeks the first
 Ἰβηρίαν ἐκάλουν, οὐπω ζύμπαντος τοῦ ἔθνους τὴν
Iberia called not-yet of-the-whole of-the nation the
 προσηγορίαν μεμαθηκότες, ἀλλ' ἀπὸ μέρους τῆς γῆς ὃ
name having-learned but from (a)-part of-the land which
 ἐστὶ πρὸς ποταμὸν Ἰβηρίαν καὶ ἀπ' ἐκείνου ὀνομάζονται,
is toward (the)-river Iberia and from that they-name
 τὴν πᾶσαν οὕτω καλοῦντες. ὕστερον δέ φασι αὐτὴν
the whole thus calling(-it) later and they-say it
 μετακεκληθῆσθαι Πανίαν."
to-have-been-renamed Pania

XXV · FROM THEOPHANES: THE VANDALS IN AFRICA

Aetius slandered Boniface to Placidia, and Boniface, fearing the emperors, invited the Vandals into Africa. Their origins and the settlements of the Goths, Gepids, and Visigoths are traced. The truth came out, but Africa was lost to Gaiseric. Of the three commanders of the faithful now, one sits in Baghdad, one in Africa, and one in Spain. The thirteen emirates once ruled from Baghdad are listed, and how Africa broke away and the emirs of Persia and of Arabia each made himself independent and took the title of commander of the faithful.

ἐκ τῆς ἱστορίας τοῦ ὁσίου Θεοφάνους τῆς Σιγγριανῆς.
from the history of-the holy Theophanes — of-Sigriane
 Τούτῳ τῷ ἔτει Οὐαλεντινιανὸς οὐ μόνον Βρετανίαν καὶ
in-this the year Valentinian not only Britain and
 Γαλλίαν καὶ Ἰσπανίαν ἀνασώσασθαι οὐκ ἴσχυεν, ἀλλὰ
Gaul and Spain to-recover not was-able but
 καὶ τὴν ἐσπέριον Λιβύην τὴν τῶν Ἀφρων καλουμένην
also the western Libya the of-the Africans called

χώραν προσαπώλεσε τρόπῳ τοιῷδε. δύο στρατηγοὶ ἦσαν,
land lost-besides in-(a)-way such two generals were
 Ἀέτιος καὶ Βονιφάτιος, οὓς Θεοδοσίος κατὰ αἴτησιν
Aetius and Boniface whom Theodosius at (the)-request
 Οὐαλεντινιανοῦ εἰς Ῥώμην ἀπέστειλεν. Βονιφατίου δὲ τὴν
of-Valentinian to Rome sent Boniface and the
 ἀρχὴν τῆς ἐσπερίου Λιβύης λαβόντος, φθονήσας ὁ Ἀέτιος
command of-the western Libya having-received having-envied — Aetius
 διαβολὴν ποιεῖται κατ' αὐτοῦ ὡς ἀνταρσίαν μελετῶντος καὶ
slander makes against him as rebellion planning and
 τῆς Λιβύης κρατῆσαι σπεύδοντος. καὶ ταῦτα μὲν πρὸς
— Libya to-hold-power-over hastening and these(-things) indeed to
 Πλακιδίαν ἔλεγε τὴν τοῦ Οὐαλεντινιανοῦ μητέρα, γράφει
Placidia he-said the — of-Valentinian mother he-writes
 δὲ καὶ Βονιφατίῳ ὅτι ἐὰν μεταπεμφθῆς παραγενέσθαι μὴ
and also to-Boniface that if you-are-sent-for to-come do-not
 θελήσης· διεβλήθης γάρ, καὶ δόλω σε οἱ βασιλεῖς
wish you-have-been-slandered for and by-guile you the emperors
 βούλονται χειρώσασθαι. ταῦτα δεξάμενος Βονιφάτιος,
wish to-seize these(-things) having-received Boniface
 καὶ ὡς γνησίῳ φίλῳ Ἀετίῳ πιστεύσας, μεταπεμφθεὶς οὐ
and as (a)-genuine friend Aetius having-trusted having-been-sent-for not
 παρεγένετο. τότε οἱ βασιλεῖς ὡς εὐνούστατον τὸν Ἀέτιον
came then the emperors as most-well-disposed — Aetius
 ἀπεδέξαντο. ἦσαν δὲ τῷ τότε Γότθοι καὶ ἔθνη πολλά
accepted there-were and at-the then(-time) Goths and nations many
 τε καὶ μέγιστα μέχρι τοῦ Δανουβίου ἐν τοῖς ὑπερβορείοις
both and very-great as-far-as the Danube in the hyperborean
 τόποις κατωκισμένα. τούτων δὲ ἀξιολογώτερα εἰσι Γότθοι
places settled of-these and more-notable are Goths
 Γήπεδες καὶ Οὐανδηλοὶ, ἐν ὀνόμασι μόνον καὶ οὐδενὶ ἑτέρῳ
Gepids and Vandals in names only and in-no other

διαλλάττοντες, μιᾷ διαλέκτῳ κεκρημένοι· πάντες δὲ τῆς
differing one dialect having-used all and —
 Ἀρείου ὑπάρχουσι κακοπιστίας. οὗτοι ἐπ' Ἀρκαδίου καὶ
of-Arius are bad-faith these under Arcadius and
 Ὀνωρίου τὸν Δανούβιον διαβάντες ἐν τῇ τῶν Ῥωμαίων
Honorius the Danube having-crossed in the of-the Romans
 γῇ κατωκίσθησαν. καὶ οἱ μὲν Γήπεδες, ἐξ ὧν ὕστερον
land were-settled and the indeed Gepids from whom later
 διηρέθησαν Λογγίβαρδοι καὶ Ἀβάρεις, τὰ περὶ Σιγγιδῶνα
were-divided Lombards and Avars the about Singidunum
 καὶ Σερμεῖον χωρία ὥκησαν, οἱ δὲ Ἰσίγοτθοι μετὰ
and Sirmium districts inhabited the and Visigoths with
 Ἀλαρίχου τὴν Ῥώμην πορθήσαντες εἰς Γαλλίας ἐχώρησαν
Alaric — Rome having-sacked to Gaul went
 καὶ τῶν ἐκεῖ ἐκράτησαν. Γότθοι δὲ Πανωνίαν ἔχοντες
and of-the(-places) there took-control Goths and Pannonia holding
 πρῶτον, ἔπειτα θ' ἔτει τῆς βασιλείας Θεοδοσίου τοῦ
first then in-(the)-19th year of-the reign of-Theodosius the
 νέου ἐπιτρέψαντος τὰ τῆς Θράκης χωρία ὥκησαν. καὶ
young having-permitted(-it) the — of-Thrace districts inhabited and
 ἐπὶ νη' χρόνους ἐν τῇ Θράκῃ διατρίψαντες, Θεοδερῖχου
for 58 years in — Thrace having-spent Theoderic
 ἡγεμονεύοντος αὐτῶν πατρικίου καὶ ὑπάτου, Ζήνωνος
leading them (a)-patrician and consul Zeno
 αὐτοῖς ἐπιτρέψαντος, τῆς ἐσπερίου Λιβύης βασιλείας
to-them having-permitted(-it) of-the western Libya kingdom
 ἐκράτησαν. οἱ δὲ Οὐανδῆλοι Ἀλανοὺς ἐταιρисяμένοι καὶ
took-control the and Vandals Alans having-taken-as-companions and
 Γερμανοὺς τοὺς νῦν καλουμένους Φράγγους, διαβάντες τὸν
Germans those now called Franks having-crossed the
 Ῥήνον ποταμὸν ἡγούμενον ἔχοντες Γογίδισκλον, κατώκησαν
Rhine river (as)-leader having Godigisel settled

ἐν Ἰσπανίᾳ πρώτη οὔση χώρα τῆς Εὐρώπης ἀπὸ τοῦ
in Spain first being land — of-Europe from the
 ἐσπερίου Ὠκεανοῦ. Βονιφάτιος δὲ φοβηθεὶς τοὺς τῶν
western Ocean Boniface and having-feared the of-the
 Ῥωμαίων βασιλεῖς περάσας ἀπὸ Λιβύης εἰς Ἰσπανίαν πρὸς
Romans emperors having-crossed from Libya to Spain to
 τοὺς Οὐανδήλους ἦλθεν· καὶ εὗρων τὸν μὲν Γογίδισκλον
the Vandals came and having-found — indeed Godigisel
 τελευτήσαντα, τοὺς δὲ ἐκείνου παῖδας Γότθαρὸν τε καὶ
having-died the and his sons Gottharos both and
 Γηζέριχον τὴν ἀρχὴν διέποντας, τούτους προτρεψάμενος
Gaiseric the rule administering these having-urged
 τὴν ἐσπέριον Λιβύην εἰς τρία μέρη διελεῖν ὑπέσχετο, ἐφ'
the western Libya into three parts to-divide promised on
 ᾧ ἕκαστον τοῦ τρίτου μέρους ἄρχειν σὺν αὐτῷ,
(condition)-that each of-the third part to-rule with him
 κοινῇ δὲ ἀμύνεσθαι τὸν οἶον δῆποτε πολέμιον. ἐπὶ
in-common and to-repel the what-kind soever enemy on
 ταύταις ταῖς ὁμολογίαις Οὐανδήλοι τὸν πορθμὸν διαβάντες
these the agreements (the)-Vandals the strait having-crossed
 τὴν Λιβύην κατώκησαν ἀπὸ τοῦ Ὠκεανοῦ μέχρι Τριπόλεως
— Libya settled from the Ocean as-far-as Tripolis
 τῆς κατὰ Κυρήνην. οἱ δὲ Ἰσίδοτθοι ἀναστάντες
the(-one) by Cyrene the and Visigoths having-risen-up
 ἀπὸ Γαλλίας ἐκράτησαν καὶ τὴν Ἰσπανίαν. τινὲς δὲ
from Gaul took-control also-of — Spain some and
 τῆς συγκλήτου Ῥωμαίων φίλοι Βονιφατίου τὴν τοῦ
of-the senate of-(the)-Romans friends of-Boniface the —
 Ἀετίου ψευδοκατηγορίαν ἀνήγγειλαν τῇ Πλακιδίᾳ, ἐμφανῇ
of-Aetius false-accusation reported — to-Placidia evident
 ποιήσαντες καὶ τὴν πρὸς Βονιφάτιον Ἀετίου ἐπιστολὴν, τοῦ
having-made also the to Boniface of-Aetius letter —

Βονιφατίου ταύτην αὐτοῖς ἀποστείλαντος. ἡ δὲ Πλακιδία
Boniface it to-them having-sent — and Placidia
 ἐκπλαγεῖσα τὸν μὲν Ἀέτιον οὐδὲν ἠδίκησεν, Βονιφατίῳ
having-been-astounded — indeed Aetius in-nothing wronged to-Boniface
 δὲ λόγον προτρεπτικὸν μεθ' ὄρκων ἀπέστειλεν. τοῦ δὲ
and (a)-word exhorting with oaths sent — and
 Γοτθάρου τελευτήσαντος Γηζέριχος τῶν Οὐανδήλων γέγονεν
Gottharos having-died Gaiseric of-the Vandals became
 αὐτοκράτωρ. Βονιφάτιος δὲ τὸν λόγον δεξάμενος τῶν
autocrat Boniface and the word having-received against-the
 Οὐανδήλων κατεστράτευσεν, στρατοῦ μεγάλου ἐλθόντος αὐτῷ
Vandals marched (an)-army great having-come to-him
 ἀπὸ τε Ῥώμης καὶ τοῦ Βυζαντίου, στρατηγούντος Ἀσπαρος.
from both Rome and — Byzantium commanding Aspar
 πολέμου δὲ κροτηθέντος πρὸς Γηζέριχον ἡττήθη ὁ τῶν
war and having-been-struck-up against Gaiseric was-defeated the of-the
 Ῥωμαίων στρατός. καὶ οὕτω Βονιφάτιος μετὰ Ἀσπαρος
Romans army and thus Boniface with Aspar
 εἰς Ῥώμην ἐλθὼν τὴν ὑποψίαν διέλυσεν, ἀποδείξας τὴν
to Rome having-come the suspicion dissolved having-shown the
 ἀλήθειαν. ἡ δὲ Ἀφρικὴ ὑπ' Οὐανδήλοις γέγονε. τότε καὶ
truth — and Africa under (the)-Vandals came-to-be then also
 Μαρκιανὸς στρατιώτης ὢν καὶ δουλεύων τῷ Ἀσπαρι ζῶν
Marcian (a)-soldier being and serving — Aspar alive
 συνελήφθη ὑπὸ Γηζερίχου, ὁ μετὰ ταῦτα βασιλεύσας.
was-captured by Gaiseric the(-one) after these(-things) having-reigned
 Ἰστέον ὅτι τρεῖς ἀμερουμνεῖς εἰσὶν ἐν ὅλῃ τῇ
(one)-must-know that three commanders-of-the-faithful there-are in whole —
 Συρίᾳ ἡγγοῦν ἐν τῇ τῶν Ἀράβων ἀρχῇ, ὧν ὁ μὲν
Syria that-is in the of-the Arabs rule of-whom the indeed
 πρῶτος καθεύζεται ἐν τῷ Βαγδάδ, ἔστι δὲ ἐκ τῆς τοῦ
first sits in — Baghdad he-is and from the —

Μουάμεθ γενεᾶς ἦτοι τοῦ Μουχούμετ, ὁ δὲ β' καθέζεται
of-Muhammad family that-is — of-Muhammad the and 2 sits
 ἐν Ἀφρικῇ καὶ ἔστιν ἐκ τῆς τοῦ Ἀλήμ γενεᾶς καὶ
in Africa and is from the — of-Ali family and
 Φατιμὲ τῆς θυγατρὸς Μουάμεθ ἦτοι τοῦ Μουχούμετ, ἕξ
of-Fatima the daughter of-Muhammad that-is — of-Muhammad from
 οὗ καὶ Φατιμῖται ὀνομάζονται. ὁ δὲ τρίτος καθέζεται
whom also Fatimids are-named the and third sits
 ἐν Ἰσπανίᾳ, ἔστι δὲ ἀπὸ τῆς γενεᾶς τοῦ Μαβίου.
in Spain he-is and from the family — of-Muawiya
 Ἰστέον ὅτι ἐν τῷ κατ' ἀρχάς, ἐν τῷ κυριεῦσαι τοὺς
(one)-must-know that in the at (the)-beginnings in the to-become-lords the
 Σαρακηνοὺς πάσης τῆς Συρίας, ἐκαθέσθη ἀμερουμνῆς
Saracens of-all — Syria was-seated (a)-commander-of-the-faithful
 ἐν τῷ Βαγδάδ, ἐδέσποξε δὲ πάσης τῆς Περσίας καὶ τῆς
in — Baghdad was-master and of-all — Persia and —
 Ἀφρικῆς καὶ τῆς Αἰγύπτου καὶ τῆς εὐδαίμονος Ἀραβίας, καὶ
of-Africa and — of-Egypt and of-the blessed Arabia and
 εἶχεν ἀμνηραδίας μεγάλας ἦτοι στρατηγίδας ταύτας, πρώτην
had emirates great that-is commands these first
 ἀμνηραδίαν τὴν Περσίαν ἥγουν τὸ Χωροσάν, δευτέραν
emirate — Persia that-is — Khorasan second
 ἀμνηραδίαν τὴν Ἀφρικὴν, τρίτην ἀμνηραδίαν τὴν Αἴγυπτον,
emirate — Africa third emirate — Egypt
 τετάρτην ἀμνηραδίαν τὴν Φιλιστινὴν ἦτοι τὸ Ῥάμβλε,
fourth emirate — Philistim that-is — Ramla
 πέμπτην ἀμνηραδίαν τὴν Δάμασκον, ἕκτην ἀμνηραδίαν τὸ
fifth emirate — Damascus sixth emirate —
 Χέμψ ἦτοι τὸ Ἑμεσσα, ἑβδόμην ἀμνηραδίαν τὸ Χάλεπ,
Chemps that-is — Emessa seventh emirate — Aleppo
 ὀγδόην ἀμνηραδίαν τὴν Ἀντιόχειαν, ἐνάτην ἀμνηραδίαν τὸ
eighth emirate — Antioch ninth emirate —

Χαράν, δεκάτην ἀμνηραδίαν τὸ Ἑμετ, ἐνδεκάτην ἀμνηραδίαν
Charan tenth emirate — Emet eleventh emirate
 τὴν Ἑσιβή, δωδεκάτην ἀμνηραδίαν τὸ Μουσέλ, τρισδεκάτην
— Esibe twelfth emirate — Mosul thirteenth
 ἀμνηραδίαν τὸ Τικρίτ. τῆς δὲ Ἀφρικῆς ἀποσπασθείσης
emirate — Tikrit — and Africa having-been-torn-away
 ἀπὸ τῆς τοῦ ἀμερμουμνῆ ἐν τῷ Βαγδάδ ἐξουσίας καὶ
from the of-the commander-of-the-faithful in — Baghdad authority and
 ἰδιοκρατησάσης καὶ ἀμνηρῶν ἴδιον ἀναγορευσάσης γέγονε,
having-ruled-itself and (an)-emir own having-proclaimed became
 καθὼς καὶ προϋπήρχεν, πρώτη ἀμνηραδία ἡ Περσία, δευτέρα
as also it-was-before first emirate — Persia second
 ἡ Αἴγυπτος, καὶ καθεξῆς αἱ λοιπαὶ καθὼς προείρηται.
— Egypt and in-order the others as has-been-said-before
 ἀρτίως δὲ πάλιν τοῦ ἀμερμουμνῆ τοῦ ἐν τῷ Βαγδάδ
recently and again the commander-of-the-faithful the(-one) in — Baghdad
 ἀδυνατήσαντος γέγονεν ἰδιόρυθμος ὁ τῆς Περσίας ἀμνηρᾶς
having-become-powerless became independent the — of-Persia emir
 ἡγουν τοῦ Χορασάν, καὶ ἀπεκάλεσεν ἑαυτὸν ἀμερμουμνῆν,
that-is — of-Khorasan and called himself commander-of-the-faithful
 φορῶν καὶ τὸ κουράν διὰ πινακιδίων εἰς τὸν τράχηλον
wearing also the Koran by tablets around the neck
 αὐτοῦ δίκην μανιακίου. λέγει δὲ αὐτὸν εἶναι ἀπὸ
bis in-the-manner-of (a)-collar he-says and him to-be from
 τῆς γενεᾶς τοῦ Ἀλήμ. ὁ δὲ ἀμνηρᾶς τῆς εὐδαίμονος
the family — of-Ali the and emir of-the blessed
 Ἀραβίας ὑπήρχεν αἰὲν καὶ πάντοτε ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν
Arabia was always and at-all-times under the authority
 τοῦ ἀμνηρᾶ Αἰγύπτου, γέγονε δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς ἰδιόρυθμος,
of-the emir of-Egypt became and also he independent

καὶ ἀπεκάλεσεν καὶ αὐτὸς ἑαυτὸν ἀμερμουμνῆν. λέγει
 and called also he himself commander-of-the-faithful he-says
 δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς ἑαυτὸν εἶναι ἐκ τῆς τοῦ Ἀλήμ γενεᾶς.
 and also he himself to-be from the — of-Ali family

XXVI · THE GENEALOGY OF KING HUGH

King Hugh of Italy descends from Lothar and from Charles the Great. The chapter traces the struggles for Pavia among Louis, Berengar, and Rudolf. Berengar once escaped by lying unmoving among the dead, though pierced in the foot, and later starved out three Burgundian marquises, Hugh among them, sparing them on oath. After Berengar was murdered and Rudolf sent away, the people made Hugh king; he married Rudolf's widow Bertha, and his daughter Bertha married Romanos and was renamed Eudocia.

ἡ γενεαλογία τοῦ περιβλέπτου ῥηγὸς Οὔγωνος.
 the genealogy of-the illustrious king Hugh
 Ἰστέον ὅτι ὁ ῥῆξ Ἰταλίας ὁ μέγας Λωθάριος,
 (one)-must-know that the king of-Italy the great Lothar
 ὁ πάππος τοῦ περιβλέπτου ῥηγὸς Οὔγωνος, ἀπὸ
 the grandfather of-the illustrious king Hugh from
 τῆς γενεᾶς τοῦ μεγάλου Καρούλου κατήγετο, περὶ
 the family of-the great Charles was-descended about
 οὗ πολλὸς ἔπαινος ἐγκώμιά τε καὶ διηγήματα καὶ
 whom much praise encomia both and tales and
 περὶ πολέμους ἀνδραγαθήματα. οὗτος οὖν Κάρουλος ἦν
 in wars brave-deeds this then Charles was
 μονοκράτωρ πάντων τῶν ῥηγάτων, ἐβασίλευσε δὲ εἰς
 sole-ruler of-all the kingdoms he-reigned and in
 τὴν μεγάλην Φραγγίαν. ἐν δὲ ταῖς ἡμέραις αὐτοῦ οὐδεὶς
 the great Frankland in and the days his no-one

τῶν ὑπολοίπων ῥηγῶν ἐτόλμησε ῥῆγα ἑαυτὸν καλέσαι,
of-the remaining kings dared king himself to-call
 ἀλλὰ πάντες ὑπῆρχον ὑπόσπονδοι αὐτοῦ· ὅστις χρήματα
but all were tributaries his who monies
 ἱκανὰ καὶ πλοῦτον ἄφθονον ἐν Παλαιστίνῃ ἀποστείλας
sufficient and wealth abundant into Palestine having-sent
 ἐδείματο μοναστήρια πάμπολλα. ὁ τοῖνυν Λωθάριος οὗτος
built monasteries very-many — then Lothar this
 ἀναλαβόμενος τὰ ἑαυτοῦ στρατεύματα, κατὰ Ῥώμης
having-taken-up the his-own armies against Rome
 ἐκστρατεύσας ἀπὸ πολέμου ταύτην ἐκράτησε, καὶ ἐστέφθη
having-marched by war it took and was-crowned
 παρὰ τοῦ τότε πάπα· καὶ ἡνίκα ὑπέστρεφεν εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ
by the then pope and when he-was-returning to the his-own
 ἐξουσίαν ἤγουν εἰς Παπίαν, κατήντησεν εἰς τὸ κάστρον
domain that-is to Pavia he-arrived at the fortress
 Πλαζέντα τὸ ὄν ἀπὸ τριάκοντα μιλίων τῆς Παπίας.
Piacenza the(-one) being from thirty miles — of-Pavia
 κακεῖσε μὲν οὗτος τελευτᾷ, ἔτεκεν δὲ υἱὸν ὀνόματι
and-there indeed this-man dies he-begot and (a)-son by-name
 Ἀδέλβερτον, ὃς ἔγημε γυναῖκα τὴν μεγάλην Βέρταν, καὶ
Adalbert who married (as)-wife the great Bertha and
 ἐξ αὐτῆς τὴν προρρηθέντα ῥῆγα τὸν Οὕγωνα ἔτεκεν.
from her the aforesaid king — Hugh begot
 μετὰ δὲ τὸ τελευτῆσαι τὸν μέγαν Λωθάριον, Λοδοῖκος
after and the to-die the great Lothar Louis
 ὁ ἴδιος τοῦ Λοδοῖκου ἀπὸ τοῦ μεγάλῃς Φραγγίας
the own(-son) — of-Louis from the great Frankland
 ἐλθὼν ἐκράτησε τὴν Παπίαν. καὶ ἦν μὲν ἄστεπτος,
having-come took-control — Pavia and was indeed uncrowned
 ὕστερον δὲ ἦλθεν εἰς Βερῶναν, εἰς τὸ κάστρον τὸ
later and he-came to Verona to the fortress the(-one)

ὃν ἀπὸ ρκ' μιλίων τῆς Παπίας, καὶ ἐλθόντος αὐτοῦ
being from 120 miles — of-Pavia and having-come him
 ἐκεῖσε ἐπανεστήσαν αὐτῷ οἱ τοῦ αὐτοῦ κάστρου, καὶ
there rose-up against-him those of-the same fortress and
 κρατήσαντες ἐτύφλωσαν. καὶ τότε ἐκράτησε Βεριγγέριος
having-seized(-him) blinded(-him) and then took-control Berengar
 ὁ πάππος τοῦ νυνὶ Βεριγγέρι, καὶ εἰσελθὼν ἐν Ῥώμῃ
the grandfather of-the now Berengar and having-entered into Rome
 ἐστέφθη. καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο ἐδηλοποίησε λαὸς πολὺς τῷ
was-crowned and after this made-known (a)-people much —
 Ῥοδούλφῳ εἰς Βεργώνιαν ὄντι, λέγοντες ὅτι ἐλθὲ ἐνταῦθα,
to-Rudolf in Burgundy being saying that come here
 καὶ παραδίδομέν σοι τὸ ρηγάτον, καὶ ἀποκτενοῦμεν τὸν
and we-hand-over to-you the kingdom and we-will-kill —
 Βεριγγέριον. ὁ δὲ ἦλθε ἀπὸ Βεργώνιαν πρὸς τὰ μέρη τῆς
Berengar the and came from Burgundy to the parts —
 Παπίας, καὶ ὁ μὲν ἡμισυς λαὸς ἦν μετὰ τοῦ Βεριγγέρι,
of-Pavia and the indeed half people was with — Berengar
 ὁ δὲ λοιπὸς μετὰ τοῦ Ῥοδούλφου. καὶ πολεμήσαντες,
the and rest with — Rudolf and having-warred
 ἐνίκησεν ὁ Βεριγγέρις τὸν πρῶτον πόλεμον, καὶ πάλιν
won — Berengar the first war and again
 πολεμήσαντες, ἐνίκησεν ὁ Ῥοδούλφος, καὶ ἔφυγεν ὁ
having-warred won — Rudolf and fled the
 λαὸς τοῦ Βεριγγέρι. καὶ μόνος καταλειφθεὶς ὁ Βεριγγέρις
people — of-Berengar and alone having-been-left — Berengar
 ἐποίησεν ἑαυτὸν ὡς τεθνεῶτα, καὶ ἔπεσεν μέσον τῶν
made himself as dead and fell among the
 τεθνεῶτων, σκεπάσας αὐτὸν μετὰ τῆς δορκᾶς αὐτοῦ,
dead having-covered himself with the shield his
 τὸν δὲ πόδα αὐτοῦ εἶχεν ἔξω. ἐλθὼν δὲ εἰς ἐκ τῶν
the but foot his he-bad outside having-come and one of the

στρατιωτῶν τοῦ Ῥοδούλφου δέδωκεν αὐτῷ μετὰ μεναύλου
soldiers — of-Rudolf gave him with (a)-pike
 εἰς τὸν πόδα, αὐτὸς δὲ τὸ σύνολον οὐκ ἔσαλεύθη· τοῦ
in the foot he and the altogether not was-moved the(-one)
 δὲ μὴ σαλευθέντος, ἀφίησιν αὐτὸν ὡς δῆθεν νεκρὸν ὄντα.
and not having-moved he-leaves him as forsooth dead being
 ἡγνόει δὲ ὁ τοῦ Ῥοδούλφου λαὸς ὅτι ὁ Βεριγγέρις
did-not-know and the — of-Rudolf people that — Berengar
 ἐστί. καὶ παύσαντος τοῦ πολέμου ἡγέρθη ὁ Βεριγγέρις, καὶ
it-is and having-stopped the war rose-up — Berengar and
 ἦλθεν εἰς τὸ παλάτιον αὐτοῦ μόνος, καὶ πάλιν ἐκράτησε
came to the palace his alone and again took-control
 τῆς βασιλείας, καὶ ἐπολέμησε τὸν Ῥοδούλφον, καὶ ἐνίκησεν
of-the kingdom and warred-upon — Rudolf and conquered
 αὐτόν. μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο συνεβιβάσθησαν εἰς ἀλλήλους καὶ
him after and this they-were-reconciled to each-other and
 ἐμερίσθησαν τὴν χώραν εἰς δύο, καὶ ὁ μὲν εἰς ἀνελάβετο
divided the land into two and the indeed one took
 τὸ ἐν μέρος τῆς χώρας, ὁ δὲ ἕτερος τὸ ἕτερον. ἦν δὲ
the one part of-the land the and other the other was and
 ὁ Ῥοδούλφος ὑπὸ τὴν βουλὴν καὶ ἐξουσίαν τοῦ Βεριγγέρι.
— Rudolf under the counsel and authority — of-Berengar
 καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο ἦλθον ἀπὸ Βεργῶνια τρεῖς μαρκήσιοι
and after this came from Burgundy three marquises
 πρὸς Παπίαν τοῦ ἐκδιῶξαι τοὺς κρατοῦντας καὶ κρατῆσαι
to Pavia of-the to-drive-out those holding-power and to-bold-power
 αὐτοί· ἦσαν δὲ οὗτοι Οὔγων ὁ Ταλιαφέρνου καὶ
themselves were and these Hugh the(-son) of-Taliaferno and
 Βόζων καὶ Οὔγων ὁ ἀδελφὸς τοῦ Βόζου, ὁ προρρηθεὶς
Boso and Hugh the brother — of-Boso the aforesaid
 εὐγενέστατος ῥήξ. ἦλθε δὲ μετὰ λαοῦ ἱκανοῦ. καὶ μαθὼν
most-noble king came and with people considerable and having-learned

ὁ Βεριγγέρις ἡτοιμάσθη, καὶ ἀπῆλθεν εἰς συνάντησιν
 — Berengar made-ready and went-away to meeting
 αὐτοῦ πρὸς πόλεμον, καὶ παρακαθίσας ἐστενοχώρησεν
 him for war and having-sat-down he-straitened
 αὐτοὺς ἀπὸ λιμοῦ, καὶ ὥρισε τὸν λαὸν αὐτοῦ μὴ φονεύειν
 them by hunger and ordered the people his not to-kill
 τινά, ἀλλ' ὅπου ἂν κρατήσωσί τινα ἐξ αὐτῶν κόπτωσι
 anyone but wherever — they-seize anyone of them they-should-cut-off
 τὴν ῥίνα αὐτοῦ καὶ τὰ δύο ὠτία καὶ ἀπολύωσιν· ὁ
 the nose his and the two ears and let(-him)-go which
 δὴ καὶ ἐποιοῦν. θεασάμενοι οὖν τοῦτο αἱ προρρηθεῖσαι
 indeed also they-did having-seen then this the aforesaid
 τρεῖς κεφαλαί, ἄραντες ἀνυπόδετοι τὰ θεῖα εὐαγγέλια εἰς
 three heads having-lifted barefoot the divine gospels into
 τὰς χεῖρας αὐτῶν ἦλθον πρὸς τὸν Βεριγγέριν, αἰτούμενοι
 the hands their came to — Berengar asking
 συγχώρησιν καὶ ὀμνύοντες τοῦ μηκέτι ἐλθεῖν ἐνθάδε μέχρι
 pardon and swearing of-the no-longer to-come here until
 τέλους ζωῆς αὐτοῦ· καὶ τότε εἴασεν αὐτοὺς ἀπελθεῖν εἰς
 (the)-end of-life his and then he-let them to-go-away to
 τὴν ἰδίαν χώραν. ὕστερον δὲ τοῦ Βεριγγέρι ἀπελθόντος
 the own land later and — Berengar having-gone-away
 εἰς Βερώναν, ἀπέκτεινεν αὐτὸν Φαλάμβερτος ὁ σύντεκνος
 to Verona killed him Falambert the fellow-sponsor
 αὐτοῦ, καὶ τότε ἐκράτησεν ὅλον τὸ ρηγάτον Ῥοδοῦλφος.
 his and then took-control-of whole the kingdom Rudolf
 καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο ἐμήνυσεν ὁ λαὸς τῆς χώρας ὅλης εἰς
 and after this sent-word the people of-the land whole to
 Βεργωνίαν τῷ Οὔγωνι τῷ προρρηθέντι ρηγί, λέγοντες ὅτι
 Burgundy — to-Hugh the aforesaid king saying that
 ἔλθε καὶ παραδιδόμεν σοι τὴν χώραν. καὶ ἐλθόντος αὐτοῦ,
 come and we-band-over to-you the land and having-come him

ἐπῆρον αὐτὸν ὁ λαὸς καὶ ἀπήγαγον εἰς τὸ παλάτιον
lifted him the people and led(-him)-away to the palace
 καὶ ἀπεκατέστησαν αὐτὸν ῥῆγα. τὸν δὲ Ῥοδοῦλφον εἶπον
and restored him (as)-king — and Rudolf they-told
 ὅτι ἄπελθε μετὰ τοῦ πλούτου σου, θέλῃς εἰς τὴν
that go-away with the wealth your whether-you-wish to the
 χώραν σου, θέλῃς ἀλλαχοῦ. ὁ δὲ ἀπῆλθεν εἰς Βεργωνίαν
land your or-you-wish elsewhere he and went-away to Burgundy
 εἰς τὴν χώραν αὐτοῦ, καὶ κατέειχε ἐκεῖσε λαὸν ἱκανόν.
to the land his and kept there people considerable
 καὶ τελευτήσαντος αὐτοῦ ἀπῆλθεν Οὓγων ὁ προρρηθεὶς
and having-died him went-away Hugh the aforesaid
 ῥῆξ εἰς Βεργωνίαν, καὶ τὴν γυναῖκα τοῦ Ῥοδούλφου,
king to Burgundy and the wife — of-Rudolf
 ἥτις καὶ Βέρτα ὠνομάζετο, ἔλαβεν εἰς γυναῖκα, τὴν
who also Bertha was-named took for wife the
 δὲ θυγατέρα αὐτῆς ὀνόματι Ἀδέλεσαν δέδωκεν Λωθαρίῳ
and daughter her by-name Adelaide he-gave to-Lothar
 τῷ υἱῷ αὐτοῦ, τῷ νυνὶ ὄντι Ἰταλίας ῥηγί. ἡ δὲ
the son his the now being of-Italy king she and
 ἀνελθοῦσα ἐν Κωνσταντινουπόλει καὶ συναφθεῖσα Ῥωμανῷ
having-gone-up to Constantinople and having-been-joined to-Romanos
 τῷ πορφυρογεννήτῳ υἱῷ Κωνσταντίνου τοῦ φιλοχρίστου
the porphyrogennetos son of-Constantine the Christ-loving
 δεσπότου, ἥτοι ἡ θυγάτηρ τοῦ αὐτοῦ περιβλέπτου ῥηγὸς
lord that-is the daughter of-the same illustrious king
 Οὓγωνος, ἥ ὠνομάζετο Βέρτα κατὰ τὸ ὄνομα τῆς
Hugh who was-named Bertha according-to the name of-the
 μάμμης αὐτῆς τῆς μεγάλης Βέρτας, ἥτις μετὰ θάνατον
grandmother her the great Bertha who after (the)-death
 τοῦ Ἀδελβέρτου ἀνδρὸς αὐτῆς ἐβασίλευσεν ἔτη ***.
— of-Adalbert husband her reigned years (lacuna)

μετωνομάσθη δὲ Εὐδοκία κατὰ τὸ ὄνομα τῆς τε μάμμης
was-renamed and Eudocia according-to the name of-the both grandmother
 καὶ ἀδελφῆς Κωνσταντίνου τοῦ φιλοχρίστου δεσπότη.
and sister of-Constantine the Christ-loving lord

XXVII · THE THEME OF LOMBARDY

All Italy was once ruled by two Roman patricians. When Irene mocked Narses with a spindle, he invited the Lombards from Pannonia. They took Benevento by guile and conquered most of the land, except the coastal cities. The princes of Benevento, Salerno, and Capua are traced. Then come the origin of the Venetians and lists of their island and mainland fortresses.

περὶ τοῦ θέματος Λογουβαρδίας, καὶ τῶν ἐν αὐτῇ
concerning the theme of-Lombardy and the in it
 πριγκιπάτων καὶ ἀρχοντιῶν.
principalities and governments
 Ἰστέον ὅτι ἐν τοῖς παλαιοῖς χρόνοις κατεκρατεῖτο
(one)-must-know that in the ancient times was-held
 ἡ πᾶσα ἐξουσία τῆς Ἰταλίας, ἥ τε Νεάπολις καὶ
the whole dominion — of-Italy — both Naples and
 Καπύη καὶ ἡ Βενεβενδὸς τό τε Σαλερινὸν καὶ ἡ
Capua and — Benevento — both Salerno and —
 Ἀμάλφη καὶ Γαῖτῇ καὶ πᾶσα ἡ Λογουβαρδία, παρὰ τῶν
Amalfi and Gaeta and all — Lombardy by the
 Ῥωμαίων, δηλονότι βασιλευομένης τῆς Ῥώμης. μετὰ δὲ τὸ
Romans evidently being-ruled — Rome after and the
 ἀνελθεῖν τὸ βασιλεῖον ἐν Κωνσταντινουπόλει διμερίσθησαν
to-go-up the imperial-seat to Constantinople were-divided
 ταῦτα πάντα εἰς ἀρχὰς δύο, ἐξ οὗ καὶ παρὰ τοῦ
these all into governments two from which also by the(-one)

βασιλεύοντος ἐν Κωνσταντινουπόλει ἀπεστέλλοντο πατρίκιοι
reigning in Constantinople were-sent patricians
 δύο, καὶ ὁ μὲν εἷς πατρίκιος ἐκράτει τὴν Σικελίαν καὶ
two and the indeed one patrician held — Sicily and
 τὴν Καλαβρίαν καὶ τὴν Νεάπολιν καὶ Ἀμάλφην, ὁ δὲ
— Calabria and — Naples and Amalfi the and
 ἕτερος πατρίκιος ἐκαθέζετο εἰς Βενεβενδὸν καὶ ἐκράτει τὴν
other patrician sat at Benevento and held —
 Παπίαν καὶ τὴν Κάπυαν καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ πάντα, καὶ ἐτέλουν
Pavia and — Capua and the other all and they-paid
 κατ' ἔτος τῷ βασιλεῖ τὰ νενομισμένα τῷ δημοσίῳ.
by year to-the emperor the(-things) customary to-the treasury
 αὗται δὲ πᾶσαι αἱ προρρηθεῖσαι χῶραι κατοικοῦντο παρὰ
these and all the aforesaid lands were-inhabited by
 τῶν Ῥωμαίων. ἐν δὲ τοῖς καιροῖς Εἰρήνης τῆς βασιλίδος
the Romans in and the times of-Irene the empress
 ἀποσταλεῖς ὁ πατρίκιος Ναρσῆς ἐκράτει τὴν Βενεβενδὸν
having-been-sent the patrician Narses held — Benevento
 καὶ τὴν Παπίαν, καὶ Ζαχαρίας ὁ πάπας Ἀθηναῖος ἐκράτει
and — Pavia and Zacharias the pope (an)-Athenian held
 τὴν Ῥώμην. συνέβη δὲ πολέμους γενέσθαι εἰς τὰ τῆς
— Rome it-happened and wars to-occur in the —
 Παπίας μέρη, καὶ ἐξωδίασεν ὁ πατρίκιος Ναρσῆς εἰς
of-Pavia parts and spent the patrician Narses on
 τὸν στρατὸν τὰ εἰσκομιζόμενα πάκτα τῷ δημοσίῳ, καὶ
the army the being-brought-in tributes to-the treasury and
 οὐκ ἀπεστάλη ἢ κατὰ τύπον εἰσκομιδῇ παρ' αὐτοῦ· ὁ
not was-sent the according-to rule revenue by him —
 δὲ Ναρσῆς ἀντεμήνυσεν ὅτι ἀπὸ τῶν αὐτόθι μᾶλλον
and Narses sent-word-back that from the(-people) there rather
 ἐλπίζω μοι ἀποσταλῆναι χρήματα, ἐπειδὴ πᾶσαν τὴν
I-expect to-me to-be-sent monies since all the

ἀπὸ τῶν ὧδε εἰσκομιζομένην εἰσκομιδὴν εἰς τοὺς
from the(-people) here being-brought-in revenue on the
 ἀνακύψαντας πολέμους κατηνάλωσα, καὶ μᾶλλον ὑμεῖς
having-arisen wars I-have-spent and rather you
 ἀπὸ τῶν ὧδε ζητεῖτε εἰσκομιδάς. ταῦτα ἀκούσασα
from the(-people) here seek revenues these(-things) having-heard
 ἡ βασίλισσα Εἰρήνη καὶ ὀργισθεῖσα ἀπέστειλεν αὐτῷ
the empress Irene and having-been-angered sent to-him
 ἄτρακτον καὶ ἡλακάτην, γράψασα πρὸς αὐτὸν ὅτι λάβε
(a)-spindle and (a)-distaff having-written to him that take
 ταῦτα, ἃ καὶ ἀρμόζει σοι νήθειν σε γὰρ μᾶλλον
these(-things) which also befit you to-spin you for rather
 ἐκρίναμεν δίκαιον ἢ μετὰ ὅπλων ὡς ἄνδρα διεκδικεῖν καὶ
we-have-judged just than with arms as (a)-man to-defend and
 διευθύνειν καὶ ὑπερπολεμεῖν Ῥωμαίων. ταῦτα ἀκούσας
to-govern and to-fight-for (the)-Romans these(-things) having-heard
 ὁ πατρίκιος Ναρσῆς ἀντέγραψε πρὸς τὴν βασιλίδαν ὅτι
the patrician Narses wrote-back to the empress that
 ἐπεὶ οὕτω παρ' ὑμῖν ἐνομίσθην νήθειν καὶ κλώθειν
since thus by you I-was-deemed to-spin and to-twist-thread
 καθάπερ γυνή, κλώσαι ἔχω νήματα μετὰ τῆς ἀτράκτου
like (a)-woman to-twist I-have threads with the spindle
 καὶ ἡλακάτης, ἵνα μέχρις ἂν ζώσιν οἱ Ῥωμαῖοι μὴ
and distaff so-that as-long-as — live the Romans not
 δυνηθῶσιν ἐξυφᾶναι ταῦτα. οἱ δὲ Λογουβάρδοι τῷ τότε
they-may-be-able to-unweave them the and Lombards at-the then
 καιρῷ κατόικουν εἰς Πανωνίαν, ἔνθα ἀρτίως οἰκοῦσιν οἱ
time dwelt in Pannonia where now dwell the
 Τούρκοι. καὶ ἀποστείλας ὁ πατρίκιος Ναρσῆς πρὸς αὐτοὺς
Turks and having-sent the patrician Narses to them
 ὁπώρας παντοίας. ἐδηλοποίησεν αὐτοῖς ὅτι δεῦτε ἐνταῦθα,
fruits of-every-kind made-known to-them that come here

καὶ θεάσασθε γῆν ῥέουσιν κατὰ τὸ εἰρημένον μέλι
and behold (a)-land flowing according-to the said(-word) honey
καὶ γάλα, ἧς, ὥς οἶμαι, ὁ θεὸς κρείττονα οὐκ ἔχει·
and milk than-which as I-think — God better not has
καὶ εἰ ἔστιν ὑμῖν ἀρεστόν, κατοικήσατε ἐν αὐτῇ, ὅπως εἰς
and if it-is to-you pleasing settle in it so-that to
αἰῶνα αἰῶνος μακαρίζετε με. ταῦτα δὲ ἀκούσαντες
(the)-age of-age you-may-call-blessed me these(-things) and having-heard
οἱ Λογούβαρδοι καὶ πεισθέντες, ἀναλαβόμενοι τὰς
the Lombards and having-been-persuaded having-taken-up the
φαμιλίας αὐτῶν, ἦλθον εἰς Βενεβενδόν. οἱ δὲ τοῦ
households their came to Benevento those and of-the
κάστρου Βενεβενδοῦ οὐκ εἶσαν αὐτοὺς ἔνδον τοῦ κάστρου
fortress of-Benevento not let them inside of-the fortress
εἰσελθεῖν, ὥκησαν δὲ ἔξωθεν τοῦ κάστρου πλησίον τοῦ
to-enter they-dwelt and outside of-the fortress near the
τείχους εἰς τὸν ποταμόν, οἰκοδομήσαντες ἐκεῖσε κάστρον
wall by the river having-built there (a)-fortress
μικρόν, ἐξ οὗ καὶ ὀνομάζεται Τζιβιτανόβα, τουτέστι
small from which also it-is-named Civita-Nova that-is
νεόκαστρον· ὃ καὶ μέχρι τῆς σήμερον συνίσταται.
new-fortress which also until the today stands
εἰσῆρχοντο δὲ καὶ ἔνδοθεν τοῦ κάστρου καὶ ἐν τῇ
they-went-in and also inside the fortress and into the
ἐκκλησίᾳ, καὶ διὰ μηχανῆς κυριεύσαντες τοὺς οἰκήτορας
church and by (a)-stratagem having-mastered the inhabitants
τοῦ κάστρου Βενεβενδοῦ ἀνείλον πάντας καὶ κατέσχον
of-the fortress of-Benevento they-destroyed all and occupied
τὸ κάστρον· ἔσωθεν γὰρ διὰ τῶν ῥάβδων αὐτῶν σπαθία
the fortress inside for through the staves their swords
βαστάζοντες, καὶ ἐν τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ ὑποτρόπον ποιήσαντες
carrying and in the church (a)-turning-round having-made

ἐπὶ τὸ αὐτὸ μάχην, πάντας, ὡς εἴρηται, ἀπέκτειναν. καὶ
on the same fight all as has-been-said they-killed and
 ἔκτοτε ἐκστρατεύσαντες πᾶσαν τὴν γῆν ἐκείνην ὑπέταξαν
from-then having-marched-out all the land that they-subjected
 τοῦ τε θέματος Λογουβαρδίας καὶ Καλαβρίας καὶ ἕως
of-the both theme of-Lombardy and Calabria and as-far-as
 Παπίας, ἄνευ τῆς Ὑδρεντοῦ καὶ Καλλιπόλεως καὶ τοῦ
Pavia except — Otranto and Gallipoli and —
 Ῥουσιάνου καὶ τῆς Νεαπόλεως καὶ τῆς Γαϊτῆς καὶ
Rossano and — Naples and — Gaeta and
 Συρεντοῦ καὶ Ἀμάλφης. πρῶτον δὲ κάστρον ὑπῆρχεν
Sorrento and Amalfi first and fortress was
 ἀρχαῖον καὶ μέγα ἡ Κάπυα, δευτέρα ἡ Νεάπολις, τρίτη
ancient and great — Capua second — Naples third
 ἡ Βενεβενδός, τετάρτη ἡ Γαϊτή, πέμπτη ἡ Ἀμάλφη. τὸ
— Benevento fourth — Gaeta fifth — Amalfi —
 δὲ Σαλερινὸν ὠκίσθη ἐπὶ τοῦ Σικάρδου, ὅτε διεμέρισαν
and Salerno was-settled under — Sicard when divided
 οἱ Λογούβαρδοι τὰ πριγκιπάτα. εἰσὶ δὲ μέχρις τῆς
the Lombards the principalities there-are and until the
 σήμερον, ἣτις ἐστὶν ἰνδικτιῶν ἑβδόμη, ἔτη ἀπὸ κτίσεως
today which is (the)-indiction seventh years from (the)-creation
 κόσμου ,σνζ΄, ἀφ’ οὗ ἐμερίσθη ἡ Λογουβαρδία ἔτη σ΄.
of-(the)-world 6457 since — was-divided — Lombardy years 200
 ὑπῆρχον δὲ ἀδελφοὶ δύο, ὁ Σίκων καὶ ὁ Σικάρδος· καὶ
there-were and brothers two — Sico and — Sicard and
 ὁ μὲν Σίκων ἐκράτησε τὴν Βενεβενδὸν καὶ τὰ μέρη τῆς
— indeed Sico held — Benevento and the parts —
 Βάρεως καὶ τῆς Σιπενδοῦ, ὁ δὲ Σικάρδος τὸ Σαλερινὸν
of-Bari and — of-Siponto — and Sicard — Salerno
 καὶ τὴν Κάπυαν καὶ τὰ μέρη τῆς Καλαβρίας. ἡ δὲ
and — Capua and the parts — of-Calabria — and

Νεάπολις ἦν ἀρχαῖον πραιτώριον τῶν κατερχομένων
Naples was (the)-ancient praetorium of-the coming-down
 πατρικίων, καὶ ὁ κρατῶν τὴν Νεάπολιν κατείχε
patricians and the(-one) holding — Naples possessed
 καὶ τὴν Σικελίαν, καὶ ἡνίκα κατέλαβεν ὁ πατρίκιος ἐν
also — Sicily and when arrived the patrician at
 Νεαπόλει, ἀπήρχετο ὁ δούξ Νεαπόλεως ἐν Σικελίᾳ. ἡ
Naples went-away the duke of-Naples to Sicily —
 δὲ Κάπυα ἦν πόλις ὑπερμεγέθης, καὶ ἐάλω ὑπὸ τῶν
and Capua was (a)-city very-large and was-taken by the
 Οὐανδήλων ἧτοι τῶν Ἀφρικῶν, καὶ κατέλυσαν αὐτήν.
Vandals that-is the Africans and they-destroyed it
 ἐρημοκάστρου δὲ οὔσης ὥκουν ἐν αὐτῇ Λογούβαρδοι. καὶ
(a)-deserted-fortress and being dwelt in it Lombards and
 πάλιν τῶν Ἀφρικῶν ἐπερχομένων κατ' αὐτῶν ὠκοδόμησεν
again the Africans coming-upon against them built
 ὁ ἐπίσκοπος Λανδοῦλφος κάστρον εἰς τὴν γέφυραν τοῦ
the bishop Landulf (a)-fortress at the bridge of-the
 ποταμοῦ, καὶ ἐπωνόμασεν αὐτὸ Κάπυαν νέαν, τὴν καὶ
river and named it Capua new the(-one) also
 νῦν οὖσαν. ἀφ' οὗ δὲ ἐκτίσθη ἡ αὕτη Κάπυα εἰσὶν
now being since — and was-built the same Capua there-are
 ἔτη ογ'. ἡ δὲ Νεάπολις καὶ ἡ Ἀμάλφη καὶ ἡ Συρεντὸς
years 73 — and Naples and — Amalfi and — Sorrento
 ὑπῆρχον ἀεὶ ὑπὸ τὸν βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων.
were always under the emperor of-(the)-Romans
 Ἰστέον ὅτι μαστρομήλης ἐρμηνεύεται τῇ Ῥωμαίων
(one)-must-know that mastromiles is-interpreted in-the of-(the)-Romans
 διαλέκτῳ κατεπάνω τοῦ στρατοῦ.
dialect katepano of-the army

Ἰστέον ὅτι πρὸ τοῦ περᾶσαι τοὺς Βενετικούς καὶ
 (one)-must-know that before the to-cross the Venetians and
 οἰκῆσαι εἰς τὰ νησία εἰς ᾧ νῦν οἰκοῦσιν, ἐκαλοῦντο
 to-settle on the islets on which now they-dwell they-were-called
 Ἐνετικοί, καὶ κατώκουν εἰς τὴν ξηρὰν εἰς αὐτὰ τὰ
 Enetikoi and dwelt on the dry-land in those the
 κάστρα, κάστρον Κόγκορδα, κάστρον Ἰουστινιάνα, κάστρον
 fortresses fortress Concordia fortress Iustiniana fortress
 τοῦ Νούνου, καὶ ἕτερα πλείστα κάστρα.

— of-Nounos and other very-many fortresses

Ἰστέον ὅτι περασάντων τῶν νῦν καλουμένων Βενετικών,
 (one)-must-know that having-crossed those now called Venetians
 πρῶτον δὲ Ἐνετικῶν, ἔκτισαν ἐν πρώτοις κάστρον
 first and Enetikoi they-built among (the)-first (a)-fortress
 ὀχυρόν, ἐν ᾧ καὶ σήμερον καθέζεται ὁ δούξ Βενετίας,
 strong in which also today sits the duke of-Venice
 ἔχον κύκλωθεν θάλασσαν ὥσὲ μιλίων ἕξ, εἰς ἣν καὶ
 having around sea about of-miles six into which also
 εἰσέρχονται ποταμοὶ κζ'. ὑπάρχουσι δὲ καὶ νῆσοι κατ'
 flow rivers 27 there-are and also islands toward
 ἀνατολὰς τοῦ αὐτοῦ. ἔκτισαν δὲ καὶ ἐν ταῖς αὐταῖς νήσοις
 (the)-east of-the same they-built and also on the same islands
 οἱ νῦν Βενέτικοι καλούμενοι κάστρα, κάστρον Κογράδον,
 those now Venetians called fortresses fortress Grado
 ἐν ᾧ καὶ μητρόπολις ἔστι μεγάλη, καὶ πολλὰ λείψανα
 in which also (a)-metropolis is great and many relics
 ἁγίων ἐν ταύτῃ ἀπόκεινται, κάστρον Ῥιβαλενσής, κάστρον
 of-saints in it are-laid-up fortress Rivalensis fortress
 Λουλιανόν, κάστρον Ἀψανον, κάστρον Ῥωματινά, κάστρον
 Loulianon fortress Apsanon fortress Romatina fortress
 Λικεντζία, κάστρον Πίνεταί, ὅπερ λέγεται Στρόβιλος,
 Likentzia fortress Pinetai which is-called Strovilos

κάστρον Βινίολα, κάστρον Βόες, ἐν ᾧ ὑπάρχει ναὸς τοῦ
fortress Vinolia fortress Voes in which is (a)-temple of-the
 ἁγίου ἀποστόλου Πέτρου, κάστρον Ἠλιτουάλβα, κάστρον
holy apostle Peter fortress Elitoualva fortress
 Λιτουμανκέρσες, κάστρον Βρόνιον, κάστρον Μαδαῦκον,
Litoumankerses fortress Vronion fortress Malamocco
 κάστρον Ἡβόλα, κάστρον Πριστήνα, κάστρον Κλουγία,
fortress Evola fortress Pristena fortress Chioggia
 κάστρον Βρουῦνδον, κάστρον Φοσαῶν, κάστρον Λαυριτῶν.
fortress Vroundon fortress of-Fosaoi fortress of-Lauritai
 Ἰστέον ὅτι καὶ εἰσὶν ἕτεραι νῆσοι ἐν τῇ αὐτῶν χώρᾳ
(one)-must-know that also there-are other islands in the their land
 Βενετίας.

of-Venice

Ἰστέον ὅτι καὶ ἐν τῇ στερεᾷ εἰς τὸ μέρος τῆς
(one)-must-know that also on the mainland in the part —
 Ἰταλίας ὑπάρχουσι κάστρα τῶν Βενετίκων, ἅτινά εἰσι
of-Italy there-are fortresses of-the Venetians which are
 ταῦτα, κάστρον Κάπρε, κάστρον Νεόκαστρον, κάστρον
these fortress Kapre fortress Neokastron fortress
 Φινές, κάστρον Αἰκυλον, κάστρον Ἀειμάνας, ἐμπόριον
Fines fortress Aikylon fortress Aeimanas (a)-market
 μέγα Τορτζελῶν, κάστρον Μουράν, κάστρον Ῥίβαντον,
great of-Torcello fortress Murano fortress Rialto
 ὃ ἐρμηνεύεται τόπος ὑψηλότατος, ἐν ᾧ καθέζεται ὁ
which is-interpreted place highest in which sits the
 δούξ Βενετίας, κάστρον Καβερτζέντζης.

duke of-Venice fortress Kavertzentzes

Ἰστέον ὅτι καὶ ἐμπόρια εἰσὶ καὶ καστέλλια.
(one)-must-know that also markets there-are and castles

Franks fleeing Attila settled the empty islands of Venice. When King Pippin later attacked, the Venetians blocked the channel with stakes and held out for six months, saying they would serve the emperor of the Romans. In the end they agreed to pay a tribute. They elected a duke and later moved his seat to an island farther from the shore.

διήγησις πῶς κατωκίσθη ἡ νῦν καλουμένη Βενετία.

(an)-account how was-settled the now called Venice

Ἰστέον ὅτι ἡ Βενετία τὸ μὲν παλαιὸν ἦν τόπος

(one)-must-know that — Venice in-the indeed old(-days) was (a)-place

ἔρημός τις ἀοίκητος καὶ βαλτώδης, οἱ δὲ νῦν καλούμενοι
deserted some uninhabited and marshy those and now called

Βενέτικοι ὑπῆρχον Φράγγοι ἀπὸ Ἀκουηλεγίας καὶ ἀπὸ

Venetians were Franks from Aquileia and from

τῶν ἐτέρων τόπων τῆς Φραγγίας, καὶ κατῴκουν εἰς

the other places — of-Frankland and dwelt on

τὴν ξηρὰν ἀντικρὺ τῆς Βενετίας. τοῦ δὲ Ἀτίλα τοῦ

the dry-land opposite — of-Venice — and Attila the

βασιλέως τῶν Ἀβάρων ἐλθόντος καὶ πάσας τὰς Φραγγίας

king of-the Avars having-come and all the Franklands

καταληϊσάμενου καὶ ἀφανίσαντος, ἤρξαντο φεύγειν μὲν

having-plundered and having-destroyed began to-flee indeed

πάντες οἱ Φράγγοι ἀπὸ Ἀκουηλεγίας καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν ἐτέρων

all the Franks from Aquileia and from the other

τῆς Φραγγίας κάστρων, ἔρχεσθαι δὲ πρὸς τὰς ἀοικήτους

— of-Frankland fortresses to-come and to the uninhabited

νῆσους τῆς Βενετίας καὶ ποιεῖν ἐκεῖσε καλύβια διὰ

islands — of-Venice and to-make there huts because-of

τὸν τοῦ βασιλέως Ἀτίλα φόβον. αὐτοῦ οὖν τοῦ βασιλέως

the of-the king Attila fear him then the king

Ἀτίλα ληϊσάμενου πᾶσαν τὴν χώραν τῆς ξηρᾶς καὶ μέχρι
Attila having-plundered all the land of-the dry-land and as-far-as
 Ῥώμης καὶ Καλαβρίας ἐλθόντος καὶ τὴν Βενετίαν μακρόθεν
Rome and Calabria having-come and — Venice far-off
 καταλιπόντος, ἄδειαν εὐρόντες οἱ προσπεφευγότες ἐν ταῖς
having-left freedom having-found those having-fled to the
 νήσοις τῆς Βενετίας, καὶ οἷον τὴν δειλίαν ἀποσεισάμενοι,
islands — of-Venice and as-it-were the cowardice having-shaken-off
 ἅπαντες ἐβουλεύσαντο τοῦ κατοικῆσαι ἐκεῖσε· ὅπερ καὶ
all resolved of-the to-settle there which also
 ἐποίησαν, κατοικήσαντες ἐκεῖσε μέχρι τῆς σήμερον. μετὰ δὲ
they-did having-settled there until the today after and
 τὸ ἀναχωρῆσαι τὸν Ἀτίλαν μετὰ χρόνους πολλοὺς πάλιν
the to-withdraw — Attila after years many again
 παρεγένετο Πιπῖνος ὁ ῥήξ, ὃς ἦρχε τότε τῆς τε Παπίας
came Pippin the king who ruled then — both of-Pavia
 καὶ ἐτέρων ῥηγάτων· εἶχεν γὰρ οὗτος ὁ Πιπῖνος ἀδελφοὺς
and of-other kingdoms he-had for this — Pippin brothers
 τρεῖς, οἵτινες ἦρχον πασῶν τῶν Φραγγίων καὶ Σκλαβινίων.
three who ruled all the Franklands and Slaviniats
 τοῦ δὲ ῥηγὸς Πιπίνου ἐλθόντος κατὰ τῶν Βενετῶν
the and king Pippin having-come against the Venetians
 μετὰ δυνάμεως καὶ λαοῦ πολλοῦ, παρεκάθισεν διὰ τῆς
with (a)-force and people much he-sat-down by the
 ξηρᾶς ἐκεῖθεν τοῦ περάματος τῶν νήσων τῆς Βενετίας,
dry-land on-that-side of-the crossing of-the islands — of-Venice
 εἰς τόπον λεγόμενον Ἀειβόλας. οἱ οὖν Βενετικοὶ ἰδόντες
at (a)-place called Aeivolas the then Venetians having-seen
 τὸν ῥήγα Πιπῖνον μετὰ τῆς ἑαυτοῦ δυνάμεως κατ' αὐτῶν
the king Pippin with the his-own force against them
 ἐπερχόμενον καὶ μέλλοντα μετὰ τῶν ἵππων ἀποπλεῦσαι
coming and about with the horses to-sail-off

πρὸς τὴν νῆσον τοῦ Μαδαμαύκου (ἔστι γὰρ αὕτη ἡ
to the island — of-Malamocco is for this the
 νῆσος πλησίον τῆς ξηρᾶς), βαλόντες κερατάρια ἅπαν τὸ
island near the dry-land having-thrown stakes all the
 πέραμα ἐναπέφραξαν. εἰς ἀμηχανίαν οὖν ἐλθὼν ὁ τοῦ
crossing blocked into helplessness then having-come the of-the
 ῥήγος Πιπίνου λαὸς (οὐδὲ γὰρ ἦν δυνατὸν αὐτοὺς ἀλλαχοῦ
king Pippin people not for was (it)-possible them elsewhere
 περᾶσαι) παρεκάθισαν αὐτοῖς διὰ τῆς ξηρᾶς μῆνας ἕξ,
to-cross sat-down against-them by the dry-land months six
 πολεμοῦντες καθ' ἑκάστην ἡμέραν μετ' αὐτῶν. καὶ οἱ μὲν
warring by each day with them and the indeed
 Βενέτικοι εἰσῆρχοντο εἰς τὰ πλοῖα αὐτῶν καὶ ἴσταντο
Venetians went-in into the ships their and stood
 ὀπισθεν τῶν παρ' αὐτῶν ριφέντων κεραταρίων, ὁ δὲ ῥήξ
behind the by them thrown stakes the and king
 Πιπῖνος ἴστατο μετὰ τοῦ λαοῦ αὐτοῦ ἐν τῷ αἰγιαλῷ. καὶ
Pippin stood with the people his on the shore and
 οἱ μὲν Βενέτικοι μετὰ τοξείας καὶ ῥιπταρίων ἐπολέμουν,
the indeed Venetians with archery and javelins warred
 μὴ ἐὼντες αὐτοὺς πρὸς τὴν νῆσον διαπερᾶσαι. ἀπορήσας
not allowing them to the island to-cross-over being-at-a-loss
 οὖν ὁ ῥήξ Πιπῖνος εἶπε πρὸς τοὺς Βενετικούς ὅτι ὑπὸ
then the king Pippin said to the Venetians that under
 τὴν ἐμὴν χεῖρα καὶ πρόνοιαν γίνεσθε, ἐπειδὴ ἀπὸ τῆς ἐμῆς
the my hand and providence come since from the my
 χώρας καὶ ἐξουσίας ἐστέ. οἱ δὲ Βενέτικοι ἀντέλεγον αὐτῷ
land and authority you-are the and Venetians answered him
 ὅτι ἡμεῖς δοῦλοι θέλομεν εἶναι τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων
that we servants wish to-be of-the emperor of-(the)-Romans
 καὶ οὐχὶ σοῦ. ἐπὶ πολὺ δὲ βιασθέντες οἱ Βενέτικοι
and not of-you for long and having-been-oppressed the Venetians

ἀπὸ τῆς γεγонуίας ὀχλήσεως πρὸς αὐτοὺς ἐποιήσαντο
by the having-occurred harassment toward them made
 εἰρηνικὰς σπονδὰς πρὸς τὸν ῥῆγα Πιπῖνον τοῦ παρέχειν
peaceful treaties with the king Pippin of-the to-furnish
 αὐτῷ πλείστα πάκτα. ἔκτοτε δὲ καθ' ἕκαστον χρόνον
to-him very-many tributes from-then and by each year
 ἡλάττωτο τὸ πάκτον, ὅπερ καὶ μέχρι τῆς σήμερον
was-diminished the tribute which also until the today
 διασώζεται· τελοῦσι γὰρ οἱ Βενέτικοι τῷ κατέχοντι τὸ
is-preserved pay for the Venetians to-the(-one) holding the
 ῥηγάτον Ἰταλίας ἥτοι Παπίας διβάρια ἀσίμν λίτρας λς'
kingdom of-Italy that-is of-Pavia measures of-silver pounds 36
 καθ' ἕκαστον χρόνον. καὶ τούτῳ τῷ τρόπῳ ἔπαυσεν ὁ
by each year and in-this the way ceased the
 μεταξὺ Φράγγων καὶ Βενετίκων πόλεμος. ὅτε δὲ ἤρξατο
between Franks and Venetians war when and began
 ἀποφεύγειν ὁ λαὸς πρὸς Βενετίαν καὶ ὑποσυνάγεσθαι
to-flee the people to Venice and to-gather
 ὥστε πολλοὺς γίνεσθαι, ἀνηγόρευσαν ἑαυτοῖς δοῦκα τὸν
so-that many to-become they-proclaimed for-themselves (as)-duke the(-one)
 εὐγενεῖα τῶν ἄλλων διαφέροντα. ἐγεγόνει δὲ ὁ πρῶτος
in-nobility the others surpassing had-become and the first
 δούξ ἐν αὐτοῖς πρὶν ἢ ἔλθειν κατ' αὐτῶν ὁ ῥῆξ Πιπῖνος.
duke among them before — to-come against them the king Pippin
 ἦν δὲ τῷ τότε καιρῷ τὸ δουκάτον εἰς τόπον λεγόμενον
was and at-the then time the ducal-seat at (a)-place called
 Τζιβιτὰ νόβα, ὅπερ ἐρμηνεύεται νεόκαστρον. διὰ δὲ τὸ
Civita Nova which is-interpreted new-fortress because-of and the
 εἶναι τὸ προειρημένον νησίον πλησίον τῆς ξηρᾶς, κοινῇ
to-be the aforesaid islet near the dry-land by-common
 βουλῇ μετέθηκαν τὸ δουκάτον εἰς ἕτερον νησίον, ἐν ᾧ
counsel they-moved the ducal-seat to another islet in which

καὶ νῦν ἔστι σήμερον, διὰ τὸ εἶναι μακρόθεν τῆς
 also now it-is today because-of the to-be far-off from-the
 ξηρᾶς, ὅσον βλέπει τις ἄνδρα ἵππῳ ἐφεζόμενον.
 dry-land as-far-as sees one (a)-man on-(a)-horse seated

XXIX · DALMATIA AND ITS NATIONS

Diocletian settled Romani from Rome in Dalmatia and built Aspalathos. The Avars, crossing the Danube, took Salona by a ruse, and the Romani fled to the coastal towns. Under Basil the Croats, Serbs, and others were baptized. When the Saracens besieged Ragusa, Basil sent a fleet and later recovered Bari with Louis. Soldanos, a captive in Capua, turned its princes against Louis; freed, he came back to besiege them, and their envoy died urging them to hold out for the emperor's help. The chapter closes with the towns and islands of Dalmatia.

περὶ τῆς Δελματίας καὶ τῶν ἐν αὐτῇ παρακειμένων ἐθνῶν.
 concerning — Dalmatia and the in it neighboring nations
 “Ὅτι Διοκλητιανὸς ὁ βασιλεὺς πάντῃ τῆς χώρας Δελματίας
 that Diocletian the emperor greatly the land Dalmatia
 ἠγάσθη, διὸ καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς Ῥώμης λαὸν ἀγαγὼν μετὰ
 loved therefore also from — Rome people having-brought with
 τὰς φαμίλιας αὐτῶν ἐν τῇ αὐτῇ τῆς Δελματίας χώρα
 the households their in the same — of-Dalmatia land
 τούτους κατεσκήνωσεν· οἱ καὶ Ῥωμᾶνοι προσηγορεύθησαν
 them he-settled who also Romani were-called
 διὰ τὸ ἀπὸ Ῥώμης μετοικισθῆναι, καὶ ταύτην μέχρι
 because-of the from Rome to-have-been-transplanted and this until
 τῆς σήμερον τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν ἐναποφέρονται. οὗτος οὖν ὁ
 the today the name they-bear this then the
 βασιλεὺς Διοκλητιανὸς καὶ τὸ τοῦ Ἀσπαλάθου κάστρον
 emperor Diocletian also the — of-Aspalathos fortress

ὠκοδόμησε, καὶ ἐν αὐτῷ παλάτια ἐδείματο λόγου καὶ
built and in it palaces built word and
 γραφῆς ἀπάσης ἐπέκεινα, ὧν καὶ μέχρι τῆς σήμερον
writing all beyond of-which also until the today
 τῆς παλαιᾶς εὐδαιμονίας λεύβανα φέρονται, κἂν ὁ
of-the ancient prosperity remains survive even-if the
 πολὺς χρόνος αὐτὰ κατηγάλωσεν. ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ κάστρον
long time them has-consumed but also the fortress
 Διόκλεια τὸ νῦν παρὰ τῶν Διοκλητιανῶν κατεχόμενον
Diokleia the(-one) now by the Diocletians held
 ὁ αὐτὸς βασιλεὺς Διοκλητιανὸς ὠκοδόμησεν, ὅθεν καὶ
the same emperor Diocletian built whence also
 τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν Διοκλητιανοὶ καλεῖσθαι οἱ τῆς ἐκείνης
the name Diocletians to-be-called those of-the that
 χώρας ἐναπειλήφασιν. ἡ δὲ καὶ τῶν αὐτῶν Ῥωμάνων
land have-taken the and also of-the same Romani
 διακράτησις ἦν μέχρι τοῦ Δανούβεως ποταμοῦ· οἱ καὶ
dominion was as-far-as the Danube river who also
 ποτε θελήσαντες τὸν ποταμὸν διαπεράσαι καὶ καταμαθεῖν
once having-wished the river to-cross and to-find-out
 τίνες κατοικοῦσιν ἐκεῖθεν τοῦ ποταμοῦ, διαπεράσαντες
who dwell beyond-there of-the river having-crossed
 εὔρον ἔθνη Σκλαβινικὰ ἄοπλα ὄντα, ἅτινα καὶ Ἄβαροι
found nations Slavonic unarmed being which also Avars
 ἐκαλοῦντο. καὶ οὔτε οὗτοι ἤλπιζον ἐκεῖθεν τοῦ ποταμοῦ
were-called and neither these expected beyond-there of-the river
 κατοικεῖν τινὰς οὔτε ἐκεῖνοι ἔνθεν τοῦ ποταμοῦ. διὰ
to-dwell anyone nor those on-this-side of-the river because-of
 οὖν τὸ ἀόπλους εὑρεῖν αὐτοὺς τοὺς Ἀβάρους οἱ Ῥωμαῖοι
then the unarmed to-find them the Avars the Romani
 καὶ πρὸς πόλεμον ἀπαρασκευάστους καὶ καταπολεμήσαντες
and for war unprepared also having-warred-them-down

ἀνελάβοντο πραιῖδαν καὶ αἰχμαλωσίαν, καὶ ἀνεχώρησαν.
took plunder and captives and withdrew
 καὶ ἔκτοτε ποιήσαντες ἀλλάγια δύο οἱ Ῥωμᾶνοι ἀπὸ
and from-then having-made relays two the Romani from
 πάσχα ἕως πάσχα τὸν λαὸν αὐτῶν ἐνῆλλασσον, ὥστε
Easter to Easter the people their exchanged so-that
 τῷ μεγάλῳ καὶ ἁγίῳ σαββάτῳ ἀλλήλοις συναντᾶν, τοὺς
on-the great and holy sabbath with-each-other to-meet those
 μὲν ἀποστρεφόμενους ἀπὸ τοῦ παραμονίμου, τοὺς δὲ εἰς
indeed returning from the garrison those and to
 τὴν τοιαύτην δουλείαν ἀπερχομένους. καὶ γὰρ πλησίον τῆς
the such service going-away and for near the
 θαλάσσης ὑπὸ τὸ αὐτὸ κάστρον ἔστι τὸ ἐπιλεγόμενον
sea under the same fortress is the(-one) called
 Σαλῶνα, μέγεθος ἔχον τὸ ἥμισυ Κωνσταντινουπόλεως, ἐν
Salona size having the half of-Constantinople in
 ᾧ πάντες οἱ Ῥωμᾶνοι συνήγοντο καὶ καθωπλιζόντο, καὶ
which all the Romani were-assembled and were-armed and
 προσαπεκύνουν ἐκ τῶν ἐκεῖσε καὶ πρὸς τὴν κλεισοῦραν
set-out from the(-places) there and to the defile
 ἀπέρχοντο τὴν ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτοῦ κάστρου ὑπάρχουσαν
went-away the(-one) from the same fortress being
 μίλια τέσσαρα· ἣτις καὶ μέχρι τοῦ νῦν καλεῖται Κλεῖσα
miles four which also until the now is-called Kleisa
 διὰ τὸ συγκλείειν τοὺς διερχομένους ἐκεῖθεν. καὶ ἐκ
because-of the to-shut-in those passing-through there and from
 τῶν ἐκεῖσε ἀπέρχοντο πρὸς τὸν ποταμόν. τὸ οὖν τοιοῦτον
the there they-went-away to the river the then such
 ἀλλάγιον ἐπὶ πολλοῖς γινόμενον χρόνοις, οἱ ἐκεῖθεν τοῦ
relay for many happening years those beyond-there of-the
 ποταμοῦ Σκλάβοι, οἱ καὶ Ἄβαροι καλούμενοι, καθ' ἑαυτοὺς
river Slavs those also Avars called by themselves

ἐσκόπησαν λέγοντες ὅτι οὗτοι οἱ Ῥωμᾶνοι, ἐπεὶ ἐπέρασαν
considered saying that these the Romani since they-crossed
 καὶ εὔρον πραιδαν, ἀπὸ τοῦ νῦν καθ' ἡμῶν οὐ παύσονται
and found plunder from the now against us not will-cess
 διαπερῶντες· καὶ διὰ τοῦτο μηχανησόμεθα κατ' αὐτῶν.
crossing and because-of this we-will-contrive against them
 οὕτως οὖν οἱ Σκλάβοι οἱ Ἄβαροι βουλευσάμενοι, καὶ
thus then the Slavs the Avars having-taken-counsel and
 διαπερασάντων ποτὲ τῶν Ῥωμάνων ποιήσαντες οὗτοι
having-crossed once the Romani having-made these
 ἐγκρύμματα καὶ πολεμήσαντες ἐνίκησαν αὐτούς. καὶ
ambushes and having-warred conquered them and
 ἀναλαβόμενοι τὰ τε ὅπλα αὐτῶν καὶ τὰ φλάμουλα καὶ
having-taken-up the both arms their and the pennons and
 τὰ λοιπὰ πολεμικὰ σημεῖα, διαπεράσαντες οἱ προειρημένοι
the other war standards having-crossed the aforesaid
 Σκλάβοι τὸν ποταμὸν ἦλθον εἰς τὴν κλεισοῦραν. οὗς
Slavs the river came to the defile whom
 καὶ ἰδόντες οἱ ἐκεῖσε ὄντες Ῥωμᾶνοι, θεασάμενοι δὲ τὰ
also having-seen those there being Romani having-beheld and the
 φλάμουλα καὶ τὴν ἐξόπλισιν τῶν ὁμοφύλων αὐτῶν, τοὺς
pennons and the equipment of-the fellow-tribesmen their the
 αὐτῶν ὁμοφύλους εἶναι νομίσαντες, ἥνικα κατέλαβον οἱ
their fellow-tribesmen to-be having-supposed when arrived the
 Σκλάβοι οἱ prorρηθέντες εἰς τὴν κλεισοῦραν, παρεχώρησαν
Slavs the aforesaid at the defile let
 αὐτοῖς διελθεῖν. διελθόντες δὲ εὐθὺς τοὺς Ῥωμάνους
them to-pass-through having-passed-through and at-once the Romani
 οὗτοι ἐξήλασαν καὶ τὴν Σαλῶνα τὸ προειρημένον κάστρον
these drove-out and — Salona the aforesaid fortress
 ἐκράτησαν. καὶ κατοικήσαντες ἐκεῖσε ἔκτοτε κατὰ μικρὸν
took and having-settled there from-then by little

ἀρξάμενοι πραιδεύειν τοὺς Ῥωμάνους τοὺς εἰς τοὺς κάμπους
having-begun to-plunder the Romani those in the plains
καὶ εἰς τὰ ὑψηλότερα μέρη κατοικοῦντας ἠφάνισαν, καὶ
and in the higher parts dwelling destroyed(-them) and
τοὺς τόπους αὐτῶν κατεκράτησαν. οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ Ῥωμᾶνοι
the places their took-over the and remaining Romani
εἰς τὰ τῆς παραλίας κάστρα διεσώθησαν, καὶ μέχρι τοῦ
into the of-the coast fortresses escaped and until the
νῦν κρατοῦσιν αὐτά· ἅτινά εἰσι τάδε κάστρα, τὸ Ῥαοῦσιν,
now hold them which are these fortresses — Ragusa
τὸ Ἀσπάλαθον, τὸ Τετραγγούριν, τὰ Διάδωρα, ἡ Ἄρβη,
— Aspalathos — Tetrangourin — Diadora — Arbe
ἡ Βέκλα καὶ τὰ Ὑψαρα· ὧν τινῶν καὶ οἰκήτορες
— Vekla and — Opsara of-which some also inhabitants
μέχρι τοῦ νῦν οἱ Ῥωμᾶνοι καλοῦνται.

until the now the Romani are-called
Ὅτι ἀπὸ τῆς βασιλείας Ἡρακλείου τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων,
that from the reign of-Heraclius the emperor of-(the)-Romans
καθ' ὃν μέλλει τρόπον ῥηθήσεσθαι ἐν τῇ τῶν Χρωβάτων
in which is-about way to-be-told in the of-the Croats
καὶ Σέρβλων συγγραφῇ, πᾶσα ἡ Δελματία καὶ τὰ
and Serbs account all — Dalmatia and the
περὶ αὐτὴν ἔθνη, οἷον Χρωβάτοι Σέρβλοι Ζαχλούμοι
around it nations such-as Croats Serbs Zachlumi
Τερβουνιώται Καναλεῖται Διοκλητιανοὶ καὶ Ἄρεντανοὶ καὶ
Terbouniotes Kanalites Diocletians and Arentanoi and
οἱ Παγανοὶ προσαγορευόμενοι, τῆς δὲ τῶν Ῥωμαίων
the Pagani called of-the and of-the Romans
βασιλείας διὰ τὴν τῶν τότε κρατούντων νωθρότητα καὶ
empire because-of the of-the then ruling sluggishness and
ἀφέλειαν εἰς τὸ μηδὲν παράπαν μικροῦ δεῖν ἐναπονευσάσης,
simplicity to the nothing at-all by-a-little to-lack having-declined

καὶ μάλιστα δὲ ἐπὶ Μιχαὴλ τοῦ ἐξ Ἀμορίου τοῦ
and especially and under Michael the from Amorion the
 τραυλοῦ, οἱ τὰ τῆς Δελματίας κάστρα οἰκοῦντες γεγόνασιν
stammerer those the — of-Dalmatia fortresses inhabiting became
 αὐτοκέφαλοι, μῆτε τῷ βασιλεῖ Ῥωμαίων μῆτε ἑτέρῳ
independent neither to-the emperor of-(the)-Romans nor to-other
 τινὶ ὑποκείμενοι· ἀλλὰ καὶ τὰ ἐκεῖσε ἔθνη, οἳ τε
anyone subject but also the there nations the both
 Χρωβάτοι καὶ Σέρβλοι καὶ Ζαχλοῦμοι καὶ Τερβουνιώται
Croats and Serbs and Zaclumi and Terbouniotes
 καὶ Καναλείται καὶ Διοκλητιανοὶ καὶ οἱ Παγανοί, τῆς τῶν
and Kanalites and Diocletians and the Pagani of-the of-the
 Ῥωμαίων βασιλείας ἀφηνιάσαντες γεγόνασιν ιδιόρυθμοι
Romans empire having-thrown-off-the-bridle became self-governing
 καὶ αὐτοκέφαλοι, τινὶ μὴ ὑποκείμενοι. ἄρχοντας δέ, ὥς
and independent to-anyone not subject princes and as
 φασι, ταῦτα τὰ ἔθνη μὴ ἔχει, πλὴν ζουπάνους γέροντας,
they-say these the nations not have except zupans elders
 καθὼς καὶ αἱ λοιπαὶ Σκλαβίναι ἔχουσι τύπον. ἀλλὰ
as also the other Slaviniias have (the)-pattern but
 οἱ πλείονες τῶν τοιούτων Σκλάβων οὐδὲ ἐβαπτίζοντο,
the greater-part of-the such Slavs not-even were-baptized
 ἀλλὰ μέχρι πολλοῦ ἔμενον ἀβάπτιστοι. ἐπὶ δὲ Βασιλείου
but until much remained unbaptized under and Basil
 τοῦ φιλοχρίστου βασιλέως ἀπέστειλαν ἀποκρισιarioύς
the Christ-loving emperor they-sent envoys
 ἐξαιτούμενοι καὶ παρακαλοῦντες αὐτὸν τοὺς ἐξ αὐτῶν
requesting and begging him those of them
 ἀβαπτίστους βαπτισθῆναι καὶ εἶναι ὥστε ἐξ ἀρχῆς
unbaptized to-be-baptized and to-be as from (the)-beginning
 ὑποτεταγμένους τῇ βασιλείᾳ τῶν Ῥωμαίων· ὧν τινῶν
subject to-the empire of-the Romans of-whom some

εἰσακούσας ὁ μακάριος ἐκεῖνος καὶ αἰδοῖμος βασιλεὺς
having-heard the blessed that and celebrated emperor
 ἐξαπέστειλε βασιλικὸν μετὰ καὶ ἱερέων, καὶ ἐβάπτισεν
sent (an)-imperial-agent with also priests and baptized
 αὐτοὺς πάντας τοὺς τῶν προρρηθέντων ἐθνῶν ἀβαπτίστους
them all those of-the aforesaid nations unbaptized
 τυγχάνοντας· καὶ μετὰ τὸ βαπτισθῆναι αὐτούς, τότε
happening-to-be and after the to-be-baptized them then
 προεβάλετο εἰς αὐτοὺς ἄρχοντας οὓς ἐκεῖνοι ἤθελον καὶ
be-appointed over them princes whom they wished and
 προέκρινον, ἀπὸ γενεᾶς ἧς ἐκεῖνοι ἠγάπων καὶ ἔστεργον.
preferred from (the)-family which they loved and cherished
 καὶ ἔκτοτε μέχρι τοῦ νῦν ἐκ τῶν αὐτῶν γενεῶν γίνονται
and from-then until the now from the same families become
 ἄρχοντες εἰς αὐτούς, καὶ οὐκ ἐξ ἑτέρας. οἱ δὲ Παγανοί,
princes over them and not from another the and Pagani
 οἱ καὶ τῇ Ῥωμαίων διαλέκτῳ Ἄρεντανοὶ καλούμενοι,
those also in-the of-(the)-Romans dialect Arentanoi called
 εἰς δυσβάτους τόπους καὶ κρημνώδεις κατελείφθησαν
in hard-of-access places and precipitous were-left
 ἀβάπτιστοι· καὶ γὰρ Παγανοὶ κατὰ τὴν τῶν Σκλάβων
unbaptized and for Pagani according-to the of-the Slavs
 γλῶσσαν ἀβάπτιστοι ἐρμηνεύονται. μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο καὶ
tongue unbaptized are-interpreted after and this also
 αὐτοὶ ἀποστείλαντες εἰς τὸν αὐτὸν αἰδοῖμον βασιλέα
they having-sent to the same celebrated emperor
 ἐξητήσαντο βαπτισθῆναι καὶ αὐτοί· καὶ ἀποστείλας
asked to-be-baptized also they and having-sent
 ἐβάπτισε καὶ αὐτούς. ἐπεὶ δέ, ὥς προέφημεν, διὰ τὴν
be-baptized also them since and as we-said-before because-of the
 τῶν κρατούντων νωθρότητα καὶ ἀφέλειαν εἰς κατόπιν τὰ
of-the ruling sluggishness and simplicity to backward the

τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἦλθον πράγματα, καὶ οἱ τὰ τῆς Δελματίας
of-the Romans came affairs also those the — of-Dalmatia
 κάστρα οἰκοῦντες γεγόνασιν αὐτοκέφαλοι, μήτε τῷ βασιλεῖ
fortresses inhabiting became independent neither to-the emperor
 Ῥωμαίων μήτε ἄλλῳ τινὶ ὑποκείμενοι. μετὰ δὲ χρόνον
of-(the)-Romans nor to-other anyone subject after and time
 τινὰ ἐπὶ τῆς βασιλείας Βασιλείου τοῦ αἰοδίδμου καὶ
some under the reign of-Basil the celebrated and
 ἀειμνήστου βασιλέως ἐλθόντων Σαρακηνῶν ἀπὸ Ἀφρικῆς,
ever-memorable emperor having-come Saracens from Africa
 τοῦ τε Σολδανοῦ καὶ τοῦ Σάβα καὶ τοῦ Κλαφούς, μετὰ
— both Soldanos and — Sabas and — Klaphous with
 караβίων λς', κατέλαβον ἐν Δελματία καὶ ἐπόρθησαν
ships 36 they-reached to Dalmatia and sacked
 τὸ κάστρον τὰ Βούτοβα, καὶ τὸ κάστρον τὴν Ῥώσσαν
the fortress — Boutova and the fortress — Rhossa
 καὶ τὸ κάστρον τὰ Δεκάτερα τὸ κάτω. καὶ ἦλθον καὶ
and the fortress — Dekatera the lower and came also
 εἰς τὸ κάστρον Ῥαουσίου, καὶ παρεκάθισαν αὐτῷ μῆνας
to the fortress of-Ragusa and sat-down-before it months
 δεκαπέντε. τότε βιασθέντες οἱ Ῥαουσαῖοι ἐδηλοποίησαν
fifteen then being-hard-pressed the Ragusans made-known
 Βασιλεῖ τῷ ἀειμνήστῳ βασιλεῖ Ῥωμαίων, λέγοντες
to-Basil the ever-memorable emperor of-(the)-Romans saying
 αὐτῷ οὕτως “ἐλέησον ἡμᾶς, καὶ μὴ ἐάσης ἀπολέσθαι
to-him thus have-mercy-on us and not let(-us) to-perish
 παρὰ τῶν ἀρνητῶν τοῦ Χριστοῦ.” ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς
by the deniers — of-Christ the and emperor
 σπλαγχνισθεὶς ἀπέστειλε τὸν πατρίκιον Νικήτα
having-been-moved-with-compassion sent the patrician Niketas
 δρουγγάριον τοῦ πλωΐμου, οὗ τὸ ἐπὶ κλην Ὠδούφας,
drungarius of-the fleet whose the surname (was)-Ooryphas

μετὰ χελανδίων ἑκατόν. οἱ δὲ Σαρακηνοὶ μαθόντες τὴν
with warships (a)-hundred the and Saracens having-learned the
 μετὰ τοῦ στόλου ἄφιξιν τοῦ πατρικίου δρουγγαρίου τοῦ
with the fleet arrival of-the patrician drungarius of-the
 πλωΐμου ἔφυγον καταλιπόντες τὸ κάστρον Ῥαουσίου, καὶ
fleet fled having-left the fortress of-Ragusa and
 ἀντεπέρασαν ἐν Λογουβαρδία, καὶ πολιορκήσαντες τὸ
crossed-over to Lombardy and having-besieged the
 κάστρον Βάρεως τοῦτο ἐπόρθησαν. τότε ὁ Σολδανὸς
fortress of-Bari it sacked then — Soldanos
 κτίσας ἐκεῖσε παλάτια κατεκράτησε πᾶσαν Λογουβαρδίαν
having-built there palaces held all Lombardy
 μέχρι Ῥώμης ἔτη τεσσαράκοντα. ὁ οὖν βασιλεὺς διὰ τὴν
as-far-as Rome years forty the then emperor because-of the
 αἰτίαν ταύτην ἀπέστειλε πρὸς τε τὸν Λοδοῖχον τὸν ῥήγα
cause this sent to both — Louis the king
 Φραγκίας καὶ τὸν πάπα Ῥώμης, ἵνα συνεπαμύνηται τῷ
of-Frankland and the pope of-Rome so-that he-might-help-together the
 παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως ἀποσταλέντι στρατῷ. οἱ δὲ ὑπέιξαντες
by the emperor sent army they and having-yielded
 τῇ τοῦ βασιλέως αἰτήσῃ, ὃ τε ῥήξ καὶ ὁ πάπας, ἦλθον
to-the of-the emperor request the both king and the pope came
 ἀμφότεροι μετὰ δυνάμεως πολλῆς, καὶ ἐνωθέντες τῷ
both with force much and having-been-united to-the
 παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως ἀποσταλέντι στρατῷ, ἅμα τῷ
by the emperor sent army together-with the
 Χρωβάτῳ, τῷ Σέρβλῳ καὶ Ζαχλούμῳ καὶ Τερβουνιώταις
Croat the Serb and Zachlumian and Terbouniotes
 καὶ Καναλείταις καὶ Ῥαουσίοις, μετὰ πάντων τῶν ἀπὸ τῆς
and Kanalites and Ragusans with all those from —
 Δελματίας κάστρων (οὗτοι γὰρ πάντες βασιλικῇ κελεύσει
Dalmatia fortresses these for all by-imperial command

παρήσαν), καὶ περασάντων ἐν Λογουβαρδία ἐκάθησαν τὸ
were-present and having-crossed to Lombardy they-besieged the
 κάστρον Βάρεως καὶ ἐπόρθησαν αὐτό.
fortress of-Bari and sacked it
 Ἰστέον ὅτι τοὺς Χρωβάτους καὶ τοὺς λοιποὺς
(one)-must-know that the Croats and the other
 Σκλαβάρχοντας οἱ τοῦ κάστρου Ῥαουσίου οἰκήτορες μετὰ
Slav-chiefs those of-the fortress of-Ragusa inhabitants with
 τῶν ἰδίων αὐτῶν караβίων διεπέρασαν ἐν Λογουβαρδία.
the own their ships carried-across to Lombardy
 καὶ τὸ μὲν κάστρον Βάρεως καὶ τὴν χώραν καὶ τὴν
and the indeed fortress of-Bari and the land and the
 αἰχμαλωσίαν πᾶσαν ἀνελάβετο ὁ βασιλεὺς Ῥωμαίων· τὸν
captives all took the emperor of-(the)-Romans —
 δὲ Σολδανὸν καὶ τοὺς λοιποὺς Σαρακηνοὺς ἀνελάβετο
and Soldanos and the other Saracens took
 Λοδοῖχος ὁ ῥήξ Φραγκίας, καὶ ἀπήγαγεν αὐτοὺς ἐν τῷ
Louis the king of-Frankland and led them-away to the
 κάστρῳ Καπύης καὶ ἐν τῷ κάστρῳ Βενεβενδοῦ. καὶ οὐδεὶς
fortress of-Capua and to the fortress of-Benevento and no-one
 αὐτὸν εἶδεν γελῶντα. εἶπεν δὲ ὁ ῥήξ ὅτι εἴ τις μοι τὸν
him saw laughing said and the king that if anyone to-me —
 Σολδανὸν μετὰ ἀληθείας ἀναγγείλῃ ἢ ὑποδείξῃ γελῶντα,
Soldanos with truth reports or shows laughing
 δώσω αὐτῷ χρήματα πολλά. καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο εἶδέ τις
I-will-give to-him monies many and after this saw someone
 αὐτὸν γελῶντα, καὶ τῷ ῥηγὶ Λοδοῖχῳ ἀπήγγειλεν. ὁ
him laughing and to-the king Louis reported he
 δὲ προσκαλεσάμενος τὸν Σολδανὸν ἠρώτησεν αὐτὸν ποίῳ
and having-summoned — Soldanos asked him in-what
 τρόπῳ ἐγέλασεν. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν “ἄμαξαν εἶδον καὶ τοὺς ἐν
way he-laughed he and said (a)-wagon I-saw and the on

αὐτῇ τροχοὺς κυλιόμενους, καὶ τούτου χάριν ἐγέλασα,
it wheels rolling and of-this for-the-sake I-laughed
 ὅτι καὶ ἐγὼ ποτε κεφαλὴ ἤμην καὶ ἄρτίως εἰμὶ ὑποκάτω
that also I once head was and now I-am below
 πάντων, καὶ πάλιν δύναται ὁ θεὸς ὑψῶσαί με.” καὶ ἀπὸ
all and again is-able — God to-raise me and from
 τότε προσεκαλείτο αὐτὸν ὁ Λοδοῖχος εἰς τὴν τράπεζαν
then summoned him — Louis to the table
 αὐτοῦ καὶ συνήσθιεν αὐτῷ. οἱ δὲ ἄρχοντες τῆς Καπύης
his and ate-with him the and princes — of-Capua
 καὶ Βενεβενδοῦ ἤρχοντο πρὸς τὸν Σολδανὸν ἐρωτῶντες
and Benevento came to — Soldanos asking
 αὐτὸν περὶ ἰατρειῶν καὶ θεραπειᾶς ἀλόγων καὶ λοιπῶν
him about cures and treatment of-beasts and other
 ὑποθέσεων ὡς γέροντα καὶ πεπειραμένον. ὁ δὲ Σολδανὸς
matters as (an)-old-man and experienced — and Soldanos
 πανοῦργος ὢν καὶ σκολιδὸς εἶπε πρὸς αὐτοὺς ὅτι πρᾶγμα
crafty being and crooked said to them that (a)-thing
 θέλω εἰπεῖν πρὸς ὑμᾶς, καὶ δέδοικα τοῦ μὴ παρ’ ὑμῶν
I-wish to-say to you and I-fear of-the not by you
 κατάδηλον γενέσθαι πρὸς τὸν ῥήγα, καὶ ἀπολέσω τὴν
evident to-become to the king and I-lose the
 ἐμαυτοῦ ζωὴν. οἱ δὲ ὥμοσαν αὐτῷ, καὶ θαρρήσας
my-own life they and swore to-him and having-taken-courage
 εἶπε πρὸς αὐτοὺς ὅτι ὁ ῥήξ ἐξορίσαι θέλει πάντας ὑμᾶς
he-said to them that the king to-exile wishes all you
 ἐν τῇ μεγάλῃ Φραγγίᾳ, καὶ ἐὰν ἀπιστῇτε, ἐκδέξασθε
into the great Frankland and if you-disbelieve wait
 μικρόν, καὶ γὰρ πληροφορῶ ὑμᾶς. καὶ ἀπελθὼν εἶπε πρὸς
(a)-little and-I convince you and having-gone-away he-said to
 τὸν Λοδοῖχον ὅτι οἱ ἄρχοντες τοῦ τόπου κακοὶ εἰσι, καὶ
— Louis that the princes of-the place wicked are and

σὺ οὐ δύνασαι κυριεῦσαι τὴν χώραν ταύτην, ἐὰν μὴ
you not are-able to-become-master-of the land this if not
 ἀφανίσῃς τοὺς δυνατοὺς τοὺς ἀντιπίπτοντάς σοι· ἀλλὰ
you-destroy the powerful those opposing you but
 δέσμευσον τοὺς πρῶτους τοῦ κάστρου, καὶ ἀπόστειλον
bind the first-men of-the fortress and send
 αὐτοὺς εἰς τὴν χώραν σου, καὶ τότε ὡς θέλεις οἱ
them to the land your and then as you-wish the
 λοιποὶ ὑποταγήσονται σοι. καὶ ὅτε παρέπεισεν αὐτὸν ἵνα
others will-be-subjected to-you and when he-had-persuaded him that
 πληρώσῃ τὴν βουλὴν αὐτοῦ, καὶ ὥρισε γενέσθαι ἀλύσεις
he-fulfill the counsel his and he-ordered to-be-made chains
 σιδηρᾶς εἰς τὸ ἐξορίσαι αὐτούς, ἀπῆλθεν ὁ Σολδανὸς καὶ
iron for the to-exile them went-away — Soldanos and
 εἶπε πρὸς τοὺς ἄρχοντας ὅτι ἀκμὴν οὐ πιστεύετε ὅτι ὁ
said to the princes that still not you-believe that the
 ῥῆξ ἐξορίστους ὑμᾶς ποιεῖ καὶ παντελῶς ἐξ ἀνθρώπων
king exiles you makes and utterly from men
 γίνεται τὸ μνημόσυνον ὑμῶν· ὅμως εἰ θέλετε τελείως
becomes the memory your nevertheless if you-wish completely
 πληροφορηθῆναι, ἀπελθόντες θεάσασθε τί ἄρα ἐργάζονται
to-be-convinced having-gone-away behold what then are-making
 πάντες οἱ χαλκεῖς τῇ προστάξει τοῦ ῥηγός· καὶ εἰ οὐχ
all the smiths at-the command of-the king and if not
 εὔρητε αὐτοὺς ἐργαζομένους τὰς ἀλύσεις καὶ τὰ δεσμά,
you-find them making the chains and the fetters
 γινώσκετε ὅτι πάντα τὰ παρ' ἐμοῦ λαλούμενα ὑμῖν
know that all the(-things) by me spoken to-you
 ἐστὶ ψευδῆ· εἰ δὲ ἀληθεύω, φροντίσατε τὴν σωτηρίαν ὑμῶν
are false if and I-speak-truth take-thought-for the safety your
 καὶ ἐμὲ εὐεργετήσατε τὸν τὰ χρηστὰ καὶ σωτήρια
and me reward the(-one) the(-things) good and saving

ὑμῖν βουλευσάμενον. οἱ δὲ ἄρχοντες πεισθέντες τῷ
for-you having-counseled the and princes having-been-persuaded by-the
 τοῦ Σολδανοῦ λόγῳ, θεασάμενοι δὲ καὶ τὰς ἀλύσεις καὶ τὰ
 — *of-Soldanos word having-beheld and also the chains and the*
 δεσμά, τελείαν πληροφορίαν ἔλαβον, καὶ ἔκτοτε ἐμελέτων
fetters complete conviction received and from-then planned
 τὴν ἀπώλειαν τοῦ ῥηγὸς Λοδοῖχου. ὁ δὲ ῥῆξ ταῦτα
the destruction of-the king Louis the and king these(-things)
 πάντα ἀγνοῶν ἐξῆλθε πρὸς τὸ κυνηγῆσαι ὑποστρέψαντος
all not-knowing went-out for the to-hunt (him)-having-returned
 δὲ οἱ τούτου ἄρχοντες ἐκράτησαν τὸ κάστρον, μὴ ἐάσαντες
and the his princes held the fortress not having-allowed
 αὐτὸν εἰσελθεῖν. ὁ δὲ ῥῆξ Λοδοῖχος τὴν τῶν ἀρχόντων
him to-enter the and king Louis the of-the princes
 ἔνστασιν θεασάμενος εἰς τὴν ἰδίαν χώραν ὑπέστρεψεν. οἱ
resistance having-beheld to the own land returned the
 δὲ ἄρχοντες εἶπον πρὸς τὸν Σολδανὸν “τί ἄρα θέλεις
and princes said to — Soldanos what then do-you-wish
 ἡμᾶς ποιῆσαί σοι περὶ τῆς γενομένης εἰς ἡμᾶς παρὰ
us to-do for-you concerning the having-come to us from
 σοῦ σωτηρίας”; ὁ δὲ ᾗτήσατο ἐν τῇ ἰδίᾳ χώρᾳ ἀπολύσαι
you safety he and asked in the own land to-release
 αὐτόν, καὶ τούτου γενομένου ἀπῆλθεν ἐν Ἀφρικῇ εἰς τὴν
him and this having-happened he-went-away to Africa to the
 ἰδίαν αὐτοῦ χώραν. μὴ ἐπιλαθόμενος δὲ τῆς ἀρχαίας αὐτοῦ
own his land not having-forgotten and the ancient his
 κακίας ἐστρατοπέδευσε, καὶ ἦλθε μετὰ δυνάμεως ἐν Καπύῃ
wickedness he-encamped and came with (a)-force to Capua
 καὶ ἐν Βενεβενδῷ πρὸς τὸ πολιορκῆσαι καὶ ὑποτάξαι
and to Benevento for the to-besiege and to-subject
 αὐτούς. οἱ δὲ τὰ τοιαῦτα κάστρα κρατοῦντες ἀπέστειλαν
them those and the such fortresses holding sent

πρέσβεις πρὸς τὸν ῥῆγα Λοδοῖχον ἐν Φραγγίᾳ, ἵνα
envoys to the king Louis in Frankland that
 ἐλθὼν συνεπαμύνηται αὐτοῖς κατὰ τοῦ Σολδανοῦ καὶ τῶν
having-come he-might-help-together them against — Soldanos and the
 Ἀφρικῶν. ὁ δὲ ῥῆξ Λοδοῖχος ταῦτα μαθὼν, καὶ ὅνπερ
Africans the and king Louis these(-things) having-learned and in-which
 ἐποίησε τρόπον ὁ Σολδανὸς πείσας καὶ τοὺς ἄρχοντας
he-did way — Soldanos having-persuaded also the princes
 ὅτι δεσμίους μέλλει ὑμᾶς ὁ ῥῆξ ἐν Φραγγίᾳ ἐξορίσαι,
that in-bonds is-about you the king into Frankland to-exile
 ἀντεδήλωσεν αὐτοῖς ὅτι καὶ ἅπερ ἐποίησα πρότερον
sent-word-back to-them that also (the-things)-which I-did before
 εἰς ὑμᾶς μεταμεμέλημαι, ὅτι ἔσωσα ὑμᾶς ἀπὸ τῶν ἐχθρῶν
for you I-repent that I-saved you from the enemies
 ὑμῶν, καὶ ἀνταπεδώκατέ μοι πονηρὰ ἀντὶ ἀγαθῶν·
your and you-repaid me evil-things in-return-for good-things
 καὶ καθὼς ἐδιώχθην παρ' ὑμῶν, ἀρτίως χαίρω ἐπὶ τῇ
and as I-was-driven-out by you now I-rejoice at the
 ἀπωλείᾳ ὑμῶν. τότε ἀπορήσαντες ἀπὸ τοῦ ῥήγος Λοδοῖχου
destruction your then being-at-a-loss from the king Louis
 ἀπέστειλαν πρέσβεις πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων τοῦ
they-sent envoys to the emperor of-(the)-Romans of-the
 δοῦναι αὐτοῖς βοήθειαν καὶ λυτρώσασθαι τοῦ τοιούτου
to-give to-them help and to-ransom(-them) from-the such
 κινδύνου· ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς ὑπέσχετο βοηθῆσαι αὐτοῖς. τοῦ δὲ
danger the and emperor promised to-help them the and
 ἀποκρισιarioῦ ἀπὸ τῆς πόλεως ὑποστρέψαντος καὶ ἀγαθὰς
envoy from the city having-retuned and good
 ἀγγελίας τοῖς πέμψασιν αὐτὸν ἀποκομίζοντος περὶ τῆς
tidings to-those having-sent him bringing-back about the
 τοῦ βασιλέως συμμαχίας, μήπω τούτου ἀποσωθέντος ἐν
of-the emperor alliance not-yet him having-come-safe into

τῷ κάστρῳ, ἐκρατήθη παρὰ τῶν βιγλῶν τοῦ Σολδανοῦ·
the fortress was-seized by the watches — of-Soldanos
 προεγνώκει γὰρ ὁ Σολδανὸς τὴν γεγонуῖαν ἀποστολὴν
had-foreknown for — Soldanos the having-happened mission
 πρὸς ἰκεσίαν τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων, καὶ ἐπύκτευσεν
for supplication of-the emperor of-(the)-Romans and be-strove
 τοῦ τὸν ἀποκρισιάριον αὐτῶν κρατῆσαι, ὅπερ καὶ γέγονεν.
of-the the envoy their to-seize which also happened
 κρατηθέντος δὲ αὐτοῦ ἔμαθε τὴν ἀποτελεσθεῖσαν παρ'
having-been-seized and him he-learned the accomplished by
 αὐτοῦ δουλείαν, καὶ ὅτι δι' ὀλίγων ἡμερῶν καταλαμβάνει
him service and that within few days arrives
 ἡ τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων βοήθεια. ὁ δὲ Σολδανὸς
the of-the emperor of-(the)-Romans help — and Soldanos
 εἶπε τῷ αὐτῷ ἀποκρισιάρίῳ ὅτι εἰ ποιήσεις ὅπερ σοι
said to-the same envoy that if you-do what to-you
 εἴπω, ἐλευθερίας καὶ δωρεῶν μεγίστων ἀξιωθήσῃ·
I-say of-freedom and of-gifts very-great you-will-be-deemed-worthy
 εἰ δὲ μή, πονηρῷ θανάτῳ τὴν ζωὴν ἀπολέσεις. τοῦ δὲ
if and not by-(an)-evil death the life you-will-lose him and
 ὑποσχομένου ἐκπληρῶσαι τὰ κελεύμενα αὐτῷ, εἶπεν
having-promised to-fulfill the-(things) commanded him said
 ὁ Σολδανὸς πρὸς αὐτὸν ὅτι κελεύω στήναί σε πλησίον
— Soldanos to him that I-order to-stand you near
 τοῦ τείχους, καὶ προσκαλέσασθαι τοὺς ἀποστείλαντάς σε,
the wall and to-call-forth those having-sent you
 καὶ εἰπεῖν πρὸς αὐτοὺς “ἐγὼ μὲν τὴν δουλείαν ἣν
and to-say to them I indeed the service which
 ὥφειλον ποιῆσαι πεποιήκα, καὶ τὸν βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων
I-ought to-do have-done and the emperor of-(the)-Romans
 περὶ ὑμῶν ἐδυσώπησα· πλὴν οὖν γινώσκετε ὅτι εἰς κενὸν
concerning you I-entreated however then know that in vain

ἐγένετο ἡ ὁδός μου, καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς παμφαῦλον ἔθηκε
was the journey my and the emperor as-worthless set
 τὴν παρ' ὑμῶν γεγωνῖαν ἱκεσίαν, καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ βασιλέως
the by you having-been-made supplication and from the emperor
 μὴ ἐλπίζετε βοήθειαν.” τοῦ δὲ ὑποσχομένου ταῦτα μετὰ
not expect help him and having-promised these(-things) with
 χαρᾶς ἐκπληρῶσαι, ἤγαγον αὐτὸν πλησίον τοῦ κάστρου,
joy to-fulfill they-led him near the fortress
 καὶ ἐν οὐδενὶ θέμενος τὰ παρὰ τοῦ Σολδανοῦ
and at nothing having-set the(-things) by — Soldanos
 ῥηθέντα πάντα, μήτε τὰς ἀπειλὰς αὐτοῦ φοβηθεὶς μήτε
spoken all neither the threats his having-feared nor
 ταῖς ὑποσχέσεσιν αὐτοῦ πεισθεὶς, ἀλλὰ τὸν τοῦ
by-the promises his having-been-persuaded but the —
 θεοῦ φόβον ἐν τῇ καρδίᾳ αὐτοῦ θέμενος διελογίσαστο ἐν
of-God fear in the heart his having-set he-reasoned in
 ἑαυτῷ ὅτι συμφέρον ἐστὶν ἐμὲ μόνον ἀποθανεῖν καὶ μὴ
himself that advantageous it-is me alone to-die and not
 τοσαύτας ψυχὰς διὰ λόγου παγιδεῦσαι καὶ προδοῦναι εἰς
so-many souls by (a)-word to-ensnare and to-betray to
 θάνατον. καὶ δὴ πλησίον τοῦ τείχους αὐτοῦ γενομένου
death and indeed near the wall him having-come
 καὶ πάντας τοὺς ἄρχοντας προσκαλεσαμένου, εἶπε πρὸς
and all the princes having-called-forth he-said to
 τοὺς ἐξουσιάσαντας τοῦ τοιούτου κάστρου “ἐγὼ μὲν,
those having-authority-over the such fortress I indeed
 κύριοί μου, τὴν διακονίαν μου ἐξεπλήρωσα, καὶ τὰ
lords my the ministry my have-fulfilled and the(-things)
 παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων δηλωθέντα ὑμῖν ἀπαγγελῶ·
by the emperor of-(the)-Romans made-known to-you I-will-report
 πλὴν ὀρκίζω ὑμᾶς εἰς τὸν υἱὸν τοῦ θεοῦ καὶ εἰς τὴν
however I-adjure you by the son — of-God and by the

σωτηρίαν παντὸς τοῦ κάστρου καὶ αὐτῶν τῶν ψυχῶν
safety of-all the fortress and of-the-very the souls
 ὑμῶν, ἵνα ἀντὶ ἐμοῦ εὐεργετήσητε τὰ τέκνα μου καὶ
your that in-place-of me you-benefit the children my and
 τὴν ἐλπίζουσιν ἀπολαβεῖν με σύμβιον μου· ὥς γὰρ
the(-one) hoping to-receive-back me wife my as for
 ποιήσητε μετὰ αὐτῶν, παρὰ τοῦ δικαίου καὶ μισθαποδότου
you-do with them from the just and rewarder
 ἀγαθοῦ θεοῦ, μέλλοντος κρίναι ζῶντας καὶ νεκρούς, τὸν
good God being-about to-judge (the)-living and (the)-dead the
 μισθὸν ἀπολήψεσθε.” καὶ ταῦτα εἰπὼν παρεθάρρυνεν
reward you-will-receive and these(-things) having-said he-encouraged
 αὐτοὺς λέγων “ἐγὼ μὲν ἀπὸ τοῦ Σολδανοῦ ἀπολοῦμαι
them saying I indeed by — Soldanos shall-perish
 καὶ περὶ τὴν ζωὴν κινδυνεύω· ὑμεῖς δὲ στήτε ἐδραῖοι καὶ
and for the life am-in-danger you and stand firm and
 μὴ δειλανδρήσητε, ἀλλ’ ὑπομείνατε μικρόν, καὶ εἰς ὀλίγον
not play-the-coward but endure (a)-little and in (a)-few
 ἡμερῶν φθάσει ἡ ἀποσταλεῖσα ὑμῖν σωτηρία παρὰ τοῦ
of-days will-arrive the sent to-you deliverance from the
 βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων.” ταῦτα δὲ αὐτοῦ εἰπόντος, οἱ
emperor of-(the)-Romans these(-things) and him having-said those
 κατέχοντες αὐτὸν οἰκέιοι τοῦ Σολδανοῦ παρὰ προσδοκίαν
holding him servants — of-Soldanos beyond expectation
 τὰ παρ’ αὐτοῦ λαληθέντα ἀκούσαντες ἔβρυσαν ἐπ’
the(-things) by him spoken having-beard gnashed at
 αὐτὸν τοὺς ὀδόντας, καὶ εἰς τοῦ ἑτέρου προέτρεχον,
him the teeth and one than-the other ran-ahead
 τίς ἄρα τῆς αὐτοῦ σφαγῆς γένειεν αὐτουργός. τοῦ δὲ
who then of-the his slaughter might-become (the)-perpetrator him and
 παρ’ αὐτῶν ἀναιρεθέντος, πτοηθεὶς ὁ Σολδανὸς τὴν
by them having-been-slain having-been-terrified — Soldanos the

τοῦ βασιλέως ἐρχομένην δυναστείαν ὑπέστρεψεν εἰς τὴν
of-the emperor coming power returned to the
 ἰδίαν χώραν. καὶ ἔκτοτε καὶ μέχρι τοῦ νῦν καὶ οἱ τῆς
own land and from-then and until the now both those —
 Καπύης καὶ οἱ τῆς Βενεβενδοῦ εἰσὶν ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν
of-Capua and those — of-Benevento are under the authority
 τῶν Ῥωμαίων εἰς τελείαν δούλωσιν καὶ ὑποταγὴν διὰ
of-the Romans in complete subjection and obedience because-of
 τὴν εἰς αὐτοὺς γενομένην μεγάλην ταύτην εὐεργεσίαν.
the to them having-come great this benefaction
 Ὅτι τὸ κάστρον τοῦ Ῥαουσίου οὐ καλεῖται Ῥαούση
that the fortress — of-Ragusa not is-called Raouse
 τῇ Ῥωμαίων διαλέκτῳ, ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ἐπάνω τῶν κρημνῶν
in-the of-(the)-Romans dialect but since upon the cliffs
 ἵσταται, λέγεται δὲ Ῥωμαῖστὶ ὁ κρημνὸς λαῦ, ἐκλήθησαν
it-stands is-called and in-Latin the cliff lau they-were-called
 ἐκ τούτου Λαυσαῖοι ἤγουν οἱ καθεζόμενοι εἰς τὸν κρημνόν.
from this Lausaioi that-is those sitting on the cliff
 ἡ δὲ κοινὴ συνήθεια, ἡ πολλάκις μεταφθείρουσα τὰ
the and common usage the(-one) often corrupting the
 ὀνόματα τῇ ἐναλλαγῇ τῶν γραμμάτων, μεταβαλοῦσα τὴν
names by-the exchange of-the letters having-changed the
 κλήσιν Ῥαουσαίους τούτους ἐκάλεσεν. οἱ δὲ αὐτοὶ Ῥαουσαῖοι
name Ragusans them called the and same Ragusans
 τὸ παλαιὸν ἐκράτουν τὸ κάστρον τὸ ἐπιλεγόμενον
in-the old(-days) held the fortress the(-one) called
 Πίταυρα· καὶ ἐπειδὴ, ἥνικα τὰ λοιπὰ ἐκρατήθησαν κάστρα
Pitaura and since when the other were-taken fortresses
 παρὰ τῶν Σκλάβων τῶν ὄντων ἐν τῷ θέματι, ἐκρατήθη
by the Slavs those being in the theme was-taken
 καὶ τὸ τοιοῦτον κάστρον, καὶ οἱ μὲν ἐσφάγησαν οἱ
also the such fortress and some indeed were-slaughtered others

δὲ ἡχμαλωτίσθησαν, οἱ δὲ δυνηθέντες ἐκφυγεῖν καὶ
and were-taken-captive others and having-been-able to-escape and
 διασωθῆναι εἰς τοὺς ὑποκρήμους τόπους κατώκησαν,
to-be-saved in the under-the-cliff places settled
 ἐν ᾧ ἔστιν ἀρτίως τὸ κάστρον, οἰκοδομήσαντες αὐτὸ
in which is now the fortress having-built it
 πρότερον μικρὸν καὶ πάλιν μετὰ ταῦτα μείζον, καὶ μετὰ
first small and again after these(-things) larger and after
 τοῦτο πάλιν τὸ τεῖχος αὐτοῦ αὐξήσαντες μέχρι δ' ἔχειν
this again the wall its having-enlarged until 4 to-have
 τὸ κάστρον διὰ τὸ πλατύνεσθαι αὐτοὺς κατ' ὀλίγον καὶ
the fortress because-of the to-spread-out them by little and
 πληθύνεσθαι. ἐκ δὲ τῶν μετοικησάντων εἰς τὸ Ῥαούσιον
to-multiply from and those having-migrated to — Ragusa
 εἰσὶν οὗτοι, Γρηγόριος, Ἀρσάφιος, Βικτωρίνος, Βιτάλιος,
are these Gregory Arsaphios Victorinus Vitalius
 Βαλεντῖνος ὁ ἀρχιδιάκων, Βαλεντῖνος ὁ πατὴρ τοῦ
Valentine the archdeacon Valentine the father of-the
 πρωτοσπαθαρίου Στεφάνου. ἀφ' οὗ δὲ ἀπὸ Σαλῶνα
protospatharius Stephen from (the-time)-when and from Salona
 μετώκησαν εἰς Ῥαούσιον, εἰδὼν ἔτη φ' μέχρι τῆς σήμερον,
they-migrated to Ragusa there-are years 500 until the today
 ἥτις ἰνδικτιῶνος ἐβδόμης ἔτους ςνζ'. ἐν δὲ τῷ αὐτῷ
which (is)-of-(the)-indiction seventh of-(the)-year 647 in and the same
 κάστρῳ κεῖται ὁ ἅγιος Παγκράτιος ἐν τῷ ναῷ τοῦ ἀγίου
fortress lies the holy Pankratios in the temple of-the holy
 Στεφάνου τῷ ὄντι μέσον τοῦ αὐτοῦ κάστρου.
Stephen the(-one) being (in)-(the)-middle of-the same fortress
 Ὅτι τὸ Ἀσπαλάθου κάστρον, ὅπερ παλάτιον μικρὸν
that the of-Aspalathos fortress which palace little
 ἐρμηνεύεται, ὁ βασιλεὺς Διοκλητιανὸς τοῦτο ἔκτισεν· εἶχε
is-interpreted the emperor Diocletian this built he-had

δὲ αὐτὸ ὡς ἴδιον οἶκον, καὶ αὐλὴν οἰκοδομήσας ἔνδοθεν καὶ
and it as own house and court having-built inside also
 παλάτια, ἐξ ὧν τὰ πλείονα κατελύθησαν. σώζεται δὲ μέχρι
palaces of which the greater-part were-destroyed survive and until
 τοῦ νῦν ὀλίγα, ἐξ ὧν ἐστὶ τὸ ἐπισκοπεῖον τοῦ κάστρου
the now few of which is the bishop's-house of-the fortress
 καὶ ὁ ναὸς τοῦ ἁγίου Δόμνου, ἐν ᾧ κατάκειται ὁ αὐτὸς
and the temple of-the holy Domnus in which lies the same
 ἅγιος Δόμνος, ὅπερ ἦν κοιτὼν τοῦ αὐτοῦ βασιλέως
holy Domnus which was (the)-bedchamber of-the same emperor
 Διοκλητιανοῦ. ὑποκάτω δὲ αὐτοῦ ὑπάρχουσιν εἰληματικαὶ
Diocletian beneath and it are vaulted
 καμάραι, αἵτινες ὑπῆρχον φυλακαὶ ἐν αἷς τοὺς παρ' αὐτοῦ
chambers which were prisons in which the by him
 βασανιζομένους ἁγίους ἐναπέκλειεν ἀπηνῶς. ἀπόκειται δὲ
tortured saints he-shut-up cruelly is-laid-up and
 καὶ ἐν αὐτῷ τῷ κάστρῳ καὶ ὁ ἅγιος Ἀναστάσιος.
also in the-very the fortress also the holy Anastasius
 Ὅτι τὸ τεῖχος τοῦ τοιούτου κάστρου οὔτε ἀπὸ βησάλων
that the wall of-the such fortress neither from bricks
 ἐστὶν ἐκτισμένον οὔτε ἀπὸ ἐγχορήγου, ἀλλ' ἀπὸ λίθων
is built nor from rubble but from stones
 τετραπεδίκων ἐχόντων εἰς μῆκος ἀνὰ ὀργυῖας α', πολλάκις
squared having in length each fathom 1 often
 καὶ ἀνὰ δύο, καὶ τὸ πλάτος ἀνὰ ὀργυῖας μιᾶς, οὔτινές εἰσι
also each two and the breadth each fathom one which are
 συνηρμοσμένοι καὶ συνδεδεμένοι εἰς ἀλλήλους μετὰ σιδήρων
fitted-together and bound to each-other with irons
 ἐν μολίβδῳ ἐγχυλιασμένων. ἴστανται δὲ καὶ εἰς τὸ τοιοῦτον
in lead set stand and also in the such
 κάστρον καὶ κίονες πυκνοί, ἔχοντες ἐπάνω κοσμίτας, ἐν οἷς
fortress also columns close-set having above cornices on which

ἔμελλεν ὁ αὐτὸς βασιλεὺς Διοκλητιανὸς εἰληματικὰς ἐγείραι
was-about the same emperor Diocletian vaulted to-raise
 καμάρas, καὶ σκεπάσαι τὸ κάστρον ὅλον, καὶ ποιῆσαι τὰ
chambers and to-cover the fortress whole and to-make the
 παλάτια αὐτοῦ καὶ πάντα τὰ οἰκήματα τοῦ κάστρου ἐπάνω
palaces his and all the dwellings of-the fortress above
 τῶν εἰλημάτων ἐκείνων διόροφα καὶ τριόροφα, ὥστε μὴ
the vaults those two-storied and three-storied so-that not
 ὀλίγον ἐκ τοῦ αὐτοῦ κάστρου ἐσκέπασε. τοῦ δὲ τοιούτου
little of the same fortress he-covered of-the and such
 κάστρου τὸ τεῖχος οὔτε περίπατον ἔχει οὔτε προμαχῶνας,
fortress the wall neither walkway has nor ramparts
 ἀλλὰ τοίχους μόνους ὑψηλοὺς καὶ τοξικὰς φωταγωγούς.
but walls only high and arched windows
 Ὅτι τὸ κάστρον τὸ Τετραγγούριον μικρὸν ἐστὶ νησίον ἐν
that the fortress — Tetrangourin small is (an)-islet in
 τῇ θαλάσῃ, ἔχον καὶ τράχηλον ἕως τῆς γῆς στενωτάτον
the sea having also (a)-neck as-far-as the land very-narrow
 δίκην γεφυρίου, ἐν ᾧ διέρχονται οἱ κατοικοῦντες εἰς
in-the-manner-of (a)-little-bridge by which pass those dwelling in
 τὸ αὐτὸ κάστρον. Τετραγγούριον δὲ καλεῖται διὰ τὸ εἶναι
the same fortress Tetrangourin and it-is-called because-of the to-be
 αὐτὸ μικρὸν δίκην ἀγγουρίου. ἐν δὲ τῷ αὐτῷ κάστρῳ
it small in-the-manner-of (a)-cucumber in and the same fortress
 ἀπόκειται ὁ ἅγιος μάρτυρ Λαυρέντιος ὁ ἀρχιδιάκων.
is-laid-up the holy martyr Lawrence the archdeacon
 Ὅτι τὸ κάστρον τῶν Δεκατέρων ἐρμηνεύεται τῇ Ῥωμαίων
that the fortress of-the Dekatera is-interpreted in-the of-(the)-Romans
 διαλέκτῳ ἐστενωμένον καὶ πεπληγμένον, διότι εἰσέρχεται ἡ
dialect narrowed and pressed because enters the
 θάλασσα ὥσπερ γλῶσσα ἐστενωμένη μέχρι τῶν δεκαπέντε
sea like (a)-tongue narrowed as-far-as the fifteen

καὶ εἴκοσι μιλίων, καὶ εἰς τὸ τῆς θαλάσσης συμπλήρωμά
and twenty miles and at the of-the sea end
 ἔστι τὸ κάστρον. ἔχει δὲ τὸ τοιοῦτον κάστρον κύκλον αὐτοῦ
is the fortress has and the such fortress around it
 ὄρη ὑψηλά, ὥστε μόνῳ τῷ καλοκαιρίῳ βλέπειν τὸν
mountains high so-that only in-the summer to-see the
 ἥλιον διὰ τὸ μεσουραεῖν, τῷ δὲ χειμῶνι οὐδαμῶς. ἐν δὲ
sun because-of the to-be-in-mid-heaven in-the and winter not-at-all in and
 τῷ αὐτῷ κάστρῳ κεῖται ὁ ἅγιος Τρύφων ἀκεραίως πᾶσαν
the same fortress lies the holy Tryphon wholly every
 νόσον ἰώμενος, μάλιστα τοὺς ὑπὸ πνευμάτων ἀκαθάρτων
disease healing especially those by spirits unclean
 τυραννουμένους· ὁ δὲ ναὸς αὐτοῦ ἐστὶν εἰληματικός.
tyrannized the and temple his is vaulted
 Ὅτι τὸ κάστρον τῶν Διαδώρων καλεῖται τῇ Ῥωμαίων
that the fortress of-the Diadora is-called in-the of-(the)-Romans
 διαλέκτῳ ἰὰμ ἔρατ, ὅπερ ἐρμηνεύεται ἀπάρτι ἦτον· δηλονότι
dialect iam erat which is-interpreted already it-was evidently
 ὅτε ἡ Ῥώμη ἐκτίσθη, προεκτισμένον ἦν τὸ τοιοῦτον κάστρον·
when — Rome was-built built-before was the such fortress
 ἔστι δὲ τὸ κάστρον μέγα. ἡ δὲ κοινὴ συνήθεια καλεῖ
is and the fortress great the and common usage calls
 αὐτὸ Διάδωρα. ἐν δὲ τῷ αὐτῷ κάστρῳ κεῖται ἐν σαρκὶ ἡ
it Diadora in and the same fortress lies in (the)-flesh the
 ἁγία Ἀναστασία ἡ παρθένος, θυγάτηρ γεγονυῖα Εὐσταθίου
holy Anastasia the virgin daughter having-been of-Eustathios
 τοῦ κατὰ τὸν καιρὸν ἐκεῖνον βασιλεύσαντος, καὶ ὁ ἅγιος
the(-one) at the time that having-reigned and the holy
 Χρυσόγονος μοναχὸς καὶ μάρτυς, καὶ ἡ ἁγία ἄλυσις αὐτοῦ.
Chrysogonos monk and martyr and the holy chain his
 ὁ δὲ ναὸς τῆς ἁγίας Ἀναστασίας ἐστὶ δρομικός, ὅμοιος τῷ
the and temple of-the holy Anastasia is oblong like to-the

Χαλκοπρατίων ναῶ, μετὰ κίωνων πρασίνων καὶ λευκῶν,
of-the-Chalkoprasteia temple with columns green and white
 ὅλος εἰκονισμένος ἐξ ὑλογραφίας ἀρχαίας· ὁ δὲ πάτος
whole painted with painting ancient the and floor
 αὐτοῦ ἐστὶν ἀπὸ συγκοπῆς θαυμαστῆς. ἔστι δὲ καὶ ἕτερος
its is of inlay-work marvelous there-is and also another
 ναὸς πλησίον αὐτοῦ εἰληματικός, ἡ ἁγία Τριάς· καὶ ἐπάνω
temple near it vaulted the holy Trinity and above
 τοῦ ναοῦ αὐτοῦ πάλιν ἕτερος ναὸς δίκην κατηχουμένων,
the temple its again another temple in-the-manner-of galleries
 καὶ αὐτὸς εἰληματικός, εἰς ὃν καὶ ἀνέρχονται διὰ κοχλείας.
and it vaulted to which also they-go-up by (a)-spiral-stair
 Ὅτι εἰσὶ νησία ὑπὸ τὴν ἐπικράτειαν τῆς Δελματίας
that there-are islets under the dominion — of-Dalmatia
 μέχρι Βενεβενδοῦ πυκνὰ καὶ πάμπολλα, ὥστε μηδέποτε
as-far-as Benevento close-set and very-many so-that never
 φοβεῖσθαι κλύδωνα ἐκεῖσε τὰ πλοῖα. ἐξ αὐτῶν τῶν νησιῶν
to-fear (a)-swell there the ships of the-very the islets
 ἐστὶ τὸ κάστρον ἡ Βέκλα, καὶ εἰς ἕτερον νησίον ἡ Ἄρβη,
is the fortress — Vekla and on another islet — Arbe
 καὶ εἰς ἕτερον νησίον ἡ Ὀψαρα, καὶ εἰς ἕτερον νησίον
and on another islet — Opsara and on another islet
 τὸ Λουμβρικότον, ἅτινα κατοικοῦνται μέχρι τοῦ νῦν· τὰ
— Loumbrikaton which are-inhabited until the now the
 δὲ λοιπά εἰσιν ἀοίκητα, ἔχοντα ἐρημόκαστρα, ὧν τὰ
and others are uninhabited having deserted-fortresses of-which the
 ὀνόματά εἰσιν οὕτω, Καταυτρεβενὼ Πιζύχ Σεלבὼ Σκερδὰ
names are thus Katautreveno Pizych Selvo Skerda
 Ἄλωηπ Σκιρδάκισσα Πυρότιμα Μελετὰ Ἑστιουνήζ, καὶ
Aloep Skirdakissa Pyrotima Meleta Estiounez and
 ἕτερα πάμπολλα ὧν τὰ ὀνόματα οὐ νοοῦνται. τὰ δὲ
others very-many of-which the names not are-understood the and

λοιπὰ κάστρα τὰ ὄντα εἰς τὴν ξηρὰν τοῦ θέματος καὶ
other fortresses those being on the dry-land of-the theme and
 κρατηθέντα παρὰ τῶν εἰρημένων Σκλάβων ἀοίκητα καὶ
taken by the said Slavs uninhabited and
 ἔρημα ἵστανται, μηδενὸς κατοικοῦντος ἐν αὐτοῖς.
deserted stand no-one dwelling in them

XXX · AN ACCOUNT OF DALMATIA

Dalmatia once stretched from Dyrrachium to Istria and the Danube. The Avars took Salona disguised in captured Dalmatian clothes. Five brothers and two sisters led the Croats in, and they defeated the Avars. The Croats threw off the Franks, who had killed their infants, and were baptized from Rome. The chapter describes the zupanias of Croatia and the lands of the neighboring Slavs, and how Basil had the coastal towns pay their tribute to the Slavs.

διήγησις περὶ τοῦ θέματος Δελματίας.

(an)-account concerning the theme of-Dalmatia

Εἰ πᾶσι ἡ γνώσις καλόν, καὶ ἡμεῖς ἄρα τῶν πραγμάτων
if for-all the knowledge (is)-good also we then of-the affairs

τὴν γνώσιν καταλαμβάνοντες οὐ πόρρω τούτου γνώμεθα.
the knowledge grasping not far from-this are

ὅθεν καὶ πᾶσι φανεράν ποιούμεν τῶν μεθ' ἡμᾶς πῇ
whence also to-all evident we-make of-those after us in-one-place

μὲν τούτων τὴν δῆλωσιν πῇ δὲ ἐτέρων τινῶν
indeed of-these the setting-forth in-another and of-others some

ἀξιολόγων, ἵνα διπλοῦν ἐπανακολουθῇ τὸ καλόν. τοῖς
notable so-that double may-follow the good to-those

οὖν καὶ τῆς Δελματίας τὴν παράληψιν ζητοῦσιν, ὅπως
then also — of-Dalmatia the taking seeking how

ἐλήφθη παρὰ τῶν Σκλαβικῶν ἔθνων, ἐντεῦθεν ἔστι
it-was-taken by the Slavonic nations from-here it-is

μαθεῖν. ἀλλὰ πρότερον τὴν θέσιν αὐτῆς διηγητέον. ἐκ
to-learn but first the position its must-be-related from
 παλαιοῦ μὲν τοίνυν ἡ Δελματία τὴν ἀρχὴν μὲν εἶχεν
old indeed then — Dalmatia the beginning indeed had
 ἀπὸ τῶν συνόρων Δυρραχίου ἡγουν ἀπὸ Ἀντιβάρεως,
from the borders of-Dyrrachium that-is from Antibaris
 καὶ παρετείνετο μὲν μέχρι τῶν τῆς Ἰστρίας ὄρων,
and extended indeed as-far-as the — of-Istria mountains
 ἐπλατύνετο δὲ μέχρι τοῦ Δανουβίου ποταμοῦ. ἦν δὲ
was-broad and as-far-as the Danube river was and
 ἅπασα ἡ τοιαύτη περίχωρος ὑπὸ τὴν Ῥωμαίων ἀρχήν,
all the such surrounding-country under the of-(the)-Romans rule
 καὶ ἐνδοξότερον τῶν ἄλλων ἐσπερίων θεμάτων τὸ τοιοῦτον
and more-glorious of-the other western themes the such
 θέμα ἐτύγχανεν· πλὴν παρελήφθη παρὰ τὴν Σκλαβινικῶν
theme happened-to-be however it-was-taken by the Slavonic
 ἐθνῶν τρόπῳ τοιῷδε. κάστρον ἐστὶ πλησίον Ἀσπαλάθου
nations in-(a)-way such (a)-fortress is near Aspalathos
 ὃ Σαλῶνα λέγεται, ἔργον Διοκλητιανοῦ βασιλέως. ἀλλ'
which Salona is-called (a)-work of-Diocletian (the)-emperor but
 ἡ μὲν Ἀσπάλαθος καὶ αὕτη παρὰ Διοκλητιανοῦ ἐκτίσθη,
— indeed Aspalathos also itself by Diocletian was-built
 καὶ τὰ αὐτοῦ βασιλικά ἐκεῖσε ἐτύγχανον· εἰς δὲ
and the his imperial(-residences) there happened-to-be in and
 Σαλῶναν κατῴκουν οἱ μεγιστᾶνες αὐτοῦ καὶ τῶν ὄχλων
Salona dwelt the grandees his and of-the crowds
 ἱκανοί. ὑπῆρχε δὲ τὸ τοιοῦτον κάστρον κεφαλὴ
considerable(-numbers) was and the such fortress head
 πάσης τῆς Δελματίας. ἡθροίζοντο οὖν ἀνὰ πᾶν ἔτος ἐκ
of-all — Dalmatia were-assembled then by every year from
 τῶν λοιπῶν κάστρων τῆς Δελματίας στρατιῶται ἔφιπποι,
the other fortresses — of-Dalmatia soldiers mounted

καὶ ἀπεστέλλοντο ἀπὸ τῆς Σαλῶνος μέχρι τῶν χιλίων,
and were-sent from — Salona up-to the thousand
καὶ ἐφύλαττον εἰς τὸν Δανουβίου ποταμὸν ἕνεκα τῶν
and they-kept-guard on the Danube river on-account-of the
Ἀβάρων· οἱ γὰρ Ἀβάρεις ἐκείθεν τοῦ Δανουβίου ποταμοῦ
Avars the for Avars beyond-there of-the Danube river
τὰς διατριβὰς ἐποιοῦντο, ἔνθα ἀρτίως εἰσὶν οἱ Τοῦρκοι,
the abodes made where now are the Turks
νομάδα βίον ζῶντες. ἀπερχόμενοι δὲ οἱ Δελματίας κατ'
(a)-nomad life living going-away and the Dalmatians each
ἔτος ἔβλεπον πολλάκις ἐκείθεν τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὰ τε
year saw often beyond-there of-the river the both
κτηνὴν καὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους. ἔδοξεν οὖν αὐτοῖς κατὰ
cattle and the men it-seemed then to-them at
τινα χρόνον διαπερᾶσαι καὶ ἐρευνῆσαι τίνες εἰσὶν οἱ
some time to-cross and to-search-out who are those
ἐκεῖσε τὴν δίαιταν ἔχοντες. περάσαντες οὖν εὗρον τὰς
there the way-of-life having having-crossed then they-found the
γυναῖκας τῶν Ἀβάρων καὶ τὰ παῖδια μόνα, τοὺς ἀνδρας
wives of-the Avars and the children alone the men
δὲ καὶ τὴν ἀκμάζουσαν ἡλικίαν ἐν ταξιδίῳ. ἄφνω οὖν
but and the flourishing age on campaign suddenly then
ἐπιπεσόντες ἡχμαλώτευσαν αὐτούς, καὶ ὑπέστρεψαν
having-fallen-upon(-them) they-captured them and returned
ἀταλαιπώρως, ἀποκομίσαντες τὴν τοιαύτην πραιδαν εἰς
without-hardship having-carried-off the such plunder to
Σαλῶνα. ὡς οὖν ὑπέστρεψαν οἱ Ἀβαρες ἐκ τοῦ ταξιδίου
Salona when then returned the Avars from the campaign
καὶ τὸ γενόμενον ἀφ' ὧν ἔπαθον ἔμαθον,
and the having-happened from (the-things)-which they-had-suffered learned
ἐταράχθησαν μὲν, ἡγνόουν δὲ ὁπόθεν αὐτοῖς ἡ τοιαύτη
they-were-troubled indeed they-did-not-know and whence on-them the such

πληγὴν προσεγένετο. ἔδοξεν οὖν αὐτοῖς παραφυλάξαι τὸν
blow bad-come it-seemed then to-them to-watch-for the
 καιρὸν καὶ μαθεῖν τὸ πᾶν ἐξ αὐτοῦ. ἐπεὶ οὖν κατὰ τὸ
time and to-learn the whole from it since then according-to the
 σύννητες αὐθις οἱ ταξεῶται ἀπεστάλησαν ἀπὸ Σαλῶνος,
custom again the campaigners were-sent from Salona
 ἦσαν δὲ οὐκ ἐκεῖνοι ἀλλ' ἕτεροι, ταῦτα ἐκείνοις καὶ
they-were and not those but others the-same-things as-those also
 οὔτοι κατὰ βουλὰς ἔθεντο. διεπέρασαν οὖν κατ' αὐτῶν,
these by counsels set they-crossed then against them
 ἐντυχόντες δὲ αὐτοῖς συνηγμένοις ὁμοῦ, οὐχ ὥς τὸ
having-met and them gathered together not as the
 πρότερον ἐσκορπισμένοις, οὐ μόνον οὐδὲν ἐποίησαν ἀλλὰ
before scattered not only nothing they-did but
 καὶ τὰ πάντων δεινότατα ἔπαθον· οἱ μὲν γὰρ αὐτῶν
also the of-all most-terrible-things suffered some indeed for of-them
 ἐσφάγησαν, οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ ἐχειρώθησαν ζῶντες, καὶ οὐδεὶς
were-slaughtered the and others were-taken alive and no-one
 ἐκείνων τῶν χειρῶν ἐξέφυγεν. ἐξετάσαντες δὲ αὐτοὺς
of-those the hands escaped having-questioned and them
 τίνες καὶ ὅθεν εἰσί, καὶ ἀναμαθόντες ὅτι ἐξ αὐτῶν
who and whence they-are and having-learned that from them
 ἔπαθον τὴν εἰρημένην πληγὴν, ἔτι δὲ καὶ περὶ τῆς
they-bad-suffered the said blow yet and also concerning the
 ποιότητος τοῦ τόπου αὐτῶν ἐρευνήσαντες, καὶ ὅσον
quality of-the place their having-inquired and as-much-as
 ἐξ ἀκοῆς ἐρασθέντες, ἐκράτησαν τοὺς ζῶντας δεσμίους,
by hearing having-fallen-in-love they-held the living (as)-prisoners
 καὶ ἐνεδύσαντο τὰ ἱμάτια αὐτῶν καθὰ ἐκεῖνοι, καὶ δὴ
and put-on the clothes their as those and indeed
 τοὺς ἵππους ἀναβάντες, ἐπὶ χείρας τὰ τε φλάμουλα καὶ
the horses having-mounted in hands the both pennons and

τὰ λοιπὰ σημεῖα ἃ ἐπεφέροντο μετ' αὐτῶν, ἀπῆραν
the other standards which they-carried with them set-out
 πάντες φοσσατικῶς καὶ κατὰ τῆς Σαλῶνος ὥρμησαν.
all in-army-array and against — Salona rushed
 ὥς οὖν καὶ τὸν καιρὸν ἔμαθον ζητήσαντες καθ' ὃν
as then also the time they-had-learned having-sought at which
 οἱ ταξεῶται ἐκ τοῦ Δανουβίου ὑπέστρεφον (ἦν δὲ τὸ
the campaigners from the Danube returned it-was and the
 μέγα καὶ ἅγιον σάββατον), ἦλθον καὶ κατὰ τὴν αὐτὴν
great and holy sabbath they-came also on the same
 ἡμέραν. καὶ τὸ μὲν πλῆθος, ὅτε δήπου πλησίον ἐγένοντο,
day and the indeed multitude when surely near they-came
 τοῦ φοσσάτου ἀπεκρύβη· μέχρι δὲ τῶν χιλίων, οὔτινες
of-the army was-hidden up-to and the thousand who
 τοὺς τε ἵππους καὶ τὰς στολὰς εἰς ἀπάτην ἐκέκτηντο
the both horses and the robes for deception had-acquired
 τῶν Δελματινῶν, ἐξήλασαν. ἀναγνωρίσαντες δὲ οἱ τοῦ
of-the Dalmatians rode-forward having-recognized and those of-the
 κάστρου τὰ τε σημεῖα καὶ τὴν ἀμφίασιν αὐτῶν, ἀλλὰ
fortress the both standards and the dress their but
 καὶ τὴν ἡμέραν ὥς ἔθους ὄντος αὐτοῖς τοῦ ὑποστρέφειν
also the day as (a)-custom being for-them of-the to-return
 ἐν αὐτῇ, ἤνοιξαν τὰς πόρτας καὶ ὑπεδέξαντο αὐτοὺς μετὰ
on it opened the gates and received them with
 περιχαρείας. ἐκεῖνοι δὲ ἅμα τοῦ εἰσελθεῖν τὰς
great-joy they and at-the-same-time-as the to-enter the
 τε πόρτας ἐκράτησαν, καὶ δήλην διὰ σημείου τὴν πράξιν
both gates seized and evident by (a)-signal the deed
 τῷ φοσσάτῳ πεποιηκότες συνεισδραμεῖν καὶ συνεισελθεῖν
to-the army having-made to-run-in-together and to-enter-together
 παρεσκεύασαν. κατέσφαξαν οὖν πάντας τοὺς τῆς πόλεως,
prepared(-them) they-slaughtered then all those of-the city

καὶ ἔκτοτε κατεκράτησαν πᾶσαν τὴν χώραν Δελματίας καὶ
and from-then took-control-of all the land of-Dalmatia and
κατεσκήνωσαν ἐν αὐτῇ. μόνα δὲ τὰ πρὸς θάλασσαν
settled in it only and the(-ones) toward (the)-sea
πολίχνια οὐ συνέδωκαν αὐτοῖς, ἀλλὰ κατεῖχοντο παρὰ
little-towns not surrendered to-them but were-held by
τῶν Ῥωμαίων διὰ τὸ εἶναι τὸν πόρον τῆς ζωῆς αὐτῶν
the Romans because-of the to-be the means of-the life their
ἐκ τῆς θαλάσσης. ἰδόντες οὖν οἱ Ἀβάρεις καλλίστην
from the sea having-seen then the Avars most-beautiful
οὖσαν τὴν τοιαύτην γῆν κατεσκήνωσαν ἐν αὐτῇ. οἱ δὲ
being the such land settled in it the and
Χρωβάτοι κατώκουν τηνικαῦτα ἐκεῖθεν Βαγιβαρείας, ἔνθα
Croats dwelt at-that-time beyond-there of-Bavaria where
εἰσὶν ἀρτίως οἱ Βελοχρωβάτοι. μία δὲ γενεὰ διαχωρισθεῖσα
are now the White-Croats one and family having-separated
ἐξ αὐτῶν, ἡγουν ἀδελφοὶ πέντε, ὃ τε Κλουκάς καὶ
from them that-is brothers five — both Kloukas and
ὁ Λόβελος καὶ ὁ Κοσέντζης καὶ ὁ Μουχλῶ καὶ ὁ
— Lobelos and — Kosentzes and — Mouchlo and —
Χρώβατος, καὶ ἀδελφαὶ δύο, ἡ Τοῖγα καὶ ἡ Βοῦγα,
Chrobatos and sisters two — Toiga and — Bouga
μετὰ τοῦ λαοῦ αὐτῶν ἦλθον εἰς Δελματίαν, καὶ εὔρον
with the people their came to Dalmatia and found
τοὺς Ἀβάρεις κατέχοντας τὴν τοιαύτην γῆν. ἐπὶ τινος οὖν
the Avars holding the such land for some then
χρόνους πολεμοῦντες ἀλλήλοις ὑπερίσχυσαν οἱ Χρωβάτοι,
years warring with-each-other prevailed the Croats
καὶ τοὺς μὲν τῶν Ἀβάρων κατέσφαξαν, τοὺς δὲ λοιποὺς
and some indeed of-the Avars they-slaughtered the and others
ὑποταγῆναι κατηνάγκασαν. ἔκτοτε οὖν κατεκρατήθη ἡ
to-be-subjected they-compelled from-then then was-held the

τοιαύτη χώρα παρὰ τῶν Χρωβάτων· καὶ εἰσὶν ἀκμὴν ἐν
such land by the Croats and there-are still in
 Χρωβατία ἐκ τοὺς τῶν Ἀβάρων, καὶ γινώσκονται Ἀβάρεις
Croatia of the of-the Avars and they-are-known Avars
 ὄντες. οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ Χρωβάτοι ἔμειναν πρὸς Φραγγίαν, καὶ
being the and other Croats remained toward Frankland and
 λέγονται ἀρτίως Βελοχρωβάτοι ἤγουν ἄσπροι Χρωβάτοι,
are-called now White-Croats that-is white Croats
 ἔχοντες τὸν ἴδιον ἄρχοντα· ὑπόκεινται δὲ Ὡτῳ τῷ
having the own prince are-subject and to-Otto the
 μεγάλῳ ῥηγὶ Φραγγίας τῆς καὶ Σαξίας, καὶ ἀβάπτιστοι
great king of-Frankland the also of-Saxony and unbaptized
 τυγχάνουσι, συμπενθερίας μετὰ τοὺς Τούρκους καὶ ἀγάπας
they-are marriage-alliances with the Turks and friendships
 ἔχοντες. ἀπὸ δὲ Χρωβάτων τῶν ἐλθόντων ἐν Δελματία
having from and (the)-Croats those having-come to Dalmatia
 διεχωρίσθη μέρος τι, καὶ ἐκράτησε τὸ Ἰλλυρικὸν καὶ
separated (a)-part some and took-control-of — Illyricum and
 τὴν Παννονίαν· εἶχον δὲ καὶ αὐτοὶ ἄρχοντα αὐτεξούσιον,
— Pannonia they-had and also they (a)-prince independent
 διαπεμπόμενον πρὸς τὸν ἄρχοντα Χρωβατίας κατὰ φιλίαν.
sending(-envoys) to the prince of-Croatia in friendship
 μέχρι δὲ χρόνων τινῶν ὑπετάσσοντο καὶ οἱ ἐν Δελματία
until and times some were-subject also those in Dalmatia
 ὄντες Χρωβάτοι τοῖς Φράγγοις, καθὼς καὶ πρότερον ἐν
being Croats to-the Franks as also before in
 τῇ χώρᾳ αὐτῶν· τοσοῦτον δὲ ἐσκληρύνοντο οἱ Φράγγοι
the land their so-much and were-harsh the Franks
 πρὸς αὐτοὺς ὅτι τὰ ὑπομάσθια τῶν Χρωβάτων φονεύοντες
toward them that the sucklings of-the Croats killing
 προσέρριπτον αὐτὰ σκύλαξι. μὴ δυνάμενοι δὲ οἱ Χρωβάτοι
they-threw them to-dogs not being-able and the Croats

ταῦτα παρὰ τῶν Φράγγων ὑφίστασθαι διέστησαν ἀπ'
these(-things) from the Franks to-endure revolted from
 αὐτῶν, φονεύσαντες καὶ οὓς εἶχον ἄρχοντας ἐξ αὐτῶν·
them having-killed also whom they-had (as)-princes from them
 ὅθεν ἐστράτευσαν κατ' αὐτῶν ἀπὸ Φραγγίας φοσσάτον
whence marched against them from Frankland (an)-army
 μέγα, καὶ ἐπὶ ἑπτὰ χρόνους πολεμήσαντες ἀλλήλοις
great and for seven years having-warred with-each-other
 ὀψὲ καὶ μόγις ὑπερίσχυσαν οἱ Χρωβάτοι, καὶ ἀνείλυν
late and hardly prevailed the Croats and destroyed
 τοὺς Φράγγους πάντας καὶ τὸν ἄρχοντα αὐτῶν Κοτζίλιν
the Franks all and the prince their Kotzilis
 καλούμενον. ἔκτοτε δὲ μέιναντες αὐτοδέσποτοι αὐτόνομοι
called from-then and having-remained their-own-masters independent
 ἐξητήσαντο τὸ ἅγιον βάπτισμα παρὰ τοῦ Ῥώμης· καὶ
they-asked-for the holy baptism from the(-bishop) of-Rome and
 ἀπεστάλησαν ἐπίσκοποι καὶ ἐβάπτισαν αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ Πορίνου
were-sent bishops and baptized them under Porinos
 τοῦ ἄρχοντος αὐτῶν. διεμερίσθη οὖν ἡ χώρα αὐτῶν εἰς
the prince their was-divided then the land their into
 ζουπανίας ἰα', ἥγουν ἡ Χλεβιάνα, ἡ Τζέντζηνα, τὰ Ἥμοτα,
zupanias 11 that-is — Chlebena — Tzentina — Emota
 ἡ Πλέβα, ἡ Πεσέντα, ἡ παραθαλασσία, ἡ Βρεβέρα, ἡ
— Pleva — Pesenta — Parathalassia — Brebera —
 Νόνα, ἡ Τνήνα, ἡ Σιδραγα, ἡ Νίνα· καὶ ὁ βοάνος αὐτῶν
Nona — Tnena — Sidraga — Nina and the ban their
 κρατεῖ τὴν Κρίβασαν, τὴν Λίτζαν καὶ τὴν Γουτζηκᾶ. καὶ
holds — Kribasa — Litza and — Goutzeka and
 ἡ μὲν εἰρημένη Χρωβατία, ἀλλὰ καὶ οἱ λοιποὶ Σκλαβίνιοι
the indeed said Croatia but also the other Slavonians
 διάκεινται οὕτως· ἡ δὲ Διόκληα πλησιάζει πρὸς τὰ
are-disposed thus — and Diokleia borders on the

καστέλλια τοῦ Δυρραχίου ἡγουν πρὸς τὸν Ἑλισσὸν καὶ
castles — of-Dyrrachium that-is on — Elisos and
 πρὸς τὸν Ἑλκύνιον καὶ τὴν Ἀντίβαριν, καὶ ἔρχεται μέχρι
on — Elkynion and — Antibaris and comes as-far-as
 τῶν Δεκατέρων, πρὸς τὰ ὄρεινὰ δὲ πλησιάζει τῇ
the Dekatera toward the mountainous(-parts) and it-borders —
 Σερβλία. ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ κάστρου τῶν Δεκατέρων ἄρχεται
on-Serbia from and the fortress of-the Dekatera begins
 ἡ ἀρχοντία Τερβουνίας, καὶ παρεκτείνεται μέχρι τοῦ
the government of-Terbounia and extends as-far-as —
 Ῥαουσίου, πρὸς δὲ τὰ ὄρεινὰ αὐτῆς πλησιάζει τῇ
Ragusa toward and the mountainous(-parts) its it-borders —
 Σερβλία. ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ Ῥαουσίου ἄρχεται ἡ ἀρχοντία τῶν
on-Serbia from and — Ragusa begins the government of-the
 Ζαχλούμων καὶ παρεκτείνεται μέχρι τοῦ Ὀροντίου ποταμοῦ,
Zachlumi and extends as-far-as the Orontios river
 καὶ πρὸς μὲν τὴν παραθαλασσίαν πλησιάζει τοῖς Παγανοῖς,
and toward indeed the coast it-borders on-the Pagani
 πρὸς δὲ τὰ ὄρεινὰ εἰς ἄρκτον μὲν πλησιάζει τοῖς
toward and the mountainous(-parts) to (the)-north indeed it-borders on-the
 Χρωβάτοις, εἰς κεφαλὴν δὲ τῇ Σερβλία. ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ
Croats at (the)-head and — on-Serbia from and the
 Ὀροντίου ποταμοῦ ἄρχεται ἡ Παγανία, καὶ παρεκτείνεται
Orontios river begins — Pagania and extends
 μέχρι τοῦ ποταμοῦ τῆς Ζεντίας, τρεῖς ἔχουσα ζουπανίας,
as-far-as the river of-the Tzentina three having zupanias
 τὴν Ῥάστωτζαν καὶ τὸ Μοκρόν καὶ τὸ Δαλέν. καὶ αἱ μὲν
— Rbastotza and — Mokron and — Dalen and the indeed
 δύο ζουπανίαι, ἡγουν ἡ Ῥάστωτζα, καὶ ἡ τοῦ Μοκροῦ,
two zupanias that-is — Rbastotza and the(-one) — of-Mokron
 πρόσκεινται τῇ θαλάσσῃ· αἵτινες καὶ σαγήνας ἔχουσιν·
lie-against the sea which also galleys have

ἡ δὲ τοῦ Δαλενοῦ μηκόθεν ἐστὶ τῆς θαλάσσης, καὶ
the and — of-Dalen far-off is from-the sea and
 ἐκ τῆς ἐργασίας ζῶσι τῆς γῆς. πλησιάζουσι δὲ αὐτοῖς
from the working they-live of-the land border and on-them
 νῆσοι τέσσαρες, τὰ Μέλετα, τὰ Κούρκουρα, ἡ Βάρτζω
islands four — Meleta — Kourkoura — Bartzo
 καὶ ὁ Φάρος, κάλλισται καὶ εὐφορώταται, ἐρημόκαστρα
and — Pharos most-beautiful and most-fertile deserted-fortresses
 ἔχουσαι καὶ ἐλῶνας πολλούς· οἰκοῦσι δὲ ἐν αὐταῖς καὶ
having and olive-groves many they-dwell and on them and
 ἔχουσι τὰ κτήνη αὐτῶν καὶ ἐξ αὐτῶν ζῶσιν. ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς
have the cattle their and from them they-live from and the
 Ζεντίνας τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἄρχεται ἡ χώρα τῆς Χρωβατίας,
Tzentina the river begins the land — of-Croatia
 καὶ παρεκτείνεται πρὸς μὲν τὴν παραθαλασσίαν μέχρι
and extends toward indeed the coast as-far-as
 τῶν συνόρων Ἰστρίας ἡγουν τοῦ κάστρου Ἀλβούνου· πρὸς
the borders of-Istria that-is of-the fortress of-Albounon toward
 δὲ τὰ ὄρεινὰ καὶ ὑπέρεκειται μέχρι τινὸς τῷ
and the mountainous(-parts) also it-lies-above to some(-extent) the
 θέματι Ἰστρίας, πλησιάζει δὲ πρὸς τὴν Τζέντινα καὶ τὴν
theme of-Istria it-borders and at — Tzentina and —
 Χλέβена τῇ χώρᾳ Σερβλίας· ἡ γὰρ χώρα Σερβλίας
Chlebena on-the land of-Serbia the for land of-Serbia
 εἰς κεφαλὴν μὲν ἐστὶ πασῶν τῶν λοιπῶν χωρῶν, πρὸς
at (the)-head indeed is of-all the other lands toward
 ἄρκτον δὲ πλησιάζει τῇ Χρωβατίᾳ, πρὸς μεσημβρίαν
(the)-north and it-borders — on-Croatia toward (the)-south
 δὲ τῇ Βουλγαρίᾳ. ἀφ' οὗ δὲ κατεσκήνωσαν οἱ
and — on-Bulgaria from (the-time)-when and settled the
 εἰρημένοι Σκλάβοι, κατεκράτησαν πᾶσαν τὴν περίχωρον
said Slavs they-took-control-of all the surrounding-country

Δελματίας. ἐργάζοντο δὲ τὰ κάστρα τῶν Ῥωμαίων τὰς
of-Dalmatia worked and the fortresses of-the Romans the
 νήσους, καὶ ἔξουν ἐξ αὐτῶν· ὑπὸ δὲ τῶν Παγανῶν καθ'
islands and lived from them by and the Pagani by
 ἐκάστην ἐπαιχμαλωτιζόμενοι καὶ ἀφανιζόμενοι κατέλιπον
each(-day) being-taken-captive and being-destroyed they-abandoned
 τὰς τοιαύτας νήσους, βουλόμενοι εἰς τὴν ἡπειρον ἐργάζεσθαι.
the such islands wishing on the mainland to-work
 ἐκωλύοντο δὲ παρὰ τῶν Χρωβάτων· οὐπω γὰρ ἐτέλουν
they-were-hindered and by the Croats not-yet for they-paid
 αὐτοῖς φόρους, ἀλλὰ πάντα ἅπερ ἀρτίως παρέχουσι τοῖς
to-them tributes but all which now they-furnish to-the
 Σκλάβοις, τῷ στρατηγῷ ταῦτα παρείχον. ἀδυνάτως δὲ
Slavs to-the general these(-things) they-furnished unable and
 ἔχοντες τοῦ ζῆν προσῆλθον Βασιλείῳ τῷ αἰοιδίμῳ βασιλεῖ,
being of-the to-live they-came-to Basil the celebrated emperor
 ἀναδιδάξαντες τὰ εἰρημένα πάντα, ὁ οὖν αἰοιδίμος ἐκεῖνος
having-informed(-him) the said-things all the then celebrated that
 βασιλεὺς Βασίλειος προετρέψατο πάντα τὰ διδόμενα
emperor Basil urged all the(-things) given
 τῷ στρατηγῷ δίδοσθαι παρ' αὐτῶν τοῖς Σκλάβοις καὶ
to-the general to-be-given by them to-the Slavs and
 εἰρηνικῶς ζῆν μετ' αὐτῶν, καὶ βραχύ τι δίδοσθαι τῷ
peacefully to-live with them and little something to-be-given to-the
 στρατηγῷ, ἵνα μόνον δείκνυται ἢ πρὸς τοὺς βασιλεῖς
general so-that only may-be-shown the toward the emperors
 τῶν Ῥωμαίων καὶ πρὸς τὸν στρατηγὸν αὐτῶν ὑποταγῇ
of-the Romans and toward the general their subjection
 καὶ δούλωσις. καὶ ἔκτοτε ἐγένοντο πάντα τὰ τοιαῦτα
and servitude and from-then became all the such
 κάστρα ὑπόφορα τῶν Σκλάβων, καὶ τελούσιν αὐτοῖς
fortresses tributary of-the Slavs and pay to-them

πάκτα, τὸ μὲν κάστρον ἢ Ἀσπάλαθος νομίσματα σ', τὸ
tributes the indeed fortress — Aspalathos nomismata 200 the
 κάστρον τὸ Τετραγγούριν νομίσματα ρ', τὸ κάστρον τὰ
fortress — Tetrangourin nomismata 100 the fortress —
 Διάδωρα ρί, τὸ κάστρον τὰ Ὑψαρα ρ', τὸ κάστρον ἢ
Diadora 110 the fortress — Opsara 100 the fortress —
 Ἄρβη ρ', τὸ κάστρον ἢ Βέκλα ρ', ὥς ὁμοῦ νομίσματα
Arbe 100 the fortress — Vekla 100 as together nomismata
 ψι', ἐκτὸς οἴνου καὶ ἐτέρων διαφόρων εἰδῶν· ταῦτα
710 apart-from wine and other various kinds these
 γὰρ πλείονά εἰσιν ὑπὲρ τὰ νομίσματα. τὸ δὲ κάστρον
for more are than the nomismata the and fortress
 τὸ Ῥαούσιον μέσον τῶν δύο χωρῶν πρόσκειται, τῶν
— Ragusa between the two lands lies the
 τε Ζαχλούμων καὶ τῆς Τερβουνίας· ἔχουσι δὲ καὶ τοὺς
both Zachlumi and — Terbounia they-have and also the
 ἀμπελώνας αὐτῶν εἰς ἀμφοτέρας τὰς χώρας, καὶ τελοῦσι
vineyards their in both the lands and they-pay
 πρὸς μὲν τὸν ἄρχοντα τῶν Ζαχλούμων νομίσματα λς',
to indeed the prince of-the Zachlumi nomismata 36
 πρὸς δὲ τὸν ἄρχοντα Τερβουνίας νομίσματα λς'.
to and the prince of-Terbounia nomismata 36

The Croats came from White Croatia and, at Heraclius' bidding, drove the Avars out of Dalmatia. Heraclius had them baptized by priests from Rome. They swore to Saint Peter, by the pope's ordinance, never to attack a foreign land, so their ships sail only for trade. They never submitted to Bulgaria. Baptized Croatia once fielded sixty thousand horse and a hundred thousand foot, before civil strife reduced it. White Croatia, still unbaptized, is weaker and far from the sea.

περὶ τῶν Χρωβάτων, καὶ ἧς νῦν οἰκοῦσι χώρας.
concerning the Croats and which now they-inhabit land
 Ὅτι οἱ Χρωβάτοι οἱ εἰς τὰ Δελματίας νῦν κατοικοῦντες
that the Croats those in the of-Dalmatia now dwelling
 μέρη ἀπὸ τῶν ἀβαπτίστων Χρωβάτων καὶ τῶν ἄσπρων
parts from the unbaptized Croats and the white
 ἐπονομαζομένων κατάγονται, οἵτινες Τουρκίας μὲν ἐκείθεν
called are-descended who of-Turkey indeed beyond
 Φραγγίας δὲ πλησίον κατοικοῦσι, καὶ συνοροῦσι Σκλάβοις
of-Frankland and near dwell and border on-Slavs
 τοῖς ἀβαπτίστοις Σέρβοις. τὸ δὲ Χρωβάτοι τῇ τῶν
the unbaptized Serbs the and Croats in-the of-the
 Σκλάβων διαλέκτῳ ἐρμηνεύεται, τουτέστιν οἱ τὴν πολλὴν
Slavs dialect is-interpreted that-is those the much
 χώραν κατέχοντες. οἱ δὲ αὐτοὶ Χρωβάτοι εἰς τὸν
land holding the and same Croats to the
 βασιλέα τῶν Ῥωμαίων Ἡράκλειον πρόσφυγες παρεγένοντο
emperor of-the Romans Heraclius (as)-refugees came
 πρὸ τοῦ τοὺς Σέρβλους προσφυγεῖν εἰς τὸν αὐτὸν
before the the Serbs to-take-refuge to the same
 βασιλέα Ἡράκλειον, κατὰ τὸν καιρὸν ὃν οἱ Ἀβάρεις
emperor Heraclius at the time in-which the Avars
 πολεμήσαντες ἀπ' ἐκείσε τοὺς Ῥωμάνους ἐναπεδίωξαν,
having-warred from there the Romani drove-out

οὗς ὁ βασιλεὺς Διοκλητιανὸς ἀπὸ Ῥώμης ἀγαγὼν
whom the emperor Diocletian from Rome having-brought
 ἐκεῖσε κατεσκήνωσε· διὸ καὶ Ῥωμᾶνοι ἐκλήθησαν διὰ
there settled therefore also Romani they-were-called because-of
 τὸ ἀπὸ Ῥώμης μετοίκους αὐτοὺς γενέσθαι ἐν ταῖς
the from Rome settlers them to-become in the
 τοιαύταις χώραις, ἧγουν τῆς νῦν καλουμένης Χρωβατίας
such lands that-is of-the now called Croatia
 καὶ Σερβλίας. παρὰ δὲ τῶν Ἀβάρων ἐκδιωχθέντες οἱ
and Serbia by and the Avars having-been-driven-out the
 αὐτοὶ Ῥωμᾶνοι ἐν ταῖς ἡμέραις τοῦ αὐτοῦ βασιλέως
same Romani in the days of-the same emperor
 Ῥωμαίων Ἡρακλείου, αἱ τούτων ἔρημοι καθεστήκασιν
of-(the)-Romans Heraclius the their deserted had-become
 χώραι. προστάξει οὖν τοῦ βασιλέως Ἡρακλείου οἱ αὐτοὶ
lands by-(the)-command then of-the emperor Heraclius the same
 Χρωβάτοι καταπολεμήσαντες καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν ἐκεῖσε τοὺς
Croats having-warred-down and from the there the
 Ἀβάρους ἐκδιώξαντες, Ἡρακλείου τοῦ βασιλέως κελεύσει
Avars having-driven-out of-Heraclius the emperor by-(the)-order
 ἐν τῇ αὐτῇ τῶν Ἀβάρων χώρα, εἰς ἣν νῦν οἰκοῦσι,
in the same of-the Avars land in which now they-dwell
 κατεσκήνωσαν· εἶχον δὲ οἱ αὐτοὶ Χρωβάτοι τῷ τότε καιρῷ
settled had and the same Croats at-the then time
 ἄρχοντα τὸν πατέρα τοῦ Ποργά. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς Ἡράκλειος
(as)-prince the father — of-Porgas the and emperor Heraclius
 ἀποστείλας καὶ ἀπὸ Ῥώμης ἀγαγὼν ἱερεῖς, καὶ ἐξ αὐτῶν
having-sent also from Rome having-brought priests and of them
 ποιήσας ἀρχιεπίσκοπον καὶ ἐπίσκοπον καὶ πρεσβυτέρους
having-made (an)-archbishop and (a)-bishop and presbyters

καὶ διακόνους, τοὺς Χρωβάτους ἐβάπτισεν· εἶχον δὲ τῷ
and deacons the Croats baptized had and at-the
τότε καιρῷ οἱ τοιοῦτοι Χρωβάτοι ἄρχοντα τὸν Ποργά.

then time the such Croats (as)-prince — Porgas

Ὅτι ἡ τοιαύτη χώρα εἰς ἣν οἱ Χρωβάτοι κατεσκηνώθησαν
that the such land in which the Croats were-settled

ἐξ ἀρχῆς ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν ἦν τοῦ βασιλέως τῶν
from (the)-beginning under the authority was of-the emperor of-the

Ῥωμαίων, ἐξ οὗ καὶ παλάτια καὶ ἵπποδρόμια τοῦ
Romans from which also palaces and hippodromes of-the

βασιλέως Διοκλητιανοῦ ἐν τῇ τῶν αὐτῶν Χρωβάτων χώρα
emperor Diocletian in the of-the same Croats land

μέχρι τῆς νῦν περισώζονται εἰς τὸ κάστρον Σαλώνας,
until the now survive at the fortress of-Salona

πλησίον τοῦ κάστρου Ἀσπαλάθου.
near the fortress of-Aspalathos

Ὅτι οὗτοι οἱ βαπτισμένοι Χρωβάτοι ἔξωθεν τῆς ἰδίας
that these the baptized Croats outside of-the own

αὐτῶν χώρας πολεμῖν ἀλλοτρίοις οὐ βούλονται· χρησιμὸν
their land to-war-upon strangers not wish (an)-oracle

γάρ τινα καὶ ὀρισμὸν ἔλαβον παρὰ τοῦ πάπα Ῥώμης
for some and ordinance they-received from the pope of-Rome

τοῦ ἐπὶ τοῦ Ἡρακλείου τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων
the(-one) under — Heraclius the emperor of-(the)-Romans

ἀποστείλαντος ἱερεῖς καὶ τούτους βαπτίσαντος. καὶ γὰρ
having-sent priests and them having-baptized and for

οὗτοι οἱ Χρωβάτοι, μετὰ τὸ αὐτοὺς βαπτισθῆναι, συνθήκας
these the Croats after the them to-be-baptized covenants

καὶ ἰδιόχειρα ἐποιήσαντο καὶ πρὸς τὸν ἅγιον Πέτρον
and handwritten(-pledges) made also to the holy Peter

τὸν ἀπόστολον ὅρκους βεβαίους καὶ ἀσφαλεῖς, ἵνα μηδέποτε
the apostle oaths firm and secure that never

εἰς ἄλλοτρίαν χώραν ἀπέλθωσι καὶ πολεμήσωσιν, ἀλλὰ
 into another's land they-go-away and make-war but
 μᾶλλον εἰρηνεύειν μετὰ πάντων τῶν βουλομένων, λαβόντες
 rather to-be-at-peace with all those wishing(-it) having-received
 καὶ παρὰ τοῦ αὐτοῦ πάπα Ῥώμης εὐχὴν τοιάνδε ὥς
 also from the same pope of-Rome (a)-blessing such that
 εἴ τις ἄλλοι ἐθνικοὶ κατὰ τῆς τῶν αὐτῶν Χρωβάτων
 if any other heathens against the of-the same Croats
 χώρας ἐπέλθωσιν καὶ πόλεμον ἐπενέγκωσιν, ἵνα ὁ τῶν
 land come and war bring that the of-the
 Χρωβάτων θεὸς προσπολεμῇ καὶ προΐσταται, καὶ νίκας
 Croats God may-fight-for(-them) and protect(-them) and victories
 αὐτοῖς Πέτρος ὁ τοῦ Χριστοῦ μαθητῆς προξενεῖ μετὰ δὲ
 for-them Peter the — of-Christ disciple procure after and
 χρόνους πολλοὺς ἐν ταῖς ἡμέραις Τερπημέρη τοῦ ἄρχοντος,
 years many in the days of-Terpimir the prince
 τοῦ πατρὸς τοῦ ἄρχοντος Κρασημέρη, ἐλθὼν ἀπὸ
 the father of-the prince Krasimir having-come from
 Φραγγίας τῆς μεταξὺ Χρωβατίας καὶ Βενετίας ἀνὴρ
 Frankland the(-one) between Croatia and Venice (a)-man
 τις τῶν πάντων μὲν εὐλαβῶν, Μαρτίνος ὀνόματι, σχῆμα
 certain of-the very indeed devout Martin by-name (a)-habit
 δὲ κοσμικὸν περιβεβλημένος, ὃν καὶ λέγουσιν οἱ αὐτοὶ
 and lay having-put-on whom also say the same
 Χρωβάτοι θαύματα ἱκανὰ ποιῆσαι· ἀσθενὴς δὲ ὢν ὁ
 Croats miracles considerable to-have-done infirm and being the
 τοιοῦτος εὐλαβὴς ἀνὴρ καὶ τοὺς πόδας ἡκρωτηριασμένος,
 such devout man and the feet maimed
 ὥστε ὑπὸ τεσσάρων καὶ βαστάζεσθαι καὶ περιφέρεσθαι
 so-that by four both to-be-carried and to-be-carried-about
 ὅπου δ' ἂν καὶ βούληται, τὴν τοιαύτην τοῦ ἀγιοτάτου
 wherever and — also he-might-wish the such of-the most-holy

πάπα ἐντολήν τοῖς αὐτοῖς Χρωβάτοις διατηρεῖν μέχρι
pope command to-the same Croats to-keep until
 τέλους ζωῆς αὐτῶν ἐπεθέσπισεν, ἐπευξάμενος δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς
(the)-end of-life their be-decreed having-prayed and also he
 αὐτοῖς τὴν ὁμοίαν τοῦ πάπα εὐχὴν. διὰ τοῦτο οὔτε
for-them the like of-the pope blessing because-of this neither
 αἱ σαγῆναι τῶν τοιούτων Χρωβάτων οὔτε αἱ κοντοῦραι
the galleys of-the such Croats nor the cutters
 οὐδέποτε κατὰ τινος πρὸς πόλεμον ἀπέρχονται, εἰ μὴ ἄρα
ever against anyone for war go-away if not then
 τις κατ' αὐτῶν ἐπέλθοι. πλὴν διὰ τῶν τοιούτων πλοίων
anyone against them should-come but through the such ships
 ἀπέρχονται οἱ βουλόμενοι τῶν Χρωβάτων διοικεῖν ἐμπόρια,
go-away those wishing of-the Croats to-carry-on trade
 ἀπὸ κάστρου εἰς κάστρον περιερχόμενοι τὴν τε Παγανίαν
from fortress to fortress going-round — both Pagania
 καὶ τὸν κόλπον τῆς Δελματίας καὶ μέχρι Βενετίας.
and the gulf — of-Dalmatia and as-far-as Venice
 Ὅτι ὁ ἄρχων Χρωβατίας ἐξ ἀρχῆς, ἦγουν ἀπὸ
that the prince of-Croatia from (the)-beginning that-is from
 τῆς βασιλείας Ἡρακλείου τοῦ βασιλέως, δουλικῶς ἐστὶν
the reign of-Heraclius the emperor in-servitude is
 ὑποτεταγμένος τῷ βασιλεῖ Ῥωμαίων, καὶ οὐδέποτε τῷ
subjected to-the emperor of-(the)-Romans and never to-the
 ἄρχοντι Βουλγαρίας καθυπετάγη. ἀλλ' οὐδὲ Βούλγαρος
prince of-Bulgaria was-subjected but not-even (a)-Bulgarian
 ἀπῆλθε πρὸς πόλεμον κατὰ τῶν Χρωβάτων, εἰ μὴ Μιχαὴλ ὁ
went-away for war against the Croats if not Michael the
 ἄρχων Βουλγαρίας, ὁ Βορώσης, ἀπελθὼν καὶ πολεμήσας
prince of-Bulgaria — Boris having-gone-away and having-warred
 αὐτοῖς καὶ μηδὲν ἀνύσαι δυνηθεὶς εἰρήνησε μετ' αὐτῶν,
against-them and nothing to-accomplish having-been-able made-peace with them

ξενιάσας τοὺς Χρωβάτους καὶ ξενιασθεὶς παρὰ τῶν
having-given-gifts-to the Croats and having-received-gifts from the
 Χρωβάτων. ἀλλ' οὐδὲ πώποτε οἱ Χρωβάτοι οὗτοι τοῖς
Croats but not-even ever the Croats these to-the
 Βουλγάροις πάκτον δεδώκασιν, εἰ μὴ πολλάκις ἀμφότεροι
Bulgarians tribute have-given if not often both
 ξενία τινα πρὸς ἀλλήλους παρέσχον φιλοφρονήσεως ἔνεκα.
gifts some to each-other furnished of-friendliness for-the-sake
 Ὅτι ἡ βαπτισμένη Χρωβατία εἰσὶ κάστρα οἰκούμενα
that the baptized Croatia there-are fortresses inhabited
 ἡ Νόνα, τὸ Βελόγραδον, τὸ Βελίτζειν, τὸ Σκόρδονα, τὸ
— Nona — Belogradon — Belitzein — Skordona —
 Χλεβένα, τὸ Στόλπον, τὸ Τενήν, τὸ Κόρι, τὸ Κλαβόκα.
Chlebena — Stolpon — Tenen — Kori — Klaboka
 Ὅτι ἡ βαπτισμένη Χρωβατία ἐκβάλλει καβαλλαρικὸν ἕως
that the baptized Croatia puts-out cavalry up-to
 τῶν ξ' χιλιάδων, πεζικὸν δὲ ἕως χιλιάδας ρ' καὶ σαγήνας
the 60 thousands infantry and up-to thousands 100 and galleys
 μέχρι τῶν π' καὶ κοντούρας μέχρι τῶν ρ'. καὶ αἱ μὲν
up-to the 80 and cutters up-to the 100 and the indeed
 σαγήναι ἔχουσιν ἀνὰ ἀνδρῶν μ', αἱ δὲ κονδοῦραι ἀνὰ
galleys have each of-men 40 the and cutters each
 ἀνδρῶν κ', αἱ δὲ μικρότεραι κονδοῦραι ἀνὰ ἀνδρῶν ι'.
of-men 20 the and smaller cutters each of-men 10
 Ὅτι τὴν πολλὴν ταύτην δύναμιν καὶ τὸ τοῦ λαοῦ πλήθος
that the great this force and the of-the people multitude
 εἶχεν ἡ Χρωβατία μέχρι τοῦ ἄρχοντος Κρασημέρη, κάκεινου
had — Croatia until the prince Krasimir and-that-one
 μὲν τελευτήσαντος, τοῦ δὲ υἱοῦ αὐτοῦ Μιροσθλάβου
indeed having-died the and son his Miroslav
 ἄρξαντος ἔτη τέσσαρα καὶ ὑπὸ τοῦ Πριβουνία βοεάνου
having-ruled years four and by — Pribounias ban

ἀναιρεθέντος, καὶ διχονοιῶν καὶ πολλῶν διχοστασιῶν εἰς
having-been-killed and dissensions and many divisions in
 τὴν χώραν γενομένων, ἡλάττωται καὶ τὸ καβαλλαρικὸν
the land having-arisen have-been-diminished both the cavalry
 καὶ τὸ πεζικὸν καὶ αἱ σαγήναι καὶ αἱ κονδοῦραι τῆς ἐξουσίας
and the infantry and the galleys and the cutters of-the dominion
 τῶν Χρωβάτων. ἀρτίως δὲ ἔχει σαγήνας λ', κονδοῦρας
of-the Croats now and it-has galleys 30 cutters
 μεγάλας καὶ μικράς, καὶ καβαλλαρικὸν καὶ πεζικόν.
great and small and cavalry and infantry
 Ὅτι ἡ μεγάλη Χρωβατία καὶ ἡ ἄσπρη ἐπονομαζομένη
that the great Croatia and the white called
 ἀβάπτιστος τυγχάνει μέχρι τῆς σήμερον, καθὼς καὶ οἱ
unbaptized is until the today as also the
 πλησιάζοντες αὐτὴν Σέρβλοι. ὀλιγώτερον καβαλλαρικὸν
bordering-on it Serbs less cavalry
 ἐκβάλλουσιν, ὁμοίως καὶ πεζικὸν παρὰ τὴν βαπτισμένην
put-out likewise also infantry than the baptized
 Χρωβατίαν ὥς συνεχέστερον πραιδευόμενοι παρά τε τῶν
Croatia as more-constantly being-plundered by both the
 Φράγγων καὶ Τούρκων καὶ Πατζινακιτῶν. ἀλλ' οὐδὲ
Franks and Turks and Pechenegs but not-even
 σαγήνας κέκτηνται οὔτε κονδοῦρας οὔτε ἐμπορευτικὰ
galleys they-possess nor cutters nor merchant
 πλοῖα, ὥς μακρόθεν οὔσης τῆς θαλάσσης· ἀπὸ γὰρ τῶν
ships as far-off being the sea from for the
 ἐκεῖσε μέχρι τῆς θαλάσσης ὁδὸς ἐστὶν ἡμερῶν λ'. ἡ
there as-far-as the sea (a)-journey it-is of-days 30 the
 δὲ θάλασσα εἰς ἣν διὰ τῶν ἡμερῶν λ' κατέρχονται,
and sea to which through the days 30 they-come-down
 ἐστὶν ἡ λεγομένη Σκοτεινή.
is the called Dark

The Serbs, from White Serbia, took refuge with Heraclius, who settled them in lands the Avars had emptied and had them baptized. Their princes are traced from Vlastimir through quarrels among brothers and cousins, with Bulgarian interference and Byzantine support. Symeon of Bulgaria emptied the land by treachery. Tzeeslav returned to find only fifty men and rebuilt Serbia with the emperor's help.

περὶ τῶν Σέρβων καὶ ἧς νῦν οἰκοῦσι χώρας.
concerning the Serbs and which now they-inhabit land
 Ἰστέον ὅτι οἱ Σέρβλοι ἀπὸ τῶν ἀβαπτίστων Σέρβλων
(one)-must-know that the Serbs from the unbaptized Serbs
 τῶν καὶ ἄσπρων ἐπονομαζομένων κατάγονται, τῶν τῆς
those also white called are-descended those —
 Τουρκίας ἐκείθεν κατοικούντων εἰς τὸν παρ' αὐτοῖς Βοῖκι
of-Turkey beyond dwelling in the among them Boiki
 τόπον ἐπονομαζόμενον, ἐν οἷς πλησιάζει καὶ ἡ Φραγγία,
place named in which borders also — Frankland
 ὁμοίως καὶ ἡ μεγάλη Χρωβατία ἡ ἀβάπτιστος ἡ καὶ
likewise also the great Croatia the unbaptized the(-one) also
 ἄσπρη προσαγορευομένη· ἐκεῖσε οὖν καὶ οὗτοι οἱ Σέρβλοι
white called there then also these the Serbs
 τὸ ἀπ' ἀρχῆς κατώκουν. δύο δὲ ἀδελφῶν τὴν ἀρχὴν τῆς
the from (the)-beginning dwelt two and brothers the rule —
 Σερβλίας ἐκ τοῦ πατρὸς διαδεξαμένων, ὁ εἰς αὐτῶν τὸ
of-Serbia from the father having-succeeded-to the one of-them the
 τοῦ λαοῦ ἀναλαβόμενος ἡμῖς εἰς Ἡράκλειον τὸν βασιλέα
of-the people having-taken half to Heraclius the emperor
 Ῥωμαίων προσέφυγεν, ὃν καὶ προσδεξάμενος ὁ αὐτὸς
of-(the)-Romans took-refuge whom also having-received the same
 Ἡράκλειος βασιλεὺς παρέσχε τόπον εἰς κατασκήνωσιν ἐν
Heraclius emperor provided (a)-place for settlement in

τῷ θέματι Θεσσαλονίκης τὰ Σέρβλια, ἃ ἔκτοτε τὴν
the theme of-Thessalonike — Serulia which from-then the
 τοιαύτην προσηγορίαν παρείληφε. Σέρβλοι δὲ τῇ τῶν
such name has-received Serbs and in-the of-the
 Ῥωμαίων διαλέκτῳ δοῦλοι προσαγορεύονται· ὅθεν καὶ
Romans dialect slaves are-called whence also
 σέρβουλα ἡ κοινὴ συνήθεια τὰ δουλικῶς φησὶν ὑποδήματα,
serboula the common usage the servile says(-it) shoes
 καὶ τζεμβουλιανούς τοὺς τὰ εὐτελῇ καὶ πενιχρὰ ὑποδήματα
and tzerboulianoi those the cheap and poor shoes
 φοροῦντας. ταύτην δὲ τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν ἔσχον οἱ Σέρβλοι
wearing this and the name had the Serbs
 διὰ τὸ δοῦλοι γενέσθαι τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων. μετὰ
because-of the slaves to-become of-the emperor of-(the)-Romans after
 δὲ χρόνον τινὰ ἔδοξε τοὺς αὐτοὺς Σέρβλους εἰς τὰ
and time some it-seemed the same Serbs to the
 ἴδια ἀπελθεῖν, καὶ τούτους ἀπέστειλεν ὁ βασιλεὺς· ὅτε
own(-parts) to-go-away and them sent-off the emperor when
 δὲ διεπέρασαν τὸν Δάνουβιν ποταμόν, μετὰμेलοι γινόμενοι
and they-had-crossed the Danube river repentant having-become
 ἐμήνυσαν Ἡρακλείῳ τῷ βασιλεῖ διὰ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ τοῦ
they-sent-word to-Heraclius the emperor through the general the
 τότε τὸ Βελόγραδον κρατοῦντος δοῦναι αὐτοῖς ἑτέραν γῆν
then — Belgrade holding to-give to-them other land
 εἰς κατασκήνωσιν. καὶ ἐπειδὴ ἡ νῦν Σερβλία καὶ Παγανία
for settlement and since the now Serbia and Pagania
 καὶ ἡ ὀνομαζομένη Ζαχλούμων χώρα καὶ Τερβουνία
and the named of-(the)-Zachlumi land and Terbounia
 καὶ ἡ τῶν Καναλιτῶν ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν τοῦ βασιλέως
and the of-the Kanalites under the authority of-the emperor
 Ῥωμαίων ὑπῆρχον, ἐγένοντο δὲ αἱ τοιαῦται χώραι ἔρημαι
of-(the)-Romans were had-become and the such lands deserted

παρὰ τῶν Ἀβάρων (ἀπὸ τῶν ἐκείσε γὰρ Ῥωμάνους τοὺς
by the Avars from the there for Romani those
 νῦν Δελματίαν καὶ τὸ Δυρράχιον οἰκοῦντας ἀπήλασαν),
now Dalmatia and — Dyrrachium inhabiting they-had-driven-out
 καὶ κατεσκήνωσεν ὁ βασιλεὺς τοὺς αὐτοὺς Σέρβλους ἐν
and settled the emperor the same Serbs in
 ταῖς τοιαύταις χώραις. καὶ ἦσαν τῷ βασιλεῖ Ῥωμαίων
the such lands and they-were to-the emperor of-(the)-Romans
 ὑποτασσόμενοι· οὗς ὁ βασιλεὺς πρεσβύτας ἀπὸ Ῥώμης
subject whom the emperor elders from Rome
 ἀγαγὼν ἐβάπτισε, καὶ διδάξας αὐτοὺς τὰ τῆς
having-brought baptized and having-taught them the(-works) of-the
 εὐσεβείας τελεῖν καλῶς αὐτοῖς τῶν χρόνων πίστιν
piety to-perform well to-them of-the times faith
 ἐξέθετο. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡ Βουλγαρία ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν ἦν τῶν
set-out since and — Bulgaria under the authority was of-the
 Ῥωμαίων, αὐτοῦ οὖν ἄρχοντος τοῦ Σέρβλου τοῦ εἰς
Romans that then prince the Serb the(-one) to
 τὸν βασιλέα προσφυγόντος τελευτήσαντος, κατὰ διαδοχὴν
the emperor having-taken-refuge having-died by succession
 ἦρξεν ὁ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ καὶ πάλιν ὁ ἕγγων, καὶ οὕτως ἐκ
ruled the son his and again the grandson and thus from
 τῆς γενεᾶς αὐτοῦ οἱ καθεξῆς ἄρχοντες. μετὰ δὲ χρόνους
the family his the successive princes after and years
 τινὰς ἐγεννήθη ἐξ αὐτῶν ὁ Βοισέσθλαβος καὶ ἐξ αὐτοῦ
some was-born of them — Boïseslav and from him
 ὁ Ῥοδόσθλαβος καὶ ἀπ' ἐκείνου ὁ Προσηγόης καὶ ἐξ
— Rhodoslav and from that-one — Prosegoes and from
 ἐκείνου ὁ Βλαστήμερος, καὶ μέχρις αὐτοῦ τοῦ Βλαστημέρου
that-one — Vlastimir and up-to himself — Vlastimir
 μετὰ τῶν Σέρβλων εἰρηνικῶς διετέλουν οἱ Βούλγαροι ὥς
with the Serbs peaceably continued the Bulgarians as

γείτονες καὶ συνορίται ἀγαπῶντες ἀλλήλους, ἔχοντες δὲ
neighbors and borderers loving each-other having and
 δούλωσιν καὶ ὑποταγὴν εἰς τοὺς βασιλεῖς τῶν Ῥωμαίων
servitude and subjection to the emperors of-the Romans
 καὶ εὐεργετούμενοι παρ' αὐτῶν. ἐπὶ δὲ τῆς ἀρχῆς τοῦ
and being-benefited by them under and the rule of-the
 αὐτοῦ Βλασθημέρου ἦλθεν μετὰ πολέμου Πρεσιὰμ ὁ ἄρχων
same Vlastimir came with war Presiam the prince
 Βουλγαρίας κατὰ τῶν Σέρβλων, θέλων αὐτοὺς ὑποτάξαι·
of-Bulgaria against the Serbs wishing them to-subject
 ἀλλ' ἐπὶ τριετίαν πολεμήσας οὐ μόνον οὐδὲν ἥνυσεν,
but for three-years having-warred not only nothing he-accomplished
 ἀλλὰ καὶ λαὸν αὐτοῦ πλεῖστον ἀπώλεσε. μετὰ δὲ θάνατον
but also people his very-much he-lost after and (the)-death
 Βλασθημέρου τοῦ ἄρχοντος διεδέξαντο τὴν ἀρχὴν τῆς
of-Vlastimir the prince succeeded-to the rule —
 Σερβλίας οἱ τρεῖς υἱοὶ αὐτοῦ ὁ Μουντιμήρος καὶ ὁ
of-Serbia the three sons his — Mountimir and —
 Στροήμερος καὶ ὁ Γοῦνικος, μερισάμενοι τὴν χώραν. ἐπὶ
Stroimir and — Goïnik having-divided the land under
 τούτων παρεγένετο ὁ τῆς Βουλγαρίας ἄρχων Μιχαὴλ ὁ
these came the — of-Bulgaria prince Michael —
 Βορίσης θέλων ἐκδικῆσαι τὴν ἡτταν Πρεσιὰμ τοῦ πατρὸς
Boris wishing to-avenge the defeat of-Presiam the father
 αὐτοῦ· καὶ πολεμήσας, εἰς τοσοῦτον αὐτὸν ἐπτόησαν οἱ
his and having-warred to such-a-degree him terrified the
 Σέρβλοι ὥστε καὶ τὸν υἱὸν αὐτοῦ Βλαστήμερον ἐκράτησαν
Serbs that also the son his Vlastimir they-beld
 δέσμιον μετὰ καὶ βολιάδων δώδεκα μεγάλων. τότε δὲ
(as)-prisoner with also boyars twelve great then and
 τῇ τοῦ υἱοῦ θλίψει καὶ μὴ θέλων ὁ Βορίσης εἰρήνευσε
by-the of-the son affliction even not wishing — Boris made-peace

μετὰ τῶν Σέρβλων. μέλλων δὲ ὑποστρέφειν ἐν Βουλγαρίᾳ,
with the Serbs being-about and to-return to Bulgaria
 καὶ φοβηθεὶς μήποτε ἐνεδρεύσωσιν αὐτὸν οἱ Σέρβλοι καθ'
and having-feared lest they-ambush him the Serbs on
 ὁδοῦ, ἐπεζήτησεν εἰς διάσωσιν αὐτοῦ τὰ τοῦ ἄρχοντος
(the)-road he-sought-for for safe-conduct his the of-the prince
 Μουντιμήρου παιδία, τὸν Βόρενα καὶ τὸν Στέφανον· οἱ
Mountimir children — Boren and — Stephen who
 καὶ διέσωσαν αὐτὸν ἀβλαβῇ μέχρι τῶν συνόρων ἕως τῆς
also brought him unharmed as-far-as the borders up-to —
 Ῥάσης. καὶ ὑπὲρ τῆς τοιαύτης χάριτος δέδωκεν αὐτοῖς
Rasa and for the such favor gave to-them
 Μιχαὴλ ὁ Βορίσης δωρεὰς μεγάλας· καὶ ἐκεῖνοι ἀντέδωκαν
Michael — Boris gifts great and they gave-back
 αὐτῷ χάριν ξενίων ψυχάρια δύο, φαλκῶνια δύο, σκυλία
to-him by-way of-gifts slaves two falcons two dogs
 δύο καὶ γοῦνας ἐννενήκοντα· ὅπερ λέγουσιν οἱ Βούλγαροι
two and furs ninety which say the Bulgarians
 εἶναι πάκτον. μετὰ μικρὸν δὲ ἐγένοντο κατ' ἀλλήλων
to-be tribute after little and became against each-other
 οἱ τρεῖς ἀδελφοὶ οἱ ἄρχοντες Σερβλίας· καὶ γενόμενος
the three brothers the princes of-Serbia and having-become
 ἐπικρατέστερος ὁ εἰς αὐτῶν ὁ Μουντίμηρος, καὶ θέλων
more-powerful the one of-them — Mountimir and wishing
 μόνος τὴν ἀρχὴν ἐπέχεω, κρατήσας παρέδωκε τοὺς δύο
alone the rule to-hold having-seized(-them) he-banded-over the two
 ἐν Βουλγαρίᾳ, μόνον τὸ παιδίον τοῦ ἐνὸς ἀδελφοῦ Γοϊνίκου
to Bulgaria only the child of-the one brother Goïnik
 Πέτρον ὀνόματι παρ' ἐαυτῷ κρατήσας καὶ ἐπιμελούμενος,
Peter by-name with himself having-kept and caring-for(-him)
 ὅστις καὶ φυγὼν ἦλθεν εἰς Χρωβατίαν· περὶ οὗ μετ'
who also having-fled came to Croatia about whom after

ὀλίγον ῥηθήσεται. ὁ δὲ προρρηθεὶς ἀδελφὸς ἐν Βουλγαρίᾳ
little it-will-be-told the and aforesaid brother in Bulgaria
 Στροΐμερος εἶχεν υἱὸν τὸν Κλονίμηρον, ᾧ καὶ γυναῖκα
Stroimir had (a)-son — Klonimir to-whom also (a)-wife
 παρέσχε·ν ὁ Βορίσης Βουλγάραν. ἐξ αὐτοῦ γεννᾶται
provided — Boris (a)-Bulgarian-woman from him is-born
 ἐν Βουλγαρίᾳ Τζεεσθλάβος. ὁ δὲ Μουντίμηρος τοὺς δύο
in Bulgaria Tzeeslav — and Mountimir the two
 ἀδελφούς διώξας καὶ τὴν ἀρχὴν δεξάμενος γεννᾷ
brothers having-driven-out and the rule having-received begets
 υἱούς τρεῖς, τὸν Πριβέσθλαβον καὶ τὸν Βράνον καὶ τὸν
sons three — Pribeslav and — Bran and —
 Στέφανον, καὶ μετὰ τὸν αὐτοῦ θάνατον διαδέχεται αὐτὸν
Stephen and after the his death succeeds him
 ὁ πρῶτος υἱὸς ὁ Πριβέσθλαβος. μετὰ οὖν χρόνον ἓνα
the first son — Pribeslav after then year one
 ἐξελθὼν ἀπὸ Χρωβατίας ὁ προειρημένος Πέτρος ὁ
having-come-out from Croatia the aforesaid Peter the
 υἱὸς τοῦ Γοϊνίκου διώκει ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς τὸν ἐξάδελφον
son — of-Goïnik drives from the rule the cousin
 αὐτοῦ Πριβέσθλαβον μετὰ τῶν δύο ἀδελφῶν, καὶ κεῖνος
his Pribeslav with the two brothers and-he
 τὴν ἀρχὴν διαδέχεται· ἐκεῖνοι δὲ φυγόντες εἰσέρχονται
the rule succeeds-to those and having-fled enter
 ἐν Χρωβατίᾳ. μετὰ δὲ χρόνους τρεῖς ἐλθὼν ὁ Βράνος
into Croatia after and years three having-come — Bran
 πρὸς τὸ πολεμῆσαι τὸν Πέτρον καὶ ἡττηθεὶς καὶ
for the to-war-upon — Peter and having-been-defeated and
 κρατηθεὶς παρ' αὐτοῦ ἐτυφλώθη. μετὰ δὲ χρόνους δύο
having-been-seized by him was-blinded after and years two
 φυγὼν καὶ Κλονίμηρος ἀπὸ Βουλγαρίας ὁ πατὴρ τοῦ
having-fled also Klonimir from Bulgaria the father —

Τζεεσθλάβου καταλαμβάνει καὶ αὐτός, καὶ εἰσέρχεται εἰς
of-Tzeeslav arrives also he and enters into
 ἐν κάστρον τῆς Σερβλίας τὴν Δοστινίκαν μετὰ λαοῦ
one fortress — of-Serbia — Destinikon with people
 πρὸς τὸ παραλαβεῖν τὴν ἀρχήν. τοῦτον οὖν πολεμήσας ὁ
for the to-take-over the rule him then having-warred —
 Πέτρος ἀπέκτεινεν, καὶ ἐκράτησεν ἕτερα ἔτη κ'. ἄρξας
Peter killed and held-power other years 20 having-ruled
 ἐπὶ τῆς βασιλείας Λέοντος τοῦ μακαριωτάτου καὶ ἁγίου
under the reign of-Leo the most-blessed and holy
 βασιλέως, ἔχων ὑποταγὴν καὶ δούλωσιν πρὸς αὐτόν.
emperor having subjection and servitude toward him
 εἰρήνευσεν δὲ καὶ μετὰ Συμεὼν τοῦ ἄρχοντος Βουλγαρίας,
he-made-peace and also with Symeon the prince of-Bulgaria
 ὥστε καὶ σύντεκνον αὐτὸν ἐποίησε. μετὰ δὲ τὸν καιρὸν
so-that also co-sponsor him he-made after and the time
 ὃν αὐτὸς ὁ κύρις Λέων ἐβασίλευσε, παρεγένετο ὁ τότε
in-which he the lord Leo reigned came the then
 εἰς τὸ Δυρράχιον στρατηγῶν, ὁ πρωτοσπαθάριος Λέων
at — Dyrrachium being-general the protospatharius Leo
 ὁ Ῥαβδούχος, ὁ μετὰ τοῦτο μάγιστρος τιμηθεὶς καὶ
the Rhabdouchos the(-one) after this (as)-magistros honored and
 λογοθέτης τοῦ δρόμου, εἰς Παγανίαν τὴν τότε παρὰ τοῦ
logothete of-the course to Paganian the(-land) then by the
 ἄρχοντος Σερβλίας διακρατουμένην, πρὸς τὸ βουλευθῆναι
prince of-Serbia held for the to-take-counsel
 καὶ συντυχεῖν τῷ αὐτῷ ἄρχοντι Πέτρῳ περὶ τινος
and to-meet-with the same prince Peter about some
 δουλώσεως καὶ ὑποθέσεως. ζηλοτυπήσας δὲ πρὸς τοῦτο
service and matter having-been-jealous and at this
 Μιχαὴλ ὁ ἄρχων τῶν Ζαχλούμων ἐμήνυσεν Συμεὼν τῷ
Michael the prince of-the Zachlumi sent-word to-Symeon the

Βουλγάρων ἄρχοντι ὅτι ὁ βασιλεὺς Ῥωμαίων δεξιούται
of-Bulgarians prince that the emperor of-(the)-Romans wins-over
 διὰ δώρων τὸν ἄρχοντα Πέτρον πρὸς τὸ συνεπαρεῖν τοὺς
by gifts the prince Peter for the to-lift-up-together the
 Τούρκους καὶ ἐπελθεῖν κατὰ Βουλγαρίας· ἐγένετο δὲ καὶ
Turks and to-come against Bulgaria happened and also
 κατὰ τὸν καιρὸν ἐκείνον καὶ πόλεμος εἰς Ἀχελῶν μεταξὺ
at the time that also (a)-war at Achelous between
 τῶν Ῥωμαίων καὶ τῶν Βουλγάρων. ἐμμανὴς οὖν γενόμενος
the Romans and the Bulgarians enraged then having-become
 ἐν τούτῳ ὁ Συμεὼν κατὰ τοῦ ἄρχοντος Σερβλίας Πέτρου
in this — Symeon against the prince of-Serbia Peter
 ἀπέστειλε τὸν Σιγρίτζη Θεόδωρον καὶ τὸν Μαρμαῖν ἐκείνον
sent — Sigritzes Theodore and — Marmaem that
 μετὰ φοσσάτου, ἔχοντας καὶ ἄρχοντόπουλον Παῦλον
with (an)-army having also (a)-prince's-son Paul
 τὸν υἱὸν Βράνου, ὃν ὁ Πέτρος ὁ ἄρχων Σερβλίας
the son of-Bran whom — Peter the prince of-Serbia
 ἐτύφλωσε. δόλῳ οὖν ἐπελθόντες οἱ Βούλγαροι πρὸς τὸν
blinded by-guile then having-come the Bulgarians to the
 ἄρχοντα Σερβλίας, καὶ συντεκνίαν μετ' αὐτοῦ ποιησάμενοι,
prince of-Serbia and co-sponsorship with him having-made
 καὶ ὄρκῳ βεβαιώσαντες μὴ παθεῖν τι παρ' αὐτῶν
and by-oath having-confirmed not to-suffer anything from them
 ἐναντίον, ἡπάτησαν αὐτὸν ἐξελθεῖν πρὸς αὐτούς, ὃν
contrary deceived him to-come-out to them whom
 καὶ παραυτὰ δεσμῆσαντες εἰσήγαγον ἐν Βουλγαρίᾳ, καὶ
also immediately having-bound they-brought-in to Bulgaria and
 ἀποθνήσκει ἐν φυλακῇ. εἰσῆλθε δὲ αὐτ' αὐτοῦ Παῦλος
he-dies in prison entered and in-place-of him Paul
 ὁ υἱὸς Βράνου, καὶ ἐκράτησεν ἔτη τρία. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς
the son of-Bran and held-power years three the and emperor

ὁ κύρις Ῥωμανὸς ἔχων ἀρχοντόπουλον ἐν τῇ πόλει
the lord Romanos having (a)-prince's-son in the city
 Ζαχαρίαν τὸν υἱὸν Πριβεσθλάβου τοῦ ἄρχοντος Σερβλίας
Zacharias the son of-Pribeslav the prince of-Serbia
 ἀπέστειλε πρὸς τὸ γενέσθαι ἄρχοντα ἐν Σερβλίᾳ· ἀλλὰ
sent(-him) for the to-become prince in Serbia but
 ἀπελθὼν καὶ πολεμήσας ἡττήθη παρὰ τοῦ Παύλου·
having-gone-away and having-warred he-was-defeated by — Paul
 κρατήσας γὰρ αὐτὸν παρέδωκε τοῖς Βουλγάροις,
having-seized for him he-banded(-him)-over to-the Bulgarians
 καὶ ἐκρατεῖτο δέσμιος. εἶτα μετὰ χρόνους τρεῖς, τοῦ
and he-was-held (a)-prisoner then after years three —
 Παύλου ἐναντιωθέντος τοῖς Βουλγάροις, ἀπέστειλε τὸν
Paul having-opposed the Bulgarians he-sent —
 Ζαχαρίαν τὸν πρότερον παρὰ τοῦ κυροῦ Ῥωμανοῦ
Zacharias the(-one) formerly by the lord Romanos
 τοῦ βασιλέως ἀποσταλέντα, καὶ διώξας τὸν Παῦλον
the emperor sent and having-driven-out — Paul
 ἐκράτησεν αὐτὸς τὴν ἀρχὴν τῶν Σέρβλων· ὅστις παραυτὰ
held he the rule of-the Serbs who immediately
 τῶν εὐεργεσιῶν τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων ἐπιμνησθεὶς
of-the benefactions of-the emperor of-(the)-Romans having-remembered
 ἐγένετο κατὰ τῶν Βουλγάρων, μηδ' ὅλως θελήσας
turned against the Bulgarians not at-all having-wished
 ὑποταγῆναι αὐτοῖς, ἀλλ' ὑπὸ τοῦ βασιλέως μᾶλλον
to-be-subjected to-them but by the emperor rather
 Ῥωμαίων δεσπόζεσθαι. ὥστε καὶ τοῦ Συμεὼν φοσσάτον
of-(the)-Romans to-be-ruled so-that also — Symeon (an)-army
 κατ' αὐτοῦ ἀποστείλαντος διὰ τοῦ Μαρμαῆμ καὶ τοῦ
against him having-sent through — Marmaem and —
 Σιγρίτζη Θεοδώρου, ὧν καὶ τὰς κεφαλὰς καὶ ἄρματα
Sigritzes Theodore whose also the heads and arms

ἐκ τοῦ πολέμου ἀπέστειλε πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων
from the war he-sent to the emperor of-(the)-Romans
ἐπινίκια (ἔτι γὰρ μεταξὺ Ῥωμαίων καὶ Βουλγάρων μάχη
(as)-trophies still for between (the)-Romans and Bulgarians battle
ἦν), οὐδέποτε δὲ ἐπαύσατο, καθὼς καὶ οἱ πρὸ αὐτοῦ
was never and ceased as also the before him
ἄρχοντες ἀπέστελλον πρὸς τοὺς βασιλεῖς Ῥωμαίων, καὶ
princes sent to the emperors of-(the)-Romans both
ὑποτασσόμενος καὶ δουλεύων αὐτοῖς. πάλιν δὲ ἀπέστειλεν
being-subject and serving them again and sent
ἕτερον φοσσάτον ὁ Συμεὼν διὰ τοῦ Κνήνου καὶ
another army — Symeon through — Knenos and
τοῦ Ἡμνήκου καὶ τοῦ Ἡτζβόκλια κατὰ τοῦ ἄρχοντος
— Hemnekos and — Etzboklias against the prince
Ζαχαρίου, συναποστείλας μετ' αὐτῶν καὶ Τζεέσθλαβον.
Zacharias having-sent-along with them also Tzeeslav
τότε ὁ μὲν Ζαχαρίας φοβηθεὶς φεύγει ἐν Χρωβατία·
then — indeed Zacharias having-feared flees to Croatia
οἱ δὲ Βούλγαροι μηνύσαντες τοῖς ζουπάνοις ἐλθεῖν πρὸς
the and Bulgarians having-sent-word to-the zupans to-come to
αὐτοὺς καὶ παραλαβεῖν ἄρχοντα τὸν Τζεέσθλαβον, καὶ
them and to-take-over (as)-prince — Tzeeslav and
δι' ὄρκου τούτους ἀπατήσαντες καὶ ἐξαγαγόντες μέχρι
by oath them having-deceived and having-led-out as-far-as
τοῦ πρώτου χωρίου, καὶ παρατὰ δεσμήσαντες αὐτούς,
the first village and immediately having-bound them
εἰσῆλθον ἐν Σερβλία καὶ συνεπήραν τὸν ἅπαντα λαὸν ἀπὸ
entered into Serbia and took-up-together the whole people from
μικροῦ ἕως μεγάλου, καὶ εἰσήγαγον ἕως Βουλγαρίας·
small to great and brought(-them)-in as-far-as Bulgaria
τινὲς δὲ ἀποδράσαντες εἰσῆλθον καὶ ἐν Χρωβατία, καὶ
some and having-run-away entered also into Croatia and

ἔμεινεν ἡ χώρα ἔρημος. κατὰ τὸν καιρὸν οὖν ἐκείνῳ
remained the land deserted at the time then that
 εἰσῆλθον οἱ αὐτοὶ Βούλγαροι εἰς Χρωατίαν μετὰ τοῦ
entered the same Bulgarians into Croatia with —
 Ἀλογοβότουρ τοῦ πολεμῆσαι, καὶ ἐσφάγησαν πάντες
Alogobotour for-the to-war and were-slaughtered all
 ἐκεῖσε παρὰ τῶν Χρωάτων. μετὰ δὲ χρόνους ἑπτὰ ἀπὸ
there by the Croats after and years seven from
 τῶν Βουλγάρων φυγὼν ὁ Τζεέσθλαβος μετὰ καὶ ἑτέρων
the Bulgarians having-fled — Tzeeslav with also other
 τεσσάρων ἀπὸ Πρεσθλάβου εἰσῆλθεν ἐν Σερβλία, οὐχ
four from Preslav entered into Serbia not
 εὔρε δὲ εἰς τὴν χώραν εἰ μὴ πεντήκοντα μόνους ἄνδρας
he-found and in the land if not fifty only men
 μήτε γυναῖκας ἔχοντας μήτε παιδιά, ἀλλὰ κυνηγούντας
neither wives having nor children but hunting
 καὶ διατρεφόμενους. μετὰ τούτων κρατήσας τὴν χώραν
and being-maintained with these having-held the land
 ἐμήνυσεν πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων, τὴν ἐξ αὐτοῦ
he-sent-word to the emperor of-(the)-Romans the from him
 ἀντίληψιν καὶ βοήθειαν ἐπιζητῶν, ὑπισχνούμενος δουλεύειν
support and help seeking promising to-serve
 καὶ ὑπέειπεν τῇ προσταξεί αὐτοῦ καθὼς καὶ οἱ πρὸ αὐτοῦ
and to-yield to-the command his as also the before him
 ἄρχοντες. καὶ ἔκτοτε οὐ διέλιπεν ὁ βασιλεὺς Ῥωμαίων
princes and from-then not ceased the emperor of-(the)-Romans
 εὐεργετῶν αὐτόν, ὥστε καὶ εἰς Χρωατίαν καὶ Βουλγαρίαν
benefiting him so-that also in Croatia and Bulgaria
 καὶ ἐν ταῖς λοιπαῖς χώραις διάγοντες Σέρβλοι, οὓς ὁ
and in the other lands living Serbs whom —
 Συμεὼν διεσκόρπισεν, τοῦτο ἀκούσαντες συνήχθησαν εἰς
Symeon scattered this having-heard were-gathered to

αὐτόν. ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐν τῇ πόλει πολλοὶ ἀπὸ Βουλγαρίας
 him but also in the city many from Bulgaria
 φυγόντες εἰσῆλθον· οὓς καὶ ἐνδύσας καὶ εὐεργετήσας ὁ
 having-fled entered whom also having-clothed and having-benefited the
 βασιλεὺς τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἀπέστειλε πρὸς τὸν Τζεέσθλαβον.
 emperor of-the Romans sent to — Tzeeslav
 καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν πλουσίων δωρεῶν τοῦ βασιλέως τῶν
 and from the rich gifts of-the emperor of-the
 Ῥωμαίων συστησάμενος καὶ ἐνοικήσας τὴν χώραν ὡς τὸ
 Romans having-established and having-settled the land as the
 πρότερόν ἐστιν ὑποτεταγμένος δουλοπρεπῶς τῷ βασιλεῖ
 before he-is subjected servilely to-the emperor
 Ῥωμαίων, καὶ διὰ τῆς τοῦ βασιλέως συνδρομῆς καὶ τῶν
 of-(the)-Romans and through the of-the emperor assistance and the
 πολλῶν αὐτοῦ εὐεργεσιῶν τὴν τοιαύτην χώραν συστήσας
 many his benefactions the such land having-established
 καὶ ἄρχων ἐν αὐτῇ βεβαιωθείς.
 and (as)-prince in it confirmed
 Ὅτι ὁ ἄρχων Σερβλίας ἐξ ἀρχῆς, ἦγουν ἀπὸ
 that the prince of-Serbia from (the)-beginning that-is from
 τῆς βασιλείας Ἡρακλείου τοῦ βασιλέως, δουλικῶς ἐστὶν
 the reign of-Heraclius the emperor in-servitude is
 ὑποτεταγμένος τῷ Ῥωμαίων βασιλεῖ, καὶ οὐδέποτε τῷ
 subjected to-the of-(the)-Romans emperor and never to-the
 ἄρχοντι Βουλγαρίας καθυπετάγη.
 prince of-Bulgaria was-subjected
 Ὅτι ἐν τῇ βαπτισμένη Σερβλίᾳ εἰς κάστρα οἰκούμενα
 that in the baptized Serbia there-are fortresses inhabited
 τὸ Δεστινίκον, τὸ Τζερναβουσκέη, τὸ Μεγυρέτους, τὸ
 — Destinikon — Tzernavouskee — Megyretous —

Δρεσνεήκ, τὸ Λεσνήκ, τὸ Σαληνές, καὶ εἰς τὸ χωρίον

Dresneek — Lesneek — Salenes and in the district

Βόσωνα τὸ Κάτερα καὶ τὸ Δεσνήκ.

Bosona — Katera and — Desneek

XXXIII · THE ZACHLUMI

The land of the Zachlumi, once held by the Romani and wasted by the Avars, is settled by Serbs who came under Heraclius. Their name means behind the hill, and the family of their prince Michael came from the Vistula.

περὶ τῶν Ζαχλούμων, καὶ ἧς νῦν οἰκοῦσι χώρας.

concerning the Zachlumi and which now they-inhabit land

Ὅτι ἡ τῶν Ζαχλούμων χώρα παρὰ τῶν Ῥωμάνων πρότερον

that the of-the Zachlumi land by the Romani formerly

ἐκρατεῖτο, Ῥωμάνων δέ φημι οὓς ἀπὸ Ῥώμης Διοκλητιανὸς

was-held Romani and I-mean whom from Rome Diocletian

ὁ βασιλεὺς μετόκισε, καθὼς καὶ εἰς τὴν τῶν Χρωβάτων

the emperor transplanted as also in the of-the Croats

ἱστορίαν εἴρηται περὶ αὐτῶν. ὑπὸ βασιλεῖ δὲ Ῥωμαίων

history has-been-said about them under (the)-emperor and of-(the)-Romans

ἡ τῶν Ζαχλούμων αὕτη χώρα ὑπῆρχεν, ἀλλὰ παρὰ τῶν

the of-the Zachlumi this land was but by the

Ἀβάρων αἰχμαλωτισθεῖσα ἢ τε χώρα καὶ ὁ ταύτης λαὸς τὸ

Avars having-been-made-captive the both land and the its people the

παράπαν ἡρήμωται. οἱ δὲ νῦν ἐκεῖσε οἰκοῦντες Ζαχλούμοι

altogether has-been-laid-waste those and now there dwelling Zachlumi

Σέρβλοι τυγχάνουσιν, ἐξ ἐκείνου τοῦ ἄρχοντος τοῦ εἰς τὸν

Serbs are from that the prince the(-one) to the

βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων Ἡράκλειον προσφυγόντος. Ζαχλούμοι δὲ

emperor of-(the)-Romans Heraclius having-taken-refuge Zachlumi and

ὠνομάσθησαν ἀπὸ ὄρους οὕτω καλουμένου Χλούμου. καὶ
they-were-named from (a)-mountain so called Chloumos and
 ἄλλως δὲ παρὰ τῇ τῶν Σκλάβων διαλέκτῳ ἐρμηνεύεται τὸ
otherwise and in the of-the Slavs dialect is-interpreted the
 Ζαχλούμοι ἥγουν ὀπίσω τοῦ βουνοῦ, ἐπειδὴ ἐν τῷ τοιούτῳ
Zachlumi that-is behind the hill since in the such
 χωρίῳ βουνός ἐστι μέγας, ἔχων ἄνωθεν αὐτοῦ δύο κάστρα,
district (a)-hill is great having above it two fortresses
 τὸ Βόνα καὶ τὸ Χλούμ. ὀπισθεν δέ τοῦ τοιούτου βουνοῦ
— Bona and — Chloum behind and the such hill
 διέρχεται ποταμὸς καλούμενος Βόνα, ὃ ἐρμηνεύεται καλόν.
passes (a)-river called Bona which is-interpreted good
 Ὅτι ἡ γενεὰ τοῦ ἀνθυπάτου καὶ πατρικίου Μιχαὴλ τοῦ
that the family of-the proconsul and patrician Michael the
 υἱοῦ τοῦ Βουσεβούτζη τοῦ ἄρχοντος τῶν Ζαχλούμων ἦλθεν
son — of-Bouseboutzes the prince of-the Zachlumi came
 ἀπὸ τῶν κατοικούντων ἀβαπτίστων εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν
from those dwelling unbaptized on the river
 Βίσλας, τὸν ἐπονομαζόμενον Διτζίκη, καὶ ὥκησεν εἰς
Vistula the(-one) named Ditzike and settled on
 τὸν ποταμὸν τὸν ἐπονομαζόμενον Ζαχλούμα.
the river the(-one) named Zachlouma
 Ὅτι ἐν τῷ χωρίῳ τῶν Ζαχλούμων εἰσὶ κάστρα
that in the district of-the Zachlumi there-are fortresses
 οἰκούμενα τὸ Σταγνόν, τὸ Μοκρισκίκ, τὸ Ἰοσλή, τὸ
inhabited — Stagnon — Mokriskik — Iosle —
 Γαλουμαήνικ, τὸ Δοβρισκίκ.
Galoumaenik — Dobriskik

Their land was settled by unbaptized Serbs. Vlastimir married his daughter to Krainas, son of the zupan of Terbounia, and made him prince. Terbounia means strong place, and Kanali means wagon road, since the land is flat.

περὶ τῶν Τερβουνιατῶν καὶ τῶν Καναλιτῶν καὶ ἧς
concerning the Terbouniotes and the Kanalites and which
νῦν οἰκοῦσι χώρας.

now they-inhabit land

Ὅτι ἡ τῶν Τερβουνιατῶν καὶ τῶν Καναλιτῶν χώρα
that the of-the Terbouniotes and the Kanalites land
μία ὑπάρχει. ἀπὸ δὲ τῶν ἀβαπτίστων Σέρβλων οἱ
one is from and the unbaptized Serbs those
ἐκεῖσε κατάγονται, οἱ ἐξ ἐκείνου τοῦ ἄρχοντος οἰκοῦντες
there are-descended those from that the prince dwelling
τοῦ εἰς τὸν βασιλέα Ἡράκλειον προσφυγόντος ἀπὸ
the(-one) to the emperor Heraclius having-taken-refuge from
τῆς ἀβαπτίστου Σερβλίας μέχρι τοῦ ἄρχοντος Σερβλίας
the unbaptized Serbia until the prince of-Serbia
τοῦ Βλαστημέρου. οὗτος οὖν ὁ ἄρχων Βλαστήμερος
— Vlastimir this then the prince Vlastimir
τῇ ἰδίᾳ θυγατρὶ δέδωκεν ἄνδρα Κραῖναν τὸν υἱὸν
to-the own daughter gave (as)-husband Krainas the son
Βελάη τοῦ ζουπάνου Τερβουνίας. θέλων οὗτος τὸν ἴδιον
of-Belaes the zupan of-Terbounia wishing he the own
γαμβρὸν δοξάσαι ὠνόμασεν αὐτὸν ἄρχοντα, ποιήσας αὐτὸν
son-in-law to-glorify named him prince having-made him
αὐτεξούσιον. ἐξ ἐκείνου δὲ ὁ Φαλιμέρης ἐγεννήθη, καὶ
independent from that and — Pbalimer was-born and
ἀπ' ἐκείνου ὁ Τζουτζιμέρης. ἦσαν δὲ οἱ τῆς Τερβουνίας
from that-one — Tzoutzimer were and the — of-Terbounia

ἄρχοντες ἀεὶ ὑπὸ τὸν λόγον τοῦ ἄρχοντος Σερβλίας.

princes always under the word of-the prince of-Serbia

Τερβουνία δὲ τῇ τῶν Σκλάβων διαλέκτῳ ἐρμηνεύεται

Terbounia and in-the of-the Slavs dialect is-interpreted

ἰσχυρὸς τόπος· ἡ γὰρ τοιαύτη χώρα ὀχυρώματα ἔχει πολλά.

strong place the for such land strongholds has many

Ὅτι ἐστὶ καὶ ἑτέρα χώρα ὑπὸ ταύτην τὴν χώραν

that there-is also another land under this the land

Τερβουνίας, Καναλὴ προσαγορευομένη. τὸ δὲ Καναλὴ

of-Terbounia Kanali called — and Kanali

ἐρμηνεύεται τῇ τῶν Σκλάβων διαλέκτῳ ἀμαξία, ἐπειδὴ,

is-interpreted in-the of-the Slavs dialect wagon-road since

διὰ τὸ εἶναι τὸν τόπον ἐπίπεδον, πάσας αὐτῶν τὰς

because-of the to-be the place level all their the

δουλείας διὰ ἀμαξῶν ἐκτελοῦσιν.

services by wagons they-carry-out

Ὅτι ἐν τῷ χωρίῳ Τερβουνίας καὶ τοῦ Καναλὴ εἰσὶ

that in the district of-Terbounia and — of-Kanali there-are

κάστρα οἰκούμενα ἢ Τερβουνία, τὸ Ὀρμος, τὰ Ῥίσηνα,

fortresses inhabited — Terbounia — Ormos — Risena

τὸ Λουκάβετε, τὸ Ζετλήβη.

— Loukavete — Zetlebe

Diokleia, once held by the Romani and wasted by the Avars, was resettled under Heraclius. It is named for a fortress Diocletian built there, now deserted.

περὶ τῶν Διοκλητιανῶν, καὶ ἥς νῦν οἰκοῦσι χώρας.
 concerning the Diocletians and which now they-inhabit land
 "Ὅτι ἡ Διοκλήας χώρα καὶ αὐτὴ πρότερον παρὰ τῶν
 that the of-Diokleia land also it formerly by the
 Ῥωμάνων ἐκρατεῖτο, οὗς ἀπὸ Ῥώμης μετώκισεν ὁ βασιλεὺς
 Romani was-held whom from Rome transplanted the emperor
 Διοκλητιανός, καθὼς καὶ εἰς τὴν περὶ τῶν Χρωβάτων
 Diocletian as also in the concerning the Croats
 ἱστορίαν εἴρηται· ὑπὸ δὲ τὸν βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων ὑπῆρχε.
 history has-been-said under and the emperor of-(the)-Romans it-was
 παρὰ δὲ τῶν Ἀβάρων καὶ αὕτη ἡ χώρα αἰχμαλωτισθεῖσα
 by and the Avars also this the land having-been-made-captive
 ἡρῶνται, καὶ πάλιν ἐπὶ Ἡρακλείου τοῦ βασιλέως
 has-been-laid-waste and again under Heraclius the emperor
 ἐνωκίσθη, καθὼς καὶ ἡ Χρωβατία καὶ ἡ Σερβλία καὶ
 it-was-settled as also — Croatia and — Serbia and
 ἡ τῶν Ζαχλούμων καὶ ἡ Τερβουνία καὶ τοῦ Καναλή.
 the(-land) of-the Zachlumi and — Terbounia and — of-Kanali
 Διόκληα δὲ ὀνομάζεται ἀπὸ τοῦ ἐν τῇ τοιαύτῃ χώρα
 Diokleia and it-is-named from the in the such land
 κάστρον, ὅπερ ἔκτισεν ὁ βασιλεὺς Διοκλητιανός· νυνὶ δέ
 fortress which built the emperor Diocletian now and
 ἐστὶν ἐρημόκαστρον, μέχρι τοῦ νῦν ὀνομαζόμενον Διόκληα.
 it-is (a)-deserted-fortress until the now named Diokleia

Ὅτι ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ Διοκλείας εἰσὶ μεγάλα κάστρα
that in the land of-Diokleia there-are great fortresses
 οἰκούμενα, τὸ Γράδεται, τὸ Νουγράδε, τὸ Λοντοδόκλα.
inhabited — Gradetai — Nougrade — Lontodokla

XXXVI · THE PAGANI

The Pagani, also called Arentanoi, are Serbs who refused baptism when the rest were baptized; the name means unbaptized. They hold several fortresses and the islands of Kourkoura, Meleta (the Melite of Acts), Pharos, and Bartzo.

περὶ τῶν Παγανῶν τῶν καὶ Ἀρεντανῶν καλουμένων,
concerning the Pagani those also Arentanoi called
 καὶ ἧς νῦν οἰκοῦσι χώρας.
and which now they-inhabit land
 Ὅτι ἡ χώρα εἰς ἣν νῦν οἰκοῦσιν οἱ Παγανοὶ καὶ
that the land in which now dwell the Pagani also
 αὕτη πρότερον παρὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἐκρατεῖτο, οὓς ἀπὸ
it formerly by the Romans was-held whom from
 Ῥώμης ὁ βασιλεὺς Διοκλητιανὸς μετοικίσας ἐν Δελματία
Rome the emperor Diocletian having-transplanted in Dalmatia
 ἐνώκισεν. οἱ δὲ αὐτοὶ Παγανοὶ ἀπὸ τῶν ἀβαπτίστων
settled the and same Pagani from the unbaptized
 Σέρβλων κατάγονται, ἐξ ἐκείνου τοῦ ἄρχοντος τοῦ
Serbs are-descended from that the prince the(-one)
 πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα Ἡράκλειον προσφυγόντος. παρὰ δὲ τῶν
to the emperor Heraclius having-taken-refuge by and the
 Ἀβάρων καὶ αὕτη ἡ χώρα αἰχμαλωτισθεῖσα ἠρήμωται,
Avars also this the land having-been-made-captive has-been-laid-waste
 καὶ πάλιν ἐπὶ Ἡρακλείου τοῦ βασιλέως ἐνῆλθῃ.
and again under Heraclius the emperor it-was-settled

Παγανοὶ δὲ καλοῦνται διὰ τὸ μὴ καταδέξασθαι αὐτοὺς
Pagani and they-are-called because-of the not to-have-consented them
 τῷ τότε καιρῷ βαπτισθῆναι ὅτε καὶ πάντες οἱ Σέρβλοι
at-the then time to-be-baptized when also all the Serbs
 ἐβαπτίσθησαν· καὶ γὰρ Παγανοὶ τῇ τῶν Σκλάβων
were-baptized and for Pagani in-the of-the Slavs
 διαλέκτῳ ἀβάπτιστοι ἐρμηνεύονται. τῇ τῶν Ῥωμαίων
dialect unbaptized are-interpreted in-the of-the Romans
 δὲ διαλέκτῳ ἣ χώρα αὐτῶν Ἀρέντα καλεῖται, ἐξ οὗ
and dialect the land their Arenta is-called from which
 κάκεῖνοι παρὰ τῶν αὐτῶν Ῥωμαίων Ἀρεντάνοι καλοῦνται.
also-they by the same Romans Arentanoi are-called
 Ὅτι ἐν Παγανίᾳ εἰσὶ κάστρα οἰκούμενα τὸ Μόκρον, τὸ
that in Paganía there-are fortresses inhabited — Mokron —
 Βερούλλια, τὸ Ὅστρωκ καὶ ἡ Λαβίνετζα. κρατοῦσι δὲ
Beroullia — Ostrok and — Labinetza they-hold and
 καὶ ταύτας τὰς νήσους. νῆσος μεγάλη ἡ Κούρκρα ἥτοι
also these the islands (an)-island great — Kourkoura that-is
 τὸ Κίκερ, ἐν ᾗ ἔστι καὶ κάστρον. νῆσος ἑτέρα μεγάλη
— Kiker on which is also (a)-fortress (an)-island another great
 τὰ Μέλετα ἥτοι τὸ Μαλοζεάται, ἣν ἐν ταῖς πράξεσι τῶν
— Meleta that-is — Malozeatai which in the acts of-the
 ἀποστόλων ὁ ἅγιος Λούκας μέμνηται, Μελίτην ταύτην
apostles the holy Luke mentions Melite it
 προσαγορεύων· ἐν ᾗ καὶ ἔχῃ τὸν ἅγιον Παῦλον ἀπὸ
calling on which also (a)-viper the holy Paul by
 τοῦ δακτύλου προσήψατο, ἣν καὶ τῷ πυρὶ ὁ ἅγιος
the finger fastened which also in-the fire the holy
 Παῦλος κατέφλεξε. νῆσος ἑτέρα μεγάλη τὸ Φάρα. νῆσος
Paul burned-up (an)-island another great — Pharos (an)-island
 ἑτέρα μεγάλη ὁ Βράτζης. εἰσὶ δὲ καὶ ἕτεραι νῆσοι αἱ
another great — Bartzo there-are and also other islands those

μὴ κρατούμεναι παρὰ τῶν αὐτῶν Παγανῶν, νῆσος τὰ
 not held by the same Pagani (an)-island —
 Χόαρα, νῆσος Ἰης, νῆσος τὸ Λάστοβον.
 Choara (an)-island Ies (an)-island — Lastobon

XXXVII · THE PECHENEGS

The Pechenegs once lived on the Atel and the Geech, the Volga and the Ural. Fifty years ago the Uzes and Khazars drove them out, and they in turn drove out the Turks, whose land they have held fifty-five years. Their eight themes, four on each side of the Dnieper, pass to cousins, never to sons or brothers. Some who stayed behind live among the Uzes and wear short tunics with the sleeves cut off. Ruined fortresses with crosses stand on the Dnieper, and three themes, the bravest and noblest, are called Kangar.

περὶ τοῦ ἔθνους τῶν Πατζνακιτῶν.
 concerning the nation of-the Pechenegs
 Ἰστέον ὅτι Πατζνακίται τὸ ἀπ' ἀρχῆς εἰς τὸν
 (one)-must-know that (the)-Pechenegs the from (the)-beginning on the
 ποταμὸν Ἀτὴλ τὴν αὐτῶν εἶχον κατοίκησιν, ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ εἰς
 river Atel the their had dwelling likewise and also on
 τὸν ποταμὸν Γεήχ, ἔχοντες τοὺς τε Μαζάρους συνοροῦντας
 the river Geech having the both Mazars bordering(-them)
 καὶ τοὺς ἐπονομαζομένους Οὔζ. πρὸ ἐτῶν δὲ πεντήκοντα
 and those called Uzes before years and fifty
 οἱ λεγόμενοι Οὔζ μετὰ τῶν Χαζάρων ὁμονοήσαντες καὶ
 those called Uzes with the Khazars having-agreed and
 πόλεμον συμβαλόντες πρὸς τοὺς Πατζνακίτας ὑπερίσχυσαν,
 war having-joined against the Pechenegs prevailed
 καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς ἰδίας χώρας αὐτοὺς ἐξεδίωξαν, καὶ κατέσχον
 and from the own land them drove-out and occupied

αὐτὴν μέχρι τῆς σήμερον οἱ λεγόμενοι Οὐζοι. οἱ δὲ
it until the today those called Uzses the and
 Πατζινακῖται φυγόντες περιήρχοντο ἀναψιλαφῶντες τόπον
Pechenegs having-fled went-about searching-out (a)-place
 εἰς τὴν αὐτῶν κατασκήνωσιν· καταλαβόντες δὲ τὴν σήμερον
for the their settlement having-reached and the today
 παρ' αὐτῶν κρατουμένην γῆν καὶ εὐρόντες τοὺς Τούρκους
by them held land and having-found the Turks
 οἰκοῦντας ἐν αὐτῇ, πολέμου τρόπῳ τούτους νικήσαντες
dwelling in it of-war in-(the)-manner them having-conquered
 καὶ ἐκβαλόντες ἐξεδίωξαν αὐτοὺς καὶ κατεσκήνωσαν ἐν
and having-cast-out drove-out them and settled in
 αὐτῇ, καὶ δεσπόζουσι τῆς τοιαύτης χώρας, ὡς εἴρηται,
it and are-masters of-the such land as has-been-said
 μέχρι τῆς σήμερον ἔτη πεντήκοντα πέντε.
until the today years fifty five
 Ἰστέον ὅτι πᾶσα ἡ Πατζινακία εἰς θέματα ὀκτώ
(one)-must-know that all — Patzinakia into themes eight
 διαιρεῖται, ἔχουσα καὶ μεγάλους ἄρχοντας τοσοῦτους. τὰ δὲ
is-divided having also great princes as-many the and
 θέματά εἰσι ταῦτα. ὄνομα τοῦ πρώτου θέματος Ἡρτήμ, τοῦ
themes are these (the)-name of-the first theme Ertem of-the
 δευτέρου Τζούρ, τοῦ τρίτου Γύλα, τοῦ τετάρτου Κουλπέη,
second Tzour of-the third Gyla of-the fourth Koulpee
 τοῦ πέμπτου Χαροβόη, τοῦ ἕκτου Ταλμάτ, τοῦ ἑβδόμου
of-the fifth Charoboe of-the sixth Talmat of-the seventh
 Χοπόν, τοῦ ὀγδόου Τζοπόν. κατὰ δὲ τὸν καιρὸν ὃν
Chopon of-the eighth Tzopon at and the time in-which
 ἀπὸ τῶν ἰδίων τόπων οἱ Πατζινακῖται ἐξεδιώχθησαν, εἰχον
from the own places the Pechenegs were-driven-out they-had
 ἄρχοντας εἰς μὲν τὸ θέμα Ἡρτήμ τὸν Μαῖτζαν, εἰς δὲ τὸ
princes in indeed the theme Ertem — Maïtzas in and —

Τζούρ τὸν Κούελ, εἰς δὲ τὸ Γύλα τὸν Κουρκούταν, εἰς δὲ τὸ
Tzour — Kouel in and — Gyla — Kourkoutas in and —
 Κουλπέη τὸν Ἰπαόν, εἰς δὲ τὸ Χαραβοθή τὸν Καϊδούμ, εἰς
Koulpee — Ipaos in and — Charoboe — Kaïdoun in
 δὲ τὸ θέμα Ταλμάτ τὸν Κώσταν, εἰς τὸ Χοπὸν τὸν Γιαζή,
and the theme Talmat — Kostas in — Chopon — Giazas
 εἰς δὲ τὸ θέμα Τζοπὸν τὸν Βατάν. μετὰ δὲ θάνατον αὐτῶν
in and the theme Tzopon — Batas after and (the)-death their
 διεδέξαντο τὰς ἀρχὰς οἱ τούτων ἐξάδελφοι· νόμος γὰρ
succeeded-to the rules the their cousins (a)-law for
 ἐν αὐτοῖς καὶ τύπος ἐκράτησε παλαιὸς μὴ ἔχειν ἐξουσίαν
among them and custom has-prevailed ancient not to-have authority
 πρὸς παῖδας ἢ ἀδελφούς αὐτῶν μεταπέμπειν τὰ ἀξιώματα,
to sons or brothers their to-transmit the dignities
 ἀλλ' ἀρκεῖσθαι μόνον τοῖς κεκτημένοις τὸ καὶ μέχρι
but to-be-content only with-the having-possessed(-them) the also until
 ζωῆς ἄρχειν αὐτούς, μετὰ δὲ θάνατον προχειρίζεσθαι ἢ
life to-rule them after and death to-appoint either
 ἐξάδελφον αὐτῶν ἢ ἐξαδέλφων παῖδας, πρὸς τὸ μὴ καθ'
(a)-cousin their or of-cousins sons for the not at
 ὅλου εἰς ἓν μέρος γενεᾶς διατρέχειν τὸ ἀξίωμα, ἀλλὰ
all in one part of-(the)-family to-run the dignity but
 καὶ εἰς τοὺς ἐκπλαγίους καὶ κληρονομεῖν καὶ ἀπεκδέχεσθαι
also to the collateral(-kin) both to-inherit and to-receive
 τὴν τιμὴν· ἀπὸ ξένης δὲ γενεᾶς οὐχ ὑπεισέρχεται τις
the honor from (a)-foreign and family not does-enter anyone
 καὶ γίνεται ἄρχων. τὰ δὲ ὀκτὼ θέματα διαιροῦνται εἰς
and becomes prince the and eight themes are-divided into
 τεσσαράκοντα μέρη, καὶ ἔχουσι καὶ ἐλάττονας ἄρχοντας.
forty parts and have also lesser princes

Ἰστέον ὅτι αἱ τέσσαρες τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν γενεαί, ἡγουν
(one)-must-know that the four of-the Pechenegs clans that-is
 τὸ θέμα Κουαρτζιτζοῦρ καὶ τὸ θέμα Συρουκαλπέη καὶ
the theme Kouartzitzour and the theme Syroukalpee and
 τὸ θέμα Βοροτάλματ καὶ τὸ θέμα Βουλατζυσπόν, κεῖνται
the theme Borotalmat and the theme Boulatzyspon lie
 πέρα τοῦ Δανάπρεως ποταμοῦ, πρὸς τὰ ἀνατολικώτερα
beyond the Dnieper river toward the more-eastern
 καὶ βορειότερα μέρη ἐναποβλέποντα, πρὸς τε Οὐζίαν
and more-northern parts looking-toward toward both Uzia
 καὶ Χαζαρίαν καὶ Ἀλανίαν καὶ τὴν Χερσῶνα καὶ τὰ
and Khazaria and Alania and — Cherson and the
 λοιπὰ κλίματα. αἱ δὲ ἄλλαι τέσσαρες γενεαί κεῖνται
other regions the and other four clans lie
 ἔνθεν τοῦ Δανάπρεως ποταμοῦ, πρὸς τὰ δυτικώτερα καὶ
on-this-side of-the Dnieper river toward the more-western and
 ἀρκτικώτερα μέρη· τουτέστι τὸ θέμα Γιαζιχοπὸν πλησιάζει
more-northern parts that-is the theme Giazichopon borders
 τῇ Βουλγαρίᾳ, τὸ δὲ θέμα τοῦ κάτω Γύλα πλησιάζει τῇ
— on-Bulgaria the and theme of-the lower Gyla borders —
 Τουρκίᾳ, τὸ δὲ θέμα Χαροβόη πλησιάζει τῇ Ῥωσίᾳ, τὸ δὲ
on-Turkey the and theme Charoboe borders — on-Russia the and
 θέμα Ἰαβδιερτίμ πλησιάζει τοῖς ὑποφόροις χωρίοις χώρας
theme Iabdiertim borders on-the tributary districts of-(the)-land
 τῆς Ῥωσίας, τοῖς τε Οὐλτίνοις καὶ Δερβλενίνοις καὶ
— of-Russia the both Ultines and Derblenines and
 Λενζενίνοις καὶ τοῖς λοιποῖς Σκλάβοις. ἀπόκισται δὲ ἡ
Lenzanenenes and the other Slavs is-distant and —
 Πατζινακία ἐκ μὲν Οὐζίας καὶ Χαζαρίας ὁδὸν ἡμερῶν
Patzinakia from indeed Uzia and Khazaria (a)-journey of-days
 πέντε, ἐκ δὲ Ἀλανίας ἡμερῶν ἑξ, ἀπὸ δὲ Μορδίας
five from and Alania of-days six from and Mordia

ὁδὸν ἡμερῶν δέκα, ἀπὸ δὲ Ῥωσίας ὁδὸν ἡμέρας
(a)-journey of-days ten from and Russia (a)-journey of-day
 μιᾶς, ἀπὸ δὲ Τουρκίας ὁδὸν ἡμερῶν τεσσάρων, ἀπὸ
one from and Turkey (a)-journey of-days four from
 δὲ Βουλγαρίας ὁδὸν ἡμέρας ἡμισυ καὶ εἰς Χερσῶνα
and Bulgaria (a)-journey of-day half and to Cherson
 μέν ἐστιν ἔγγιστα, εἰς δὲ τὴν Βόσπορον πλησιέστερον.
indeed it-is nearest to and — Bosphorus nearer
 Ἰστέον ὅτι κατὰ τὸν καιρὸν ὃν οἱ Πατζινακῖται
(one)-must-know that at the time in-which the Pechenegs
 ἀπὸ τῆς ἰδίας χώρας ἐξεδιώχθησαν, θελήσει τινὲς ἐξ
from the own land were-driven-out by-will some of
 αὐτῶν καὶ οἰκεία γνώμη ἐναπέμειναν ἐκεῖσε καὶ τοῖς
them and by-own choice remained-behind there and with-the
 λεγομένοις Οὔζοις συνώκησαν, καὶ μέχρι τοῦ νῦν εἰσὶν ἐν
called Uzes lived and until the now they-are among
 αὐτοῖς, ἔχοντες τοιαῦτα γνωρίσματα ὥστε διαχωρίζεσθαι
them having such marks so-that to-be-distinguished
 αὐτοῖς καὶ νοεῖσθαι τίνες τε ἦσαν καὶ πῶς αὐτοὺς
among-them and to-be-recognized who both they-were and how them
 ἀποσπασθῆναι τῶν ἰδίων συνέβη· τὰ γὰρ ἱμάτια
to-be-torn-away from-the own(-people) it-happened the for garments
 αὐτῶν εἰςὶ κόντευρα μέχρι γονάτων, καὶ τὰ μανίκια
their are short to (the)-knees and the sleeves
 ἀπὸ τῶν βραχιόνων ἀποκεκομμένα, ὥς δῆθεν ἐκ τούτου
from the arms cut-off as forsooth by this
 δεικνύντες ὅτι ἀπὸ τῶν ἰδίων καὶ ὁμοφύλων ἀπεκόπησαν.
showing that from the own and kindred they-were-cut-off
 Ἰστέον ὅτι ἔνθεν τοῦ Δανάπρεως ποταμοῦ πρὸς
(one)-must-know that on-this-side of-the Dnieper river toward
 τὸ ἀποβλέπον μέρος τὴν Βουλγαρίαν εἰς τὰ περάματα
the facing part — Bulgaria at the crossings

τοῦ αὐτοῦ ποταμοῦ εἰσὶν ἐρημόκαστρα. κάστρον πρῶτον
of-the same river there-are deserted-fortresses fortress first
 τὸ ὀνομασθὲν παρὰ τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν Ἄσπρον διὰ
the(-one) named by the Pechenegs Aspron because-of
 τὸ τοὺς λίθους αὐτοῦ φαίνεσθαι καταλεύκους, κάστρον
the the stones its to-appear very-white fortress
 δεύτερον τὸ Τουγγᾶται, κάστρον τρίτον τὸ Κρακνακάται,
second — Tounggatai fortress third — Kraknakatai
 κάστρον τέταρτον τὸ Σαλμακάται, κάστρον πέμπτον
fortress fourth — Salmakatai fortress fifth
 τὸ Σακακάται, κάστρον ἕκτον Γιαιουκάται. ἐν αὐτοῖς
— Sakakatai fortress sixth Giaioukatai in them
 δὲ τοῖς τῶν παλαιοκάστρων κτίσμασι εὐρίσκονται καὶ
and the of-the old-fortresses buildings are-found also
 ἐκκλησιῶν γνωρίσματά τινα καὶ σταυροὶ λαξευτοὶ εἰς
of-churches marks some and crosses carved in
 λίθους πορίνους· ὅθεν καὶ τινες παράδοσιν ἔχουσιν ὡς
stones of-tufa whence also some (a)-tradition have that
 Ῥωμαῖοί ποτε τὰς κατοικίας εἶχον ἐκεῖσε.
(the)-Romans once the settlements had there
 Ἰστέον ὅτι Κάγκαρ ὀνομάζονται οἱ Πατζινακῖται, ἀλλ'
(one)-must-know that Kangar are-named the Pechenegs but
 οὐχὶ πάντες, πλὴν ὁ τῶν τριῶν θεμάτων λαός, τοῦ
not all except the of-the three themes people —
 Ἰαβδιηρτί, καὶ τοῦ Κουαρτζιτζοῦρ καὶ τοῦ Χαβουξιγγυλά,
of-Iabdiertim and — of-Kouartzitzour and — of-Chabouxinggyla
 ὡς ἀνδρείότεροι καὶ εὐγενέστεροι τῶν λοιπῶν· τοῦτο γὰρ
as braver and nobler of-the others this for
 δηλοῖ ἢ τοῦ Κάγγαρ προσηγορία.
shows the of-the Kangar name

The Turks, once called Sabartoi-asphaloi, lived near Khazaria at Lebedia. Defeated by the Pechenegs, they split in two: one part went toward Persia, the other west. The Khazar chagan offered rule to Lebedias, who declined and named Salmoutzes or his son Arpad; the Turks chose Arpad and raised him on a shield as prince. The Pechenegs drove them out again, and they settled in Moravia.

περὶ τῆς γενεαλογίας τοῦ ἔθνους τῶν Τούρκων, καὶ
concerning the genealogy of-the nation of-the Turks and
ὅθεν κατάγονται.

whence they-are-descended

Ὅτι τὸ τῶν Τούρκων ἔθνος πλησίον τῆς Χαζαρίας τὸ
that the of-the Turks nation near — Khazaria in-the
παλαιὸν τὴν κατοίκησιν ἐποιεῖτο εἰς τὸν τόπον τὸν
old(-days) the dwelling made in the place the(-one)
ἐπονομαζόμενον Λεβεδία ἀπὸ τῆς τοῦ πρώτου βοεβόδου
named Lebedia from the of-the first voivode
αὐτῶν ἐπωνυμίας, ὅστις βοεβόδος τὸ μὲν τῆς κλήσεως
their name who voivode the indeed of-the calling
ὄνομα Λεβεδίας προσαγορεύετο, τὸ δὲ τῆς ἀξίας, ὥς καὶ
name Lebedias was-called the and of-the rank as also
οἱ λοιποὶ μετ' αὐτόν, βοεβόδος ἐκαλεῖτο. ἐν τούτῳ οὖν τῷ
the others after him voivode was-called in this then the
τόπῳ τῷ προρρηθέντι Λεβεδία ποταμός ἐστι ῥέων Χιδμάς,
place the aforesaid Lebedia (a)-river is flowing Chidmas
ὁ καὶ Χιγγυλοὺς ἐπονομαζόμενος. οὐκ ἐλέγοντο δὲ
the(-one) also Chingylous named not they-were-called and
τῷ τότε χρόνῳ Τούρκοι, ἀλλὰ Σαβαρτοιάσφαλοι ἔκ
at-the then time Turks but Sabartoi-asphaloi from
τινος αἰτίας ἐπωνομάζοντο. καὶ οἱ μὲν Τούρκοι γενεαὶ
some cause they-were-named and the indeed Turks clans

ὑπῆρχον ἑπτά, ἄρχοντα δὲ εἰς αὐτοὺς εἴτε ἴδιον εἴτε
were seven prince and over them whether own or
 ἀλλότριόν ποτε οὐκ ἐκτήσαντο, ἀλλ' ὑπῆρχον ἐν αὐτοῖς
foreign ever not they-had but there-were among them
 βοέβοδοί τινες, ὧν πρῶτος βοέβodos ἦν ὁ προρρηθείς
voivodes some of-whom first voivode was the aforesaid
 Λεβεδίας. συνώκησαν δὲ μετὰ τῶν Χαζάρων ἐνιαυτοὺς
Lebedias they-lived and with the Khazars years
 τρεῖς, συμμαχοῦντες τοῖς Χαζάροις ἐν πᾶσι τοῖς αὐτῶν
three fighting-alongside the Khazars in all the their
 πολέμοις. ὁ δὲ χαγάνος ἄρχων Χαζαρίας διὰ τὴν
wars the and chagan prince of-Khazaria because-of the
 αὐτῶν ἀνδρίαν καὶ συμμαχίαν τῷ πρώτῳ βοεβόδῳ τῶν
their bravery and alliance to-the first voivode of-the
 Τούρκων Λεβεδία ἐπονομαζομένῳ γυναῖκα δέδωκε πρὸς
Turks Lebedias named (a)-wife gave for
 γάμον Χαζάραν εὐγενή, διὰ τὸ τῆς ἀνδρίας αὐτοῦ
marriage (a)-Khazar-woman noble because-of the of-the bravery his
 περίφημον καὶ τὸ τοῦ γένους περιφανές, ὅπως ἐξ αὐτοῦ
renown and the of-the family distinction so-that from him
 τεκνώσῃ. ὁ δὲ Λεβεδίας ἐκεῖνος ἔκ τινος τύχης
she-might-bear-children — and Lebedias that from some chance
 μετὰ τῆς αὐτῆς Χαζάρου οὐκ ἐπαιδοποίησεν. οἱ δὲ
with the same Khazar-woman not had-children the and
 Πατζινακίται οἱ πρότερον Κάγγαρ ἐπονομαζόμενοι (τοῦτο
Pechenegs those formerly Kangar named this
 γὰρ τὸ Κάγγαρ ὄνομα ἐπ' εὐγενείᾳ καὶ ἀνδρίᾳ ἐλέγετο
for the Kangar name for nobility and bravery was-said
 παρ' αὐτοῖς) πρὸς Χαζάρους οὖν οὗτοι κινήσαντες πόλεμον
among them against (the)-Khazars then these having-moved war
 καὶ ἡττηθέντες τὴν οἰκείαν γῆν καταλεῖψαι καὶ τὴν
and having-been-defeated the own land to-leave and the(-land)

τῶν Τούρκων κατοικῆσαι κατηναγκάσθησαν. ἀναμεταξὺ δὲ
of-the Turks to-settle were-compelled between and
 τῶν Τούρκων συναφθέντος πολέμου καὶ τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν
the Turks having-been-joined war and the Pechenegs
 τῶν τηνικαῦτα Κάγγαρ ἐπονομαζομένων, τὸ τῶν Τούρκων
those at-that-time Kangar named the of-the Turks
 φοσσάτον ἡττήθη καὶ εἰς δύο διηρέθη μέρη· καὶ τὸ
army was-defeated and into two was-divided parts and the
 μὲν ἐν μέρος πρὸς ἀνατολὴν εἰς τὸ τῆς Περσίδος μέρος
indeed one part toward (the)-east in the — of-Persia part
 κατώκησεν, οἱ καὶ μέχρι τοῦ νῦν κατὰ τὴν τῶν
settled who also until the now according-to the of-the
 Τούρκων ἀρχαίαν ἐπωνυμίαν καλοῦνται Σαβαρτοιάσφαλοι·
Turks ancient name are-called Sabartoiiasphaloi
 τὸ δὲ ἕτερον μέρος εἰς τὸ δυτικὸν κατώκησε μέρος, ἅμα
the and other part in the western settled part together
 καὶ τῷ βοεβόδῳ αὐτῶν καὶ ἀρχηγῷ Λεβεδία, εἰς τόπους
also with-the voivode their and chief Lebedias in places
 τοὺς ἐπονομαζομένους Ἀτελκούζου, ἐν οἷς τόποις τὸ
the(-ones) named Atelkouzou in which places the
 νῦν τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν ἔθνος κατοικεῖ. ὀλίγου δὲ χρόνου
now of-the Pechenegs nation dwells little and time
 διαδραμόντος ὁ χαγάνος ἐκείνος ἄρχων Χαζαρίας τοῖς
having-passed the chagan that prince of-Khazaria to-the
 Τούρκοις ἐμήνυσε τοῦ πρὸς αὐτὸν ἀποσταλῆναι χελάνδια
Turks sent-word of-the to him to-be-sent warships
 τὸν πρῶτον αὐτῶν βοεβόδον. ὁ Λεβεδίας τοῖνυν πρὸς
the first their voivode — Lebedias then to
 τὸν χαγάνον Χαζαρίας ἀφικόμενος ἀνηρώτα τὴν αἰτίαν δι'
the chagan of-Khazaria having-arrived asked the cause for
 ἣν ἔλθειν πρὸς αὐτὸν μετεπέμψατο. ὁ δὲ χαγάνος εἶπε
which to-come to him he-had-sent-for(-him) the and chagan said

πρὸς αὐτὸν ὅτι διὰ τοῦτό σε προσεκαλεσάμεθα, ἵνα
to him that because-of this you we-have-summoned that
 ἐπειδὴ εὐγενὴς καὶ φρόνιμος καὶ ἡνδρειωμένος ὑπάρχεις
since noble and prudent and brave you-are
 καὶ πρῶτος τῶν Τούρκων, ἄρχοντά σε τοῦ ἔθνους
and first of-the Turks prince you of-the nation
 σου προβαλώμεθα, καὶ ἵνα ὑπέικης τῷ λόγῳ καὶ τῇ
your we-may-appoint and that you-may-yield to-the word and the
 προστάξει ἡμῶν. ὁ δὲ ἀποκριθεὶς πρὸς τὸν χαγάνον
command our he and having-answered to the chagan
 ἀντέφησεν ὅτι τὴν περὶ ἐμέ σου σχέσιν τε καὶ προαίρεσιν
replied that the toward me your affection both and choice
 μεγάλως ἐναποδέχομαι, καὶ τὴν εὐχαριστίαν ὁμολογῶ σοι
greatly I-welcome and the thanks I-acknowledge to-you
 προσήκουσαν· ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀδυνάτως ἔχω πρὸς τὴν τοιαύτην
fitting since and unable I-am for the such
 ἀρχήν, ὑπακοῦσαι οὐ δύναμαι, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἔστιν ἕτερος
rule to-obey not I-am-able but rather there-is another
 ἀπ' ἐμοῦ βοέβδος, λεγόμενος Σαλμούτζης καὶ υἱὸν
than me voivode called Salmoutzes and (a)-son
 κεκτημένος ὀνόματι Ἄρπαδῆν· ἐκ τούτων μᾶλλον εἴτε
having by-name Arpad of these rather either
 ἐκεῖνος Σαλμούτζης εἴτε ὁ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ Ἀρπαδῆς ἵνα γένηται
that Salmoutzes or the son his Arpad let become
 ἄρχων, καὶ ἔστιν ὑπὸ τοῦ λόγου ὑμῶν. ἐν τούτῳ οὖν τῷ
prince and be under the word your at this then the
 λόγῳ ἀρεσθεὶς ὁ χαγάνος ἐκεῖνος δέδωκεν ἀνθρώπους
word having-been-pleased the chagan that gave men
 αὐτοῦ μετ' αὐτοῦ καὶ εἰς τοὺς Τούρκους ἀπέστειλεν, οἱ καὶ
his with him and to the Turks sent(-them) who also
 συλλαλήσαντες περὶ τούτου μετὰ τῶν Τούρκων, μᾶλλον οἱ
having-conferred about this with the Turks rather the

Τοῦρκοι τὸν Ἀρπαδὴ γενέσθαι προέκριναν ἄρχοντα ἥπερ
Turks — Arpad to-become preferred prince than
 Σαλμούτζη τὸν αὐτοῦ πατέρα, ὡς ἀξιολογώτερον ὄντα
Salmoutzes the his father as more-notable being
 καὶ περισπούδαστον ἔν τε φρονήσει καὶ βουλῇ καὶ ἀνδρίᾳ
and much-esteemed in both prudence and counsel and bravery
 καὶ ἱκανὸν πρὸς τὴν τοιαύτην ἀρχήν· ὃν καὶ ἄρχοντα
and fit for the such rule whom also prince
 κατὰ τὸ τῶν Χαζάρων ἔθος καὶ ζάκανον πεποιήκασι,
according-to the of-the Khazars custom and law they-made
 σηκώσαντες αὐτὸν εἰς σκουτάριον. πρὸ δὲ τοῦ Ἀρπαδὴ
having-raised him on (a)-shield before and — Arpad
 τούτου ἄρχοντα ἕτερον οἱ Τοῦρκοι οὐκ ἐκτίσαντο πώποτε·
this prince other the Turks not had ever
 ἐξ οὗ καὶ μέχρι τῆς σήμερον ἐκ τῆς τούτου γενεᾶς
from which also until the today from the his family
 ἄρχων Τουρκίας καθίσταται. μετὰ δέ τινας χρόνους
(the)-prince of-Turkey is-appointed after and some years
 τοῖς Τούρκοις ἐπιπεσόντες οἱ Πατζινακίται κατεδίωξαν
on-the Turks having-fallen the Pechenegs drove-out
 αὐτοὺς μετὰ τοῦ ἄρχοντος αὐτῶν Ἀρπαδῆ. οἱ οὖν
them with the prince their Arpad the then
 Τοῦρκοι τραπέντες καὶ πρὸς κατοίκησιν γῆν ἐπίζητούντες,
Turks having-been-routed and for settlement land seeking
 ἐλθόντες ἀπεδίωξαν οὗτοι τοὺς τὴν μεγάλην Μοραβίαν
having-come drove-out these those the great Moravia
 κατοικοῦντας, καὶ εἰς τὴν γῆν αὐτῶν κατεσκήνωσαν, εἰς
inhabiting and in the land their settled in
 ἣν νῦν οἱ Τοῦρκοι μέχρι τῆς σήμερον κατοικοῦσι· καὶ
which now the Turks until the today dwell and
 ἔκτοτε πόλεμον οἱ Τοῦρκοι μετὰ τῶν Πατζινακικῶν οὐκ
from-then war the Turks with the Pechenegs not

ἐποίησαν. εἰς δὲ τὸ κατασκηνώσαν τὸ προρρηθὲν ἔθνος
made to and the having-settled the aforesaid nation
 τῶν Τούρκων πρὸς τὴν ἀνατολὴν εἰς τὰ τῆς Περσίδας
of-the Turks toward the east in the — of-Persia
 μέρη μέχρι τοῦ νῦν πραγματευτὰς ἀποστέλλουσιν οὗτοι
parts until the now traders send these
 οἱ πρὸς τὸ δυτικὸν μέρος οἰκοῦντες προειρημένοι Τούρκοι,
the toward the western part dwelling aforesaid Turks
 καὶ βλέπουσιν αὐτούς, καὶ ἀποκρίσεις παρ' αὐτῶν πρὸς
and visit them and answers from them to
 αὐτοὺς πολλάκις ἀποκομίζουσιν.

them often bring-back

Ὅτι ὁ τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν τόπος ἐν ᾧ τῷ τότε καιρῷ
that the of-the Pechenegs place in which at-the then time
 κατώκησαν οἱ Τούρκοι, καλεῖται κατὰ τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν
dwelt the Turks is-called according-to the name
 τῶν ἐκείσε ὄντων ποταμῶν· οἱ δὲ ποταμοὶ εἰσιν οὗτοι,
of-the there being rivers the and rivers are these
 ποταμὸς πρῶτος ὁ καλούμενος Βαρούχ, ποταμὸς
river first the(-one) called Barouch river
 δεύτερος ὁ καλούμενος Κουβού, ποταμὸς τρίτος ὁ
second the(-one) called Koubou river third the(-one)
 καλούμενος Τρουλλος, ποταμὸς τέταρτος ὁ καλούμενος
called Troullos river fourth the(-one) called
 Βρούτος, ποταμὸς πέμπτος ὁ καλούμενος Σέρετος.
Broutos river fifth the(-one) called Seretos

The Kabaroi, rebels from the Khazars, joined the Turks, taught them Khazar, and led them in war.

περὶ τοῦ ἔθνους τῶν Καβάρων.

concerning the nation of-the Kabaroi

Ἰστέον ὅτι οἱ λεγόμενοι Κάβαροι ἀπὸ τῆς τῶν Χαζάρων

(one)-must-know that those called Kabaroi from the of-the Khazars

γενεᾶς ὑπῆρχον· καὶ δὴ συμβᾶσαν τινα παρ' αὐτῶν

race were and indeed having-happened some by them

ἀποστασίαν γενέσθαι πρὸς τὴν ἀρχὴν αὐτῶν, καὶ πολέμου

rebellion to-come-about against the rule their and war

ἐμφυλίου καθιστάντος, ἡ πρώτη ἀρχὴ αὐτῶν ὑπερίσχυσεν,

civil arising the first rule their prevailed

καὶ οἱ μὲν ἐξ αὐτῶν ἀπεσφάγησαν, οἱ δὲ ἐξέφυγον

and some indeed of them were-slaughtered others and escaped

καὶ ἦλθον καὶ κατεσκήνωσαν μετὰ τῶν Τούρκων εἰς τὴν

and came and settled with the Turks in the

τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν γῆν, καὶ ἀλλήλοις συνεφιλιώθησαν, καὶ

of-the Pechenegs land and with-each-other made-friends and

Κάβαροί τινες ὠνομάσθησαν. ὅθεν καὶ τὴν τῶν Χαζάρων

Kabaroi some were-named whence also the of-the Khazars

γλῶσσαν αὐτοῖς τοῖς Τούρκοις ἐδίδαξαν, καὶ μέχρι τοῦ

tongue to-the-very the Turks they-taught and until the

νῦν τὴν αὐτὴν διάλεκτον ἔχουσιν· ἔχουσι δὲ καὶ τὴν τῶν

now the same dialect they-have they-have and also the of-the

Τούρκων ἑτέραν γλῶτταν. διὰ δὲ τὸ εἰς τοὺς πολέμους

Turks other tongue because-of and the in the wars

ἰσχυροτέρους καὶ ἀνδρειοτέρους δείκνυσθαι τῶν ὀκτῶ

stronger and braver to-show-themselves of-the eight

γενεῶν καὶ προεξάρχειν τοῦ πολέμου προεκρίθησαν πρῶται
 clans and to-lead of-the war they-were-preferred (the)-first
 γενεαί. εἷς δέ ἐστιν ἄρχων ἐν αὐτοῖς, ἥγουν ἐν ταῖς τρισὶ
 clans one and is prince among them that-is in the three
 γενεαῖς τῶν Καβάρων, ὅστις καὶ μέχρι τῆς σήμερον ἔστι.
 clans of-the Kabaroι who also until the today is

XL · THE CLANS OF THE KABAROΙ AND TURKS

The clans of the Turks are listed. At Leo's call they crossed the Danube and routed Symeon, but Symeon and the Pechenegs then destroyed their families, and they settled in their present land. Its rivers and landmarks are described, and the gylas and karchas are named as dignities. Arpad's descendants are traced.

περὶ τῶν γενεῶν τῶν Καβάρων καὶ Τούρκων.
 concerning the clans of-the Kabaroι and Turks
 Πρώτη ἢ παρὰ τῶν Χαζάρων ἀποσπασθεῖσα αὕτη ἡ
 first the from the Khazars torn-away this the
 προρρηθεῖσα τῶν Καβάρων γενεά, δευτέρα τοῦ Νέκη,
 aforesaid of-the Kabaroι clan second — of-Neke
 τρίτη τοῦ Μεγέρη, τετάρτη τοῦ Κουρτυγερμάτου, πέμπτη
 third — of-Megere fourth — of-Kourtygermatos fifth
 τοῦ Ταριάνου, ἕκτη Γενάχ, ἐβδόμη Καρή, ὀγδὸν Κασή.
 — of-Tarianos sixth Genach seventh Kare eighth Kase
 καὶ οὕτως ἀλλήλοις συναφθέντες μετὰ τῶν Τούρκων
 and thus with-each-other having-joined with the Turks
 οἱ Κάβαροι εἰς τὴν τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν κατώκησαν γῆν.
 the Kabaroι in the of-the Pechenegs settled land
 μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα παρὰ Λέοντος τοῦ φιλοχρίστου καὶ
 after and these(-things) by Leo the Christ-loving and
 αἰοιδίμου βασιλέως προσκληθέντες διεπέρασαν, καὶ τὸν
 celebrated emperor having-been-summoned they-crossed and —

Συμεὼν πολεμήσαντες κατὰ κράτος αὐτὸν ἥττησαν, καὶ
Symeon having-warred by force him defeated and
 ἐξέλασαντες μέχρι τῆς Πρεσθλάβου διήλθον ἀποκλείσαντες
having-driven(-on) as-far-as — Preslav went-through having-shut
 αὐτὸν εἰς τὸ κάστρον τὸ λεγόμενον Μουνδράγα, καὶ
him in the fortress the(-one) called Moundraga and
 εἰς τὴν ἰδίαν χώραν ὑπέστρεψαν· τῷ δὲ τότε καιρῷ
to the own land returned at-the and then time
 τὸν Λιούντινα τὸν υἱὸν τοῦ Ἄρπαδῆ εἶχον ἄρχοντα.
— Liountis the son — of-Arpad they-had (as)-prince
 μετὰ δὲ τὸ πάλιν τὸν Συμεὼν μετὰ τοῦ βασιλέως τῶν
after and the again — Symeon with the emperor of-the
 Ῥωμαίων εἰρηνεύεσθαι καὶ λαβεῖν ἄδειαν, διεπέμψατο
Romans to-be-at-peace and to-get freedom he-sent
 πρὸς τοὺς Πατζινακίτας, καὶ μετ' αὐτῶν ὠμοφώνησε τοῦ
to the Pechenegs and with them agreed of-the
 καταπολεμῆσαι καὶ ἀφανίσαι τοὺς Τούρκους. καὶ ὅτε οἱ
to-war-down and to-destroy the Turks and when the
 Τούρκοι πρὸς ταξείδιον ἀπῆλθον, οἱ Πατζινακίται μετὰ
Turks on campaign went-away the Pechenegs with
 τοῦ Συμεὼν ἦλθον κατὰ τῶν Τούρκων, καὶ τὰς αὐτῶν
— Symeon came against the Turks and the their
 φαμιλίας παντελῶς ἐξηφάνισαν, καὶ τοὺς εἰς φύλαξιν τῆς
households utterly destroyed and the for guarding of-the
 χώρας αὐτῶν Τούρκους ἀπεκείσε κακινκάκως ἀπεδίωξαν.
land their Turks from-there wretchedly drove-out
 οἱ δὲ Τούρκοι ὑποστρέψαντες, καὶ τὴν χώραν αὐτῶν
the and Turks having-returned and the land their
 οὕτως εὐρόντες ἔρημον καὶ κατηφανισμένην, κατεσκήνωσαν
thus having-found deserted and utterly-destroyed settled
 εἰς τὴν γῆν εἰς ἣν καὶ σήμερον κατοικοῦσι, τὴν
in the land in which also today they-dwell the(-one)

ἐπονομαζομένην κατὰ τὴν ἀνωτέρω, ὡς εἴρηται, τῶν
named according-to the above as has-been-said of-the
 ποταμῶν ἐπωνυμίαν. ὁ δὲ τόπος ἐν ᾧ πρότερον οἱ
rivers name the and place in which formerly the
 Τοῦρκοι ὑπῆρχον, ὀνομάζεται κατὰ τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν τοῦ
Turks were is-named according-to the name of-the
 ἐκεῖσε διερχομένου ποταμοῦ Ἐτέλ καὶ Κουζού, ἐν ᾧ
there passing-through river Etel and Kouzou in which
 ἀρτίως οἱ Πατζινακῖται κατοικοῦσιν. οἱ δὲ Τοῦρκοι παρὰ
now the Pechenegs dwell the and Turks by
 τῶν Πατζινακῖτῶν διωχθέντες ἦλθον καὶ κατεσκήνωσαν
the Pechenegs having-been-driven-out came and settled
 εἰς τὴν γῆν εἰς ἣν νῦν οἰκοῦσιν. ἐν αὐτῷ δὲ τῷ τύπῳ
in the land in which now they-dwell in the-very and the place
 παλαιά τινα ἔστι γνωρίσματα· καὶ πρῶτον μὲν ἔστιν ἡ
ancient some are marks and first indeed is the
 τοῦ βασιλέως Τραϊανοῦ γέφυρα κατὰ τὴν τῆς Τουρκίας
of-the emperor Trajan bridge at the — of-Turkey
 ἀρχήν, ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ Βελάγραδα ἀπὸ τριῶν ἡμερῶν τῆς
beginning then and also Belgrade from three days of-the
 αὐτῆς γεφύρας, ἐν ἣ καὶ ὁ πύργος ἐστὶ τοῦ ἁγίου
same bridge in which also the tower is of-the holy
 καὶ μεγάλου Κωνσταντίνου τοῦ βασιλέως· καὶ πάλιν κατὰ
and great Constantine the emperor and again at
 τὴν τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἐκδρομὴν ἐστὶ τὸ Σέρμιον ἐκεῖνο τὸ
the of-the river running-out is — Sirmium that the(-one)
 λεγόμενον, ἀπὸ τῆς Βελεγράδας ὁδὸν ἔχον ἡμερῶν δύο,
called from — Belgrade (a)-journey having of-days two
 καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν ἐκεῖσε ἡ μεγάλη Μοραβία ἡ ἀβάπτιστος,
and from the there the great Moravia the unbaptized
 ἣν καὶ ἐξήλειψαν οἱ Τοῦρκοι, ἧς ἦρχε τὸ πρότερον
which also wiped-out the Turks over-which ruled the formerly

ὁ Σφενδοπλόκος. ταῦτα μὲν τὰ κατὰ τὸν Ἰστρον
 — Sphendoplokos these indeed the(-things) along the Ister
 ποταμὸν γνωρίσματά τε καὶ ἐπωνυμίας τὰ δὲ ἀνώτερα
 river marks both and names the and higher-up
 τούτων, ἐν ᾧ ἐστὶν ἡ πᾶσα τῆς Τουρκίας κατασκήνωσις,
 of-these in which is the whole — of-Turkey settlement
 ἀρτίως ὀνομάζουσι κατὰ τὰς τῶν ἐκεῖσε ῥεόντων
 now they-name according-to the of-the there flowing
 ποταμῶν ἐπωνυμίας. οἱ δὲ ποταμοὶ εἰσιν οὗτοι, ποταμὸς
 rivers names the and rivers are these river
 πρῶτος ὁ Τιμήσης, ποταμὸς δεύτερος Τούτης, ποταμὸς
 first the Temes river second Toutes river
 τρίτος ὁ Μορήσης, τέταρτος ὁ Κρίσος, καὶ πάλιν ἕτερος
 third the Moreses fourth the Krisos and again another
 ποταμὸς ἡ Τίτζα. πλησιάζουσι δὲ τοῖς Τούρκοις πρὸς μὲν
 river the Titzza border and on-the Turks toward indeed
 τὸ ἀνατολικὸν μέρος οἱ Βούλγαροι, ἐν ᾧ καὶ διαχωρίζει
 the eastern part the Bulgarians in which also divides
 αὐτοὺς ὁ Ἰστρος ὁ καὶ Δανούβιος λεγόμενος ποταμός,
 them the Ister the(-one) also Danube called river
 πρὸς δὲ τὸ βόρειον οἱ Πατζινακῖται, πρὸς δὲ τὸ
 toward and the north the Pechenegs toward and the
 δυτικώτερον οἱ Φράγγοι, πρὸς δὲ τὸ μεσημβρινὸν οἱ
 more-western the Franks toward and the south the
 Χρώβατοι. αἱ δὲ ὀκτὼ γενεαὶ τῶν Τούρκων αὗται πρὸς
 Croats the and eight clans of-the Turks these to
 τοὺς οἰκείους ἄρχοντας οὐχ ὑπηκούουσιν, ἀλλ' ὁμόνοιαν
 the own princes not obey but concord
 ἔχουσιν εἰς τοὺς ποταμούς, εἰς οἷον μέρος προβάλλει
 have at the rivers to whatever part breaks-out
 πόλεμος, συναγωνίζεσθαι μετὰ πάσης φροντίδος τε καὶ
 war to-fight-together with all care both and

σπουδῆς. ἔχουσι δὲ κεφαλὴν πρώτην τὸν ἄρχοντα ἀπὸ
 zeal they-have and (as)-head first the prince from
 τῆς γενεᾶς τοῦ Ἀρπαδὴ κατὰ ἀκολουθίαν, καὶ δύο ἑτέρους,
 the family — of-Arpad by succession and two others
 τὸν τε γυλᾶν καὶ τὸν καρχᾶν, οἵτινες ἔχουσι τάξιν
 the both gylas and the karchas who have (the)-rank
 κριτοῦ· ἔχει δὲ ἐκάστη γενεὰ ἄρχοντα.

of-judge has and each clan (a)-prince

Ἰστέον ὅτι ὁ γυλᾶς καὶ ὁ καρχᾶν οὐκ εἰσὶν ὀνόματα
 (one)-must-know that the gylas and the karchas not are names
 κύρια ἀλλὰ ἀξιώματα.

proper but dignities

Ἰστέον ὅτι ὁ Ἀρπαδῆς ὁ μέγας Τουρκίας ἀρχων
 (one)-must-know that — Arpad the great of-Turkey prince
 ἐποίησε τέσσαρας υἱούς, πρῶτον τὸν Ταρκατζοῦν, δεύτερον
 begot four sons (the)-first — Tarkatzous (the)-second
 τὸν Ἰέλεχ, τρίτον τὸν Ἰουτοτζάν, τέταρτον τὸν Ζαλτάν.
 — Ielech (the)-third — Ioutotzas (the)-fourth — Zaltas

Ἰστέον ὅτι ὁ πρῶτος υἱὸς τοῦ Ἀρπαδὴ ὁ Ταρκατζοῦς
 (one)-must-know that the first son — of-Arpad — Tarkatzous
 ἐποίησεν υἱὸν τὸν Τεβέλη, ὁ δὲ δεύτερος υἱὸς ὁ Ἰέλεχ
 begot (a)-son — Tebeles the and second son — Ielech
 ἐποίησεν υἱὸν τὸν Ἐζέλεχ, ὁ δὲ τρίτος υἱὸς ὁ Ἰουτοτζᾶς
 begot (a)-son — Ezelech the and third son — Ioutotzas
 ἐποίησεν υἱὸν τὸν Φαλίτζιν τὸν νυνὶ ἄρχοντα, ὁ δὲ
 begot (a)-son — Phalitzis the now prince the and
 τέταρτος υἱὸς Ζαλτᾶς ἐποίησεν υἱὸν Ταξίν.
 fourth son Zaltas begot (a)-son Taxis

Ἰστέον ὅτι πάντες οἱ υἱοὶ τοῦ Ἀρπαδᾶ ἐτελεύτησαν,
(one)-must-know that all the sons — of-Arpad died

οἱ δὲ ἑγγονοὶ αὐτοῦ ὅ τε Φαλῆς καὶ Τασῆς καὶ ὁ
the and grandsons his — both Phales and Tases and the
 ἐξάδελφος αὐτῶν ὁ Τάξις ζῶσιν.

cousin their — Taxis live

Ἰστέον ὅτι ἐτελεύτησεν ὁ Τεβέλης, καὶ ἔστιν ὁ υἱὸς
(one)-must-know that died — Tebeles and is the son
 αὐτοῦ ὁ Τερματζούς, ὁ ἀρτίως ἀνελθών, φίλος μετὰ
his — Termatzous the(-one) recently having-come-up (a)-friend with
 τοῦ Βουλτζοῦ τοῦ τρίτου ἄρχοντος καὶ καρχᾶ Τουρκίας.

— Boultzous the third prince and karchas of-Turkey

Ἰστέον ὅτι ὁ Βουλτζοῦς ὁ καρχᾶς υἱὸς ἐστὶ τοῦ
(one)-must-know that — Boultzous the karchas son is —
 Καλῆ τοῦ καρχᾶ, καὶ ὅτι τὸ μὲν Καλή ἐστιν ὄνομα
of-Kales the karchas and that — indeed Kales is (a)-name
 κύριον, τὸ δὲ καρχᾶς ἐστὶν ἀξίωμα, ὥσπερ καὶ τὸ γυλᾶς,
proper the and karchas is (a)-dignity as also the gylas
 ὃ ἐστὶ μεῖζον τοῦ καρχᾶ.

which is greater than-the karchas

Sphendoplokos divided Moravia among his three sons and showed them that three rods bound together cannot be broken. After his death they quarreled, and the Turks destroyed them.

περὶ τῆς χώρας τῆς Μοραβίας.

concerning the land — of-Moravia

Ἰστέον ὅτι ὁ Μοραβίας ἄρχων ὁ Σφενδοπλόκος

(one)-must-know that the of-Moravia prince — Sphendoplokos

ἀνδρείος καὶ φοβερὸς εἰς τὰ πλησιάζοντα αὐτῷ ἔθνη

brave and fearsome to the bordering him nations

γέγονεν· ἔσχε δὲ ὁ αὐτὸς Σφενδοπλόκος τρεῖς υἱούς, καὶ

became had and the same Sphendoplokos three sons and

τελευτῶν διεῖλεν εἰς τρία μέρη τὴν ἑαυτοῦ χώραν, καὶ τοῖς

dying divided into three parts the his-own land and to-the

τρισὶν υἱοῖς αὐτοῦ ἀνὰ μίᾱς μερίδος κατέλιπε, τὸν πρῶτον

three sons his each one share left the first

καταλείψας ἄρχοντα μέγαν, τοὺς δὲ ἑτέρους δύο τοῦ εἶναι

having-left (as)-prince great the and other two of-the to-be

ὑπὸ τὸν λόγον τοῦ πρώτου υἱοῦ. παρήγγεσε δὲ αὐτοὺς τοῦ

under the word of-the first son he-exhorted and them of-the

μὴ εἰς διάστασιν καὶ κατ' ἀλλήλων γενέσθαι, παράδειγμα

not into division and against each-other to-come (an)-example

αὐτοῖς τοιοῦτον ὑποδείξας· ῥάβδους γὰρ τρεῖς ἐνεγκὼν

to-them such having-shown rods for three having-brought

καὶ συνδήσας δέδωκε τῷ πρώτῳ υἱῷ τοῦ ταύτας

and having-bound(-them) he-gave to-the first son of-the them

κλάσαι, τοῦ δὲ μὴ ἰσχύσαντος πάλιν δέδωκε τῷ ἑτέρῳ,

to-break him and not having-been-able again he-gave to-the second

ὡσαύτως καὶ τῷ τρίτῳ καὶ εἴθ' οὕτω διαιρῶν τὰς τρεῖς

likewise also to-the third and then thus dividing the three

ῥάβδους δέδωκε τοῖς τρισὶ πρὸς μίαν, οἱ δὲ λαβόντες
rods he-gave to-the three by one they and having-taken
 καὶ κελευσθέντες ταύτας κλάσαι εὐθέως αὐτὰς κατέκλασαν.
and having-been-ordered them to-break at-once them broke
 καὶ διὰ τοιούτου ὑποδείγματος παρήνευσεν αὐτούς, εἰπὼν
and through such (an)-example he-exhorted them having-said
 ὅτι εἰ μὲν διαμένετε ἐν ὁμοψυχίᾳ καὶ ἀγάπῃ ἀδιαίρετοι,
that if indeed you-remain in unanimity and love undivided
 ἀκαταγώνιστοι παρὰ τῶν ἐναντίων καὶ ἀνάλωτοι γενήσεσθε·
invincible by the opponents and uncapturable you-will-become
 εἰ δὲ ἐν ὑμῖν γένηται ἔρις καὶ φιλονεικία καὶ διαχωρισθῇτε
if and among you arises strife and rivalry and you-are-separated
 εἰς τρεῖς ἀρχὰς μὴ ὑποκείμενοι τῷ πρώτῳ ἀδελφῷ, καὶ
into three rules not subject to-the first brother both
 ὑπ' ἀλλήλων ἀφανισθήσεσθε καὶ ὑπὸ τῶν πλησιαζόντων
by each-other you-will-be-destroyed and by the bordering
 ὑμῖν ἐχθρῶν παντελῶς ἐξολοθρευθήσεσθε. μετὰ δὲ τὴν
you enemies utterly you-will-be-annihilated after and the
 τελευτὴν τοῦ αὐτοῦ Σφενδοπλόκου ἓνα χρόνον ἐν εἰρήνῃ
death of-the same Sphendoplokos one year in peace
 διατελέσαντες, ἔριδος καὶ στάσεως ἐν αὐτοῖς ἐμπεσούσης,
having-continued strife and sedition among them having-fallen
 καὶ πρὸς ἀλλήλους ἐμφύλιον πόλεμον ποιήσαντες, ἐλθόντες
and against each-other civil war having-made having-come
 οἱ Τοῦρκοι τούτους παντελῶς ἐξωλόθρευσαν, καὶ ἐκράτησαν
the Turks them utterly annihilated and took
 τὴν αὐτῶν χώραν, εἰς ἣν καὶ ἀρτίως οἰκοῦσιν· καὶ οἱ
the their land in which also now they-dwell and those
 ὑπολειφθέντες τοῦ λαοῦ διεσκορπίσθησαν προσφυγόντες
left-behind of-the people were-scattered having-taken-refuge

εἰς τὰ παρακείμενα ἔθνη, εἰς τε τοὺς Βουλγάρους καὶ
with the neighboring nations with both the Bulgarians and
 Τούρκους καὶ Χρωβάτους καὶ εἰς τὰ λοιπὰ ἔθνη.
Turks and Croats and with the other nations

XLII • GEOGRAPHY FROM THESSALONIKE TO SARKEL

The chapter gives distances from Thessalonike to the Danube and on to Sarkel. Petronas built Sarkel for the Khazars and then became the first general of Cherson. It then surveys the rivers, the coast, the Maeotis, the Nekropyla, and the lands of Zichia, Papagia, Kasachia, Alania, and Abasgia.

γεωγραφία ἀπὸ Θεσσαλονίκης μέχρι τοῦ Δανούβεως
geography from Thessalonike as-far-as the Danube
 ποταμοῦ καὶ τοῦ κάστρου Βελεγράδας, Τουρκίας τε καὶ
river and the fortress of-Belgrade of-Turkey both and
 Πατζινακίας μέχρι τοῦ Χαζαρικοῦ κάστρου Σάρκελ, τῆς
of-Patzinakia as-far-as the Khazar fortress Sarkel —
 Ῥωσίας, καὶ μέχρι τῶν Νεκροπύλων τῶν ὄντων εἰς τὴν
of-Russia and as-far-as the Nekropyla those being in the
 τοῦ Πόντου θάλασσαν πλησίον τοῦ Δανάπρεως ποταμοῦ,
of-the Pontus sea near the Dnieper river
 καὶ Χερσῶνος ὁμοῦ καὶ Βοσπόρου, ἐν οἷς τὰ κάστρα
and of-Cherson together and of-Bosporus in which the fortresses
 τῶν κλιμάτων εἰσίν, εἶτα μέχρι λίμνης Μαιώτιδος τῆς
of-the regions are then as-far-as (the)-lake Maeotis the(-one)
 καὶ θαλάσσης διὰ τὸ μέγεθος καλουμένης, καὶ μέχρι
also sea because-of the size called and as-far-as
 τοῦ κάστρου τοῦ Μάταρχα λεγομένου, πρὸς τοῦτους
the fortress — Tamatarcha called in-addition-to these

δὲ καὶ Ζιχίας καὶ Παπαγίας καὶ Καζαχίας καὶ Ἀλανίας
and also of-Zichia and of-Papagia and of-Kasachia and of-Alania
 καὶ Ἀβασγίας, καὶ μέχρι τοῦ κάστρου Σωτηριουπόλεως.
and of-Abasgia and as-far-as the fortress of-Soteriopolis
 Ἰστέον ὅτι ἀπὸ Θεσσαλονίκης μέχρι τοῦ ποταμοῦ
(one)-must-know that from Thessalonike as-far-as the river
 Δανούβεως, ἐν ᾧ τὸ κάστρον ἐστὶ τὸ Βελέγραδα
Danube on which the fortress is the(-one) Belgrade
 ἐπονομαζόμενον, ἔστιν ὁδὸς ἡμερῶν ὀκτώ, εἰ καὶ μὴ
named it-is (a)-journey of-days eight if even not
 διὰ τάχους τις ἀλλὰ μετὰ ἀναπαύσεως πορεύηται. καὶ
with speed one but with rest travels and
 κατοικοῦσι μὲν οἱ Τοῦρκοι πέραθεν τοῦ Δανούβεως
dwell indeed the Turks beyond the Danube
 ποταμοῦ εἰς τὴν τῆς Μοραβίας γῆν, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐνθεν
river in the — of-Moravia land but also on-this-side
 μέσον τοῦ Δανούβεως καὶ τοῦ Σάβα ποταμοῦ· ἀπὸ δὲ
between the Danube and the Sava river from and
 κάτωθεν τῶν μερῶν Δανούβεως ποταμοῦ τῆς Δίστρας
below the parts of-(the)-Danube river — of-Distra
 ἀντίπερα ἡ Πατζινακία παρέρχεται, καὶ κατακρατεῖ ἡ
opposite — Patzinakia extends and holds the
 κατοικία αὐτῶν μέχρι τοῦ Σάρκελ τοῦ τῶν Χαζάρων
dwelling their as-far-as — Sarkel the of-the Khazars
 κάστρου, ἐν ᾧ ταξεῶται καθέζονται τὰ κατὰ χρόνον
fortress in which garrison-men sit the by year
 ἐναλλασσόμενοι. ἐρμηνεύεται δὲ παρὰ αὐτοῖς τὸ Σάρκελ
being-changed is-interpreted and among them — Sarkel
 ἄσπρον ὁσπίτιον· ὅπερ ἐκτίσθη παρὰ σπαθαροκανιδιάτου
white house which was-built by (the)-spatharocandidatus
 Πετρωνᾶ τοῦ ἐπονομαζομένου Καματηροῦ, τὸν βασιλέα
Petronas the(-one) surnamed Kamateros the emperor

Θεόφιλον πρὸς τὸ κτισθῆναι αὐτοῖς τὸ κάστρον τοῦτο
Theophilos for the to-be-built for-them the fortress this
 τῶν Χαζάρων αἰτησαμένων. ὁ γὰρ χαγάνος ἐκεῖνος,
the Khazars having-asked the for chagan that
 ὁ καὶ πῆχ Χαζαρίας, εἰς τὸν αὐτὸν βασιλέα Θεόφιλον
the(-one) also pech of-Khazaria to the same emperor Theophilos
 πρέσβεις ἀποστείλαντες κτισθῆναι αὐτοῖς τὸ κάστρον
envoys having-sent to-be-built for-them the fortress
 τὸ Σάρκελ ἡτήσαντο· οἷς ὁ βασιλεὺς, τῇ τούτων
— Sarkel asked to-whom the emperor by-the their
 αἰτήσῃ πεισθεῖς, τὸν προρρηθέντα σπαθαροκανδιδάτον
request having-been-persuaded the aforesaid spatharocandidatus
 Πετρωνᾶ μετὰ χελανδίων βασιλικῶν πλωϊμῶν ἀπέστειλε,
Petronas with warships imperial of-the-fleet sent
 καὶ χελάνδια τοῦ κατεπάνω Παφλαγονίας. καὶ δὴ
and warships of-the katepano of-Paphlagonia and indeed
 ὁ αὐτὸς Πετρωνᾶς τὴν Χερσῶνα καταλαβὼν τὰ μὲν
the same Petronas — Cherson having-reached the indeed
 χελάνδια εὗρεν ἐν Χερσῶνι, τὸν δὲ λαὸν εἰσαγαγὼν εἰς
warships found in Cherson the and people having-put into
 καματερὰ καράβια ἀπῆλθεν ἐν τῷ τόπῳ τοῦ Τανάιδος
cargo ships went-away to the place of-the Tanais
 ποταμοῦ, ἐν ᾧ καὶ τὸ κάστρον ἔμελλε κτίσai·
river on which also the fortress he-was-about to-build
 καὶ ἐπειδὴ ὁ τόπος λίθους οὐκ εἶχε πρὸς κτίσιν
and since the place stones not had for (the)-building
 τοῦ κάστρου ἐπιτηδεῖους, καμινία τινὰ ποιησάμενος καὶ
of-the fortress suitable kilns some having-made and
 βήσαλον ἐν αὐτοῖς ἐγκαύσας μετ' αὐτῶν τὴν τοῦ κάστρου
brick in them having-burned with them the of-the fortress
 κτίσιν ἐποιήσατο, ἐκ μικρῶν τινῶν τῶν ἐκ τοῦ ποταμοῦ
building made from small some the from the river

καχλιδίων ἄσβεστον ἐργασάμενος. οὗτος οὖν ὁ προρρηθεὶς
 pebbles lime having-worked this then the aforesaid
 σπαθαροκανδιδάτος Πετρωνᾶς μετὰ τὸ κτίσαι τὸ κάστρον
 spatharocandidatus Petronas after the to-build the fortress
 τὸ Σάρκελ πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα Θεόφιλον εἰσελθὼν εἶπεν
 — Sarkel to the emperor Theophilos having-entered said
 αὐτῷ ὅτι εἰ θέλῃς ὅλως τὸ τῆς Χερσῶνος κάστρον καὶ
 to-him that if you-wish wholly the — of-Cherson fortress and
 τοὺς ἐν αὐτῇ τόπους κυρίως ἐξουσιᾶσαι καὶ τούτους μὴ
 the in it places in-lordship to-rule and these not
 τῆς σῆς ἐκτὸς γενέσθαι χειρός, προβάλλου στρατηγὸν
 of-the your outside to-become hand appoint (a)-general
 ἴδιον, καὶ μὴ τοῖς ἐκείνων καταπιστεύσης πρωτεύουσί τε
 own and not to-the their entrust-(it) chief-men both
 καὶ ἄρχουσι· μέχρι γὰρ Θεοφίλου τοῦ βασιλέως οὐκ ἦν
 and rulers until for Theophilos the emperor not was
 στρατηγὸς ἀπὸ τῶν ἐντεῦθεν ἀποστελλόμενος, ἀλλ' ἦν
 (a)-general from the(-people) here being-sent but was
 ὁ τὰ πάντα διοικῶν ὁ λεγόμενος πρωτεύων μετὰ
 the(-one) the all-things administering the(-one) called proteuon with
 τῶν ἐπονομαζομένων πατέρων τῆς πόλεως. τοῦ οὖν
 the(-ones) named fathers of-the city the then
 βασιλέως Θεοφίλου πρὸς ταῦτα βουλευσαμένου τὸν ὁδεῖνα
 emperor Theophilos at these(-things) having-taken-counsel the so-and-so
 ἐξαποστεῖλαι στρατηγὸν ἢ τὸν ὁδεῖνα, ὕστερον ἀποστεῖλαι
 to-send-out (as)-general or the so-and-so later to-send
 προέκρινε τὸν προρρηθέντα σπαθαροκανδιδάτον Πετρωνᾶ
 preferred the aforesaid spatharocandidatus Petronas
 ὡς ἔμπειρον τοῦ τόπου γενόμενον καὶ τῶν πραγμάτων
 as experienced of-the place having-become and of-the affairs
 οὐκ ἀνεπιστήμονα· ὃν πρωτοσπαθάριον τιμῆσας
 not ignorant whom (with-the-rank-of)-protospatharius having-honored

προεβάλετο στρατηγὸν καὶ εἰς Χερσῶνα ἐξαπέστειλεν,
he-appointed general and to Cherson sent-out
 ὀρίσας τὸν τότε πρωτεύοντα καὶ πάντας ὑπέικειν
having-ordered the then proteuon and all to-obey
 αὐτῷ· ἐξ οὗ καὶ μέχρι τῆς σήμερον ἐπεκράτησεν ἀπὸ
him from which also until the today has-prevailed from
 τῶν ἐντεῦθεν εἰς Χερσῶνα προβάλλεσθαι στρατηγούς.
the(-people) here to Cherson to-be-appointed generals
 ἀλλ' αὕτη μὲν ἡ κάστρον Σάρκελ κτίσις καθέστηκεν,
but this indeed the of-(the)-fortress Sarkel building has-been
 ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ Δανούβεως ποταμοῦ μέχρι τοῦ προρρηθέντος
from and the Danube river as-far-as the aforesaid
 κάστρον τοῦ Σάρκελ ὁδὸς ἔστιν ἡμερῶν ξ'. μέσον
fortress — Sarkel (a)-journey it-is of-days 60 in-(the)-middle
 δὲ τῆς τοιαύτης γῆς ποταμοὶ μὲν εἰσι πολλοί, δύο δὲ
and of-the such land rivers indeed are many two and
 μέγιστοι ἐξ αὐτῶν, ὃ τε Δάναστρις καὶ ὁ Δάναπρις.
greatest of them the both Dniester and the Dnieper
 εἰσὶ δὲ ἕτεροι ποταμοί, ὃ τε λεγόμενος Συγγούλ
there-are and other rivers the(-one) both called Syngoul
 καὶ ὁ Ὑβυλ, ὁ Ἀλματαὶ καὶ ὁ Κουῖφισ καὶ ὁ Βογοῦ,
and the Hybyl the Almatai and the Kouphis and the Bogou
 καὶ ἕτεροι πολλοί. εἰς δὲ τὰ ὑψηλότερα τοῦ Δανάπρεως
and others many in and the higher of-the Dnieper
 ποταμοῦ μέρη κατοικοῦσιν οἱ Ῥῶς· δι' οὗ ποταμοῦ
river parts dwell the Rus by which river
 ἀποπλέοντες πρὸς Ῥωμαίους ποιοῦνται τὴν ἀφίξιν. ἡ
sailing to (the)-Romans they-make the arrival —
 δὲ Πατζινακία πᾶσαν τὴν γῆν τῆς τε Ῥωσίας καὶ
and Patzinakia all the land — both of-Russia and
 Βοσπόρου κατακρατεῖ, καὶ μέχρι Χερσῶνος καὶ ἕως τὸ
Bosporus holds and as-far-as Cherson and up-to —

Σαράτ, Βουράτ καὶ τῶν λ' μερῶν. τὸ δὲ τῆς παραλίας
Sarat Bourat and the 30 parts the and of-the coast
 τῆς θαλάσσης ἀπὸ τοῦ Δανούβεως ποταμοῦ διάστημα
of-the sea from the Danube river distance
 μέχρι τοῦ Δανάπρεως ποταμοῦ εἰςὶ μίλια ρκ'. ἀπὸ δὲ
as-far-as the Dnieper river are miles 120 from and
 τοῦ Δανάστρεως ποταμοῦ μέχρι τοῦ ποταμοῦ Δανάπρεως
the Dniester river as-far-as the river Dnieper
 εἰςὶ μίλια π', ὁ χρυσοὺς λεγόμενος αἰγιαλός. ἀπὸ τὸ
are miles 80 the golden called shore from the
 στόμιον ποταμοῦ τοῦ Δανάπρεως εἰςὶ τὰ Ἀδαρά, καὶ
mouth of-(the)-river of-the Dnieper are — Adara and
 ἐκεῖσε κόλπος ἐστὶ μέγας ὁ λεγόμενος τὰ Νεκρόπυλα,
there (a)-gulf is great the(-one) called the Nekropyla
 ἐν ᾧ τις διελθεῖν ἀδυνατεῖ παντελῶς. καὶ ἀπὸ μὲν
in which one to-pass-through is-unable utterly and from indeed
 τοῦ Δανάπρεως ποταμοῦ μέχρι Χερσῶνός εἰςὶ μίλια
the Dnieper river as-far-as Cherson are miles
 τ', ἐν τῷ μέσῳ δὲ λίμναι καὶ λιμένες εἰσὶν, ἐν αἷς
300 in the middle and lakes and harbors are in which
 Χερσωνῖται τὸ ἅλας ἐργάζονται. ἀπὸ δὲ Χερσῶντος
Chersonites the salt work from and Cherson
 μέχρι Βοσπόρου εἰςὶ τὰ κάστρα τῶν κλιμάτων, τὸ δὲ
as-far-as Bosporus are the fortresses of-the regions the and
 διάστημα μίλια τ'. καὶ ἀπὸ Βοσπόρου τὸ τῆς Μαιώτιδος
distance miles 300 and from Bosporus the of-the Maeotis
 λίμνης στόμιόν ἐστιν, ἥτις καὶ θάλασσα διὰ τὸ μέγεθος
lake mouth is which also sea because-of the size
 παρὰ πάντων ὀνομάζεται. εἰς δὲ τὴν αὐτὴν Μαιώτιδα
by all is-named into and the same Maeotis
 θάλασσαν εἰσρέουσι ποταμοὶ πολλοὶ καὶ μεγάλοι. πρὸς τὸ
sea flow rivers many and great toward the

ἀρκτῶον αὐτῆς μέρος ὁ Δάναπρις ποταμός, ἐξ οὗ καὶ
northern its part the Dnieper river from which also
 οἱ Ῥῶς διέρχονται πρὸς τε τὴν μαύρην Βουλγαρίαν καὶ
the Rus pass-through to both the black Bulgaria and
 Χαζαρίαν καὶ Συρίαν. ὁ δὲ αὐτὸς κόλπος τῆς Μαιώτιδος
Khazaria and Syria the and same gulf of-the Maeotis
 ἔρχεται ἀντικρὺ τῶν Νεκροπύλων τῶν ὄντων πλησίον
comes opposite the Nekropyla those being near
 τοῦ Δανάπρεως ποταμοῦ ὡς ἀπὸ μιλίων δ', καὶ μίσγεται,
the Dnieper river as from miles 4 and mingles
 ἐν ᾧ καὶ σούδαν οἱ παλαιοὶ ποιησάμενοι διεβίβασαν τὴν
in which also (a)-trench the ancients having-made carried-across the
 θάλασσαν, μέσον ἀποκλείσαντες πᾶσαν τὴν Χερσῶνος γῆν
sea between having-shut-off all the of-Cherson land
 καὶ τῶν κλιμάτων καὶ τὴν Βοσπόρου γῆν κρατοῦσαν μέχρι
and of-the regions and the of-Bosporus land extending up-to
 α' μιλίων ἢ καὶ πλείονων τινῶν· ἐκ δὲ τῶν πολλῶν
1 miles or also more some from and the many
 ἐτῶν κατεχώσθη ἡ αὐτὴ σούδα καὶ εἰς δάσος ἐγένετο
years was-silted-up the same trench and into (a)-thicket became
 πολὺ. καὶ οὐκ εἰσὶν ἐν αὐτῷ πλὴν δύο ὁδοί, ἐν αἷς οἱ
dense and not there-are in it except two roads by which the
 Πατζινακῖται διέρχονται πρὸς τε Χερσῶνα καὶ Βόσπορον
Pechenegs pass-through to both Cherson and Bosporus
 καὶ τὰ κλίματα. εἰς δὲ τὸ ἀνατολικώτερον μέρος τῆς
and the regions into and the more-eastern part of-the
 Μαιώτιδος λίμνης εἰσέρχονται πολλοὶ τινες ποταμοί, ὃ τε
Maeotis lake flow-in many some rivers the both
 Τάναϊς ποταμός, ὁ ἀπὸ τὸ κάστρον Σάρκελ ἐρχόμενος,
Tanais river the(-one) from the fortress Sarkel coming
 καὶ τὸ Χωράκουλ, ἐν ᾧ καὶ τὸ βερζήτικον ἀλιεύεται·
and — Chorakoul in which also the berzitikon is-fished

εἰσὶ δὲ καὶ ἕτεροι ποταμοί, ὁ Βὰλ καὶ ὁ Βουρλίκ, ὁ
there-are and also other rivers the Bal and the Bourlik the
 Χαδὴρ καὶ ἄλλοι πλείστοι ποταμοί. ἐκ δὲ τῆς Μαιώτιδος
Chader and others very-many rivers from and the Maeotis
 λίμνης ἐξέρχεται στόμιον τὸ Βουρλίκ ἐπονομαζόμενον,
lake goes-out (a)-mouth the(-one) Bourlik named
 καὶ πρὸς τὴν τοῦ Πόντου θάλασσαν καταρεῖ, ἐν ᾧ ἐστὶν
and toward the of-the Pontus sea flows-down on which is
 ὁ Βόσπορος. ἀντικρὺ δὲ τῆς Βοσπόρου τὸ Ταμάταρχα
— Bosporus opposite and — of-Bosporus — Tamatarcha
 λεγόμενον κάστρον ἐστί· τὸ δὲ διάστημα τοῦ περάματος
called fortress is the and distance of-the crossing
 τοῦ τοιούτου στομίου ἐστὶ μίλια ιη'. ἐν δὲ τῷ μέσῳ
of-the such mouth is miles 18 in and the middle
 τῶν αὐτῶν ιη' μιλίων ἐστὶ νησίον μέγα χαμηλὸν τὸ
of-the same 18 miles is (an)-islet great low the(-one)
 λεγόμενον Ἀτέχ. ἀπὸ τὸ Ταμάταρχα ἐστὶ ποταμὸς ἀπὸ
called Atech from — Tamatarcha is (a)-river from
 μιλίων ιη' ἢ καὶ κ', λεγόμενος Οὐκρούχ, ὁ διαχωρίζων
miles 18 or also 20 called Oukrouch the(-one) separating
 τὴν Ζιχίαν καὶ τὸ Ταμάταρχα. ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ Οὐκρούχ
— Zichia and — Tamatarcha from and — Oukrouch
 μέχρι τοῦ Νικόψεως ποταμοῦ, ἐν ᾧ καὶ κάστρον ἐστὶν
as-far-as — Nikopsis river on which also (a)-fortress is
 ὁμώνυμον τῷ ποταμῷ, ἔστιν ἡ χώρα τῆς Ζιχίας· τὸ
of-the-same-name with-the river is the land — of-Zichia the
 δὲ διάστημά ἐστὶ μίλια τ'. ἄνωθεν τῆς Ζιχίας ἐστὶν ἡ
and distance is miles 300 above — of-Zichia is the
 χώρα ἡ λεγομένη Παπαγία, καὶ ἄνωθεν τῆς Παπαγίας
land the(-one) called Papagia and above — of-Papagia
 χώρας ἐστὶν ἡ χώρα ἡ λεγομένη Κασαχία· ἄνωθεν δὲ
land is the land the(-one) called Kasachia above and

τῆς Κασαχίας ὄρη τὰ Καυκάσιά εἰσι, καὶ τῶν ὀρέων
 — Kasachia mountains the Caucasian are and of-the mountains
 ἄνωθέν ἐστιν ἡ χώρα τῆς Ἀλανίας. ἡ δὲ τῆς Ζιχίας
 above is the land — of-Alania the and — of-Zichia
 παράλιος ἔχει νησιά, τὸ μέγα νησίον καὶ τὰ τρία νησιά·
 coast has islets the great islet and the three islets
 ἔνδοθεν δὲ τούτων εἰσὶ καὶ ἕτερα νησιά τὰ ἐπινοηθέντα
 inside and of-these are also other islets those devised
 καὶ παρὰ τῶν Ζιχῶν κτισθέντα, τό τε Τουργανήρχ καὶ τὸ
 and by the Zichians built — both Tourganerch and —
 Τζαρβαγάνι καὶ ἕτερον νησίον, καὶ εἰς τὸν τοῦ ποταμοῦ
 Tzarbagani and another islet and in the of-the river
 λιμένα ἕτερον νησίον, καὶ εἰς τὰς Πτελέας ἕτερον, ἐν ᾧ
 harbor another islet and at the Pteleai another in which
 ἐν ταῖς τῶν Ἀλανῶν ἐπιδρομαῖς οἱ Ζιχοὶ καταφεύγουσι.
 in the of-the Alans raids the Zichians take-refuge
 τὸ δὲ παραθαλάσσιον ἀπὸ τῆς συμπληρώσεως τῆς Ζιχίας
 the and coast from the end — of-Zichia
 ἥτοι Νικόψεως ποταμοῦ ἐστὶν ἡ τῆς Ἀβασγίας χώρα,
 that-is of-(the)-Nikopsis river is the — of-Abasgia land
 μέχρι τοῦ κάστρου Σωτηριουπόλεως· εἰσὶ δὲ μίλια τ΄.
 as-far-as the fortress of-Soteriopolis are and miles 300

Krikorikios of Taron long played both sides between the emperor and the Saracens. Leo drew him, his son, and his brother to Constantinople with honors, a house, and a yearly stipend. Romanos later cut the stipend after neighboring princes complained. The chapter follows the nephew Tornikios' claim to the house and the estate, the sons' pressure on Tornikios, who left his land to the emperor, and the division of Taron between the two branches.

περὶ τῆς χώρας τοῦ Ταρών.

concerning the land — of-Taron

Ἀλλὰ περὶ μὲν τῶν βορείων Σκυθῶν ἱκανῶς σοι

but concerning indeed the northern Scythians sufficiently to-you

δεδήλωται, τέκνον ποθοῦμενον, ὧν ἡ γνώσις ἐπωφελής

has-been-shown child desired of-which the knowledge profitable

τε καὶ εὐχρηστος ἐν καιρῷ σοι πάντως γενήσεται· δεῖ

both and useful in season to-you surely will-become (one)-must

δέ σε μηδὲ τὰ πρὸς ἀνίσχοντα ἥλιον ἀγνοεῖν,

and you not-even the(-things) toward rising sun to-be-ignorant-of

ὅθεν ὑπήκοα πάλιν τοῖς Ῥωμαίοις ἐγένετο ἀφ' οὗ

whence subject again to-the Romans they-became from (the-time)-when

τὸ πρῶτον τῆς τούτων ἐπικρατείας ἐξέπεσον. πρῶτος

the first of-the their dominion they-fell-away first

γὰρ ὁ Κρικορίκιος ἐκεῖνος τοῦ Ταρών ἄρχων πρὸς

for — Krikorikios that — of-Taron prince to

τὸν βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων ἑαυτὸν ὑπέκλινε καὶ ὑπέταξεν·

the emperor of-(the)-Romans himself bowed and subjected

ἀλλ' ἐξ ἀρχῆς μὲν ἐπαμφοτερίζων ἐφαίνετο, καὶ

but from (the)-beginning indeed playing-both-sides he-appeared and

λόγῳ μὲν τὴν τοῦ βασιλέως φιλίαν προσεποιεῖτο τιμᾶν,

in-word indeed the of-the emperor friendship he-pretended to-honor

ἔργῳ δὲ τῷ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν κατάρχοντι τὰ καθ'

in-deed and for-the of-the Saracens ruler the(-things) to

ἡδονὴν διεπράττετο, καὶ διαφόρως ἡγεμὼν ἐχρημάτισε
(his)-pleasure he-did and variously leader he-was
 τῶν ἀπὸ Συρίας ἐξερχομένων φοσσάτων κατὰ τῶν
of-the from Syria going-out armies against the
 ὑπηκόων θεμάτων τῷ βασιλεῖ Ῥωμαίων, καὶ πάντα
subject themes to-the emperor of-(the)-Romans and all
 τὰ τοῖς Ῥωμαίοις ἐν ἀπορρήτῳ μελετώμενα κατὰ
the(-things) by-the Romans in secret planned against
 τῶν ἀντιπάλων Σαρακηνῶν πρὸς Συρίαν ἀνεμήνυε, καὶ
the opposing Saracens to Syria he-reported and
 λάθρα περὶ τῶν παρ' ἡμῖν συμβαινόντων αἰὲ πρὸς
secretly concerning the(-things) among us happening always to
 τὸν ἀμερμουμνὴν διὰ γραμμάτων ἐδηλοποίει, καὶ δοκεῖν
the commander-of-the-faithful by letters he-made-known and to-seem
 μὲν ἐβούλετο τὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων φρονῶν, εὗρίσκετο
indeed he-wished the(-cause) of-the Romans favoring he-was-found
 δὲ μᾶλλον τὰ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν προκρίνων τε καὶ
and rather the(-cause) of-the Saracens preferring both and
 φρονῶν. πλὴν ἀπέστελλεν αἰὲ δῶρα, ἅπερ τοῖς ἐκεῖσε
favoring however he-sent always gifts which to-the there
 βαρβάροις δοκεῖ τίμα, πρὸς τὸν ἐν βασιλεῦσιν αἰοῖδιμον
barbarians seem precious to the among emperors celebrated
 Λέοντα, καὶ ἀντελάμβανε πλείονά τε καὶ κρείττονα
Leo and received-in-return more both and better
 παρὰ τοῦ εὐσεβοῦς βασιλεύοντος, ὃς καὶ πολλάκις αὐτῷ
from the pious reigning(-one) who also often him
 προυτρέψατο διὰ γραμμάτων πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν
urged by letters to the reigning(-city)
 εἰσελθεῖν τὸν βασιλέα θεάσασθαι καὶ τῶν παρ' αὐτοῦ
to-come-in the emperor to-behold and of-the from him
 φιλοφρονήσεων καὶ τιμῶν μετασχεῖν. ὁ δὲ δεδουκῶς μὴ
kindnesses and honors to-partake he and fearing lest

πρὸς λύπην καὶ σκάνδαλον τοῦ ἀμερμουμνῇ γένηται
to grief and offense of-the commander-of-the-faithful might-become
 τοῦτο, προφάσεις ἐπλάττετο, καὶ τὸ μὴ δύνασθαι ἑαυτοῦ
this pretexts he-fabricated and the not to-be-able his-own
 χώραν ἔρημον τῆς ἐξ αὐτοῦ βοηθείας καταλιπεῖν, ἵνα
land bereft of-the from him help to-leave so-that
 μὴ ὑπὸ Σαρακηνῶν καταληϊσθῇ, μάτην ἐσκήπτετο. ὁ δὲ
not by Saracens it-be-plundered vainly be-alleged the and
 αὐτὸς ἄρχων τοῦ Ταρῶν κρατήσας ἐν πολέμῳ ποτὲ τοῦ
same prince — of-Taron having-seized in war once —
 Ἀρκαΐκα τοὺς παῖδας ἡγουν Κρικορίκη τοῦ πατρικίου τοῦ
of-Arkaikas the sons that-is of-Krikorikios the patrician the
 πατρὸς τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου Ἀσωτίου τοὺς ἐξαδέλφους,
father of-the protospatharius Asotios the cousins
 εἶχε παρ' ἑαυτῷ δεσμίους. περὶ ὧν καὶ Συμβάτιος
held with himself (as)-prisoners concerning whom also Symbatio
 ὁ τότε ἄρχων τῶν ἀρχόντων τὸν αὐτὸν μακαριώτατον
the then prince of-the princes the same most-blessed
 βασιλέα διὰ γραμμάτων ἠξίωσε τοῦ ἀποστεῖλαι πρὸς
emperor by letters asked of-the to-send to
 τὸν Ταρωνίτην καὶ ἀναλαβέσθαι σπουδάσαι τοὺς οἰκείους
the Taronite and to-take-back to-be-eager the own
 ἀνείμους, οἵτινες ἦσαν υἱοὶ τοῦ εἰρημένου Ἀρκαΐκα, ἵνα
cousins who were sons of-the said Arkaikas so-that
 μὴ πρὸς τὸν ἀμερμουμνῇ ἀποσταλῶσι συγγενῆς
not to the commander-of-the-faithful they-be-sent kinsman
 γὰρ ἦν τοῦ Συμβατίου τοῦ ἄρχοντος τῶν ἀρχόντων
for was — of-Symbatio the prince of-the princes
 Γρηγόριος ὁ πατρίκιος. ἐπακούσας δὲ τῆς τοιαύτης τοῦ
Gregory the patrician having-heard and the such —
 Συμβατίου ἀξιώσεως Λέων ὁ μακαριώτατος βασιλεὺς τὸν
of-Symbatio request Leo the most-blessed emperor —

Σινούτην ἐκείνον τὸν εὐνούχον ἀπέστειλε, χαρτουλάριον
Sinoutes that the eunuch sent chartularius
 τηνικαῦτα τοῦ ὀξέος δρόμου τυγχάνοντα, πρὸς τε τὸν
at-that-time of-the swift course being to both the
 ἄρχοντα τοῦ Ταρὼν τῆς τοιαύτης ἔνεκα ὑποθέσεως
prince — of-Taron of-the such for-the-sake matter
 καὶ πρὸς τὸν Ἀδρανασήρ τὸν κουροπαλάτην Ἰβηρίας
and to — Adranase the curopalates of-Iberia
 διὰ τινας ἑτέρας ὑποθέσεις, δὸς αὐτῷ καὶ
on-account-of some other matters having-given him also
 πρὸς ἀμφοτέρους ξενάλια τὰ ἀρμόζοντα. διαβληθέντος
for both presents the fitting having-been-slandered
 δὲ τοῦ εἰρημένου Σινούτου παρὰ Θεοδώρου τοῦ τῶν
and the said Sinoutes by Theodore the of-the
 Ἀρμενίων ἐρμηνευτοῦ πρὸς τὸν εἰρημένον αἰοίδιμον βασιλέα,
Armenians interpreter to the said celebrated emperor
 ἐξαπεστάλη βασιλικὸς ἀντ' αὐτοῦ ὁ πρωτοσπαθάριος
was-sent-out (as)-imperial-agent in-place-of him the protospatharius
 Κωνσταντῖνος καὶ δομέστικος τῆς ὑπουργίας, ὁ τοῦ
Constantine and domestic of-the service the(-one) —
 Λιβός, ὁ νῦν ἀνθύπατος πατρίκιος καὶ μέγας ἑταιριάρχης,
of-Lips the now proconsul patrician and great betaereiarh
 ἐνταλματικῶς ὀρισθεὶς τοῦ ἀναλαβέσθαι τὰ πρὸς
by-mandate having-been-ordered of-the to-take the(-things) to
 τὸν ἄρχοντα τοῦ Ταρὼν τὸν Κρικορίκιον ἀποσταλέντα
the prince — of-Taron — Krikorikios sent
 ξενάλια, καὶ αὐτὸς μὲν πρὸς τὸ Ταρὼν εἰσελθεῖν,
presents and he indeed to — Taron to-enter
 τὸν δὲ Σινούτην προτρέψασθαι πρὸς τὸν Ἀδρανασήρ
— and Sinoutes to-urge to — Adranase
 τὸν κουροπαλάτην Ἰβηρίας κατὰ τὰ ἐνταλθέντα
the curopalates of-Iberia according-to the(-things) enjoined

αὐτῷ ἀπελθεῖν. καταλαβὼν δὲ τὸ Ταρὼν ὁ εἰρημένος
on-him to-go-away having-reached and — Taron the said
 πρωτοσπαθᾶριος καὶ ἀποδιδούς Κρικορικίῳ τὰ πρὸς
protospatharius and having-delivered to-Krikorikios the(-things) to
 αὐτὸν ἀποσταλέντα τοῦ βασιλέως δῶρα καὶ γράμματα,
him sent of-the emperor gifts and letters
 ἀνέλαβετο τὸν νόθον τοῦ Ταρωνίτου υἱόν, ὃς Ἀσώτιος
took the bastard of-the Taronite son who Asotios
 ὠνομάζετο, καὶ εἰσήγαγεν αὐτὸν πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσάν·
was-named and brought him to the reigning(-city)
 ὃν ὁ βασιλεὺς τῇ τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου τιμήσας ἀξία
whom the emperor with-the of-the protospatharius having-honored dignity
 καὶ ἱκανῶς φιλοφρονησάμενος πρὸς τὸν ἴδιον πατέρα διὰ
and sufficiently having-treated-kindly to the own father through
 τοῦ αὐτοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου ἀπέστειλεν. ἀναλαβόμενος οὖν
the same protospatharius sent having-taken then
 ὁ αὐτὸς Κωνσταντῖνος ἐκεῖνος Ἀπογάνεμ τὸν ἀδελφὸν τοῦ
the same Constantine that Apoganem the brother —
 Κρικορικίου τοῦ ἄρχοντος τοῦ Ταρὼν εἰσήγαγε πρὸς τὸν
of-Krikorikios the prince — of-Taron brought(-him) to the
 μακάριον βασιλέα μετὰ καὶ τῶν δύο υἱῶν Ἀρκαῖκα· ὃν
blessed emperor with also the two sons of-Arkaïkas whom
 καὶ τῇ τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου ἀξία τιμήσας ὁ βασιλεὺς
also with-the of-the protospatharius dignity having-honored the emperor
 καὶ φιλοφρόνως πολλάκις δεξιωσάμενος ἀπέστειλεν αὐτῷ
and kindly often having-received sent again
 διὰ τοῦ αὐτοῦ Κωνσταντίνου εἰς τὴν οἰκείαν χώραν
through the same Constantine to the own land
 καὶ πρὸς τὸν ἴδιον ἀδελφόν. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἐν Χαλδίᾳ
and to the own brother after and these(-things) in Chaldia
 ὁ εἰρημένος Κωνσταντῖνος ἐπὶ χρόνον ἱκανὸν διατρίψας
the said Constantine for time considerable having-spent

ἐπετράπη διὰ κελεύσεως εἰσελθεῖν ἐν τῷ Ταρὼν καὶ
was-charged by order to-enter into — Taron and
 ἀναλαβέσθαι Κρικορίκιον τὸν ἄρχοντα τοῦ Ταρὼν καὶ
to-take Krikorikios the prince — of-Taron and
 πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν εἰσελθεῖν· ὃ καὶ ἐποίησεν.
to the reigning(-city) to-come which also he-did
 εἰσελθόντος δὲ τοῦ αὐτοῦ Κρικορικίου ἐν τῇ θεοφυλάκτῳ
having-come and the same Krikorikios into the God-guarded
 πόλει, καὶ τῇ τοῦ μαγίστρου καὶ στρατηγοῦ Ταρὼν
city and with-the of-the magistros and general of-Taron
 ἀξία τιμηθέντος, ἐδόθη αὐτῷ καὶ οἶκος εἰς κατοικίαν
dignity having-been-honored was-given to-him also (a)-house for dwelling
 ὃ τοῦ βαρβάρου λεγόμενος, ὃ νῦν Βασιλείου τοῦ
the(-one) of-the barbarian called the now of-Basil the
 παρακοιμωμένου οἶκος. ἐτιμήθη δὲ καὶ ἐτησίῳ ρόγῃ,
parakoimomenos house he-was-honored and also with-annual stipend
 χρυσοῦ μὲν δέκα λίτρας καὶ μυριασίων ἑτέρας δέκα
of-gold indeed ten pounds and of-miliaresia other ten
 λίτρας, ὥστε εἶναι τὸ πᾶν λίτρας εἴκοσι. καὶ ἐπὶ
pounds so-that to-be the whole pounds twenty and for
 χρόνον ἐν τῇ βασιλευούσῃ διατρίψας καὶ διὰ τοῦ αὐτοῦ
time in the reigning(-city) having-spent and through the same
 πρωτοσπαθαρίου Κωνσταντίνου πάλιν πρὸς τὴν οἰκίαν
protospatharius Constantine again to the own
 διεσώθη χώραν. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα πάλιν εἰσῆλθεν καὶ
came-safely land after and these(-things) again came also
 Ἀπογάνεμ πρὸς τὸν μακάριον βασιλέα, καὶ προεβιβάσθη
Apoganem to the blessed emperor and was-promoted
 παρ' αὐτοῦ εἰς τὴν πατρικιότητα, ἐπετράπη δὲ καὶ εἰς
by him to the patriciate he-was-permitted and also for
 γυναῖκα λαβεῖν τοῦ εἰρημένου Κωνσταντίνου θυγατέρα, καὶ
wife to-take of-the said Constantine (the)-daughter and

ἐπὶ τῇ τοιαύτῃ προφάσει καὶ οἶκον ἐπέζητησεν, καὶ ἔλαβε
on the such pretext also (a)-house he-sought and took
 καὶ αὐτὸς τὸν τοῦ βαρβάρου οἶκον χρυσοβουλίου χωρίς.
also he the of-the barbarian house (a)-chrysobull without
 καὶ φιλοφρονηθεὶς παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως τῷ τότε
and having-been-kindly-treated by the emperor at-the then(-time)
 μὲν πρὸς τὴν ἰδίαν χώραν ὑπέστρεψε πρὸς τὸ πάλιν
indeed to the own land returned for the again
 εἰσελθεῖν καὶ τὰ τοῦ γάμου ἀπαρτίσασθαι ἅμα δὲ
to-come and the(-things) of-the marriage to-complete together and
 τῷ εἰς τὴν οἰκείαν χώραν διασωθῆναι μετ' ὀλίγας
with-the to the own land to-have-come-safe after few
 ἡμέρας τέλει τοῦ βίου ἐχρήσατο. ὁ δὲ τούτου ἀδελφὸς
days (the)-end of-the life made-use the and his brother
 Κρικορίκιος διὰ γραμμάτων αὐτοῦ ἐζητήσατο εἰσερχεσθαι
Krikorikios by letters his asked to-come
 εἰς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν καὶ παρὰ τῶν χειρῶν τοῦ ἁγίου
into the reigning(-city) and from the hands of-the holy
 βασιλέως λαμβάνειν τὴν διδομένην ρόγαν αὐτοῦ καὶ ἐπὶ
emperor to-receive the given stipend his and for
 χρόνον τινὰ ἐν τῇ θεοφυλάκτῳ διατρίβειν πόλει, καὶ ἐπὶ
time some in the God-guarded to-spend city and upon
 τούτῳ τὸν τῷ οἰκείῳ ἀδελφῷ προχωρισθέντα οἶκον εἰς
this the to-the own brother previously-assigned house for
 κατοίκησιν λαβεῖν ἡξίου, ὃν καὶ ἐπιδέδωκεν αὐτῷ ὁ
dwelling to-receive asked which also gave to-him the
 μακάριος βασιλεὺς διὰ τε τὸ νεωστὶ ὑποταγῆναι καὶ
blessed emperor because-of both the newly to-have-been-subjected and
 διὰ τὸ καὶ ἄλλους ἄρχοντας τῆς ἀνατολῆς πρὸς τὸν
because-of the also other princes of-the east to the
 ὅμοιον ζῆλον τῆς πρὸς Ῥωμαίους ὑποταγῆς ἐκκαλέσασθαι.
like zeal of-the toward (the)-Romans subjection to-call-forth

ἔγγραφον δὲ χρυσοβούλλιον δωρεὰν τοῦ τοιούτου οἴκου
written and chrysobull of-gift of-the such house
 πρὸς αὐτὸν οὐκ ἐποίησε. μετὰ δὲ χρόνους ἱκανούς,
to him not he-made after and years considerable
 Ῥωμανοῦ τοῦ μακαρίου βασιλέως τῶν σκήπτρων τῆς
Romanos the blessed emperor the scepters of-the
 βασιλείας Ῥωμαίων ἐπειλημμένου, ἀνήγαγεν ὁ αὐτὸς
empire of-(the)-Romans having-taken-bold referred the same
 Κρικορίκιος μὴ ἰσχύειν κρατεῖν τὸν τοῦ βαρβάρου οἶκον
Krikorikios not to-be-able to-bold the of-the barbarian house
 ἀλλ' ἡξίου λαβεῖν αὐτ' αὐτοῦ προάστειον ἐν Κελτζηνῇ,
but he-asked to-take in-place-of it (an)-estate in Keltzene
 εἴτε τοῦ Πατζάτου εἴτε ἄλλον οἶον κελεύει ὁ βασιλεὺς,
either — of-Patzates or another such-as might-order the emperor
 ἵνα ὅτε ἐπιδρομὴ τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν κατὰ τῆς χώρας
so-that when (a)-raid of-the Hagarenes against the land
 αὐτοῦ γένηται, ἀποστέλλειν ἐκεῖσε ἔχη τὴν οἰκείαν
his occurs to-send there he-may-be-able the own
 συγγένειαν καὶ ὑπόστασιν. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς τὴν ἀκριβῆ
kin and property the and emperor the exact
 γνώσιν τῶν πραγμάτων μὴ κεκτημένος, ἐλπίζων δὲ ἀπὸ
knowledge of-the affairs not having expecting and from
 βασιλικοῦ χρυσοβουλλίου τοῦ μακαρίου Λέοντος ἔχειν τὸν
(an)-imperial chrysobull of-the blessed Leo to-have the
 Ταρωνίτην τὸν τοῦ βαρβάρου οἶκον, δέδωκεν αὐτῷ τὸ
Taronite the of-the barbarian house gave to-him the
 προάστειον τοῦ Γρηγορᾶ ἐν Κελτζηνῇ, καὶ τὸν οἶκον δῆθεν
estate — of-Gregoras in Keltzene and the house forsooth
 ἀντέλαβε, χρυσοβούλλιον δὲ οὐδὲ αὐτὸς πρὸς αὐτὸν
received-in-exchange (a)-chrysobull and not-even he to him
 ἐπὶ τῷ προαστείῳ ἐποίησατο. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἔγραψε
for the estate made after and these(-things) wrote

πρὸς τὸν αὐτὸν βασιλέα ὁ Τορνίκης ὁ τοῦ Ταρωνίτου
to the same emperor — Tornikios the of-the Taronite
 ἀνεψιός, ὁ τοῦ Ἀπογάνεμ ἐκείνου υἱός, ὅτι τὸν οἶκον
nephew the(-one) — of-Apoganem that son that the house
 τοῦ βαρβάρου ὁ μακαριώτατος βασιλεὺς Λέων τῷ ἐμῷ
of-the barbarian the most-blessed emperor Leo to-the my
 πατρὶ ἐδωρήσατο· μετὰ δὲ τὸν τοῦ πατρός μου θάνατον,
father gave after and the of-the father my death
 διὰ τὸ ἔτι ἀνήλικον καὶ ὀρφανὸν τυγχάνειν ἐμέ, κατ'
because-of the still under-age and orphan to-be me by
 ἐξουσίαν θεῖός μου τὸν τοιοῦτον οἶκον κατεκράτησεν, αἰεὶ
force uncle my the such house took-hold-of always
 καθυπισχνούμενός μοι, ὅταν εἰς τὸν τέλειον τῆς ἡλικίας
promising me when to the full of-the age
 ἔλθω χρόνον, ἀπολαβεῖν τὸν οἶκον τὸν πατρικόν· καὶ νῦν,
I-come time to-receive the house the paternal and now
 ὡς ἔμαθον, δέδωκε τὸν τοιοῦτον οἶκον ὁ ἐμὸς θεῖος
as I-have-learned has-given the such house the my uncle
 τῇ βασιλείᾳ σου, καὶ ἔλαβεν εἰς ἀντιστήκωσιν αὐτοῦ
to-the majesty your and received in exchange its
 τὸ προάστειον τοῦ Γρηγορά ἐν Κελτζηνῇ. ἀπὸ δὲ τῶν
the estate — of-Gregoras in Keltzene from and the
 τοιούτων βασιλικῶν φιλοτιμιῶν τῶν πρὸς τὸν ἄρχοντα
such imperial favors the(-ones) to the prince
 τοῦ Ταρῶν φθόνος ὑπεφύη καὶ ἐβλάστησε πρὸς αὐτὸν
— of-Taron envy grew-up and sprouted against him
 παρά τε τοῦ Κακικίου τοῦ ἄρχοντος Βασπαρακακὰ καὶ
from both — Kakikios the prince of-Vasparakan and
 Ἀδρανασῆρ τοῦ κουροπαλάτου Ἰβηρίας καὶ Ἀσωτικίου
Adranase the curopalates of-Iberia and Asotikios
 τοῦ ἄρχοντος τῶν ἀρχόντων, οἵτινες ἔγραψαν πρὸς τὸν
the prince of-the princes who wrote to the

βασιλέα διαγογγύζοντες δι' ἣν αἰτίαν ὁ Ταρωνίτης μόνος
emperor grumbling for what cause the Taronite alone
 ρόγας ἀπολαύει βασιλικῆς, αὐτῶν ἀπάντων λαμβανόντων
(a)-stipend enjoys imperial they all receiving
 οὐδέν. “τίνα γὰρ” ἔλεγον “περισσότεραν δουλείαν ἡμῶν
nothing what for they-said greater service than-us
 ποιεῖται, ἢ τί πλέον ἡμῶν τοὺς Ῥωμαίους ἐπωφελεῖ;
does-be-do or what more than-us the Romans does-be-profit
 ὅθεν χρὴ ἢ καὶ ἡμᾶς ὡς ἐκείνον ρογεύεσθαι, ἢ
whence (one)-must either also us like that-one to-be-paid or
 μὴδ' ἐκείνον ἐντὸς τῆς τοιαύτης τυγχάνειν δωρεᾶς.”
not-even that-one within the such to-be gift
 ὁ δὲ μακάριος Ῥωμανὸς ἀντέγραψε πρὸς αὐτοὺς μὴ
the and blessed Romanos wrote-back to them not
 παρ' αὐτοῦ τὴν ἐπὶ τῷ Ταρωνίτῃ γενέσθαι ρόγαν,
by him the to the Taronite to-have-been-made stipend
 ὡς ἐπ' αὐτῷ κεῖται καὶ ἡ ταύτης νῦν ἐκκοπή, ἀλλὰ
so-that on him lies also the of-it now cutting-off but
 παρὰ τοῦ μακαρίου βασιλέως· καὶ μὴ δίκαιον εἶναι τὰ
by the blessed emperor and not just to-be the(-acts)
 τῶν προβεβασилευκότων παρὰ τῶν ὕστερον ἀνατρέπεσθαι.
of-those having-reigned-before by those later to-be-overtaken
 ἔγραψε δ' ὁμοίως πρὸς τὸν αὐτὸν Ταρωνίτην, δηλοποιῶν
he-wrote and nevertheless to the same Taronite making-known
 αὐτῷ τὴν τῶν εἰρημένων ἀνδρῶν λύπην καὶ σκάνδαλον. ὁ
to-him the of-the said men grief and offense he
 δὲ ἀνήγαγε μήτε χρυσὸν μήτε ἄργυρον παρέχειν δύνασθαι,
and referred neither gold nor silver to-furnish to-be-able
 ὑπισχνεῖτο δὲ ἔξωθεν τῶν κατὰ τύπον ἀποστελλομένων
he-promised and outside of-the by rule sent
 ξενίων διδόναι ἱμάτια καὶ χαλκώματα μέχρι τῶν δέκα
gifts to-give garments and bronze-wares up-to the ten

λιτρῶν συντιμώμενα· ἃ καὶ δέδωκε μέχρι τριῶν ἢ
pounds valued which also he-gave up-to three or
 τεσσάρων ἐνιαυτῶν. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἀνήγαγε μὴ δύνασθαι
four years after and these(-things) he-referred not to-be-able
 παρέχειν τὸ τοιοῦτον πάκτον· τὴν δὲ ρόγαν ἢ προῖκα
to-furnish the such tribute the and stipend or gift
 λαμβάνειν ἡξίου καθὼς ἐπὶ τοῦ μακαριωτάτου βασιλέως
to-receive he-asked as under the most-blessed emperor
 Λέοντος, ἢ ἐκκοπῆναι αὐτήν. ὅθεν διὰ τὸ μὴ εἰς
Leo or to-be-cut-off it whence because-of the not to
 σκάνδαλον εἶναι τοῦ Κακικίου καὶ τοῦ κουροπαλάτου καὶ
offense to-be — of-Kakikios and the curopalates and
 τῶν λοιπῶν ἐξέκοψε ταύτην ὁ εἰρημένος μακαριώτατος
the others cut-off it the said most-blessed
 βασιλεὺς Ῥωμανός. παραμυθούμενος δὲ ὥσπερ αὐτόν,
emperor Romanos consoling and as-it-were him
 μετὰ ταῦτα τὸν τούτου υἱὸν Ἀσώτιον ἐν τῇ πόλει
after these(-things) the his son Asotios in the city
 παραγεγονότα εἰς πατρικίους ἐτίμησε καὶ φιλοφρονησάμενος
having-arrived to patricians honored and having-treated-kindly
 αὐτάρκως πρὸς τὰ ἴδια ἐξαπέστειλε. τοῦ δὲ μαγίστρου
amply to the own(-lands) sent of-the and magistros
 τοῦ Κρικορικίου τὸν βίον ἀπολιπόντος, ἀνήγαγε Τορνίκιος
— Krikorikios the life having-left referred Tornikios
 ὁ τοῦ Ἀπογάνεμ υἱὸς ἔρωτα ἔχειν ἐγκάρδιον εἰσελθεῖν
the — of-Apoganem son (a)-love to-have heartfelt to-come
 καὶ τὸν βασιλέα θεάσασθαι· ἐφ' ᾧ τὸν πρωτοσπαθάριον
and the emperor to-see for which the protospatharius
 Κρινίτην καὶ ἐρμηνευτὴν ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐξαπέστειλεν, ὃς
Krinites and interpreter the emperor sent who
 καὶ εἰσήγαγεν ἐν τῇ πόλει τὸν εἰρημένον Τορνίκιον,
also brought into the city the said Tornikios

καὶ προήγαγε τὸν αὐτὸν Τορνίκιον ὁ βασιλεὺς εἰς τὴν
and advanced the same Tornikios the emperor to the
 τῶν πατρικίων τιμὴν. προετείνετο δὲ δικαιολογίας ἐπὶ
of-the patricians honor he-put-forward and claims concerning
 τῷ τοῦ βαρβάρου οἴκῳ· καὶ ἀκούσας ὅτι προάστειον
the of-the barbarian house and having-heard that (an)-estate
 λαβὼν ὁ θεῖος αὐτοῦ ἐν τῇ Κελτζηνῇ τὴν τούτου
having-received the uncle his in — Keltzene the its
 παρεχώρησεν ἐξουσίαν, ἔλεγε μὴ δύνασθαι τὸν θεῖον αὐτοῦ
had-ceded authority he-said not to-be-able the uncle his
 ἐπὶ τῇ πατρικῇ κληρονομίᾳ αὐτοῦ ποιεῖσθαι ἀνταλλαγήν,
over the paternal inheritance his to-make exchange
 καὶ ἡξίου ἢ τὸν οἶκον λαβεῖν ἢ τὸ προάστειον· εἰ
and he-asked either the house to-receive or the estate if
 δὲ μή, καὶ ἀμφοτέρω προσεχώρει τῷ βασιλεῖ πρὸς τὸ
and not also both he-ceded to-the emperor for the
 μὴ ἔχειν αὐτὰ τοὺς ἐξαδέλφους αὐτοῦ. τούτου ἕνεκεν
not to-have them the cousins his of-this for-the-sake
 ὁ βασιλεὺς, ἐπεὶ καὶ ὁ γέρων ὁ Ταρωνίτης ἐτύγχανεν
the emperor since also the old-man the Taronite happened
 ἀποθανών, ἀνελάβετο τὸ προάστειον καὶ οὐδὲ τὸν οἶκον
having-died took the estate and not-even the house
 ἀντέδωκεν, ἐπεὶ μηδὲ χρυσοβούλλιον, καθὼς ἀνωτέρω
gave-in-return since not-even (a)-chrysobull as above
 προείρηται, ἐπὶ τινι τούτων ἐξετέθη. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα
has-been-said-before on any of-these was-issued after and these(-things)
 εἰσῆλθε πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν Παγκράτειος ἐκείνος ὁ
came to the reigning(-city) Pankratios that the
 πρῶτος υἱὸς τοῦ μαγίστρου ἐκείνου Κρικορικού τοῦ
first son of-the magistros that Krikorikios the
 Ταρωνίτου, καὶ προεβιβάσθη παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως εἰς τὸ
Taronite and was-promoted by the emperor to the

τῶν πατρικίων ἀξίωμα, καὶ γέγονε καὶ στρατηγὸς τοῦ
of-the patricians dignity and became also general —
 Ταρών. ἠτήσατο δὲ γυναῖκα λαβεῖν ἀπὸ τῶν βασιλικῶν
of-Taron he-asked and (a)-wife to-take from the imperial
 συγγενίδων, καὶ δέδωκεν αὐτῷ ὁ βασιλεὺς τὴν τοῦ
kinswomen and gave him the emperor the of-the
 μαγίστρου Θεοφυλάκτου ἀδελφὴν εἰς γυναῖκα. καὶ μετὰ
magistros Theophylaktos sister for wife and after
 τὸν γάμον διαθήκας ἐξέθετο, ἐν αἷς ἐδήλου ὅτι ἐάν μοι
the marriage (a)-will he-set-out in which he-declared that if to-me
 γένωνται παῖδες ἀπὸ τῆς τοιαύτης γυναικός, ἵνα ἔχωσι
there-be children from the such wife that they-have
 τὴν ἅπασάν μου χώραν εἰς κληρὸν προγονικόν. καὶ ἐπὶ
the whole my land for (an)-ancestral inheritance and upon
 τούτῳ ἠτήσατο βασιλέα δοθῆναι αὐτῷ τὸ προάστιον
this he-asked (the)-emperor to-be-given him the estate
 τοῦ Γρηγοῤᾰ πρὸς τὸ ἐν αὐτῷ τὴν πατρικίαν τὴν τούτου
— of-Gregoras for the in it the patrician-lady the his
 γυναῖκα καθέζεσθαι· μετὰ δὲ τὴν τοιαύτης ἀποβίωσιν
wife to-live after and the of-such de cease
 εἶναι πάλιν τὸ τοιοῦτον προάστιον τῆς βασιλείας αὐτοῦ.
to-be again the such estate of-the majesty his
 καὶ ἐπένευσε καὶ πρὸς τοῦτο ὁ βασιλεὺς, καὶ πολλαῖς
and assented also to this the emperor and with-many
 φιλοτιμίαις αὐτὸν δεξιωσάμενος μετὰ τῆς ἰδίας γυναικός
favours him having-received with the own wife
 ἐξαπέστειλεν εἰς τὴν χώραν αὐτοῦ. οἱ δὲ υἱοὶ τοῦ
sent to the land his the and sons of-the
 μαγίστρου Κρικορικού, ὃ τε αὐτὸς Παγκράτειος ὁ
magistros Krikorikios the both same Pankratios the
 πατρίκιος καὶ Ἀσώτιος ὁ πατρίκιος, μεγάλως παρελύπουν
patrician and Asotios the patrician greatly vexed

καὶ ἐβιάζοντο τὸν οἰκεῖον αὐτῶν ἐξάδελφον Τορνίκιον
and oppressed the own their cousin Tornikios
τὸν πατρίκιον· ὃς μὴ ὑποφέρων τὴν ἀπὸ τούτων
the patrician who not enduring the from these
ἐπίθεσιν ἔγραψε πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα ἀποστεῖλαι πιστὸν
attack wrote to the emperor to-send (a)-trustworthy
ἄνθρωπον καὶ παραλαβεῖν τὴν χώραν αὐτοῦ, αὐτὸν δὲ
man and to-take-over the land his him and
καὶ τὴν γυναῖκα καὶ τὸ παιδίον αὐτῶν πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα
also the wife and the child their to the emperor
εἰσαγαγεῖν. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς ἀπέστειλε τὸν πρωτοσπαθάριον
to-bring the and emperor sent the protospatharius
Κρινίτην καὶ ἑρμηνέα πρὸς τὸ κατὰ τὴν ἀξίωσιν αὐτοῦ
Krinites and interpreter for the according-to the request his
ἀναλαβεῖσθαι καὶ εἰσαγαγεῖν αὐτὸν ἐν τῇ θεοφυλάκτῳ
to-take and to-bring him into the God-guarded
πόλει. ὅτε δὲ τὴν τοιαύτην χώραν ὁ Κρινίτης κατέλαβεν,
city when and the such land — Krinites reached
εὑρεν αὐτὸν ἤδη τὸν βίον ἀπολιπόντα, διαταξάμενον πρὸ
he-found him already the life having-left having-ordered before
τῆς τελευτῆς εἶναι πᾶσαν τὴν χώραν αὐτοῦ ὑποκειμένην
the end to-be all the land his subject
τῷ βασιλεῖ Ῥωμαίων, τὴν δὲ γυναῖκα καὶ τὸ παιδίον
to-the emperor of-(the)-Romans the and wife and the child
αὐτοῦ εἰσελθεῖν πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα· ἥ καὶ δέδωκεν ὁ
his to-come to the emperor to-whom also gave the
βασιλεὺς εἰς κατοίκησιν εἰσελθούσης τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου
emperor for dwelling (her)-having-come-in of-the protospatharius
Μιχαὴλ τοῦ ποτὲ γεγονότος κομμερκιαρίου Χαλδίας καὶ
Michael the(-one) once having-been kommerkiarios of-Chaldia and
Ψωμαθέως τὴν μονήν. καὶ πάλιν ἀπεστάλη ὁ εἰρημένος
of-Psomatheus the monastery and again was-sent the said

Κρινίτης παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως πρὸς τὸ παραλαβεῖν τὴν
Krinites by the emperor for the to-take-over the
 χώραν τοῦ Ἀπογάνεμ ἥτοι τὸ μέρος τοῦ πατρικίου
land — of-Apoganem that-is the part of-the patrician
 Τορνικίου. ἀνταπέστειλαν δὲ ἐκεῖθεν τοῦ Ταρωνίτου υἱοὶ
Tornikios sent-back and from-there of-the Taronite sons
 οἱ τοῦ ἀποθανόντος ἐξάδελφοι, ἀξιούντες δοῦναι τὸ
those of-the deceased cousins asking to-give —
 Οὐλνούτην καὶ ἔχειν τὴν χώραν τοῦ ἐξαδέλφου αὐτῶν·
Oulnoute and to-have the land of-the cousin their
 μὴ γὰρ δύνασθαι ὅλως αὐτοὺς ζῆν, εἰ τὴν τοῦ ἐξαδέλφου
not for to-be-able at-all them to-live if the of-the cousin
 αὐτῶν χώραν ὡς οἰκείαν κατάσχη ὁ βασιλεὺς. οἰκεία
their land as own should-hold the emperor by-own
 δὲ ἀγαθότητι ὑπέιξας ὁ βασιλεὺς τὴν αἴτησιν αὐτῶν
and goodness having-yielded the emperor the request their
 ἐξεπλήρωσε, καὶ δέδωκεν αὐτοῖς μὲν τὴν χώραν τοῦ
fulfilled and gave to-them indeed the land —
 Ἀπογάνεμ τοῦ ἐξαδέλφου αὐτῶν, αὐτὸς δὲ ἀνελάβετο τὸ
of-Apoganem the cousin their he and took —
 Οὐλνούτην μετὰ πάσης τῆς περιχώρου αὐτοῦ. ἡ δὲ
Oulnoute with all the surrounding-country its the and
 ὅλη τοῦ Ταρων χώρα εἰς δύο διανεμηθεῖσα ἐτύγχανεν·
whole — of-Taron land into two divided happened-to-be
 καὶ τὸ μὲν ἥμισυ οἱ τοῦ μαγίστρου Κρικορικού εἶχον
and the indeed half those of-the magistros Krikorikios held
 υἱοί, τὸ δὲ ἥμισυ οἱ τοῦ Ἀπογάνεμ τοῦ πατρικίου, οἱ
sons the and half those — of-Apoganem the patrician the
 τούτων ἐξάδελφοι.
their cousins

Manzikert, Perkri, Chliat, Arzes, and their lands were held under the prince of princes of Armenia, until the emir Aposebatas and his brothers took them. These emirs submitted and paid tribute to the emperor. The succession of emirs is traced down to Apelbart, who killed Achamet by treachery and took his three fortresses, and Constantine argues that these fortresses belong to the emperor and block the way from Persia.

περὶ τῆς χώρας τῆς Ἀπαχουνῆς καὶ τοῦ κάστρου τοῦ
concerning the land — of-Apachounes and the fortress —
Μαντζικιέρτ καὶ τοῦ Περκρὶ καὶ τοῦ Χλιὰτ καὶ τοῦ
of-Manzikert and — of-Perkri and — of-Chliat and —
Χαλιὰτ καὶ τοῦ Ἄρξες καὶ τοῦ Τιβῆ καὶ τοῦ Χέρτ καὶ
of-Chliat and — of-Arzes and — of-Tibe and — of-Chert and
τοῦ Σαλαμᾶς καὶ τοῦ Τζερματζοῦ.

— of-Salamas and — of-Tzermatzou

Ἰστέον ὅτι πρὸ τοῦ Ἀσωτίου τοῦ ἄρχοντος τῶν
(one)-must-know that before — Asotios the prince of-the
ἀρχόντων, τοῦ πατρὸς τοῦ Συμβατίου τοῦ ἄρχοντος
princes the father — of-Symbatios the prince
τῶν ἀρχόντων, ὃν ἀπεκεφάλισεν ὁ ἀμηρᾶς Περσίδος
of-the princes whom beheaded the emir of-Persia
ὁ Ἀποσάτας, ὃς καὶ ἐποίησε δύο υἱούς, τὸν τε Ἀσώτιον
— Aposatas who also begot two sons — both Asotios
τὸν μετ' αὐτὸν γενόμενον ἄρχοντα τῶν ἀρχόντων καὶ
the(-one) after him having-become prince of-the princes and
Ἀπασάκιον τὸν μετὰ ταῦτα μάγιστρον τιμηθέντα, τὰ
Apasakios the(-one) after these(-things) (with)-magistros honored the
τρία ταῦτα κάστρα, τὸ τε Περκρὶ καὶ τὸ Χαλιὰτ καὶ
three these fortresses — both Perkri and — Chliat and
τὸ Ἄρσες, ὑπὸ τὴν τῆς Περσίδος ἐπικράτειαν ἐτύγχανον.
— Arzes under the — of-Persia dominion were

Ὅτι ὁ ἄρχων ἐκαθέζετο τῶν ἀρχόντων εἰς τὴν μεγάλην
that the prince sat of-the princes in the great
 Ἀρμενίαν, εἰς τὸ κάστρον τὸ Κάρς, καὶ ἐπέιχε καὶ τὰ
Armenia in the fortress — Kars and held also the
 τρία τὰ προγεγραμμένα κάστρα, τό τε Περκρί, τὸ Χαλιάτ
three the above-written fortresses — both Perkri — Chliat
 καὶ τὸ Ἄρζες, καὶ τὸ Τιβὴ καὶ τὸ Χέρτ καὶ τὸ Σαλαμάς.
and — Arzes and — Tibe and — Chert and — Salamas
 Ὅτι Ἀπελκάρτ ἐκράτει τὸ Μαντζικιέρτ, καὶ ἦν ὑπὸ τὴν
that Apelbart held — Manzikert and was under the
 ἐξουσίαν τοῦ ἄρχοντος τῶν ἀρχόντων, τοῦ πατρὸς τοῦ
authority of-the prince of-the princes the father —
 Συμβατίου τοῦ ἄρχοντος τῶν ἀρχόντων. δέδωκε δὲ αὐτῷ
of-Symbatios the prince of-the princes gave and to-him
 Ἀπελβάρτ ὁ αὐτὸς Ἀσώτιος ὁ ἄρχων τῶν ἀρχόντων καὶ
Apelbart the same Asotios the prince of-the princes also
 τὸ κάστρον τὸ Χλιάτ καὶ τὸ Ἄρζες καὶ τὸ Περκρί· ὁ γὰρ
the fortress — Chliat and — Arzes and — Perkri the for
 προρρηθεὶς Ἀσώτιος ὁ ἄρχων τῶν ἀρχόντων, ὁ πατὴρ τοῦ
aforesaid Asotios the prince of-the princes the father —
 Συμβατίου τοῦ ἄρχοντος τῶν ἀρχόντων, κατεῖχε πάσας τὰς
of-Symbatios the prince of-the princes held all the
 τῆς ἀνατολῆς χώρας. τελευτήσαντος δὲ Ἀπελβάρτ, κατέσχε
of-the east lands having-died and Apelbart held
 τὴν ἐξουσίαν αὐτοῦ ὁ ἴδιος υἱὸς αὐτοῦ ὁ Ἀβελχαμίτ, τοῦ
the authority his the own son his — Abelchamit —
 δὲ Ἀβελχαμίτ τελευτήσαντος ἐκράτησε τὴν ἐξουσίαν αὐτοῦ
and Abelchamit having-died held the authority his
 ὁ πρῶτος υἱὸς αὐτοῦ Ἀποσεβατάς. τοῦ δὲ Συμβατίου τοῦ
the first son his Aposebatas — and Symbatios the
 ἄρχοντος τῶν ἀρχόντων παρὰ τοῦ Ἀποσάτα τοῦ ἀμηρά
prince of-the princes by — Aposatas the emir

Περσίδος ἀναιρεθέντος, ἐκράτησεν αὐθεντῶς καὶ κυρίως ὡς
of-Persia having-been-slain held in-own-right and in-lordship as
 δεσπότης καὶ αὐτοκέφαλος τό τε κάστρον τὸ Μαντζικιέρτ
master and independent the both fortress — Manzikert
 καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ κάστρα καὶ τὰς χώρας· ὅστις καὶ ὑπετάγη
and the other fortresses and the lands who also was-subjected
 τῷ βασιλεῖ μετὰ τῶν ἐτέρων δύο ἀδελφῶν αὐτοῦ τοῦ
to-the emperor with the other two brothers his —
 Ἀπολεσφούετ καὶ τοῦ Ἀποσέλμη διὰ τὸ διαφόρως
Aposphouet and — Aposelmes because-of the variously
 καταπολεμηθῆναι τά τε κάστρα καὶ πραιδευθῆναι καὶ
to-have-been-warred-down the both fortresses and to-have-been-plundered and
 ἀφανισθῆναι καὶ τὰς χώρας αὐτῶν παρὰ τοῦ δομestikou
to-have-been-destroyed also the lands their by the domestic
 τῶν σχολῶν, παρέχοντος τὸν βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων καὶ
of-the scholae furnishing the emperor of-(the)-Romans also
 πάκτα ὑπὲρ τῶν κάστρων καὶ τῶν χωρίων αὐτῶν. ἀπὸ δὲ
tributes for the fortresses and the districts their from and
 τοῦ προρρηθέντος Ἀσωτίου τοῦ ἄρχοντος τῶν ἀρχόντων,
the aforesaid Asotios the prince of-the princes
 τοῦ πατρὸς μὲν τοῦ Συμβατίου πάππου δὲ τοῦ δευτέρου
the father indeed — of-Symbatios grandfather and of-the second
 Ἀσωτίου καὶ τοῦ μαγίστρου Ἀπασακίου, μέχρι ζωῆς τοῦ
Asotios and the magistros Apasakios until (the)-life of-the
 δευτέρου Ἀσωτίου ἄρχοντος τῶν ἀρχόντων ὑπῆρχον τὰ
second Asotios prince of-the princes were the
 τοιαῦτα τρία κάστρα ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν τοῦ ἄρχοντος τῶν
such three fortresses under the authority of-the prince of-the
 ἀρχόντων, καὶ ἐλάμβανεν ἐξ αὐτῶν πάκτα ὁ ἄρχων
princes and received from them tributes the prince
 τῶν ἀρχόντων. ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ κάστρον τοῦ Μαντζικιέρτ,
of-the princes but also the fortress — of-Manzikert

μετὰ τῆς χώρας τοῦ Ἀπαχουνῆς καὶ τοῦ Χαρκὰ καὶ
with the land — of-Arachounes and — of-Charka and
 τοῦ Κορή, ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν καὶ ἐπικράτειαν τοῦ αὐτοῦ
— of-Kore under the authority and dominion of-the same
 ἄρχοντος τῶν ἀρχόντων ὑπῆρχεν, ἕως οὗτου Ἀποσεβατὰς
prince of-the princes was until when Aposebatas
 ὁ ἀμυρᾶς τοῦ Μαντζικιέρτ μετὰ τῶν δύο ἀδελφῶν αὐτοῦ
the emir — of-Manzikert with the two brothers his
 τοῦ τε Ἀπολεσφούετ καὶ τοῦ Ἀποσέλμη ὑπετάγησαν τῷ
— both Apolesphouet and — Aposelmes were-subjected to-the
 βασιλεῖ, δίδοντες καὶ πάκτα ὑπὲρ τε τῶν κάστρων καὶ
emperor giving also tributes for both the fortresses and
 τῶν χωρίων αὐτῶν· ἐπεὶ ὁ ἄρχων τῶν ἀρχόντων δούλος
the districts their since the prince of-the princes (a)-servant
 τοῦ βασιλέως τῶν Ῥωμαίων τυγχάνει ὡς παρ' αὐτοῦ
of-the emperor of-the Romans is as by him
 προβαλλόμενος καὶ τὸ τοιοῦτον δεχόμενος ἀξίωμα, δηλονότι
being-appointed and the such receiving dignity evidently
 καὶ τὰ ὑπ' αὐτοῦ δεσποζόμενα κάστρα καὶ πολιτεῖαι
also the(-things) by him ruled fortresses and cities
 καὶ χωρία τοῦ βασιλέως τῶν Ῥωμαίων τυγχάνουσιν.
and districts of-the emperor of-the Romans are
 Ὅτι τοῦ Συμβατίου τοῦ ἄρχοντος τῶν ἀρχόντων τῆς
that — Symbatios the prince of-the princes of-the
 μεγάλης Ἀρμενίας κρατηθέντος παρὰ τοῦ Ἀποσάτα
great Armenia having-been-seized by — Aposatas
 τοῦ ἀμυρᾶ Περσίδος καὶ ἀποκεφαλισθέντος παρ' αὐτοῦ,
the emir of-Persia and having-been-beheaded by him
 ἐκράτησεν ὁ Ἀποσεβατὰς, ὁ καθεζόμενος εἰς τὸ
beld — Aposebatas the(-one) sitting in the

κάστρον τὸ Μαντζικιέρτ, τὸ κάστρον τὸ Χαλιὰτ καὶ τὸ
fortress — Manzikert the fortress — Chliat and the
 κάστρον τὸ Περκρὶ καὶ τὴν πολιτείαν τοῦ Ἄρζες.

fortress — Perkri and the city — of-Arzes

Ὅτι ὁ δεύτερος ἀδελφὸς τοῦ Ἀποσεβατᾶ ὁ Ἀπολεσφούετ
that the second brother — of-Aposebatas — Apolesphouet

καὶ ὁ ἀνεψιὸς αὐτοῦ καὶ ὁ προγονὸς ὁ Ἀχμέτ ἐκράτησαν
and the nephew his and the stepson — Achamet held

τὸ κάστρον τὸ Χλιὰτ καὶ τὸ κάστρον τὸ Ἄρζες καὶ τὸ
the fortress — Chliat and the fortress — Arzes and the

κάστρον τὸ Ἀλτζίκε, καὶ αὐτοὶ ὑπετάγησαν τῷ Ῥωμαίων
fortress — Altzike and they were-subjected to-the of-(the)-Romans

βασιλεῖ καὶ ἐγένοντο ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν αὐτοῦ καὶ παρέιχον
emperor and became under the authority his and furnished

καὶ πάκτα καθὼς καὶ ὁ ἀδελφὸς αὐτοῦ Ἀποσεβατᾶς
also tributes as also the brother his Aposebatas

ὑπὲρ τε τῶν κάστρων καὶ τῶν χωρίων αὐτῶν.

for both the fortresses and the districts their

Ὅτι ὁ τρίτος ἀδελφὸς τοῦ Ἀποσεβατᾶ καὶ τοῦ Ἀπολεσφούετ
that the third brother — of-Aposebatas and — of-Apolesphouet

ὁ Ἀποσέλμης ἐκράτει τὸ κάστρον τοῦ Τζερματζοῦ μετὰ καὶ
— Aposelmes held the fortress — of-Tzermatzou with also

τῶν χωρίων αὐτοῦ, καὶ αὐτὸς ὑπετάγη τῷ τῶν Ῥωμαίων
the districts its and he was-subjected to-the of-the Romans

βασιλεῖ, καὶ ἐδίδον πάκτα καθὼς καὶ ὁ ἀδελφὸς αὐτοῦ ὁ
emperor and gave tributes as also the brother his —

Ἀποσεβατᾶς καὶ ὁ δεύτερος ἀδελφὸς αὐτοῦ ὁ Ἀπολεσφούετ.
Aposebatas and the second brother his — Apolesphouet

Ὅτι τοῦ Ἀποσεβατᾶ τελευτήσαντος ἐκράτησε τὸ Μαντζικιέρτ
that — Aposebatas having-died held — Manzikert

μετὰ τῶν χωρίων αὐτοῦ καὶ τῆς ἐπικρατείας αὐτοῦ πάσης ὁ
with the districts its and the dominion its all —

Ἀβδηραχέιμ ὁ υἱὸς τοῦ Ἀποσεβατᾶ· τελευτήσαντος δὲ τοῦ
Abderachim the son — of-Aposebatas having-died and —
 Ἀβδηραχέιμ ἐκράτησεν ὁ Ἀπολεσφούετ ὁ δεύτερος ἀδελφὸς
Abderachim held — Apolesphouet the second brother
 τοῦ Ἀποσεβατᾶ, θείος δὲ τοῦ Ἀβδηραχέιμ, τὸ κάστρον
— of-Aposebatas uncle and — of-Abderachim the fortress
 τὸ Μαντζικιέρτ καὶ πάσας τὰς προρρηθείσας χώρας· καὶ
— Manzikert and all the aforesaid lands and
 αὐτοῦ τελευτήσαντος ἐκράτησεν ὁ τρίτος ἀδελφός, ἥγουν
him having-died held the third brother that-is
 τοῦ Ἀποσεβατᾶ καὶ τοῦ Ἀπολεσφούετ, ὁ Ἀποσέλμης τό
— of-Aposebatas and — of-Apolesphouet — Aposelmes —
 τε Μαντζικιέρτ καὶ πάσας τὰς προρρηθείσας χώρας.
both Manzikert and all the aforesaid lands
 Ὅτι ὁ Ἀποσεβατὰς εἶχεν υἱὸν τὸν Ἀβδηραχέιμ καὶ τὸν
that — Aposebatas had (a)-son — Abderachim and —
 Ἀπελμουζέ.

Apelmouze

Ὅτι ὁ Ἀπολεσφούετ εἶχε προγονὸν καὶ ἀνεψιὸν τὸν
that — Apolesphouet had (a)-stepson and nephew —
 Ἀχάμετ· υἱὸν γὰρ οὐκ εἶχεν, ἀλλὰ τὸν Ἀχάμετ τὸν
Achamet son for not he-had but — Achamet the
 προγονὸν καὶ ἀνεψιὸν αὐτοῦ εἶχεν ἀντὶ υἱοῦ.

stepson and nephew his he-had in-place-of (a)-son

Ὅτι ὁ Ἀποσέλμης εἶχεν υἱὸν τὸν Ἀπελβάρτ, τὸν
that — Aposelmes had (a)-son — Apelbart the(-one)
 ἀρτίως κρατοῦντα τὸ Μαντζικιέρτ.

now holding — Manzikert

Ὅτι ἀποθανόντος τοῦ Ἀποσεβατᾶ κατέλιπε τὸν Ἀβδηραχέιμ
that having-died — Aposebatas he-left — Abderachim
 τὸν υἱὸν αὐτοῦ ἀμηρᾶν· ὁ δὲ ἕτερος υἱὸς αὐτοῦ ὁ
the son his (as)-emir the and other son his —

Ἀπελμουζὲ ἦν νήπιος πάνυ, διὸ καὶ κατεφρονήθη ἐλθεῖν
Apelmouze was (an)-infant very therefore also he-was-slighted to-come
 πρὸς τὴν τοῦ πατρὸς καὶ τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ αὐτοῦ ἐξουσίαν.
to the of-the father and of-the brother his authority
 Ὅτι ὁ Ἀποσεβατὰς ὁ πρῶτος ἀδελφὸς ἐκαθέζετο εἰς
that — Aposebatas the first brother sat in
 τὸ κάστρον τὸ Μαντζικιέρτ, καὶ ἐκράτει, καθὼς εἴρηται,
the fortress — Manzikert and held as has-been-said
 ταύτας τὰς χώρας, τὸ τε Ἀπαχουνῆς καὶ τὸ Κορή
these the lands — both Apachounes and — Kore
 καὶ τὸ Χάρκα, καὶ ἐδίδου τὰ ὑπὲρ αὐτῶν πάκτα τῷ
and — Charka and gave the for them tributes to-the
 Ῥωμαίων βασιλεῖ· καὶ τούτου τελευτήσαντος ἐκράτησεν
of-(the)-Romans emperor and him having-died held
 ὁ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ ὁ Ἀβδηραχέιμ, καὶ ἐδίδου καὶ αὐτὸς τὰ
the son his — Abderachim and gave also he the
 προρρηθέντα πάκτα διὰ τὸ εἶναι, καθὼς προεῖρηται,
aforesaid tributes because-of the to-be as has-been-said-before
 νήπιον παντελῶς τὸν ἀδελφὸν αὐτοῦ τὸν Ἀπελμουζέ.
(an)-infant utterly the brother his — Apelmouze
 Ὅτι τοῦ Ἀβδηραχέιμ τελευτήσαντος καὶ τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ αὐτοῦ
that — Abderachim having-died and the brother his
 Ἀπελμουζέ ὡς νηπίου καταφρονηθέντος, ἐκράτησε τὸ
Apelmouze as (an)-infant having-been-slighted held the
 κάστρον τὸ Μαντζικιέρτ καὶ τὰς ὑπ' αὐτῷ προρρηθείσας
fortress — Manzikert and the under it aforesaid
 χώρας ὁ δεύτερος ἀδελφὸς τοῦ Ἀποσεβατᾶ, ὁ προρρηθεὶς
lands the second brother — of-Aposebatas the aforesaid
 Ἀπολεσφούετ, θεῖος δὲ τοῦ Ἀβδηραχέιμ καὶ τοῦ διὰ τὴν
Apolesphouet uncle and — of-Abderachim and of-the because-of the
 νηπιότητα καταφρονηθέντος ἀδελφοῦ αὐτοῦ τοῦ Ἀπελμουζέ.
infancy slighted brother his — Apelmouze

Ὅτι τοῦ Ἀπολεσφούετ τελευτήσαντος ἐκράτησεν ὁ τρίτος
that — Apolesphouet having-died held the third
 ἀδελφὸς τοῦ Ἀποσεβατᾶ, ἡγουν ὁ Ἀποσέλμης, τὸ κάστρον
brother — of-Aposebatas that-is — Aposelmes the fortress
 τὸ Μαντζικιέρτ μετὰ τῶν χωρίων τῶν προρρηθέντων. ὁ
— Manzikert with the districts the aforesaid the
 δὲ προρρηθεῖς Ἀχάμετ, ὁ καὶ ἀνεψιὸς καὶ προγονὸς
and aforesaid Achamet the(-one) both nephew and stepson
 τοῦ Ἀπολεσφούετ, ἐκράτει εἰδήσει καὶ βουλήσει
— of-Apolesphouet held with-the-knowledge and will
 τοῦ Ἀπολεσφούετ τό τε Χλιάτ καὶ τὸ Ἄρζες καὶ τὸ
— of-Apolesphouet — both Chliat and — Arzes and —
 Περκρί· καὶ γὰρ ὁ Ἀπολεσφούετ υἱὸν μὴ ἔχων, καθὼς
Perkri and for — Apolesphouet (a)-son not having as
 προείρηται, τοῦτον τὸν Ἀχάμετ τὸν τε ἀνεψιὸν καὶ
has-been-said-before this — Achamet the both nephew and
 προγονὸν αὐτοῦ εἶχε κληρονόμον πάσης αὐτοῦ τῆς
stepson his had (as)-beir of-all his the
 ὑποστάσεως καὶ τῶν κάστρων καὶ τῶν χωρίων αὐτοῦ.
substance and the fortresses and the districts his
 Ὅτι τελευτήσαντος τοῦ Ἀποσέλμη ἐκράτησε τὸ κάστρον
that having-died — Aposelmes held the fortress
 τὸ Μαντζικιέρτ ὁ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ ὁ Ἀπελβάρτ μετὰ καὶ
— Manzikert the son his — Apelbart with also
 τῆς περιχώρου αὐτοῦ. ὁ δὲ Ἀχάμετ ἐκράτησε τὰ τρία
the surrounding-country its — and Achamet held the three
 κάστρα, τό τε κάστρον τὸ Χλιάτ, τὸ κάστρον τὸ Ἄρζες
fortresses the both fortress — Chliat the fortress — Arzes
 καὶ τὸ κάστρον τὸ Ἀλτζίκε.
and the fortress — Altzike

Ὅτι καὶ αὐτὸς ὁ Ἀχάμετ δούλος ἦν τοῦ βασιλέως, καθὰ
that also he — Achamet (a)-servant was of-the emperor as
 καὶ προείρηται, παρέχων καὶ τὰ ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ καὶ τὰ ὑπὲρ
also has-been-said-before furnishing both the for himself and the for
 τοῦ θείου αὐτοῦ τοῦ Ἀπολεσφούετ πάκτα. ὁ δὲ Ἀπελβάρτ
the uncle his — Apolesphouet tributes — and Apelbart
 μετὰ δόλου καὶ χλεύης αὐτὸν ἔσφαξε, καὶ ἀνελάβετο τὰ τρία
with guile and mockery him slaughtered and took the three
 αὐτοῦ κάστρα, τό τε κάστρον τὸ Χλιάτ καὶ τὸ κάστρον
his fortresses the both fortress — Chliat and the fortress
 τὸ Ἀρζες καὶ τὸ κάστρον τὸ Ἀλτζίκε· καὶ ταῦτα ὀφείλει
— Arzes and the fortress — Altziike and these ought
 ὁ βασιλεὺς ἀναλαβεῖσθαι ὡς ἴδια αὐτοῦ τυγχάνοντα, ὅτι
the emperor to-take-back as own his being because
 ταῦτα πάντα τὰ προρρηθέντα κάστρα καὶ αἱ προρρηθεῖσαι
these all the aforesaid fortresses and the aforesaid
 χῶραι οὐδέποτε γεγόνασιν ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν τῆς Περσίδος
lands never have-been under the authority — of-Persia
 ἢ ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν τοῦ ἀμερμουμνῆ, ἀλλ' ὑπῆρχον,
or under the authority of-the commander-of-the-faithful but were
 καθὼς εἴρηται, ἐν ταῖς ἡμέραις τοῦ κυροῦ Λέοντος
as has-been-said in the days of-the lord Leo
 βασιλέως ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν τοῦ Συμβατίου τοῦ ἄρχοντος
emperor under the authority — of-Symbatios the prince
 τῶν ἀρχόντων, καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα ἐγένοντο ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν
of-the princes and after these(-things) came under the authority
 τῶν τριῶν ἀδελφῶν τῶν προρρηθέντων ἀμηνράδων, τοῦ τε
of-the three brothers the aforesaid emirs — both
 Ἀποσεβατᾶ καὶ τοῦ Ἀπολεσφούετ καὶ τοῦ Ἀποσέλμη, καὶ
Aposebatas and — Apolesphouet and — Aposelmes and

ἐν ταῖς ἡμέραις αὐτῶν καὶ ἐδουλώθησαν καὶ ἐπακτώθησαν
in the days their both were-made-servants and were-made-tributary
 καὶ ἐγένοντο ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν τῶν βασιλέων Ῥωμαίων.
and came under the authority of-the emperors of-(the)-Romans
 Ὅτι τὰ τρία ταῦτα κάστρα, τό τε Χλιὰτ καὶ τὸ
that the three these fortresses — both Chliat and —
 Ἄρζες καὶ τὸ Περκρί, εἰ κρατεῖ ὁ βασιλεὺς, Περσικὸν
Arzes and — Perkri if holds the emperor (a)-Persian
 φοσσάτον κατὰ Ῥωμανίας ἐξελθεῖν οὐ δύναται, ἐπειδὴ
army against Romania to-go-out not is-able since
 μέσον τυγχάνουσι τῆς τε Ῥωμανίας καὶ Ἀρμενίας, καὶ
between they-are — both of-Romania and Armenia and
 εἰςὶ φραγμὸς καὶ ἄπληκτα τῶν φοσσάτων.
are (a)-barrier and camps of-the armies

XLV · THE IBERIANS

The Iberians claim descent from David through the wife of Uriah, and an origin in Jerusalem. Spandiates, whom no sword could wound except in the heart, defeated the Persians. The chapter traces their princes, recounts the emperors' campaigns in Phasiane and the Iberians' refusal to give up Ketzeon, and rejects the curopalates' claim, under the chrysobulls, to Phasiane, Abnikon, and Mastaton. It sets the river Erax as the boundary between Iberian and imperial land.

περὶ τῶν Ἰβήρων.
concerning the Iberians
 Ἰστέον ὅτι ἑαυτοὺς σεμνύνοντες οἱ Ἰβηρες, ἡγουν οἱ
(one)-must-know that themselves glorifying the Iberians that-is those
 τοῦ κουροπαλάτου, λέγουσιν ἑαυτοὺς κατάγεσθαι ἀπὸ τῆς
of-the curopalates say themselves to-be-descended from the
 γυναικὸς Οὐρίου τῆς παρὰ τοῦ Δαβὶδ τοῦ προφήτου
wife of-Uriah the(-one) by — David the prophet

καὶ βασιλέως μοιχευθείσης· ἐκ γὰρ τῶν ἐξ αὐτῆς
and king seduced from for the from her
 τεχθέντων παίδων τῷ Δαβὶδ ἑαυτοὺς λέγουσι κατάγεσθαι,
born children — to-David themselves they-say to-be-descended
 καὶ συγγενεῖς εἶναι Δαβὶδ τοῦ προφήτου καὶ βασιλέως καὶ
and kinsmen to-be of-David the prophet and king and
 ὥς ἐκ τούτου καὶ τῆς ὑπεραγίας θεοτόκου, διὰ τὸ ἐκ
as from this also of-the all-holy God-bearer because-of the from
 τοῦ σπέρματος Δαβὶδ ταύτην κατάγεσθαι. διὰ τοῦτο
the seed of-David her to-be-descended because-of this
 καὶ οἱ μεγιστᾶνες τῶν Ἰβήρων ἀκωλύτως τὰς συγγενίδας
also the grandees of-the Iberians without-hindrance the kinswomen
 αὐτῶν πρὸς γάμον ἄγουσι, τὴν παλαιὰν οἰόμενοι φυλάττειν
their for marriage take the ancient supposing to-keep
 νομοθεσίαν· ἐξ Ἱερουσαλήμ τε λέγουσιν εἶναι τὴν γένησιν
legislation from Jerusalem and they-say to-be the origin
 αὐτῶν, καὶ ἐκ τῶν ἐκείσε κατ' ὄναρ μετελθεῖν καὶ
their and from the there by (a)-dream to-have-migrated and
 κατοικῆσαι πρὸς τὰ μέρη Περσίδος ἥγουν εἰς τὴν χώραν
to-have-settled toward the parts of-Persia that-is in the land
 εἰς ἣν νῦν οἰκοῦσιν. οἱ δὲ χρηματισθέντες καὶ
in which now they-dwell those and having-been-commanded-by-oracle and
 ἐξελθόντες ἐκ τῆς Ἱερουσαλήμ ὑπῆρχον ὃ τε Δαβὶδ ἐκείνος
having-gone-out from — Jerusalem were — both David that
 καὶ ὁ ἀδελφὸς αὐτοῦ Σπανδιάτης, ὅστις Σπανδιάτης ἦν
and the brother his Spandiates who Spandiates was
 ἐκ θεοῦ λαβὼν χάρισμα, ὥς αὐτοὶ φάσκουσι, τοῦ μὴ
from God having-received (a)-gift as they say of-the not
 ἐν πολέμῳ ἄπτεσθαι αὐτοῦ ξίφος εἰς οἶον δῆποτε μέλος
in war to-touch him (a)-sword on whatever soever limb
 τοῦ σώματος αὐτοῦ ἄνευ τῆς καρδίας, ἣν καὶ διὰ τινος
of-the body his except the heart which also by some

περισκεπάσματος ἐν τοῖς πολέμοις περιεφρούρει. διὰ
covering in the wars be-guarded because-of
 τοῦτο καὶ ἐπτοοῦντο τοῦτον καὶ ἐδεδίσαν οἱ Πέρσαι· ὁ
this also feared him and dreaded the Persians he
 δὲ νενίκηκεν αὐτοὺς καὶ αὐτῶν κατεκράτησε, καὶ τοὺς
and conquered them and over-them prevailed and the
 συγγενεῖς ἐνέγκισεν Ἰβήρας εἰς τὰς δυσκολίας τὰς νῦν παρ'
kinsmen settled Iberians in the difficult-places those now by
 αὐτῶν κρατουμένας, ἐξ ὧν κατ' ὀλίγον ἐπλατύνθησαν
them held from which by little they-spread-out
 καὶ ηὐξάνθησαν καὶ εἰς μέγα ἔθνος ἐγένοντο. εἰθ' οὕτω
and increased and into (a)-great nation became then thus
 τοῦ βασιλέως Ἡρακλείου κατὰ Περσίδος ἐκστρατεύσαντος
the emperor Heraclius against Persia having-marched
 ἠνώθησαν καὶ συνεταξίδευσαν αὐτῷ, καὶ ἔκτοτε ὑπέταξαν
they-united and campaigned-with him and from-then they-subjected
 τῷ φόβῳ Ἡρακλείου τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων μᾶλλον
by-the fear of-Heraclius the emperor of-(the)-Romans rather
 ἢ περ τῇ ἐαυτῶν ἰσχύϊ καὶ δυνάμει πόλεις καὶ χώρας
than by-the their-own strength and power cities and lands
 ἱκανὰς τῶν Περσῶν· ἅπαξ γὰρ τοῦ βασιλέως Ἡρακλείου
considerable of-the Persians once for the emperor Heraclius
 τοὺς Πέρσας τροπωσαμένου καὶ εἰς τὸ μηκέτι εἶναι τὴν
the Persians having-routed and to the no-longer to-be the
 τούτων ἀρχὴν παραστήσαντος, εὐάλωτοι καὶ εὐχεῖρωτοι οὐ
their rule having-brought easily-taken and easily-subdued not
 μόνον τοῖς Ἰβηρσιν ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῖς Σαρακηνοῖς οἱ Πέρσαι
only to-the Iberians but also to-the Saracens the Persians
 γεγόνασι. διὰ δὲ τὸ κατάγεσθαι αὐτούς, ὥς αὐτοὶ
became because-of and the to-be-descended them as they
 λέγουσιν, ἐκ τῆς Ἱερουσαλήμ, διὰ τὸ μεγάλην πίστιν
say from — Jerusalem because-of the great faith

ἔχειν ἐν αὐτοῖς καὶ ἐν τῷ τάφῳ τοῦ κυρίου ἡμῶν Ἰησοῦ
to-have in them and in the tomb of-the Lord our Jesus
 Χριστοῦ, καὶ κατὰ τινας καιροὺς ἀφθόνως ἀποστέλλουσι
Christ and at certain times abundantly they-send
 χρήματα τῷ πατριάρχῃ τῆς ἀγίας πόλεως καὶ τοῖς
monies to-the patriarch of-the holy city and to-the
 ἐκεῖσε Χριστιανοῖς. ὁ δὲ προρρηθεὶς Δαβὶδ, ὁ τοῦ
there Christians the and aforesaid David the(-one) —
 Σπανδιάτου ἀδελφός, ἐγέννησεν υἱὸν τὸν Παγκράτειον,
of-Spandiates brother begot (a)-son — Pankratios
 καὶ ὁ Παγκράτειος ἐγέννησεν υἱὸν τὸν Ἀσώτιον, καὶ
and — Pankratios begot (a)-son — Asotios and
 ὁ Ἀσώτιος ἐγέννησεν υἱὸν τὸν Ἀδρανασὴ τὸν καὶ
— Asotios begot (a)-son — Adranase the(-one) also
 κουροπαλάτην τιμηθέντα παρὰ Λέοντος τοῦ φιλοχρίστου
(with)-curopalates honored by Leo the Christ-loving
 βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων. ὁ δὲ Σπανδιάτης ὁ ἀδελφὸς τοῦ
emperor of-(the)-Romans — and Spandiates the brother of-the
 προρρηθέντος Δαβὶδ ἐτελεύτησεν ἄτεκνος. ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς ἐξ
aforesaid David died childless from and the from
 Ἱερουσαλὴμ μετοικήσεως αὐτῶν εἰς τὴν νῦν οἰκουμένην
Jerusalem migration their to the now inhabited
 παρ' αὐτῶν χώραν ἔτη υ' ἢ καὶ φ' μέχρι τῆς σήμερον,
by them land years 400 or also 500 until the today
 ἣτις ἐστὶν ἰνδικτιῶν ι', ἔτη ἀπὸ κτίσεως κόσμου ,ςυξ',
which is (the)-indiction 10 years from (the)-creation of-(the)-world 6460
 ἐπὶ τῆς βασιλείας Κωνσταντίνου καὶ Ῥωμανοῦ τῶν
under the reign of-Constantine and Romanos the
 φιλοχρίστων καὶ πορφυρογεννήτων βασιλέων Ῥωμαίων.
Christ-loving and porphyrogenetos emperors of-(the)-Romans

Ἰστέον ὅτι ὁ φιλόχριστος καὶ πορφυρογέννητος καὶ
 (one)-must-know that the Christ-loving and porphyroγενnetos and
 αἰοίδιμος βασιλεὺς Λέων ἀκούσας ὅτι εἰς τόπον τὸν
 celebrated emperor Leo having-heard that to (the)-place the(-one)
 λεγόμενον Φασιανὴν ἔλθόντες οἱ Σαρακηνοὶ τὰς ἐκεῖσε
 called Phasiane having-come the Saracens the there
 ἐκκλησίας ἐποίησαν κάστρα, ἀπέστειλε τὸν πατρίκιον καὶ
 churches made fortresses sent the patrician and
 στρατηγὸν τῶν Ἀρμενιακῶν τὸν Λαλάκωνα μετὰ τοῦ
 general of-the Armeniakoi — Lalakon with the
 στρατηγοῦ Κωλωνείας καὶ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ Μεσοποταμίας
 general of-Koloneia and the general of-Mesopotamia
 καὶ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ Χαλδίας, καὶ κατέστρεψαν τὰ τοιαῦτα
 and the general of-Chaldia and they-destroyed the such
 κάστρα, τὰς ἐκκλησίας ἐλευθέρωσαντες, ληϊσάμενοι καὶ
 fortresses the churches having-freed having-plundered also
 πᾶσαν τὴν Φασιανὴν τῷ τότε καιρῷ ὑπὸ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν
 all — Phasiane at-the then time by the Saracens
 κρατουμένην. καὶ εἰθ' οὕτω πάλιν ἀπέστειλεν τὸν μάγιστρον
 held and then thus again he-sent the magistros
 Κατακαλὸν καὶ δομέστικον τῶν σχολῶν, ὃς ἐλθὼν ἐν
 Katakalon and domestic of-the scholae who having-come to
 τῷ κάστρῳ Θεοδοσιουπόλεως καὶ τὰ περίξ αὐτῆς
 the fortress of-Theodosiopolis and the(-parts) around it
 ληϊσάμενος καὶ τὴν χώραν τῆς Φασιανῆς καὶ τὰ περὶ
 having-plundered and the land — of-Phasiane and the around
 αὐτὴν κάστρα τῷ ὁμοίῳ ὀλέθρῳ παραδούς ὑπέστρεψε,
 it fortresses to-the like destruction having-handed-over returned
 μεγάλην πληγὴν ἐν τούτῳ δούς τοῖς Σαρακηνοῖς. ἐπὶ
 great (a)-blow in this having-given to-the Saracens under
 δὲ τῆς βασιλείας κυροῦ Ῥωμανοῦ βασιλέως ὁ μάγιστρος
 and the reign of-lord Romanos (the)-emperor the magistros

Ἰωάννης ὁ Κουρκούας ἀπερχόμενος κατὰ τοῦ κάστρου
John the Kourkouas going-away against the fortress
 Τιβίου εἰς τὴν δίοδον αὐτοῦ ἠφάνισε τὴν πᾶσαν χώραν
of-Tibion on the passage his destroyed the whole land
 τῆς Φασιανῆς ὡς ὑπὸ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν κρατουμένην. ἀλλὰ
— of-Phasiane as by the Saracens held but
 καὶ ὁ πατρίκιος Θεόφιλος ὁ ἀδελφὸς τοῦ προρρηθέντος
also the patrician Theophilos the brother of-the aforesaid
 μαγίστρου Ἰωάννου, τὸ πρῶτον αὐτοῦ στρατηγεύοντος ἐν
magistros John the first(-time) him being-general in
 Χαλδία, ἐπραίδευσε τὴν τοιαύτην χώραν τῆς Φασιανῆς ὡς
Chaldia plundered the such land — of-Phasiane as
 καὶ τότε ὑπὸ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν δεσποζομένην. μέχρι γὰρ
also then by the Saracens ruled until for
 τοῦ γεγονέναι τὸν λόγον μετὰ τοὺς Θεοδοσιουπολίτας
the to-have-been-made the agreement with the Theodosiopolitans
 εἰς τὴν χώραν τῆς Φασιανῆς χωρίον οὐ συνέστη, οὐδὲ εἰς
in the land — of-Phasiane (a)-village not was-founded nor in
 τὸ κάστρον τοῦ Ἀβνίκου· καὶ οἱ Ἰβηρες πάντοτε εἶχον
the fortress — of-Abnikon and the Iberians always had
 ἀγάπην καὶ φιλίαν μετὰ τῶν Θεοδοσιουπολιτῶν καὶ τῶν
love and friendship with the Theodosiopolitans and the
 Ἀβνικιωτῶν καὶ μετὰ τῶν Μαντζικιερτῶν καὶ μετὰ πᾶσαν
Abnikiotēs and with the Manzikertians and with all
 τὴν Περσίδα, ἀλλ' ἐν Φασιανῇ οὐδέποτε ἐπεκτήσαντο χωρία.
— Persia but in Phasiane never they-acquired villages
 Ὅτι πολλάκις ὁ κῦρις Λέων ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ ὁ
that often the lord Leo the emperor and the
 κῦρις Ῥωμανὸς καὶ αὐτὴ ἡ βασιλεία ἡμῶν ἐπεζήτησε
lord Romanos and itself the majesty our sought
 τὸ κάστρον τὸ Κετζέον τοῦ ἀναλαβέσθαι αὐτὸ καὶ
the fortress — Ketzeon of-the to-take it and

εἰσαγαγεῖν ταξάτους, πρὸς τὸ μὴ ἐκεῖθεν σιταρχεῖσθαι
to-put-in garrison-troops for the not from-there to-be-provisioned
 τὴν Θεοδοσιούπολιν, ἐξασφαλιζόμενοι πρὸς τε τὸν
 — *Theodosiopolis making-sure with both the*
 κουροπαλάτην καὶ τοὺς ἀδελφούς αὐτοῦ τοῦ μετὰ τὸ
curopalates and the brothers his of-the after the
 παραληφθῆναι τὴν Θεοδοσιούπολιν ἀναλαβέσθαι αὐτοὺς τὸ
to-be-taken — Theodosiopolis to-take-back them the
 τοιοῦτον κάστρον. ἀλλ' οὐκ ἠνέσχοντο οἱ Ἰβηρες τοῦτο
such fortress but not endured the Iberians this
 ποιῆσαι διὰ τὴν ἀγάπην τῶν Θεοδοσιουπολιτῶν καὶ
to-do because-of the love of-the Theodosiopolitans and
 διὰ τὸ μὴ πορθηθῆναι τὸ κάστρον Θεοδοσιούπολιν, ἀλλ'
because-of the not to-be-sacked the fortress Theodosiopolis but
 ἀντεδήλωσαν τὸν κύριον Ῥωμανὸν καὶ τὴν βασιλείαν ἡμῶν,
replied-to the lord Romanos and the majesty our
 λέγοντες ὅτι εἰ τοῦτο ποιήσομεν, ἀτιμία ἔχομεν γενέσθαι
saying that if this we-shall-do dishonor we-are-bound to-come-to
 εἰς τοὺς γείτονας ἡμῶν, οἷον εἰς τὸν μάγιστρον καὶ εἰς
among the neighbors our such-as to the magistros and to
 τὸν ἐξουσιαστὴν Ἀβασγίας καὶ εἰς τὸν Βασπαρακανίτην
the exousiastes of-Abasgia and to the Vasparakanite
 καὶ εἰς τοὺς ὑπερεξάρχοντας τῶν Ἀρμενίων, καὶ εἰπεῖν
and to the chief-princes of-the Armenians and to-say
 ἔχουσιν ὅτι ὁ βασιλεὺς ἀπίστους ἔχει τοὺς Ἰβηρας, τὸν
they-will-have that the emperor faithless holds the Iberians the
 τε κουροπαλάτην καὶ τοὺς ἀδελφούς αὐτοῦ, καὶ οὐ πιστεῖει
both curopalates and the brothers his and not trusts
 αὐτοῖς, καὶ διὰ τοῦτο ἀνελάβετο τὸ κάστρον ἐξ αὐτῶν.
them and because-of this took the fortress from them
 ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἄς ἀποστείλῃ ὁ βασιλεὺς τουρμάρχην ἢ
but rather let send the emperor (a)-tourmarch or

βασιλικόν τινα, καὶ ἃς καθέζεται εἰς κάστρον τοῦ
(an)-imperial-agent some and let him-sit in (the)-fortress —
 Κετζέον, καὶ ἃς θεωρῇ. καὶ ἐδέξαντο διὰ κελεύσεως ὅτι
of-Ketzeon and let him-observe and they-received by order that
 τί ὄφελος ἢ τουρμάρχην ἢ βασιλικὸν ἀποστεῖλαι;
what profit either (a)-tourmarch or (an)-imperial-agent to-send
 πάντως ἐὰν εἰσέλθῃ εἴτε τουρμάρχης εἴτε βασιλικός,
at-all if enters either (a)-tourmarch or (an)-imperial-agent
 μετὰ δέκα ἢ δώδεκα ἀνθρώπων ἔχει εἰσελεῖν, καὶ
with ten or twelve men he-will-have to-enter and
 καθέζεσθαι ἔχει εἰς τὸ ἄπληκτον ὃ παρ' ὑμῖν λάβῃ.
to-sit he-will-have in the quarters which from you he-takes
 καὶ ἐπεὶ πολλαὶ εἰσιν ὁδοὶ αἱ εἰσάγουσαι εἰς τὸ κάστρον
and since many are roads those leading into the fortress
 Θεοδοσιουπόλεως, οὐ δύναται ἀπὸ τοῦ κάστρου βλέπειν τὰ
of-Theodosiopolis not is-able from the fortress to-see the
 εἰσερχόμενα καρβάνια εἰς τὸ κάστρον Θεοδοσιουπόλεως.
entering caravans into the fortress of-Theodosiopolis
 δύνανται δὲ εἰσερχεσθαι καρβάνια ἐν Θεοδοσιουπόλει
are-able and to-enter caravans into Theodosiopolis
 τῇ νυκτὶ ἐκείνων μηδὲν νοοῦντων. ἀλλ' οὖν διὰ τὸ
by-the night they nothing perceiving but then because-of the
 μὴ θέλειν τοὺς Ἰβήρας πορθηθῆναι τὴν Θεοδοσιουπόλιν
not to-wish the Iberians to-be-sacked — Theodosiopolis
 ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον σιταρχεῖσθαι, τούτου ἔνεκα οὐχ ὑπήκουσαν
but rather to-be-provisioned of-this for-the-sake not they-obeyed
 καὶ δέδωκαν τὸ κάστρον τὸ Κετζέον, καίτοι καὶ ὄρκον
and gave the fortress — Ketzeon although even (an)-oath
 ἔγγραφον δεχόμενοι τοῦ μετὰ τὸ παραληφθῆναι τὴν
written receiving of-the after the to-be-taken —
 Θεοδοσιουπόλιν ἀποστραφῆναι αὐτοῖς τὸ τοιοῦτον κάστρον.
Theodosiopolis to-be-returned to-them the such fortress

Ὅτι οὐδέποτε ἐβουλήθησαν οἱ Ἰβηρες πραιδεῦσαι ἢ
that never wished the Iberians to-plunder or
 αἰχμαλωτίσαι τὰ περίξ τοῦ κάστρου Θεοδοσιουπόλεως
to-take-captive the(-parts) around the fortress of-Theodosiopolis
 ἢ τὰ χωρία αὐτοῦ, ἢ εἰς τὸ κάστρον τοῦ Ἀβνίκου ἢ
or the villages its or at the fortress — of-Abnikon or
 τὰ περὶ αὐτὸ χωρία, ἢ εἰς τὸ κάστρον Μαντζικιέρτ καὶ
the around it villages or at the fortress Manzikert and
 εἰς τὴν αὐτοῦ ἐπικράτειαν.

in the its dominion

Ὅτι καθὼς ἐνίσταται ὁ κουροπαλάτης περὶ τῶν
that as insists the curopalates concerning the
 χωρίων τῆς Φασιανῆς ἐπιζητῶν ὅλην τὴν Φασιανὴν καὶ
villages — of-Phasiane seeking whole — Phasiane and
 τὸ κάστρον τοῦ Ἀβνίκου, προσφασίζόμενος χρυσοβούλλια
the fortress — of-Abnikon alleging chrysobulls
 ἔχειν τοῦ μακαρίου βασιλέως τοῦ κυροῦ Ῥωμανοῦ καὶ τῆς
to-have of-the blessed emperor the lord Romanos and of-the
 ἡμετέρας βασιλείας, ὧν καὶ τὰ ἴσα πρὸς ἡμᾶς ἀπέστειλε
our majesty of-which also the copies to us he-sent
 διὰ τοῦ Ζουρβανέλη πρωτοσπαθαρίου τοῦ ἀζάτου αὐτοῦ,
through — Zourbanele protospatharius the azat his
 ταῦτα ἐπισκεψάμενοι εὑρομεν αὐτὸν μηδεμίαν βοήθειαν
these having-examined we-found him no help
 ἔχοντα. τὸ μὲν γὰρ χρυσοβούλλιον τοῦ πενθεροῦ ἡμῶν
having the indeed for chrysobull of-the father-in-law our
 περιέχει ὑποσχέσθαι τὸν αὐτὸν κουροπαλάτην, ὡς δι' ὄρκου
contains to-have-promised the same curopalates as by oath
 ἐβεβαίωσεν αὐτὸν οἰκείᾳ χειρὶ ἐγγραψάμενος, τοῦ διαμείναι
confirmed it with-own hand having-written of-the to-remain
 ἐν τῇ πίστει τῆς ἡμετέρας βασιλείας καὶ τοῖς μὲν ἐχθροῖς
in the faith of-the our majesty and the indeed enemies

ἡμῶν ἀντιμάχεσθαι τοῖς δὲ φίλοις ὑπερασπίζεσθαι, καὶ
our to-fight-against the and friends to-defend and
 τὴν ἀνατολὴν ὑπόσπονδον ποιῆσαι τῇ βασιλείᾳ ἡμῶν, καὶ
the east tributary to-make to-the majesty our and
 κάστρα χειρώσασθαι, καὶ μεγάλα πρὸς θεραπείαν ἡμῶν
fortresses to-subdue and great for service our
 ἔργα ποιήσασθαι· καὶ ὑπεσχέθη αὐτοῖς παρὰ τοῦ πενθεροῦ
works to-do and it-was-promised to-them by the father-in-law
 ἡμῶν ἵνα ἐὰν φυλάξῃ τὴν τοιαύτην πίστιν δούλωσιν καὶ
our that if he-keep the such faith servitude and
 εὐγνωμοσύνην, διαμείνῃ ἀμετασάλευτος καὶ αὐτὸς καὶ οἱ
loyalty he-will-remain unmoved both he and those
 τοῦ γένους αὐτοῦ ἐν τῇ τούτου ἀρχῇ καὶ ἐξουσίᾳ, καὶ οὐ
of-the family his in the his rule and authority and not
 μεταστήσει τὰ ὅρια τῶν τόπων αὐτοῦ ἀλλὰ κατὰ τῶν
will-move the boundaries of-the places his but according-to the
 πρώων βασιλέων τὰ σύμφωνα στέρξει καὶ περαιτέρω
former emperors the agreements will-be-content-with and further
 μὴ ὑπερβήσεται, καὶ ὅτι οὐδὲ καλύσει αὐτὸν καταστρέψαι
not will-overstep and that not-even will-hinder him to-destroy
 τὴν Θεοδοσιούπολιν καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ κάστρα τῶν ἐχθρῶν,
— Theodosiopolis and the other fortresses of-the enemies
 κἂν τε διὰ αὐτοῦ μόνου πολιορκηθήσονται κἂν τε δι'
whether — through him alone they-be-besieged or — through
 αὐτοῦ τοῦ στρατοπέδου ἡμῶν. ταῦτα μὲν τὰ κεφάλαια
the-very the army our these indeed the heads
 περιέχουσι τὰ χρυσοβούλλια, ἐξ ὧν οὐδεμίαν βοήθειαν
contain the chrysobulls from which no help
 ὁ κουροπαλάτης ἔχει· τὸ μὲν γὰρ τοῦ πενθεροῦ ἡμῶν
the curopalates has the indeed for of-the father-in-law our
 διαγορεύει ὅτι οὐ παρασαλεύομεν αὐτὸν ἐκ τῶν παλαιῶν
declares that not we-dislodge him from the ancient

ὁρίων τῆς χώρας αὐτοῦ, καὶ ὅτι, ἐὰν δυνηθῇ, εἴτε καὶ
boundaries of-the land his and that if he-be-able whether even
 μόνος εἴτε καὶ μετὰ τοῦ στρατοπέδου ἡμῶν, πολιορκήσει
alone or even with the army our he-will-besiege
 καὶ καταστρέψει τὴν Θεοδοσιούπολιν καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ κάστρα
and will-destroy — Theodosiopolis and the other fortresses
 τῶν ἐχθρῶν, οὐχὶ δὲ κατασχεῖν αὐτὰ εἰς τελείαν δεσποτείαν
of-the enemies not and to-hold them in complete mastery
 καὶ κυριότητα· τὸ δὲ τῆς βασιλείας ἡμῶν περιέχει ἵνα,
and lordship the and of-the majesty our contains that
 ὅσους ἂν τόπους δυνηθῇ καὶ αὐτὸς καὶ ὁ ἀνεψιὸς αὐτοῦ
as-many — places he-be-able both he and the nephew his
 ὁ μάγιστρος Ἀδρανασὴ ἐξ οἰκείας δυνάμεως καθυποτάξαι
the magistros Adranase by own power to-subject
 τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν ἢ ἀπὸ τοῦ νῦν καθυποτάξει, κατέχει ἐπὶ
of-the Hagarenes or from the now he-shall-subject he-may-hold in
 δεσποτεία καὶ κυριότητι. καὶ ἐπεὶ οὔτε ἐξ οἰκείας δυνάμεως
mastery and lordship and since neither by own power
 τὴν Θεοδοσιούπολιν κατεστρέψατο οὔτε τὸ Ἀβνίκον οὔτε τὸ
— Theodosiopolis he-destroyed nor — Abnikon nor —
 Μαστάτον, οὐκ ὀφείλει ταῦτα κατέχειν ὡς ὄντα ἔνθεν τοῦ
Mastaton not he-ought these to-hold as being on-this-side of-the
 Ἑραξ ποταμοῦ ἥτοι τοῦ Φάσιδος, διότι τὸ μὲν κάστρον τοῦ
Erax river that-is of-the Phasis because the indeed fortress —
 Ἀβνίκου μέχρι τοῦ νῦν ἦν αὐτεξούσιον καὶ αὐτοδέσποτον,
of-Abnikon until the now was independent and self-ruled
 ἔχον ἴδιον ἀμνηρᾶν, καὶ πολλάκις ὁ λαὸς τῆς βασιλείας
having own emir and often the people of-the majesty
 ἡμῶν ἐπραΐδευσεν αὐτό· ἀλλὰ καὶ ὁ πρωτοσπαθάριος
our plundered it but also the protospatharius
 Ἰωάννης καὶ στρατηγὸς ὁ Ἀρραβωνίτης, καὶ ὁ πατρίκιος
John and general — Arrabonites and the patrician

Θεόφιλος καὶ ἀρτίως στρατηγὸς Θεοδοσιουπόλεως, καὶ
Theophilos and now general of-Theodosiopolis and
 οἱ λοιποὶ στρατηγοὶ μεγάλην πραιδαν καὶ αἰχμαλωσίαν
the other generals great plunder and captivity
 εἰς αὐτὸ εἰργάσαντο, κατακαύσαντες τὰ χωρία αὐτοῦ,
on it worked having-burned the villages its
 μηδέποτε τοῦ κουροπαλάτου πραιδεύσαντος αὐτό. καὶ ἥνικα
never the curopalates having-plundered it and when
 ἠφανίσθησαν τὰ τούτου χωρία παρὰ τῆς βασιλείας ἡμῶν,
were-destroyed the its villages by the majesty our
 ὑπεισῆλθον οἱ Ἰβηρες καὶ κατεκράτησαν αὐτά, πειρώμενοι
crept-in the Iberians and took-hold-of them trying
 ἐκ τούτου τὸ κάστρον κρατῆσαι. ὁ δὲ ἀμυρᾶς πολλάκις
from this the fortress to-hold the and emir often
 μνηθεὶς παρὰ τοῦ πατρικίου Θεοφίλου καὶ στρατηγοῦ,
having-been-warned by the patrician Theophilos and general
 καὶ ἰδὼν ὅτι οὐδαμῶς ἔχει ἐλπίδα ζωῆς, ὑπετάγη
and having-seen that in-no-way he-has hope of-life was-subjected
 καὶ κατένευσε δούλος γενέσθαι τῆς βασιλείας ἡμῶν,
and consented (a)-servant to-become of-the majesty our
 δοὺς τὸν υἱὸν αὐτοῦ ὄψιδα. τὸ δὲ Μαστάτον ὑπῆρχε
having-given the son his (as)-bostage — and Mastaton belonged
 τῶν Θεοδοσιουπολιτῶν· καὶ ἥνικα ὁ μάγιστρος Ἰωάννης
to-the Theodosiopolitans and when the magistros John
 ἐπολιόρκησε τὴν Θεοδοσιούπολιν ἑπτὰ μῆνας διὰ τὸ μὴ
besieged — Theodosiopolis seven months because-of the not
 δύνασθαι παραλαβεῖν αὐτήν, ἀποστείλας λαὸν παρέλαβε
to-be-able to-take it having-sent people he-took
 τὸ αὐτὸ κάστρον τὸ Μαστάτον καὶ εἰσήγαγεν ἐν αὐτῷ τὸν
the same fortress — Mastaton and put in it the
 πρωτοσπαθάριον Πετρωνᾶν τὸν Βόιλαν, τὸν τότε ὄντα
protospatharius Petronas the Boilas the(-one) then being

κατεπάνω Νικοπόλεως. ὁ δὲ μάγιστρος Παγκράτειος
katepano of-Nikopolis the and magistros Pankratos
 συνταξιδεύσας τῷ αὐτῷ μαγίστρῳ ἐν Θεοδοσιουπόλει,
having-campaigned-with the same magistros at Theodosiopolis
 ἡνίκα ἔμελλεν ἀναχωρεῖν, παρεκάλεσεν ἵνα δώσῃ αὐτῷ τὸ
when he-was-about to-withdraw begged that he-give him the
 τοιοῦτον κάστρον, ποιήσας ἔγγραφον ὄρκον πρὸς αὐτὸν
such fortress having-made (a)-written oath to him
 τοῦ ἐπικρατεῖν αὐτὸ καὶ μηδέποτε τοῦτο τοῖς Σαρακηνοῖς
of-the to-hold it and never it to-the Saracens
 ἐπιδοῦναι. καὶ διὰ τὸ εἶναι αὐτὸν καὶ Χριστιανὸν καὶ
to-hand-over and because-of the to-be him both (a)-Christian and
 δοῦλον τῆς βασιλείας ἡμῶν, πιστεύσας τῷ ὄρκῳ αὐτοῦ
(a)-servant of-the majesty our having-trusted the oath his
 δέδωκεν αὐτὸ τῷ εἰρημένῳ Παγκρατεῖ· ὁ δὲ πάλιν
he-gave it to-the said Pankratos he and again
 ἀπεχαρίσατο αὐτὸ τοῖς Θεοδοσιουπολίταις· καὶ ἡνίκα
gave it to-the Theodosiopolitans and when
 παρελήφθη ἡ Θεοδοσιούπολις, ὑπεισελθόντες οἱ Ἰβηρες
was-taken — Theodosiopolis having-crept-in the Iberians
 ἐκράτησαν αὐτό. διότι οὔτε τοῦ τοιοῦτου κάστρου τοῦ
beld it because neither of-the such fortress —
 Μαστάτου οὔτε τοῦ Ἀβνίκου ἔχουσιν ἐξουσίαν ἐπιζητεῖν,
of-Mastaton nor — of-Abnikon have-they authority to-lay-claim
 ἀλλ' ἐπειδὴ ὁ κουροπαλάτης πιστὸς καὶ ὀρθὸς δοῦλος
but since the curopalates (a)-faithful and upright servant
 καὶ φίλος ἡμῶν ἐστί, διὰ τὴν αὐτοῦ παράκλησιν, ἵνα
and friend our is because-of the his entreaty that
 γένηται σύνορον τῆς Φασιανῆς ὁ ποταμὸς ὁ Ἐραξ
become (the)-boundary — of-Phasiane the river the Erax
 ᾗτοι ὁ Φᾶσις, καὶ τὰ μὲν ἀριστερὰ μέρη τὰ πρὸς
that-is the Phasis and the indeed left parts the(-ones) toward

τὴν Ἰλλυρίαν κατέχωσιν οἱ Ἰβηρες, τὰ δὲ δεξιὰ ὅσα
 — Illyria may-hold the Iberians the and right as-many-as
 εἰςὶ πρὸς τὴν Θεοδοσιούπολιν, καὶν τε κάστρα καὶν
 are toward — Theodosiopolis whether — fortresses or
 τε χωρία εἰσίν, ὧσιν ὑπὸ τὴν βασιλείαν ἡμῶν, τοῦ
 — villages they-are may-be under the majesty our the
 ποταμοῦ δηλονότι σύνορον ἀμφοτέρων ὑπάρχοντος, καθὼς
 river evidently boundary of-both being as
 καὶ ζῶν ὁ μακάριος Ἰωάννης Κουρκούας περὶ τούτου
 also living the blessed John Kourkouas about this
 ἐρωτηθεὶς ἐξείπε συμφέρον εἶναι τὸν ποταμὸν σύνορον.
 having-been-asked declared advantageous to-be the river (a)-boundary
 τὸ μὲν γὰρ ἀκριβὲς δίκαιον οὐδεμίαν ἐξουσίαν παρέχει
 the indeed for exact justice no authority furnishes
 τῷ κουροπαλάτῃ εἴτε εἰς τὰ ἔνθεν τοῦ ποταμοῦ
 to-the curopalates either over the(-parts) on-this-side of-the river
 εἴτε εἰς τὰ ἐκεῖθεν διακράτησιν ἔχειν, διότι τὰ τοιαῦτα
 or over the(-parts) beyond possession to-have because the such
 πάντα χωρία τῶν Θεοδοσιουπολιτῶν τὰ στρατεύματα
 all villages of-the Theodosioplitans the armies
 τῆς βασιλείας ἡμῶν ἠχμαλώτισαν καὶ ἐπυρπόλησαν, καὶ
 of-the majesty our took-captive and burned and
 οὐδέποτε χωρὶς ἡμετέρου λαοῦ Ἰβηρες ἐξῆλθον καὶ
 never without our people (the)-Iberians went-out and
 ἐπραΐδευσαν Θεοδοσιούπολιν, ἀλλ' αἰεὶ φίλους εἶχον αὐτοὺς
 plundered Theodosiopolis but always friends they-held them
 καὶ ἐπραγματεύοντο μετ' αὐτῶν, καὶ τῷ μὲν στόματι
 and traded with them and with-the indeed mouth
 ἤθελον πορθηθῆναι τὴν Θεοδοσιούπολιν, τῇ δὲ καρδίᾳ
 they-wished to-be-sacked — Theodosiopolis with-the but heart
 οὐδαμῶς ἐβούλοντο παραληφθῆναι αὐτήν. ἀλλ' ἡ βασιλεία
 in-no-way they-wished to-be-taken it but the majesty

ἡμῶν, ὡς εἴρηται, διὰ τὴν πρὸς τὸν κουροπαλάτην
our as has-been-said because-of the toward the curopalates
 ἀγάπην ἠθέλησε γενέσθαι τὸν ποταμὸν τὸν Ἑραξ ἥτοι
love wished to-become the river the Erax that-is
 τὸν Φᾶσιν σύνορον ἀμφοτέρων, καὶ ὀφείλουσιν ἀρκεῖσθαι
the Phasis (the)-boundary of-both and they-ought to-be-content
 εἰς τὴν τοιαύτην διακράτησιν καὶ μηδὲν πλεόν ἐπιζητεῖν.
with the such possession and nothing more to-seek

XLVI · THE IBERIANS AND ADRANOUTZION

The descent of the Iberian princes is given, and how Adranoutzion, a fortress rich in trade, passed among them. Asotios Kiskases, at odds with his son-in-law Kourkenios, offered it to the emperor through the monk Agapios, and Constans raised the imperial pennon over it. The Iberian princes threatened to go over to the Saracens, so Romanos disowned the act, ordered Constans out, and had young Asotios, son of Adranase, brought to the city and made curopalates. The chapter closes by turning to the past dealings between the Romans and other nations.

περὶ τῆς γενεαλογίας τῶν Ἰβήρων, καὶ τοῦ κάστρου
concerning the genealogy of-the Iberians and the fortress
 Ἀδρανουτζίου.

of-Adranoutzion

Ἰστέον ὅτι ὁ Παγκράτειος καὶ ὁ Δαβίδ καὶ ὁ
(one)-must-know that — Pankratos and — David and —
 Μάμπалиς ὃ ἐρμηνεύεται πανάγιος, ὑπῆρχον υἱοὶ τοῦ
Mampalis which is-interpreted all-holy were sons of-the
 μεγάλου Συμβατίου τοῦ Ἰβηρος. καὶ ἔλαχε τὸ Ἀδρανουτζί
great Symbatios the Iberian and fell — Adranoutzion
 εἰς κληρονομίαν τῷ Παγκρατεῖω, τῷ δὲ Δαβίδ ἔλαχεν
for inheritance — to-Pankratos — and to-David fell

ἑτέρα χώρα. ὁ δὲ Παγκράτειος ἐποίησεν υἱοὺς τρεῖς, τὸν
another land — and Pankratios begot sons three —
 Ἀδρανασέρ, τὸν Κουρκένιον καὶ τὸν πατρίκιον Ἀσώτιον
Adranase — Kourkenios and the patrician Asotios
 τὸν καὶ Κισκάσην, καὶ διεμέρισεν αὐτοῖς τὴν χώραν
the(-one) also Kiskases and divided to-them the land
 αὐτοῦ καὶ ἔλαχε τὸ Ἀδρανούτζη τῷ υἱῷ αὐτοῦ Κουρκενίῳ,
his and fell — Adranoutzion to-the son his Kourkenios
 καὶ αὐτοῦ τελευτήσαντος ἀτέκνου εἶασεν αὐτὸ τῷ ἀδελφῷ
and-be having-died childless left it to-the brother
 αὐτοῦ Ἀσωτίῳ τῷ καὶ Κισκάσῃ. ὁ δὲ πατρίκιος Ἀσώτιος
his Asotios the(-one) also Kiskases the and patrician Asotios
 ὁ καὶ Κισκάσης ἐπῆρε γαμβρὸν εἰς θυγατέρα αὐτοῦ
the(-one) also Kiskases took (as)-son-in-law for (a)-daughter his
 τὸν Κουρκένην ἐκεῖνον τὸν μάγιστρον, ὅστις δυναστεύσας
— Kourkenios that the magistros who having-grown-powerful
 ἀφείλετο ἐκ τοῦ πενθεροῦ αὐτοῦ Ἀσωτίου τὸ Ἀδρανούτζη
took-away from the father-in-law his Asotios — Adranoutzion
 κατὰ τυραννίδα, καὶ δέδωκεν αὐτῷ εἰς ἀντισηκωσιν τό τε
by tyranny and gave him in exchange — both
 Τυρόκαστρον καὶ τὴν ποταμίαν τοῦ Ἀτζαρά, τὴν οὖσαν
Tyrokastron and the river-land — of-Atzara the(-one) being
 σύνορον τῆς Ῥωμανίας εἰς Κώλωριν. εἶχε δὲ γυναῖκα ὁ
(the)-boundary — of-Romania at Kolorin had and (as)-wife the
 πατρίκιος Ἀσώτιος ὁ καὶ Κισκάσης τὴν ἀδελφὴν τοῦ
patrician Asotios the(-one) also Kiskases the sister of-the
 μαγίστρου Γεωργίου καὶ ἐξουσιαστοῦ Ἀβασγίας· καὶ ὅτε
magistros George and exousiastes of-Abasgia and when
 ἐγένοντο κατ' ἀλλήλων ὅ τε μάγιστρος Κουρκένιος καὶ
became against each-other the both magistros Kourkenios and
 ὁ μάγιστρος Γεώργιος καὶ ἐξουσιαστὴς Ἀβασγίας διὰ
the magistros George and exousiastes of-Abasgia because-of

τὸ συναγωνίζεσθαι τὸν πατρίκιον Ἀσώτιον τοῦ ἐξουσιαστοῦ
the to-fight-alongside the patrician Asotios of-the exousiastes
 Ἀβασγίας, δυνηθεὶς ὁ Κουρκένιος ἀφείλετο καὶ τὴν
of-Abasgia having-prevailed — Kourkenios took-away also the
 ἀντισήκωσιν ἣν δέδωκεν αὐτῷ ὑπὲρ τοῦ Ἀδρανουτζίου, καὶ
exchange which he-had-given him for — Adranoutzion and
 ἐδίωξεν αὐτόν, καὶ ἀπῆλθεν εἰς Ἀβασγίαν. τελευτήσαντος
drove-out him and he-went-away to Abasgia having-died
 δὲ τοῦ μαγίστρου Κουρκενίου κατελείφθη τὸ Ἀδρανουτζίη
and the magistros Kourkenios was-left — Adranoutzion
 τῇ γυναικὶ αὐτοῦ τῇ τοῦ πατρικίου Ἀσωτίου τοῦ Κισκάση
to-the wife his the of-the patrician Asotios — Kiskases
 θυγατρὶ ὡς πατρικὸν αὐτῆς. ὅτε δὲ διεμέριζον τὴν
daughter as paternal(-property) her when and they-were-dividing the
 χώραν τοῦ μαγίστρου Κουρκενίου μεθ' ὅπλων ὃ τε
land of-the magistros Kourkenios with arms — both
 Ἀσώτιος ὁ κουροπαλάτης καὶ ὁ μάγιστρος Γεώργιος
Asotios the curopalates and the magistros George
 ὁ ἐξουσιαστὴς Ἀβασγίας καὶ ὁ μάγιστρος Παγκράτειος
the exousiastes of-Abasgia and the magistros Pankratis
 ὁ ἀδελφὸς τοῦ προρρηθέντος κουροπαλάτου, ἦλθον εἰς
the brother of-the aforesaid curopalates they-came to
 συμβίβασιν καὶ ἐπῆρεν ἕκαστος τὸ πλησιάζον αὐτῷ.
agreement and took each the(-part) bordering him
 τὸ δὲ Ἀδρανουτζίη ἐπλησίαζε τῷ Συμβατίῳ τῷ τοῦ
— and Adranoutzion bordered — on-Symbatios the of-the
 προρρηθέντος Δαβὶδ υἱῷ. τότε ἐκράτησαν πάντες τὴν
aforesaid David son then seized all the
 γυναῖκα τοῦ μαγίστρου Κουρκενίου ἥγουν τὴν θυγατέρα τοῦ
wife of-the magistros Kourkenios that-is the daughter of-the
 πατρικίου Ἀσωτίου τοῦ καὶ Κισκάση, λέγοντες ὅτι σὺ
patrician Asotios the(-one) also Kiskases saying that you

γυνή οὔσα οὐ δύνασαι κρατεῖν τὸ κάστρον. τότε δέδωκεν
(a)-woman being not are-able to-hold the fortress then gave
 ὁ Συμβάτιος εἰς συνάντησιν τοῦ κάστρου χωρία τῇ
 — Symbatios in exchange of-the fortress villages to-the
 γυναικί, καὶ ἀνελάβετο τὸ τοιοῦτο κάστρον τὸ Ἀδρανούτζιν.
woman and took the such fortress — Adranoutzion
 Ἰστέον ὅτι ἡ συγγένεια τῶν τοιούτων Ἰβήρων τοῦτον
(one)-must-know that the kinship of-the such Iberians this
 ἔχει τὸν τρόπον. τοῦ Δαβίδ ἡ μητὴρ καὶ τοῦ Ἀδρανασῆ
has the manner — of-David the mother and — of-Adranase
 τοῦ κουροπαλάτου, τοῦ πατρὸς τοῦ ἀρτίως Ἀσωτίου
the curopalates the father of-the now Asotios
 τοῦ κουροπαλάτου, ὑπῆρχον δύο ἀδελφῶν παιδία ἧγουν
the curopalates were of-two sisters children that-is
 ἐξάδελφαι. εἶχε δὲ Συμβάτιος ὁ τοῦ Δαβίδ υἱὸς γυναῖκα
cousins had and Symbatios the — of-David son (as)-wife
 τὴν θυγατέρα τοῦ μαγίστρου Παγκρατείου τοῦ πατρὸς τοῦ
the daughter of-the magistros Pankratios the father —
 Ἀδρανασῆ τοῦ ἀρτίως μαγίστρου· καὶ τελευτησάσης ἔλαβεν
of-Adranase the now magistros and she-having-died took
 ὁ Ἀδρανασῆ τὴν ἀδελφὴν τοῦ Συμβατίου τοῦ υἱοῦ τοῦ Δαβίδ.
 — Adranase the sister — of-Symbatios the son — of-David
 Ὅτι τὸ κάστρον τὸ Ἀδρανούτζιν ὀχυρόν ἐστι πάννυ, ἔχει δὲ
that the fortress — Adranoutzion strong is very it-has and
 καὶ ῥαπάτιν μέγα ὡς χωρόπολιν· καὶ αἱ πραγματεῖαι τῆς τε
also (a)-suburb great as (a)-country-town and the merchandises — both
 Τραπεζοῦντος καὶ τῆς Ἰβηρίας καὶ Ἀβασγίας καὶ ἀπὸ πάσης
of-Trebizond and — of-Iberia and Abasgia and from all
 τῆς χώρας τῆς Ἀρμενίας καὶ τῆς Συρίας ἐκεῖσε ἀφικνοῦνται·
the land — of-Armenia and — of-Syria there arrive
 ἔχει δὲ καὶ κομμέρκιον ἐκ τῶν τοιούτων πραγματειῶν
it-has and also customs-dues from the such merchandises

ἄπειρον. ἡ δὲ χώρα τοῦ κάστρου Ἀδρανουτζίου ἦτοι τὸ
boundless the and land of-the fortress Adranoutzion that-is —
 Ἀρζὴν ἔστι καὶ πολλή καὶ εὐφορος, καὶ ὑπάρχει κλειδὶν
Arzen is both large and fertile and is (the)-key
 τῆς τε Ἰβηρίας καὶ Ἀβασγίας καὶ τῶν Μισχιῶν.
— both of-Iberia and Abasgia and of-the Mischians
 Ὅτι ὁ μακάριος βασιλεὺς ὁ κύρις Ῥωμανὸς ἀπέστειλε τὸν
that the blessed emperor the lord Romanos sent the
 πατρίκιον Κώνσταντα καὶ δρουγγάριον τοῦ πλωΐμου, τῷ
patrician Constans and drungarius of-the fleet at-the
 τότε καιρῷ πρωτοσπαθαρίου καὶ μαγγλαβίτου τυγχάνοντος,
then time protospatharius and manglabites being
 δεδωκὼς αὐτῷ καὶ ἱμάτιον μαγιστράτου πρὸς τὸ ποιῆσαι
having-given him also (a)-robe of-magistracy for the to-make
 τὸν Κουρκένιον τὸν Ἰβηρα μάγιστρον. μετὰ δὲ τὸ
— Kourkenios the Iberian magistros after and the
 ἐξελθεῖν τὸν πατρίκιον Κώνσταντα καὶ δρουγγάριον τοῦ
to-go-out the patrician Constans and drungarius of-the
 πλωΐμου μέχρι Νικομηδείας εἰσῆλθεν ὁ μοναχὸς Ἀγάπιος
fleet as-far-as Nicomedia came the monk Agapios
 ὁ τοῦ Κυμηνᾶ, ὃς ἦν τῷ τότε χρόνῳ εἰς τὴν ἁγίαν
the(-one) — of-Kymenas who was at-the then time in the holy
 πόλιν εὐχῆς ἔνεκα· καὶ διερχομένου αὐτοῦ τὴν Ἰβηρίαν
city of-prayer for-the-sake and passing him — Iberia
 κατήντησεν εἰς τὸ κάστρον τὸ Ἀδρανουτζίον. καὶ εἶχεν ὁ
arrived at the fortress — Adranoutzion and had the
 πατρίκιος Ἀσώτιος ὁ καὶ Κισκάσης καλούμενος ἔχθραν
patrician Asotios the(-one) also Kiskases called enmity
 μετὰ τοῦ γαμβροῦ αὐτοῦ τοῦ Κουρκένη, καὶ ἐλάλησεν
with the son-in-law his — Kourkenios and he-spoke
 εἰς τὸν μοναχὸν Ἀγάπιον ὅτι ἐνορκῶ σε εἰς τὸν θεὸν
to the monk Agapios that I-adjure you by — God

καὶ εἰς τὴν δύναμιν τοῦ τιμίου καὶ ζωοποιοῦ σταυροῦ
and by the power of-the precious and life-giving cross
 ἵνα ἀπέλθῃς ἐν τῇ πόλει καὶ εἰπῇς τὸν βασιλέα, ἵνα
that you-go-away to the city and tell the emperor that
 ἀποστείλῃ καὶ παραλάβῃ τὸ κάστρον μου καὶ ἔχῃ ὑπὸ
he-send and take-over the fortress my and have(-it) under
 τὴν ἐξουσίαν αὐτοῦ. ὁ δὲ μοναχὸς Ἀγάπιος εἰσελθὼν ἐν
the authority his the and monk Agapios having-come to
 τῇ πόλει διηγήσατο τὸν βασιλέα ὅσα ἐλάλησε πρὸς
the city related-to the emperor (the-things)-which spoke to
 αὐτὸν ὁ πατρίκιος Ἀσώτιος ὁ καὶ Κισκάσης. τοῦ
him the patrician Asotios the(-one) also Kiskases the
 δὲ προρρηθέντος πατρικίου Κώνσταντος καὶ δρουγγαρίου
and aforesaid patrician Constans and drungarius
 τοῦ πλωΐμου ἐν Νικομηδεῖα τυγχάνοντος διὰ τὴν
of-the fleet in Nicomedia being because-of the
 προρρηθεῖσαν τῆς προβολῆς τοῦ μαγίστρου τοῦ Κουρκένη
aforesaid of-the promotion of-the magistros — Kourkenios
 Ἰβηρος ὑπόθεσιν, ἐκ προσταξέως τοῦ βασιλέως ἔλαβε τὸ
(the)-Iberian matter by command of-the emperor received the
 πιττάκιον τοῦ πατρικίου Συμεὼν τοῦ ἀσηκρητίς, ὥς ὅτι
note of-the patrician Symeon the asekretis as that
 κελεύει ὁ βασιλεὺς ἡμῶν ὁ ἅγιος καταλιπεῖν σε πᾶσας
orders the emperor our the holy to-leave you all
 σου τὰς δουλείας, καὶ ἀπελθεῖν ἐν συντομίᾳ πρὸς τὸν
your the services and to-go-away in haste to the
 πατρίκιον Ἀσώτιον τὸν καὶ Κισκάσῃν λεγόμενον, καὶ
patrician Asotios the(-one) also Kiskases called and
 παραλαβεῖν τὸ κάστρον αὐτοῦ τὸ Ἀδρανούτζιν, ἐπειδὴ
to-take-over the fortress his — Adranoutzion since
 διὰ τοῦ μοναχοῦ Ἀγαπίου ἐδηλοποίησε τὸν βασιλέα ἡμῶν
through the monk Agapios he-made-known-to the emperor our

τὸν ἅγιον τοῦ ἀποστεῖλαι πιστὸν ἄνθρωπον καὶ οἰκεῖον
the holy of-the to-send (a)-faithful man and own
 τοῦ παραλαβεῖν τὸ κάστρον αὐτοῦ τὸ Ἀδρανούτζιν. καὶ
of-the to-take-over the fortress his — Adranoutzion and
 ἀπερχομένου σου ἐν Χαλδία ἀναλαβοῦ ἄρχοντας χρησίμους,
going-away you to Chaldia take officers useful
 οὓς ἐπίστασαι εἶναι ἡνδρειωμένους καὶ πιστούς, καὶ εἴσελθε
whom you-know to-be brave and faithful and enter
 καὶ κράτησον τὸ τοιοῦτον κάστρον. τοῦ δὲ πατρικίου
and bold the such fortress the and patrician
 Κώνσταντος καὶ δρουγγαρίου τοῦ πλωΐμου ἀπελθόντος
Constans and drungarius of-the fleet having-gone-away
 ἐν Χαλδία, καὶ ἀναλαβομένου τουρμάρχας χρησίμους καὶ
to Chaldia and having-taken tourmarchs useful and
 ἄρχοντας καὶ λαὸν μέχρι τ', εἰσῆλθεν ἐν Ἰβηρία, καὶ
officers and people up-to 300 entered into Iberia and
 ἐκράτησεν αὐτὸν ὁ μακάριος Δαβὶδ ὁ ἀδελφὸς Ἀσωτίου
beld him the blessed David the brother of-Asotios
 τοῦ ἀρτίως κουροπαλάτου, λέγων πρὸς αὐτὸν “ποῦ
the now curopalates saying to him where
 ἀπεστάλης παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως, καὶ τίνα δουλείαν ὀφείλεις
were-you-sent by the emperor and what service do-you-owe
 ἐκτελέσαι, ὅτι τοσοῦτον λαὸν ἐπιφέρει μετὰ σεαυτοῦ”;
to-perform that so-much people you-bring with yourself
 ἐσκέπτοντο γὰρ διὰ τὸ ἀποθανεῖν Ἀδρανασὲ τὸν
they-were-considering for because-of the to-have-died Adranase the(-one)
 καὶ κουροπαλάτην, ὅτι μήπως ὁ βασιλεὺς τὸν Κουρκένιον
also curopalates that perhaps the emperor — Kourkenios
 ὀφείλῃ τιμῆσαι κουροπαλάτην, ἐπειδὴ ἀναμεταξὺ οἱ
ought to-honor (as)-curopalates since meanwhile those
 τοῦ Ἀδρανασὲ τοῦ κουροπαλάτου παῖδες τοῦ πατρὸς
— of-Adranase the curopalates children the father

αὐτῶν τελευτήσαντος φιλονεικείας τινὰς ἔσχον μετὰ τοῦ
their having-died rivalries some had with the
 ἐξαδέλφου αὐτῶν. διὰ τὸ καὶ τὸν πρῶτον ἄνθρωπον
cousin their because-of the also the first man
 ἀποστεῖλαι μετὰ μεγάλου κανισκίου τὸν Κουρκένιον πρὸς
to-send with (a)-great gift-basket — Kourkenios to
 τὸν βασιλέα, ἐξιατούμενον τὸ κουροπαλατικὴν ἢ τὸ
the emperor asking-for the curopalate or the
 μαγιστράτον, ὑπέλαβον οἱ τέσσαρες ἀδελφοί, ἥγουν τοῦ
magistracy supposed the four brothers that-is —
 Ἀδρανασὲ τοῦ κουροπαλάτου οἱ παῖδες, ὅτι διὰ τὸ
of-Adranase the curopalates the children that because-of the
 ποιῆσαι τὸν Κουρκένιον κουροπαλάτην ἀπέρχεται ἐκεῖσε. ὁ
to-make — Kourkenios curopalates goes there the
 δὲ πατρικίος Κώνστας ἀπελογήσατο ὅτι διὰ τὸ μέλλειν
and patrician Constans answered that because-of the to-be-about
 με τιμῆσαι τὸν Κουρκένιον μάγιστρον ἐπιφέρομαι καὶ τὸν
me to-honor — Kourkenios (as)-magistros I-bring also the
 τοσοῦτον λαόν, καὶ ἀποχαιρετίσας αὐτὸν ὅτι ἀπέρχομαι
so-great people and having-taken-leave-of him that I-am-going
 εἰς τὸν Δαβίδ τὸν μάγιστρον. εἶχε δὲ ὁ αὐτὸς πατρικίος
to — David the magistros had and the same patrician
 Κώνστας καὶ πρὸς τὸν Δαβίδ κέλευσιν ἀπὸ τοῦ βασιλέως
Constans also to — David (an)-order from the emperor
 καὶ ξένια. καὶ ἀπελθόντος τοῦ αὐτοῦ πατρικίου Κώνσταντος
and gifts and having-gone-away the same patrician Constans
 εἰς τὴν χώραν τοῦ Κουρκενίου ἐτίμησεν αὐτὸν μάγιστρον,
to the land — of-Kourkenios honored him (as)-magistros
 καὶ εἰσῆλθεν εἰς τὸ κάστρον τοῦ πατρικίου Ἀσωτίου τοῦ
and entered into the fortress of-the patrician Asotios the(-one)
 καὶ Κισκάση, εἰς τὸ Ἀδρανούτζιν, καὶ δέδωκεν αὐτῷ τὴν
also Kiskases into — Adranoutzion and gave him the

πρὸς αὐτὸν τοῦ βασιλέως κέλευσιν, οὐ περὶ τοῦ κάστρου
to him of-the emperor order not concerning the fortress
 Ἀδρανουτζίου περιέχουσάν τι, ἀλλὰ περὶ ἑτέρων
of-Adranoutzion containing anything but concerning other
 ὑποθέσεων. εἶπε δὲ πρὸς αὐτὸν ὁ πατρίκιος Κώνστας ὅτι
matters said and to him the patrician Constans that
 καὶν μὲν ἢ κέλευσις οὐδὲν περιέχει περὶ τοῦ κάστρου
even-if indeed the order nothing contains concerning the fortress
 Ἀδρανουτζίου, ἀλλ' οὖν τοῦ μοναχοῦ Ἀγαπίου πρὸς τὸν
of-Adranoutzion but then the monk Agapios to the
 βασιλέα εἰσελθόντος καὶ ἀναγγέιλαντος αὐτὸν ὅσα
emperor having-come and having-reported-to him (the-things)-which
 καὶ παρήγγειλας αὐτὸν περὶ τοῦ κάστρου Ἀδρανουτζίου,
also you-charged him concerning the fortress of-Adranoutzion
 διὰ τοῦτο καὶ ἀπέστειλέ με ὅπως παραλάβω τὸ κάστρον
because-of this also he-sent me so-that I-take-over the fortress
 καὶ εἰσαγάγω ἐν αὐτῷ ὅνπερ περιφέρομαι λαόν, καὶ ἐπειδὴ,
and put in it which I-bring-along people and since
 καθὰ προείρηται, εἶχεν ἔχθραν ὁ πατρίκιος Ἀσώτιος ὁ
as has-been-said-before had enmity the patrician Asotios the(-one)
 καὶ Κισκάσης μετὰ τοῦ γαμβροῦ αὐτοῦ τοῦ Κουρκένη,
also Kiskases with the son-in-law his — Kourkenios
 προεθυμήθη δοῦναι τὸ κάστρον αὐτοῦ μᾶλλον τὸν βασιλέα,
he-was-eager to-give the fortress his rather to-the emperor
 ὁ δὲ πατρίκιος Κώνστας εἶχε παρ' ἑαυτῷ φλάμουλα, καὶ
the and patrician Constans had with himself pennons and
 ἐπιδέδωκε τῷ πατρικίῳ Ἀσωτίῳ τῷ καὶ Κισκάσῃ ὁ
banded(-them)-over to-the patrician Asotios the(-one) also Kiskases he
 δὲ λαβὼν αὐτὸ εἰς κοντάριον περιέθηκε, καὶ ἐπιδέδωκε
and having-taken it on (a)-spear put(-it)-round and banded(-it)-over
 τῷ πατρικίῳ Κώνσαντι εἰπὼν ὅτι ἐπίστησον αὐτὸ
to-the patrician Constans having-said that set it

ἄνωθεν εἰς τὸ τείχος, ἵνα γνῶσι πάντες τοῦ βασιλέως
above on the wall so-that may-know all of-the emperor
 εἶναι ἀπὸ τῆς σήμερον ἡμέρας τὸ τοιοῦτον κάστρον. καὶ
to-be from the today day the such fortress and
 τοῦτο ποιήσας ὁ πατρίκιος Κώνστας καὶ τὸ φλάμουλον
this having-done the patrician Constans and the pennon
 ἐπιστήσας ἄνωθεν τοῦ τείχους, καὶ τοὺς βασιλεῖς τῶν
having-set above the wall and the emperors of-the
 Ῥωμαίων κατὰ τὸ εἰωθὸς εὐφημήσας, πᾶσιν ἐγένετο
Romans according-to the custom having-acclaimed to-all it-became
 γνωστὸν ὅτι τὸ κάστρον τὸ Ἀδρανούτζιν ἀπεχαρίσατο ὁ
known that the fortress — Adranoutzion had-given the
 πατρίκιος Ἀσωτίος ὁ καὶ Κισκάσης τὸν βασιλέα. ὁ
patrician Asotios the(-one) also Kiskases to-the emperor —
 οὖν Δαβὶδ ὁ μέγας τὴν ἑαυτοῦ χώραν οὐκ ἐδίδου τὸν
then David the great the his-own land not gave to-the
 βασιλέα, κἂν τάχα συνορῇ τὴν τούρμαν τοῦ Ἀκαμφῆ καὶ
emperor although perhaps it-borders-on the tourma — of-Akampses and
 τῇ Μουργούλῃ. ὁ οὖν πατρίκιος Κώνστας ἀνήγαγε πρὸς
— on-Mourgoule the then patrician Constans referred to
 τὸν βασιλέα ἑξαποστείλας δύο ἀναφοράς, τὴν μὲν μίαν
the emperor having-sent two reports the indeed one
 περιέχουσαν ὅπως ἐτίμησε τὸν Κουρκένιον μάγιστρον
containing how he-had-honored — Kourkenios (as)-magistros
 καὶ ὅπως ὁ Κουρκένιος ἀπεδέξατο τὸ μαγιστράτον καὶ
and how — Kourkenios accepted the magistracy and
 εὐφώμησε τὸν βασιλέα, τὴν δὲ ἑτέραν περιέχουσαν περὶ
acclaimed the emperor the and other containing concerning
 τοῦ κάστρου Ἀδρανουτζίου, καὶ ὅπως τοῦτο παρέλαβε
the fortress of-Adranoutzion and how this he-took-over
 παρὰ τοῦ πατρικίου Ἀσωτίου τοῦ καὶ Κισκάσης, καὶ ὅτι
from the patrician Asotios the(-one) also Kiskases and that

μεγάλην διαφοράν καὶ ἔχθραν ἔχουσι πρὸς ἀλλήλους ὃ
great difference and enmity they-have toward each-other the
 τε πατρίκιος Ἀσώτιος μετὰ τοῦ γαμβροῦ αὐτοῦ μαγίστρου
both patrician Asotios with the son-in-law his (the)-magistros
 Κουρκενίου, καὶ ἵνα ἀποστείλῃ ὁ βασιλεὺς βοήθειαν τοῦ
Kourkenios and that send the emperor help of-the
 ταξατεῦσαι τὸ τοιοῦτον κάστρον, καὶ ὅτι, εἰ ἐνδέχεται,
to-garrison the such fortress and that if it-is-possible
 ἔλθῃ καὶ ὁ δομέστικος τῶν σχολῶν. ταῦτα ἰδόντες οἱ
come also the domestic of-the scholae these(-things) having-seen the
 Ἰβηρες, ὃ τε μάγιστρος Κουρκένιος καὶ ὁ μάγιστρος
Iberians the both magistros Kourkenios and the magistros
 Δαβίδ καὶ ὁ ἀδελφὸς τοῦ κουροπαλάτου Ἀσωτίου,
David and the brother of-the curopalates Asotios
 ἔγραψαν πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα ὅτι εἰ τοῦτο καταδέξεται ἡ
wrote to the emperor that if this accept the
 βασιλεία σου καὶ εἰσέλθῃ μέσον τῆς χώρας ἡμῶν,
majesty your and enter into-(the)-middle of-the land our
 ἐξερχόμεθα τῆς δουλώσεως τῆς βασιλείας σου καὶ γινόμεθα
we-go-out-from the servitude of-the majesty your and we-become
 μετὰ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν, ἐπειδὴ ἔχειν ἔχομεν μετὰ τῶν
with the Saracens since to-have we-are-bound with the
 Ῥωμαίων μάχας καὶ πολέμα, καὶ βιαζόμενοι κινῆσαι
Romans battles and wars and being-forced to-move
 ἔχομεν φοσσάτον κατὰ τε τοῦ κάστρου Ἀδρανουτζίου
we-are-bound (an)-army against both the fortress of-Adranoutzion
 καὶ τῆς χώρας αὐτῶν καὶ αὐτῆς τῆς Ῥωμανίας. ταῦτα
and the land their and itself — Romania these(-things)
 καὶ διὰ τῶν γραμμάτων τῶν προρρηθέντων ἀρχόντων
both through the letters of-the aforesaid princes
 ἀναμαθὼν καὶ παρὰ τῶν ἀποσταλέντων παρ' αὐτῶν
having-learned and from the sent by them

ἀνθρώπων ἀκηκοώς, καὶ πτοηθεῖς μήπως γένωνται
men having-heard and having-been-frightened lest they-become
 μετὰ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν καὶ ἐξαγάγωσι τὰ τῆς Περσίας
with the Saracens and bring-out the — of-Persia
 φοσσάτα κατὰ Ῥωμανίας, ἡρνήσατο λέγων ὅτι οὐκ
armies against Romania he-denied saying that not
 ἔγραψα τὸν πρωτοσπαθάριον Κώνσταντα τὸν μαγγλαβίτην
I-wrote-to the protospatharius Constans the manglabites
 περὶ τοῦ τοιούτου κάστρου καὶ τῆς χώρας αὐτοῦ τοῦ
concerning the such fortress and the land its of-the
 παραλαβεῖν αὐτήν, ἀλλ' ἐξ οἰκείας ὡς εἰπεῖν ἀφροσύνης
to-take-over it but from own so to-speak folly
 τοῦτο ἐποίησε. καὶ ταῦτα εἶπεν ὁ βασιλεὺς τελείως
this he-did and these(-things) said the emperor completely
 ἀποθεραπεῦσαι τούτους βουλόμενος· καὶ ἐδέξατο ὁ αὐτὸς
to-appease them wishing and received the same
 πρωτοσπαθάριος Κώνστας καὶ μαγγλαβίτης κέλευσιν μετὰ
protospatharius Constans and manglabites (an)-order with
 ὕβρεων καὶ ἀπειλῶν περιέχουσιν “τίς διωρίσατό σοι
insults and threats containing who ordained to-you
 τοῦτο ποιῆσαι; ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἔξελθε ἐκ τοῦ κάστρου, καὶ
this to-do but rather go-out from the fortress and
 ἀναλαβοῦ Ἀσώτιον τὸν υἱὸν τοῦ τετελευτηκότος Ἀδρανασέ
take Asotios the son of-the deceased Adranase
 τοῦ κουροπαλάτου, καὶ εἰσάγαγε αὐτὸν ἐνταῦθα, ὅπως
the curopalates and bring him here so-that
 τιμήσωμεν αὐτὸν τὴν τοῦ πατρὸς αὐτοῦ ἀξίαν τοῦ
we-may-honor him (with)-the of-the father his dignity of-the
 κουροπαλάτου.” ταῦτα δεξάμενος ὁ πατρίκιος Κώνστας
curopalates these(-things) having-received the patrician Constans
 κατέλιπε τὸν πατρίκιον Ἀσώτιον τὸν καὶ Κισκάσην εἰς
left the patrician Asotios the(-one) also Kiskases in

τὸ ἑαυτοῦ κάστρον τὸ Ἀδρανούτζιν, κακείνος ἐξελθὼν
the his-own fortress — Adranoutzion and-he having-gone-out
 ἀπῆει πρὸς τὸν Δαβίδ τὸν μέγαν, καὶ ἐπιδέδωκεν αὐτῷ
went to — David the great and handed(-over) to-him
 ἣν περιείχε πρὸς αὐτὸν κέλευσιν, καὶ ὑπέστρεψε,
which he-had-with(-him) for him order and returned
 καὶ εἰσῆλθεν εἰς Ἰβηρίαν, καὶ εἶρεν ἐπὶ τὸ αὐτὸ
and entered into Iberia and found at the same(-place)
 συνηθροισμένους τὸν τε μάγιστρον Κουρκένιον καὶ τὸν
gathered the both magistros Kourkenios and the
 μάγιστρον Δαβίδ τὸν ἀδελφὸν Ἀσωτίου τοῦ κουροπαλάτου.
magistros David the brother of-Asotios the curopalates
 καὶ ἤρξαντο φιλονεικεῖν καὶ κατονειδίζειν τὸν πατρίκιον
and they-began to-quarrel and to-reproach the patrician
 Κώνσταντα, λέγοντες ὅτι κρυπτὸς ἄνθρωπος καὶ κακὸς
Constans saying that (a)-secretive man and bad
 τυγχάνεις, ὅτι οὐκ ἐφάνέρωσας ἡμᾶς περὶ τοῦ κάστρου
you-are because not you-revealed-to us concerning the fortress
 Ἀδρανουτζίου ὅτι μέλλεις τοῦτο κρατῆσαι καὶ ὅτι
of-Adranoutzion that you-are-about this to-hold and that
 συμφέρει τοῦτο κρατεῖσθαι παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως· ἡμεῖς
it-is-advantageous this to-be-held by the emperor we
 γὰρ καὶ περὶ τῆς τοιαύτης ὑποθέσεως ἀνηγάγομεν πρὸς
for also concerning the such matter referred to
 τὸν βασιλέα, καὶ ἐδεξάμεθα μηδαμῶς γινώσκειν τὸν βασιλέα
the emperor and we-received in-no-way to-know the emperor
 περὶ τῆς ὑποθέσεως ταύτης, ἀλλὰ σὲ τοῦτο ποιῆσαι διὰ
about the matter this but you this to-have-done because-of
 τὴν ἀγάπην τοῦ πατρικίου Ἀσωτίου τοῦ καὶ Κισκάση.
the love of-the patrician Asotios the(-one) also Kiskases
 ὁ δὲ πατρίκιος Κώνστας προσαπολογησάμενος τούτοις
the and patrician Constans having-answered-further to-these

τὰ εἰκότα ἀνέλαβετο Ἀσώτιον τὸν υἱὸν Ἀδρανασῆ
the(-things) fitting took Asotios the son of-Adranase
 τοῦ κουροπαλάτου, καὶ εἰσήγαγεν αὐτὸν ἐν τῇ πόλει, καὶ
the curopalates and brought him into the city and
 ἐτιμήθη παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως κουροπαλάτης.
he-was-honored by the emperor (as)-curopalates
 Ἰσθι δὲ καὶ περὶ τῶν ἐν τισι καιροῖς μεταξὺ
know and also concerning the(-things) at certain times between
 Ῥωμαίων καὶ διαφόρων ἐθνῶν συμβεβηκότων ἄξιον γάρ,
(the)-Romans and various nations having-happened worthy for
 φίλτατε υἱέ, μηδὲ περὶ τὴν τούτων μνήμην διαφυγεῖν
dearest son not-even concerning the of-these memory to-escape
 σε, ὥς ἐν ὁμοίοις καιροῖς τῶν αὐτῶν προσπιπτόντων
you so-that in like times the same befalling
 εἴη σοι εὐχερὴς ἢ ἐπανόρθωσις διὰ τῆς προγνώσεως.
may-be to-you easy the correction through the foreknowledge

XLVII · THE CYPRIOTS' MIGRATION

When the Saracens took Cyprus, Justinian gave its archbishop and people Cyzicus. Seven years later, at his request, the caliph returned the Cypriots in Syria, and the emperor brought home those settled in Romania.

περὶ τῆς τῶν Κυπρίων μεταναστάσεως ἔχει ἡ ἱστορία
concerning the of-the Cypriots migration has the history
 τάδε.

the-following

Τῆς νήσου ἀλωθείσης ὑπὸ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν καὶ ἐπὶ
the island having-been-taken by the Saracens and for
 ἑπτὰ ἔτεσιν ἀουκῆτου μεινάσης, καὶ τοῦ ἀρχιεπισκόπου
seven years uninhabited having-remained and the archbishop

Ἰωάννου μετὰ τοῦ λαοῦ αὐτοῦ πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν
John with the people his to the reigning(-city)
 καταλαβόντος, ἐγένετο οἰκονομία παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως
having-arrived was-made (a)-dispensation by the emperor
 Ἰουστινιανοῦ ἐν τῇ ἀγίᾳ ἕκτῃ συνόδῳ τοῦ τὴν Κύζικον
Justinian in the holy sixth council of-the — Cyzicus
 παραλαβεῖν μετὰ τῶν ἐπισκόπων αὐτοῦ καὶ τοῦ λαοῦ
to-take-over with the bishops his and the people
 τῆς νήσου, καὶ ποιεῖσθαι καὶ χειροτονίας ἡνίκα ἂν λείψῃ
of-the island and to-make also ordinations when — is-wanting
 ἐπίσκοπος, πρὸς τὸ μὴ διαπεσεῖν τὴν αὐθεντίαν καὶ τὰ
(a)-bishop for the not to-fall-away the authority and the
 δίκαια τῆς Κύπρου (καὶ γὰρ καὶ αὐτὸς ὁ Ἰουστινιανὸς
rights — of-Cyprus and for also himself — Justinian
 βασιλεὺς Κύπριος ἦν, καθὼς καὶ παρὰ τῶν παλαιῶν
emperor (a)-Cypriot was as also from the old
 Κυπρίων ὁ λόγος μέχρι τῆς σήμερον ἐπεκράτησεν), ὥστε
Cypriots the account until the today has-prevailed so-that
 καὶ ὠρίσθη ἐν τῇ ἀγίᾳ ἕκτῃ συνόδῳ χειροτονεῖν τὸν
also it-was-decreed in the holy sixth council to-ordain the
 ἀρχιεπίσκοπον Κύπρου τὸν τῆς Κυζίκου πρόεδρον, καθὼς
archbishop of-Cyprus the — of-Cyzicus president as
 ἐν τῷ λθ' κεφαλαίῳ τῆς αὐτῆς ἀγίας ἕκτης συνόδου
in the 39 chapter of-the same holy sixth council
 ἀναγράφεται. μετὰ δὲ ἑπτὰ ἔτη θελήσει θεοῦ ἐκινήθη
is-recorded after and seven years by-(the)-will of-God was-moved
 ὁ βασιλεὺς πάλιν οἰκίσαι τὴν Κύπρον, καὶ ἀπέστειλε
the emperor again to-settle — Cyprus and sent
 πρὸς τὸν ἀμερμουνην τοῦ Βαγδὰδ τρεῖς τῶν ἐνδόξων
to the commander-of-the-faithful — of-Baghdad three of-the notable
 Κυπρίων, αὐτόχθονας τῆς αὐτῆς νήσου τυγχάνοντας,
Cypriots natives of-the same island being

τοὺς λεγομένους Φαγγουμείς, μετὰ καὶ βασιλικοῦ τινὸς
those called Phangoumeis with also (an)-imperial-agent certain
 ἀγχίνου τε καὶ ἐνδόξου, γράψας τῷ ἀμερμουμνῇ
shrewd both and notable having-written to-the commander-of-the-faithful
 ἵνα τὸν Συρίᾳ ὄντα λαὸν τῆς νήσου Κύπρου ἀπολύσῃ
that the in-Syria being people of-the island Cyprus be-release
 εἰς τὸν ἴδιον τόπον. καὶ ὑπακούσας ὁ ἀμερμουμνῆς
to the own place and having-obeyed the commander-of-the-faithful
 τῇ τοῦ βασιλέως γραφῇ ἀπέστειλε κατὰ πάσης τῆς
the of-the emperor letter sent throughout all —
 Συρίας ἐνδόξους Σαρακηνοὺς καὶ ἐπεσώρευσε πάντας τοὺς
Syria notable Saracens and heaped-together all the
 Κυπρίους καὶ διεπέρασεν εἰς τὸν ἴδιον τόπον. ἀπέστειλε
Cypriots and carried(-them)-across to the own place sent
 δὲ καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς βασιλικόν, καὶ διεπέρασε καὶ τοὺς ἐν
and also the emperor (an)-imperial-agent and carried-across also those in
 Ῥωμανίᾳ οἰκήσαντας ἧγον ἐν τε τῇ Κυζίκῳ καὶ τῷ
Romania having-settled that-is in both — Cyzicus and the(-theme)
 Κιβυρραιωτῶν καὶ τῷ Θρακησίῳ, καὶ ἐνωκίσθη ἡ νήσος.
of-the-Kibyrrhaiotai and — Thrakesion and was-resettled the island

XLVIII • CANON 39 OF THE SIXTH COUNCIL; GREEK FIRE

The council confirmed the rights of the Cypriot archbishop in New Justinianopolis. Constantine turns to the innovations in the state: Kallinikos of Heliopolis brought liquid fire to the Romans, who burned the Saracen fleet with it at Cyzicus.

Κεφάλαιον λθ' τῆς ἀγίας ἑκτῆς συνόδου, τῆς ἐν τῷ
chapter 39 of-the holy sixth council the(-one) in the
 Τρούλλῳ τοῦ μεγάλου παλατίου γενομένης.
Troullos of-the great palace having-been-held

Τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ καὶ συλλειτουργοῦ ἡμῶν Ἰωάννου τοῦ
the brother and fellow-minister our John the(-one)
 τῆς Κύπρου νήσου προέδρου ἅμα τῷ οἰκείῳ λαῷ ἐπὶ
— of-Cyprus island president together-with the own people to
 τὴν Ἑλλησπόντιον ἐπαρχίαν, διὰ τε τὰς βαρβαρικὰς
the Hellespontine province because-of both the barbarian
 ἐφόδους διὰ τε τὸ τῆς ἐθνικῆς ἐλευθερωθῆναι δουλείας
incursions because-of and the from-the beaten to-be-freed servitude
 καὶ καθαρῶς τοῖς σκήπτροις τοῦ χριστιανικωτάτου
and purely to-the scepters of-the most-Christian
 κράτους ὑποταγῆναι, τῆς εἰρημένης μεταναστάντος
empire to-be-subjected from-the said having-migrated
 νήσου προνοίᾳ τοῦ φιλανθρώπου θεοῦ καὶ μόχθῳ
island by-(the)-providence of-the man-loving God and by-(the)-toil
 τοῦ φιλοχρίστου καὶ εὐσεβοῦς ἡμῶν βασιλέως, συνορῶμεν
of-the Christ-loving and pious our emperor we-decide
 ὥστε ἀκαينوτόμητα διαφυλαχθῆναι τὰ παρὰ τῶν ἐν
that unaltered be-kept the by those in
 Ἐφέσῳ τὸ πρότερον συνελθόντων θεοφόρων πατέρων
Ephesus the formerly having-assembled God-bearing fathers
 τῷ θρόνῳ τοῦ προγεγραμμένου ἀνδρὸς παρασχεθέντα
to-the throne of-the above-written man granted
 προνόμια, ὥστε τὴν νέαν Ἰουστινιανούπολιν τὸ δίκαιον
privileges so-that the new Justinianopolis the right
 ἔχειν τῆς Κωνσταντινέων πόλεως, καὶ τὸν ἐπ' αὐτῇ
have of-the of-(the)-Constantians city and the over it
 καθιστάμενον θεοφιλέστατον ἐπίσκοπον πάντων προεδρεύειν
being-appointed most-God-loving bishop over-all preside
 τῶν τῆς Ἑλλησποντίων ἐπαρχίας καὶ ὑπὸ τῶν οἰκείων
the(-bishops) of-the of-(the)-Hellespontines province and by the own
 ἐπισκόπων χειροτονεῖσθαι κατὰ τὴν ἀρχαίαν συνήθειαν
bishops be-ordained according-to the ancient custom

(τὰ γὰρ ἐν ἐκάστη ἐκκλησίᾳ ἔθῃ καὶ οἱ θεοφόροι
the for in each church customs also the God-bearing
 ἡμῶν πατέρες παραφυλάττεσθαι διεγνώκασιν), τοῦ τῆς
our fathers to-be-observed determined the of-the
 Κυζικηνῶν πόλεως ἐπισκόπου ὑποκειμένου τῷ προέδρῳ
of-(the)-Cyzicenes city bishop being-subject to-the president
 τῆς εἰρημένης Ἰουστινιανουπόλεως, μιμήσει τῶν λοιπῶν
of-the said Justinianopolis in-imitation of-the other
 ἀπάντων ἐπισκόπων τῶν ὑπὸ τὸν λεχθέντα θεοφιλέστατον
all bishops those under the said most-God-loving
 πρόεδρον Ἰωάννην· ἀφ' οὗ χρείας καλούσης καὶ ὁ τῆς
president John by whom need calling also the of-the
 αὐτῆς Κυζικηνῶν πόλεως ἐπίσκοπος χειροτονηθήσεται.
same of-(the)-Cyzicenes city bishop will-be-ordained
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ τὰ περὶ ἔθνων οὕτως ἀκριβῶς σοι
since and also the(-things) concerning nations so exactly to-you
 διετυπώσαμεν καὶ προεξεθέμεθα, δίκαιον μὴ μόνον περὶ
we-have-delineated and set-forth-before (it-is)-just not only concerning
 τῶν ἐν τῇ καθ' ἡμᾶς πολιτείᾳ ἀλλὰ καὶ περὶ
the(-things) in the among us polity but also concerning
 πάσης τῆς τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῆς κατὰ τινὰς χρόνους
all the of-the Romans rule at certain times
 καινοτομηθέντων σαφῇ κεκτῆσθαι σε τὴν εἶδῃσιν, ὥς ἂν ἡ
innovated clear to-have you the knowledge so-that — the
 περὶ τῶν ἐγγυτέρω καὶ οἰκείων γνώσις πλεον τῶν ἄλλων
about the nearer and own knowledge more than-the others
 ἐν σοὶ διαμένουσα ποθεινότερον ἀναδείξῃ πρὸς τὸ ὑπήκοον.
in you remaining more-beloved may-show(-you) to the subject(-people)
 Ἰστέον ὅτι ἐπὶ Κωνσταντίνου υἱοῦ Κωνσταντίου
(one)-must-know that under Constantine son of-Constantius
 τοῦ καὶ Πωγωνάτου καλουμένου Καλλίνικός τις
the(-one) also Pogonatos called Kallinikos (a)-certain

ἀπὸ Ἡλιουπόλεως Ῥωμαίοις προσφυγὼν τὸ διὰ τῶν
from Heliopolis to-(the)-Romans having-fled the through the
 σιφώνων ἐκφερόμενον πῦρ ὑγρὸν κατεσκεύασε, δι' οὗ
siphons discharged fire liquid made by which
 καὶ τὸν τῶν Σαρακηνῶν στόλον ἐν Κυζίκῳ Ῥωμαῖοι
also the of-the Saracens fleet at Cyzicus (the)-Romans
 καταφλέξαντες τὴν νίκην ἤραυτο.
having-burned-up the victory won

XLIX • THE SLAVS OF PATRAS

Under Nikephoros the Slavs of the Peloponnese besieged Patras. When a horse stumbled and lowered the signal pennon, the townsmen sallied out and saw St. Andrew routing the barbarians. The emperor assigned the defeated Slavs to the church of Patras, where they still feed visiting officials and envoys.

ὁ ζητῶν ὅπως τῇ τῶν Πατρῶν ἐκκλησίᾳ οἱ Σκλαβοὶ
the(-one) seeking how to-the of-the Patras church the Slavs
 δουλεύειν καὶ ὑποκεῖσθαι ἐτάχθησαν, ἐκ τῆς παρούσης
to-serve and to-be-subject were-assigned from the present
 μανθανέτω γραφῆς.
let-him-learn writing

Νικηφόρος τὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων σκῆπτρα ἐκράτει, καὶ οὗτοι
Nikephoros the of-the Romans scepters held and these
 ἐν τῷ θέματι ὄντες Πελοποννήσου ἀπόστασιν ἐννοήσαντες
in the theme being of-Peloponnese rebellion having-thought-of
 πρῶτον μὲν τὰς τῶν γειτόνων οἰκίας τῶν Γραικῶν
first indeed the of-the neighbors houses of-the Greeks
 ἐξεπόρθουν καὶ εἰς ἀρπαγὴν ἐτίθεντο, ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ
they-sacked and to plunder they-put then and also
 κατὰ τῶν οἰκητόρων τῆς τῶν Πατρῶν ὀρμήσαντες
against the inhabitants of-the of-the Patras having-rushed

πόλεως τὰ πρὸ τοῦ τείχους πεδία κατεστρέφοντο καὶ
city the before the wall plains they-laid-waste and
 ταύτην ἐπολιόρκουν, μεθ' ἑαυτῶν ἔχοντες καὶ Ἀφρικοὺς
it besieged with themselves having also Africans
 καὶ Σαρακηνοὺς. ἐπεὶ δὲ χρόνος ἱκανὸς διήλθε καὶ
and Saracens since and time considerable passed and
 σπάνις τῶν ἀναγκαίων τοῖς ἔνδοθεν τοῦ τείχους γίνεσθαι
scarcity of-the necessities to-those inside the wall to-arise
 ἤρξατο, ὕδατος τε καὶ τροφῶν, βουλὴν βουλευόνται
began of-water both and of-foods (a)-counsel they-counsel
 εἰς συμβιβάσεις τε ἐλθεῖν καὶ λόγους ἀπαθείας λαβεῖν
to agreements both to-come and words of-immunity to-receive
 καὶ τηνικαῦτα τὴν πόλιν ὑποτάξαι αὐτοῖς. ἐπεὶ οὖν
and then the city to-surrender to-them since then
 ὁ τηνικαῦτα στρατηγὸς ὑπῆρχε πρὸς τὴν ἄκραν τοῦ
the then general was at the extremity of-the
 θέματος ἐν κάστρῳ Κορίνθου, καὶ προσδοκία ἦν τοῦ
theme in (the)-fortress of-Corinth and expectation was of-the
 παραγενέσθαι αὐτὸν καὶ καταπολεμῆσαι τὸ ἔθνος τῶν
to-come him and to-war-down the nation of-the
 Σκλαβηνῶν, ὥς καὶ πρῶην καταμνηθέντος αὐτοῦ περὶ
Slavs as also formerly informed him concerning
 τῆς καταδρομῆς αὐτῶν παρὰ τῶν ἀρχόντων, ἐβουλεύσαντο
the incursion their by the officers resolved
 οἱ τοῦ κάστρου οἰκήτορες πρότερον ἀποσταλῆναι σκοπὸν
those of-the fortress inhabitants first to-be-sent (a)-lookout
 εἰς τὰ ἀνατολικώτερα τῶν ὀρέων καὶ ἀποσκοπεῦσαι καὶ
to the more-eastern(-parts) of-the mountains and to-watch and
 γνῶναι εἰ ἄρα παραγίνεται ὁ στρατηγός, παραγγείλαντες
to-know if then is-coming the general having-charged
 καὶ σημεῖον δεδωκότες τῷ ἀπεσταλμένῳ ἵνα, εἰ μὲν
also (a)-signal having-given to-the sent(-man) that if indeed

ἴδοι ἐρχόμενον τὸν στρατηγόν, ἐν τῇ ὑποστροφῇ
be-should-see coming the general on the return
 αὐτοῦ κλίνει τὸ φλάμουλον, ὅπως γνῶσι τὴν
his be-should-lower the pennon so-that they-may-know the
 ἔλευσιν τοῦ στρατηγοῦ, εἰ δὲ μὴ γε, κατέχειν ὀρθὸν
coming of-the general if and not at-least to-hold upright
 τὸ φλάμουλον πρὸς τὸ μὴ ἔχειν αὐτοὺς προσδοκίαν τοῦ
the pennon for the not to-have them expectation for-the
 λοιποῦ παραγίνεσθαι τὸν στρατηγόν. τοῦ οὖν σκοποῦ
rest(-of-time) to-come the general the then lookout
 ἀπελθόντος καὶ μαθόντος μὴ παραγίνεσθαι τὸν στρατηγόν,
having-gone-away and having-learned not to-be-coming the general
 ὑπέστρεφεν ὀρθὸν κατέχων τὸ φλάμουλον. καὶ δὴ τοῦ
he-was-returning upright holding the pennon and indeed —
 θεοῦ εὐδοκήσαντος διὰ πρεσβειῶν τοῦ ἁγίου ἀποστόλου
God having-been-pleased through (the)-intercessions of-the holy apostle
 Ἀνδρέου, τοῦ ἵππου ὀλισθήσαντος καὶ τοῦ ἐπιβάτου
Andrew the horse having-slipped and the rider
 ὑποπεπτωκότος ἔκλινε τὸ φλάμουλον, καὶ οἱ τοῦ κάστρου
having-fallen-down lowered the pennon and those of-the fortress
 οἰκήτορες ἰδόντες τὸ γεγονὸς σημεῖον, καὶ νομίσαντες ἐξ
inhabitants having-seen the having-happened signal and having-supposed by
 ἅπαντος παραγίνεσθαι τὸν στρατηγόν, ἤνοιξαν τὰς πύλας
all(-means) to-be-coming the general opened the gates
 τοῦ κάστρου καὶ ἐξῆλθον θαρσαλέοι κατὰ τῶν Σκλαβηνῶν,
of-the fortress and went-out bold against the Slavs
 καὶ εἶδον τὸν πρωτόκλητον ἀπόστολον ὀφθαλμοφανῶς
and saw the first-called apostle visibly
 ἵππῳ ἐπικαθήμενον καὶ δρόμῳ ἐπερχόμενον κατὰ τῶν
on-(a)-horse seated and at-(a)-run coming-on against the
 βαρβάρων· καὶ δὴ τρέψας τούτους κατὰ κράτος, καὶ
barbarians and indeed having-routed them by force and

διασκορπίσας καὶ ἀπελάσας πόρρω τοῦ κάστρου φυγάδας
having-scattered and having-driven far from-the fortress fugitives
 ἐποίησεν. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι ἰδόντες καὶ καταπλαγέντες,
he-made the and barbarians having-seen and having-been-astounded
 ἔκθαμβοι γεγονότες ἐπὶ τῇ κατ' αὐτῶν κραταιᾷ ἐπελεύσει
amazed having-become at the against them mighty onset
 τοῦ ἀηττήτου καὶ ἀκαταγωνίστου ὀπλίτου καὶ στρατηγοῦ
of-the unconquered and invincible man-at-arms and general
 καὶ ταξιάρχου καὶ τροπαιοῦχου καὶ νικηφόρου πρωτοκλήτου
and taxiarcb and trophy-bearer and victory-bearer first-called
 ἀποστόλου Ἀνδρέου, ἐταράχθησαν, ἐσαλεύθησαν, τρόμος
apostle Andrew were-troubled were-shaken trembling
 ἐπελάβετο αὐτούς, καὶ προσέφυγον εἰς τὸν πάνσεπτον
seized them and they-fled to the all-venerable
 ναὸν αὐτοῦ. τοῦ οὖν στρατηγοῦ μετὰ τὸ τρόπαιον ἐν τῇ
temple his the then general after the trophy on the
 τρίτῃ ἡμέρᾳ καταλαβόντος καὶ τὴν νίκην τοῦ ἀποστόλου
third day having-arrived and the victory of-the apostle
 μαθόντος, κατεμήνυσε τῷ βασιλεῖ Νικηφόρῳ τὴν τε
having-learned reported to-the emperor Nikephoros the both
 ἔφοδον τῶν Σκλαβηνῶν καὶ τὴν προνομήν καὶ αἰχμαλωσίαν
attack of-the Slavs and the foraging and captivity
 καὶ ἀφανισμόν καὶ τὴν λεηλασίαν καὶ τᾶλλα δεινὰ
and destruction and the plundering and the-other terrible-things
 ὅσα καταδραμόντες ἐποίησαν εἰς τὰ μέρη τῆς Ἀχαίας,
which having-overrun they-did in the parts — of-Achaia
 ἔτι δὲ καὶ τὴν πολυήμερον πολιορκίαν καὶ τὴν κατὰ τῶν
yet and also the many-days siege and the against the
 οἰκητόρων τοῦ κάστρου διηνεκῇ ἐπίθεσιν, ὡσαύτως καὶ
inhabitants of-the fortress continual attack likewise also
 τὴν ἐπισκοπὴν καὶ συμμαχίαν καὶ τρόπαιον καὶ τὴν κατὰ
the watchfulness and alliance and trophy and the by

κράτος νίκην τὴν γενομένην παρὰ τοῦ ἀποστόλου, καὶ
force victory the(-one) having-come-about from the apostle and
 ὡς ὀφθαλμοφανῶς ὥραθη ἐπιτρέχων καὶ διώκων τοὺς
how visibly he-was-seen running-on and pursuing the
 πολεμίους κατὰ νῶτον καὶ τροπούμενος αὐτούς, ὥστε καὶ
enemies in (the)-back and routing them so-that also
 αὐτοὺς τοὺς βαρβάρους αἰσθέσθαι τὴν τοῦ ἀποστόλου πρὸς
the-very the barbarians to-perceive the of-the apostle toward
 ἡμᾶς ἐπισκοπήν καὶ συμμαχίαν καὶ διὰ τοῦτο προσφυγεῖν
us watchfulness and alliance and because-of this to-take-refuge
 αὐτοὺς εἰς τὸν σεβάσμιον αὐτοῦ ναόν. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς
them in the venerable his temple the and emperor
 ταῦτα ἀναμαθὼν παρεκελεύσατο οὕτως “ἐπεὶ καὶ τὸ
these(-things) having-learned commanded thus since also the
 τρόπαιον καὶ ἡ κατὰ κράτος νίκη παρὰ τοῦ ἀποστόλου
trophy and the by force victory from the apostle
 γέγονεν, ὀφειλόμενον καθέστηκε πᾶσαν τὴν ἐκστρατείαν τῶν
came-about owed it-is all the force of-the
 πολεμίων καὶ τὰ λάφυρα καὶ τὰ σκῦλα αὐτῷ ἀποδοθῆναι.”
enemies and the booty and the spoils to-him to-be-given
 καὶ διωρίσατο αὐτούς τε τοὺς πολεμίους μετὰ πάσης τῆς
and he-ordained them both the enemies with all the
 φαιμιλίας καὶ συγγενείας καὶ πάντων τῶν προσηγόντων
household and kin and all those belonging
 αὐτοῖς, ἔτι δὲ καὶ πάσης τῆς ὑπάρξεως αὐτῶν, ἀφορισθῆναι
to-them yet and also all the substance their to-be-assigned
 εἰς τὸν ναὸν τοῦ ἀποστόλου ἐν τῇ μητροπόλει Πατρῶν,
to the temple of-the apostle in the metropolis of-Patras
 ἐν ἣ ὁ πρωτόκλητος καὶ μαθητὴς τοῦ Χριστοῦ τὸν
in which the first-called and disciple — of-Christ the
 τῆς ἀθλήσεως διήνυσεν ἀγῶνα, δεδωκὼς περὶ αὐτῶν καὶ
of-the contest completed struggle having-given about them also

σιγίλλον ἐν τῇ αὐτῇ μητροπόλει. ταῦτα οἱ πρεσβύτεροι
(a)-sigillion in the same metropolis these(-things) the elders
 καὶ ἀρχαιότεροι ἀνήγγειλαν παραδόντες ἀγράφως χρόνῳ
and more-ancient reported having-handed-down unwritten by-time
 τε καὶ βίῳ τοῖς ὕστερον, ὅπως ἂν κατὰ τὸν προφήτην
both and life to-those later so-that — according-to the prophet
 γνῶ γενεὰ ἢ ἐρχομένη τὸ γεγονὸς θαῦμα
may-know (the)-generation the(-one) coming the having-happened miracle
 διὰ πρεσβειῶν τοῦ ἀποστόλου, καὶ ἀναστήσονται καὶ
through intercessions of-the apostle and they-will-arise and
 ἀπαγγελοῦσιν αὐτὸ τοῖς υἱοῖς αὐτῶν, ἵνα μὴ ἐπιλάθωνται
will-declare it to-the sons their so-that not they-forget
 τῶν εὐεργεσιῶν ὧν ἐποίησεν ὁ θεὸς διὰ πρεσβειῶν
the benefactions which did — God through intercessions
 τοῦ ἀποστόλου. ἔκτοτε δὲ οἱ ἀφορισθέντες Σκλαβηνοὶ ἐν
of-the apostle from-then and the assigned Slavs in
 τῇ μητροπόλει καὶ τοὺς στρατηγούς καὶ τοὺς βασιλικούς
the metropolis both the generals and the imperial-agents
 καὶ πάντας τοὺς ἐξ ἐθνῶν ἀποστελλομένους πρέσβεις ὡς
and all those from nations sent envoys as
 ὁμήρους διατρέφουσιν, ἔχοντες ἰδίους καὶ τραπέζοποιους
hostages maintain having own both table-servants
 καὶ μαγείρους καὶ πάντας τοὺς παρασκευάζοντας τὰ
and cooks and all those preparing the
 τῆς τραπέζης βρώματα, τῆς μητροπόλεως εἰς ταῦτα
of-the table foods the metropolis in these
 μὴδὲν καινοτομουμένης, ἀλλ' αὐτοὶ οἱ Σκλαβηνοὶ ἀπὸ
nothing being-innovated but themselves the Slavs from
 διανομῆς καὶ συνδοσίας τῆς ομάδος αὐτῶν ἐπισυνάγουσι
distribution and joint-contribution of-the company their collect
 τὰς τοιαύτας χρείας. ἐποίησε δὲ καὶ σιγίλλον Λέων ὁ
the such needs made and also (a)-sigillion Leo the

αείμνηστος καὶ ἀοιδίμος βασιλεὺς λεπτομερῶς περιέχον
ever-memorable and celebrated emperor in-detail containing
 τὸ τί ὀφείλουσι παρέχειν οἱ αὐτοὶ ἐναπογραφόμενοι τῷ
the what they-ought to-furnish the same being-registered to-the
 μητροπολίτῃ, καὶ μὴ ἀπαργυρίζεσθαι παρ' αὐτοῦ ἢ
metropolitan and not to-be-commuted-into-money by him or
 ἄλλως πως κατ' ἐπίνοιαν ἄδικον ζημιοῦσθαι αὐτούς.
otherwise in-any-way by contrivance unjust to-be-penalized them

L • THE SLAVS OF THE PELOPONNESE; THEMES AND OFFICES

The Milingoi and Ezeritai were subdued and taxed by Theoktistos. Krinites raised their tribute after they revolted, and Romanos restored the old rate. The people of Maina are descendants of the old Romans. The chapter traces how various themes and districts were created or transferred, Staurakios' quarrel with Eustathios over the Mardaites of Attaleia, the list of parakoimomenoi, and how the cleric Ktenas bought the rank of protospatharius.

περὶ τῶν ἐν τῷ θέματι Πελοποννήσου Σκλάβων, τῶν
concerning the in the theme of-Peloponnese Slavs the
 τε Μιληγγῶν καὶ Ἐζεριτῶν, καὶ περὶ τῶν τελουμένων
both Milingoi and Ezeritai and concerning the paid
 παρ' αὐτῶν πάκτων. ὁμοίως καὶ περὶ τῶν οἰκητόρων
by them tributes likewise also concerning the inhabitants
 τοῦ κάστρου τοῦ Μαῖνης, καὶ τῶν παρ' αὐτῶν τελουμένων
of-the fortress — of-Maina and the by them paid
 πάκτων.

tributes

Ἰστέον ὅτι οἱ τοῦ θέματος Πελοποννήσου Σκλάβοι ἐν
(one)-must-know that the of-the theme of-Peloponnese Slavs in
 ταῖς ἡμέραις τοῦ βασιλέως Θεοφίλου καὶ τοῦ υἱοῦ αὐτοῦ
the days of-the emperor Theophilos and of-the son bis

Μιχαήλ ἀποστατήσαντες γεγόνασιν ιδιόρυθμοι, λεηλασίας
Michael having-revolted became independent plunderings
 καὶ ἀνδραποδισμούς· καὶ πραιίδας καὶ ἐμπρησμούς· καὶ
and enslavings and raids and burnings and
 κλοπὰς ἐργαζόμενοι. ἐπὶ δὲ τῆς βασιλείας Μιχαήλ τοῦ
thefts working under and the reign of-Michael the
 υἱοῦ Θεοφίλου ἀπεστάλη ὁ πρωτοσπαθάριος Θεόκτιστος,
son of-Theophilus was-sent the protospatharius Theoktistos
 οὗ τὸ ἐπικλὴν ὁ τῶν Βροιενίων, στρατηγὸς ἐν τῷ
whose the surname the(-one) of-the Bryennioi (as)-general to the
 θέματι Πελοποννήσου μετὰ δυνάμεως καὶ ἰσχύος πολλῆς,
theme of-Peloponnese with power and strength much
 ἡγουν Θρακῶν καὶ Μακεδόνων καὶ τῶν λοιπῶν δυτικῶν
that-is of-Thracians and Macedonians and of-the other western
 θεμάτων, τοῦ πολεμῆσαι καὶ καθυποτάξαι αὐτούς. καὶ
themes of-the to-war-upon and to-subject them and
 πάντας μὲν τοὺς Σκλάβους καὶ λοιποὺς ἀνυποτάκτους
all indeed the Slavs and other unsubdued
 τοῦ θέματος Πελοποννήσου ὑπέταξε καὶ ἐχειρῶσατο· μόνοι
of-the theme of-Peloponnese he-subjected and mastered only
 δὲ οἱ Ἐζερίται καὶ οἱ Μιληγγοὶ κατελείφθησαν ὑπὸ τὴν
and the Ezeritai and the Milingoi were-left near —
 Λακεδαιμονίαν καὶ τὸ Ἕλος. καὶ ἐπειδὴ ὄρος ἐστὶν
Lacedaemonia and — Helos and since (a)-mountain is
 ἐκεῖσε μέγα καὶ ὑψηλότατον, καλούμενον Πενταδάκτυλος,
there great and very-high called Pentadaktylos
 καὶ εἰσέρχεται ὥσπερ τράχηλος εἰς τὴν θάλασσαν ἕως
and it-runs like (a)-neck into the sea for
 πολλοῦ διαστήματος, διὰ τὸ εἶναι τὸν τόπον δύσκολον
(a)-long distance because-of the to-be the place difficult
 κατώκησαν εἰς τὰς πλευρὰς τοῦ αὐτοῦ ὄρους, ἐν μὲν
they-settled on the flanks of-the same mountain on indeed

τῷ ἐνὶ μέρει οἱ Μιληγγοὶ ἐν δὲ τῷ ἑτέρῳ οἱ Ἐξερῖται.
the one side the Milingoi on and the other the Ezeritai
 καὶ ὁ μὲν προρρηθεὶς πρωτοσπάθαρτος Θεόκτιστος
and the indeed aforesaid protospatharius Theoktistos
 καὶ στρατηγὸς Πελοποννήσου δυνηθεὶς καὶ τούτους
and general of-Peloponnese having-been-able also these
 καθυποτάξαι, ἐπέθετο τοῖς μὲν Μιληγγοῖς νομίσματα 60
to-subject imposed on-the indeed Milingoi nomismata 60
 τοῖς δὲ Ἐξερῖταις νομίσματα 300, ἅτινα καὶ ἐτέλουν αὐτοῦ
on-the and Ezeritai nomismata 300 which also they-paid him
 στρατηγοῦντος, καθὼς παρὰ τῶν ἐντοπίων διασώζεται
being-general as by the locals is-preserved
 μέχρι τῆς σήμερον ἢ τοιαύτη φήμη, ἐπὶ δὲ τῆς
until the today the such report under and the
 βασιλείας τοῦ κυροῦ Ῥωμανοῦ τοῦ βασιλέως στρατηγῶν
reign of-the lord Romanos the emperor being-general
 ὁ πρωτοσπαθάρτιος Ἰωάννης ὁ Πρωτεύων ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ
the protospatharius John the Proteuon in the same
 θέματι ἀνήγαγε πρὸς τὸν αὐτὸν κύριον Ῥωμανὸν περὶ
theme referred to the same lord Romanos concerning
 τε τῶν Μιληγγῶν καὶ τῶν Ἐξερῖτων, ὅτι ἀποστατήσαντες
both the Milingoi and the Ezeritai that having-revolted
 οὐ πείθονται οὔτε τῷ στρατηγῷ οὔτε βασιλικῇ κελεύσει
not they-obey neither the general nor (an)-imperial order
 ὑπέκουσιν, ἀλλ' εἰσὶν ὥσπερ αὐτόνομοι καὶ αὐτοδέσποτοι
yield but they-are as-it-were independent and self-ruled
 καὶ οὔτε παρὰ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ δέχονται ἄρχοντα οὔτε
and neither from the general they-receive (a)-headman nor
 συνταξιδεύειν αὐτῷ ὑπέκουσιν οὔτε ἄλλην τοῦ δημοσίου
to-campaign-with him yield nor other of-the public
 δουλείαν ἐκτελεῖν πείθονται. καὶ μέχρι τοῦ ἀνελθεῖν τὴν
service to-perform obey and until the to-go-up the

ἀναφορὰν αὐτοῦ συνέβη προβληθῆναι τὸν πρωτοσπαθάριον
report his it-happened to-be-appointed the protospatharius
 Κρινίτην τὸν Ἀροτράν στρατηγὸν ἐν Πελοποννήσῳ· τῆς δὲ
Krinites the Arotas (as)-general in Peloponnese of-the and
 ἀναφορᾶς τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου Ἰωάννου καὶ στρατηγοῦ
report of-the protospatharius John and general
 Πελοποννήσου τοῦ πρωτεύοντος καταλαβούσης καὶ κατ'
of-Peloponnese the Proteuon having-arrived and in
 ἐνώπιον τοῦ βασιλέως τοῦ κυροῦ Ῥωμανοῦ ἀναγνωσθείσης,
(the)-presence of-the emperor the lord Romanos having-been-read
 καὶ περιεχούσης τὴν ἀποστασίαν τῶν προρρηθέντων
and containing the revolt of-the aforesaid
 Σκλάβων καὶ πρὸς τὰς βασιλικὰς προστάξεις δυσπείθειαν
Slavs and toward the imperial commands reluctance
 ἢ μᾶλλον ἀπείθειαν, ἐδέξατο ὁ αὐτὸς πρωτοσπαθάριος
or rather disobedience received the same protospatharius
 Κρινίτης ἵνα, ἐπεὶ εἰς τοσαύτην ἤλασαν ἀποστασίαν καὶ
Krinites that since to so-great they-drove revolt and
 ἀπείθειαν, ἐκστρατεύσῃ κατ' αὐτῶν καὶ καταπολεμήσῃ καὶ
disobedience be-march against them and war-down and
 ὑποτάξῃ καὶ ἐξολοθρεύσῃ αὐτούς. ἀρξάμενος οὖν πολεμεῖν
subject and destroy them having-begun then to-war-upon
 αὐτοὺς ἀπὸ μηνὸς Μαρτίου, καὶ κατακαύσας τὰ θέρη
them from (the)-month of-March and having-burned the harvests
 αὐτῶν καὶ ληϊσάμενος πᾶσαν τὴν γῆν αὐτῶν, ἔσχεν αὐτοὺς
their and having-plundered all the land their he-had them
 ἀνθισταμένους καὶ ἀντέχοντας μέχρι μηνὸς Νοεμβρίου·
resisting and holding-out until (the)-month of-November
 ἀπὸ τότε δὲ ἰδόντες τὴν ἐαυτῶν ἐξολόθρευσιν ᾗτήσαντο
from then and having-seen the their-own destruction they-asked
 λόγον τοῦ ὑποταγῆναι αὐτοῖς καὶ τυχεῖν συμπαθείας
(a)-promise of-the to-be-subjected to-them and to-obtain compassion

ὑπὲρ ὧν πρώην ἐπλημμέλησαν. ὁ οὖν προρρηθὲς
for (the-things)-which formerly they-had-offended the then aforesaid
 πρωτοσπαθάριος καὶ στρατηγὸς ὁ Κρινίτης ἐξέθετο αὐτοῖς
protospatharius and general — Krinites set-out-for them
 πάκτα πλείονα ὧν ἐτέλουν, τοῖς μὲν Μιληγγοῖς ἀπὸ
tributes greater than-what they-paid on-the indeed Milingoi beyond
 τῶν ξ' νομισμάτων ὧν πρότερον ἐτέλουν, νομίσματα φμ',
the 60 nomismata which formerly they-paid nomismata 540
 ὡς εἶναι τὸ πᾶν πάκτον αὐτῶν νομίσματα χ', τοῖς δὲ
so-that to-be the whole tribute their nomismata 600 on-the and
 Ἐζερίταις ἀπὸ τῶν τ' νομισμάτων ὧν πρότερον ἐτέλουν,
Ezeritai beyond the 300 nomismata which formerly they-paid
 ἕτερα νομίσματα τ', ὡς εἶναι τὸ πᾶν πάκτον αὐτῶν
other nomismata 300 so-that to-be the whole tribute their
 νομίσματα χ', ἅτινα καὶ ἀπήτησε καὶ εἰσεκόμισεν ὁ αὐτὸς
nomismata 600 which also exacted and brought-in the same
 πρωτοσπαθάριος Κρινίτης ἐν τῷ θεοφυλάκτῳ κοιτῶνι. τοῦ
protospatharius Krinites into the God-guarded bedchamber the
 δὲ πρωτοσπαθαρίου Κρινίτου ἐν τῷ θέματι μετατεθέντος
and protospatharius Krinites to the theme having-been-transferred
 Ἑλλάδος, καὶ τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου Βάρδα τοῦ Πλατυπόδη
of-Hellas and the protospatharius Bardas the Platypodes
 προβληθέντος στρατηγοῦ ἐν Πελοποννήσῳ, καὶ τῆς ἀταξίας
having-been-appointed general in Peloponnese and the disorder
 γενομένης καὶ στάσεως παρὰ αὐτοῦ τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου
having-arisen and sedition by the-very the protospatharius
 Βάρδα τοῦ Πλατυπόδη καὶ τῶν ὁμοφρόνων αὐτοῦ
Bardas the Platypodes and the like-minded his
 πρωτοσπαθαρίων καὶ ἀρχόντων, καὶ τὸν πρωτοσπαθάριον
protospatharii and officers and the protospatharius
 Λέοντα τὸν Ἀγέλαστον ἀποδιωξάντων ἀπὸ τοῦ θέματος,
Leo the Agelastos having-driven-out from the theme

καὶ εὐθέως γενομένης καὶ τῆς τῶν Σκλαβησιανῶν
and at-once having-come-about also the of-the Sklabesianoι
ἐπιθέσεως κατὰ τοῦ αὐτοῦ θέματος, ἀπέστειλαν οἱ αὐτοὶ
attack against the same theme sent the same
Σκλάβοι, οἳ τε Μιληγγοὶ καὶ οἱ Ἐζερίται, πρὸς τὸν κύριον
Slavs the both Milingoi and the Ezeritai to the lord
Ῥωμανὸν τὸν βασιλέα, ἑξαιτούμενοι καὶ παρακαλοῦντες
Romanos the emperor asking and begging
τοῦ συμπαθηθῆναι αὐτοῖς τὰς προσθήκας τῶν πάκτων
of-the to-be-remitted to-them the additions of-the tributes
καὶ τελεῖν αὐτοὺς καθὼς καὶ πρότερον ἐτέλουν. ἐπεὶ δέ,
and to-pay them as also before they-paid since and
καθὼς προείρηται, εἰσῆλθον οἱ Σκλαβησιανοὶ ἐν τῷ
as has-been-said-before came the Sklabesianoι into the
θέματι Πελοποννήσου, δεδιὼς ὁ βασιλεὺς ἵνα μὴ καὶ αὐτοὶ
theme of-Peloponnese fearing the emperor that not also they
προσθεθέντες τοῖς Σκλάβοις παντελεῇ ἐξολόθρευσι τοῦ
having-been-added to-the Slavs complete destruction of-the
αὐτοῦ θέματος ἐργάσωνται, ἐποίησεν αὐτοῖς χρυσοβούλλιον
same theme bring-about made for-them (a)-chrysobull
ἵνα τελῶσι τὰ πάκτα ὡς καὶ πρότερον, τοὺς μὲν
that they-pay the tributes as also before the indeed
Μιληγγοὺς ξ' νομίσματα, τοὺς δὲ Ἐζερίτας νομίσματα τ'.
Milingoi 60 nomismata the and Ezeritai nomismata 300
αὕτη οὖν ἐστὶν ἡ αἰτία τῆς προσθήκης καὶ τῆς ἐκκοπῆς
this then is the cause of-the addition and of-the cutting-off
τῶν πάκτων τῶν Μιληγγῶν καὶ τῶν Ἐζεριτῶν.
of-the tributes of-the Milingoi and of-the Ezeritai
Ἰστέον ὅτι οἱ τοῦ κάστρου Μαΐνης οἰκήτορες οὐκ εἰσὶν
(one)-must-know that the of-the fortress of-Maina inhabitants not are
ἀπὸ τῆς γενεᾶς τῶν προρρηθέντων Σκλάβων, ἀλλ' ἐκ
from the race of-the aforesaid Slavs but from

τῶν παλαιότερων Ῥωμαίων, οἱ καὶ μέχρι τοῦ νῦν παρὰ
the older Romans who also until the now by
 τῶν ἐντοπίων Ἑλλήνες προσαγορεύονται διὰ τὸ ἐν τοῖς
the locals Hellenes are-called because-of the in the
 προπαλαιοῖς χρόνοις εἰδωλολάτρας εἶναι καὶ προσκυνητὰς
very-ancient times idolaters to-be and worshipers
 τῶν εἰδώλων κατὰ τοὺς παλαιοὺς Ἑλλήνας· οἷτινες
of-the idols like the ancient Hellenes who
 ἐπὶ τῆς βασιλείας τοῦ αἰοιδίμου Βασιλείου βαπτισθέντες
under the reign of-the celebrated Basil having-been-baptized
 Χριστιανοὶ γεγόνασιν. ὁ δὲ τόπος ἐν ᾧ οἰκοῦσίν ἐστιν
Christians became the and place in which they-dwell is
 ἄνδρος καὶ ἀπρόσοδος ἐλαιοφόρος δέ· ὅθεν καὶ τὴν
waterless and inaccessible olive-bearing but whence also the
 παραμυθίαν ἔχουσι. διάκειται δὲ ὁ τοιοῦτος τόπος εἰς
consolation they-have lies and the such place on
 ἄκραν τοῦ Μαλέα, ἧγον ἐκεῖθεν τοῦ Ἐζερού πρὸς
(the)-point — of-Malea that-is beyond — of-Ezeron toward
 παραθαλασσίαν. διὰ δὲ τὸ τελείως ὑποτεταγμένους εἶναι
(the)-coast because-of and the completely subjected to-be
 αὐτοὺς καὶ ἄρχοντα παρὰ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ δέχεσθαι καὶ
them and (a)-headman from the general to-receive and
 πειθαρχεῖν καὶ ὑπέκειν ταῖς τοῦ στρατηγοῦ προστάξεσιν,
to-obey and to-yield to-the of-the general commands
 παρέχουσι πάκτον ἐκ παλαιτάτου χρόνου νομίσματα υ'.
they-furnish (a)-tribute from most-ancient time nomismata 400
 Ἰστέον ὅτι ἡ τῆς Καππαδοκίας στρατηγὶς τὸ
(one)-must-know that the — of-Cappadocia command in-the
 παλαιὸν τοῦρμα ἦν τῆς τῶν Ἀνατολικῶν στρατηγίδος.
old(-days) (a)-tourma was of-the of-the Anatolikoi command

Ἰστέον ὅτι ἡ Κεφαληνίας στρατηγὶς ἤγουν τὰ νησία
 (one)-must-know that the of-Kephalenia command that-is the islets
 τοῦρμα ἦν τὸ παλαιὸν τῆς στρατηγίδος Λογουβαρδίας· ἐπὶ
 (a)-tourma was in-the old(-days) of-the command of-Lombardy under
 δὲ Λέοντος τοῦ φιλοχρίστου δεσπότης γέγονε στρατηγὶς.
 and Leo the Christ-loving lord became (a)-command

Ἰστέον ὅτι ἡ Καλαβρίας στρατηγὶς δουκάτον ἦν τὸ
 (one)-must-know that the of-Calabria command (a)-duchy was in-the
 παλαιὸν τῆς στρατηγίδος Σικελίας.
 old(-days) of-the command of-Sicily

Ἰστέον ὅτι ἡ τοῦ Χαρσιανοῦ στρατηγὶς τοῦρμα ἦν
 (one)-must-know that the — of-Charsianon command (a)-tourma was
 τὸ παλαιὸν τῆς τῶν Ἀρμενιακῶν στρατηγίδος.
 in-the old(-days) of-the of-the Armeniakoi command

Ἰστέον ὅτι ἐπὶ Λέοντος τοῦ φιλοχρίστου δεσπότης
 (one)-must-know that under Leo the Christ-loving lord
 ἀπὸ τοῦ θέματος τῶν Βουκελλαρίων εἰς τὸ Καππαδοκῶν
 from the theme of-the Boukellarioi to the of-Cappadocians
 θέμα μετετέθησαν ταῦτα τὰ βάνδα, ἥτοι ἡ τοποτηρησία
 theme were-transferred these the banda that-is the topoteresia

Βάρετας, ἡ τοποτηρησία Βαλβαδῶνος, ἡ τοποτηρησία
 of-Bareta the topoteresia of-Balbadon the topoteresia

Ἀσπονas καὶ ἡ τοποτηρησία Ἀκαρκούς· καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ
 of-Aspona and the topoteresia of-Akarkous and from the
 θέματος τῶν Ἀνατολικῶν εἰς τὸ Καππαδοκῶν θέμα
 theme of-the Anatolikoi to the of-Cappadocians theme
 μετετέθησαν ταῦτα τὰ βάνδα, ἥτοι ἡ τοποτηρησία τῆς
 were-transferred these the banda that-is the topoteresia —

Εὐδοκιάδος, ἡ τοποτηρησία τοῦ ἁγίου Ἀγαπητοῦ, ἡ
 of-Eudokias the topoteresia of-the holy Agapetos the
 τοποτηρησία Ἀφραζείας· καὶ ἐγένοντο ταῦτα τὰ ἑπτὰ
 topoteresia of-Aphrazeia and became these the seven

βάνδα, ἥτοι τὰ τῶν Βουκελλαρίων τέσσαρα καὶ τρία τῶν
banda that-is the of-the Boukellarioi four and three of-the
 Ἀνατολικῶν, τοῦρμα μία ἢ νῦν τὰ Κόμματα λεγομένη.
Anatolikoi tourma one the(-one) now the Kommata called
 Ἰστέον ὅτι ἐπὶ Λέοντος τοῦ φιλοχρίστου δεσπότου ἀπὸ
(one)-must-know that under Leo the Christ-loving lord from
 τοῦ θέματος τῶν Βουκελλαρίων εἰς τὸ θέμα Χαρσιανοῦ
the theme of-the Boukellarioi to the theme of-Charsianon
 μετετέθησαν ταῦτα τὰ βάνδα, ἥτοι ἡ τοποτηρησία τοῦ
were-transferred these the banda that-is the topoteresia —
 Μυριοκεφάλου, ἡ τοποτηρησία τοῦ τιμίου Σταυροῦ καὶ ἡ
of-Myriokephalon the topoteresia of-the precious Cross and the
 τοποτηρησία Βερινουπόλεως, καὶ ἐγένοντο τοῦρμα ἡ νῦν
topoteresia of-Berinoupolis and became (a)-tourma the(-one) now
 Σανιάνα λεγομένη. καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ θέματος τῶν Ἀρμενιακῶν εἰς
Saniana called and from the theme of-the Armeniakoi to
 τὸ τοῦ Χαρσιανοῦ θέμα μετετέθησαν ταῦτα τὰ βάνδα, ἥτοι ἡ
the — of-Charsianon theme were-transferred these the banda that-is the
 τοῦ Κομοδρόμου τοποτηρησία, ἡ τοποτηρησία Ταβίας, καὶ
— of-Komodromos topoteresia the topoteresia of-Tabia and
 εἰς τὴν τοῦρμαν τοῦ Χαρσιανοῦ τὴν εἰρημένην προσετέθησαν.
to the tourma — of-Charsianon the said were-added
 ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ Καππαδοκῶν εἰς τὸ τοῦ Χαρσιανοῦ θέμα ταῦτα
from and the of-Cappadocians to the — of-Charsianon theme these
 τὰ βάνδα μετετέθησαν, ἥτοι ἡ τοῦρμα Κασῆς ἐξ ὕλοκλήρου
the banda were-transferred that-is the tourma of-Kase in entirety
 καὶ ἡ τοποτηρησία Νύσσης μετὰ τῆς Καισαρείας.
and the topoteresia of-Nyssa with — Caesarea
 Ἰστέον ὅτι τοῖς παρελθοῦσι χρόνοις τὸ τοῦ Χοζάνου
(one)-must-know that in-the past times the — of-Chozanon
 θέμα ὑπὸ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν ἦν. ὁμοίως καὶ τὸ τοῦ
theme under the Saracens was likewise also the —

Ἀσμοσάτου θέμα καὶ αὐτὸ ὑπὸ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν ἦν. τὸ δὲ
of-Asmosaton theme also it under the Saracens was — and
 Χανζίτ καὶ ἡ Ῥωμανόπολις κλεισοῦρα τῶν Μελιτηνιατῶν
Chanzit and — Romanopolis (the)-clisura of-the Melitenians
 ὑπῆρχον, καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ ὄρους τοῦ Φατιλάνου πάντα τὰ
were and from the mountain — of-Phatilanos all the(-parts)
 ἐκείθεν τῶν Σαρακηνῶν ὑπῆρχεν, τὸ δὲ Τεκῆς ἦν τοῦ
beyond of-the Saracens were — and Tekes was —
 Μανουήλ. ἡ δὲ Κάμαχα ἡ τοῦρμα ἄκρα Κολωνίας
of-Manuel — and Kamacha the tourma (the)-extremity of-Koloneia
 ἦν, ἡ δὲ τῆς Κελτζινῆς τοῦρμα ὑπὸ τὴν Χαλδίαν ἦν. ἡ
was the and — of-Keltzene tourma under — Chaldia was —
 δὲ Μεσοποταμία τῷ τότε καιρῷ θέμα οὐκ ἦν. Λέων δὲ
and Mesopotamia at-the then time (a)-theme not was Leo and
 ὁ φιλόχριστος καὶ αἰδῖμος βασιλεὺς τὸν Μανουήλ ἐκείνον
the Christ-loving and celebrated emperor — Manuel that
 ἀπὸ τοῦ Τεκῆς μετὰ λόγου ἐξήγαγεν, καὶ ἐν τῇ πόλει
from — Tekes with (a)-promise brought-out and into the city
 αὐτὸν εἰσήγαγε καὶ πρωτοσπαθάριον πεποίηκεν. ἔχει δὲ ὁ
him brought and protospatharius made(-him) has and the
 αὐτὸς Μανουήλ υἱὸς τέσσαρας, τὸν Παγκρατούκαν, τὸν
same Manuel sons four — Pankratoukas —
 Ἰαχνούκαν, τὸν Μουδάφαρ καὶ τὸν Ἰωάννην· καὶ τὸν μὲν
Iachnoukas — Moudaphar and — John and — indeed
 Παγκρατούκαν ὁ βασιλεὺς ἱκανάτον πεποίηκε καὶ μετὰ
Pankratoukas the emperor bikanatos made and after
 τοῦτο στρατηγὸν εἰς τοὺς βουκελλαρίους, τὸν δὲ Ἰαχνούκαν
this general for the Boukellarioi — and Iachnoukas
 εἰς Νικόπολιν στρατηγὸν ἐποίησε, τὸν δὲ Μουδάφαρ καὶ τὸν
at Nikopolis general he-made — and Moudaphar and —
 Ἰωάννην ἐν Τραπεζοῦντι δέδωκε γῆν βασιλικήν, ἅπαντας
John in Trebizond he-gave land imperial all

ἀξιώμασι τιμήσας καὶ δοὺς αὐτοῖς εὐεργεσίας πολλάς.
with-dignities having-honored and having-given them benefactions many
 καὶ ἐποίησε θέμα τὴν Μεσοποταμίαν, καὶ τὸν Ὀρέστην
and he-made (a)-theme — Mesopotamia and — Orestes
 ἐκεῖνον τὸν Χαρσιανίτην στρατηγὸν προεβάλετο, καὶ τότε
that the Charsianite (as)-general he-appointed and then
 δέδωκε τὴν τῆς Καμάχας τοῦρμαν ὑπὸ τὸ θέμα εἶναι
gave the — of-Kamacha tourma under the theme to-be
 τῆς Μεσοποταμίας· εἰθ' οὕτως καὶ τὴν Κελτζινῆς τοῦρμαν
— of-Mesopotamia then thus also the of-Keltzene tourma
 ὑπὸ τὸ θέμα καὶ αὐτὴν τῆς Μεσοποταμίας ἐποίησεν.
under the theme also it — of-Mesopotamia made
 ἀρτίως δὲ ταῦτα πάντα γεγονότα ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν
now and these all having-come under the authority
 τῶν Ῥωμαίων εἰς τὸ Μεσοποταμίας θέμα ἐπὶ Ῥωμανοῦ
of-the Romans to the of-Mesopotamia theme under Romanos
 δεσπότητος προσετέθη ἢ τε Ῥωμανόπολις καὶ τὸ Χανζίτ.
(the)-lord was-added — both Romanopolis and — Chanzit
 Ἰστέον ὅτι ἐπὶ Λέοντος τοῦ φιλοχρίστου δεσπότητος ἢ
(one)-must-know that under Leo the Christ-loving lord —
 Λάρισσα τοῦρμα τῆς Σεβαστείας ἦν, τὸ δὲ Κυμβαλαῖος ἦν
Larissa (a)-tourma — of-Sebasteia was — and Kymbalaiois was
 τοῦρμα τοῦ Χαρσιανοῦ, τὸ δὲ Συμπόσιον ἦν ἐρημία πρὸς
(a)-tourma — of-Charsianon — and Symposion was (a)-wilderness toward
 τὰ μέρη τῆς Λυκανδοῦ παρακείμενον. καὶ ἐπὶ τῆς βασιλείας
the parts — of-Lykandos lying-near and under the reign
 Λέοντος τοῦ φιλοχρίστου δεσπότητος Εὐστάθιος ὁ τοῦ
of-Leo the Christ-loving lord Eustathios the(-son) —
 Ἀργυροῦ ἀπὸ τῆς ἐξορίας ἀνακληθεὶς εἰς τὸ Χαρσιανὸν
of-Argyros from the exile having-been-recalled to — Charsianon
 στρατηγὸς ἐχωρίσθη· ὁ δὲ Μελίας εἰς τὴν Μελιτηνὴν ἔτι
(as)-general was-assigned — and Melias in — Melitene still

πρόσφυγος ἦν, καὶ ὁ Βαασάκιος μετὰ τῶν δύο ἀδελφῶν
(a)-refugee was and — Baasakios with the two brothers
 αὐτοῦ τοῦ τε Κρικορίκη καὶ τοῦ Παζουνῆ, ἀλλὰ καὶ ὁ
his — both Krikorikios and — Pazounes but also —
 Ἰσμαῆλ ὁ Ἀρμένιος ἐκεῖνος, οἷτινες καὶ πρὸς αὐτὸν καὶ
Ismael the Armenian that who also to him and
 τὸν προρρηθέντα Ἀργυρὸν ἔγραψαν διὰ τοῦ χρυσοβούλλου
the aforesaid Argyros wrote through the chrysobull
 λόγον λαβεῖν καὶ ἐξελθεῖν, καὶ τὸν μὲν Βαασάκιον
(a)-promise to-receive and to-come-out and — indeed Baasakios
 καὶ τοὺς ἀδελφούς αὐτοῦ εἰς Λάρισσαν καθεσθῆναι, καὶ
and the brothers his at Larissa to-be-settled and
 ὀνομασθῆναι τὸν μὲν Βαασάκιον Λαρίσσης κλεισουριάρχην,
to-be-named — indeed Baasakios of-Larissa clisurarch
 ὅπερ καὶ γέγονε, τὸν δὲ Ἰσμαῆλ κλεισουριάρχην εἰς τὸ
which also happened — and Ismael clisurarch at —
 Συμπόσιον, ὃ καὶ γέγονε, τὸν δὲ Μελίαν εἰς Εὐφράτειαν
Symposion which also happened — and Melias at Euphrateia
 εἰς τὰ Τρυπία εἰς τὴν ἐρημίαν γενέσθαι τουρμάρχην, ὅπερ
at — Trypia in the wilderness to-become tourmarch which
 καὶ ἐγένετο. ἐξελθόντων δὲ τῶν Μελιτηνιατῶν καὶ τὸν
also happened having-come-out and the Melitenians and —
 Ἰσμαῆλ ἐκεῖνον ἀνελόντων ἔμνευε τὸ Συμπόσιον ἔρημον.
Ismael that having-killed remained — Symposion deserted
 τοῦ δὲ Βαασακίου ὅτι προδοσίαν μελετᾷ διαβληθέντος
— and Baasakios that treason he-plans having-been-slandered
 καὶ ἐξορισθέντος πάλιν ὑπὸ τῆς Σεβαστείας ἢ Λάρισσα
and having-been-exiled again under — Sebasteia — Larissa
 τοῦρμα ἐγένετο, στρατηγοῦ προβληθέντος ἐκεῖσε τοῦ
(a)-tourma became (a)-general having-been-appointed there —
 Ἀργυροῦ Λέοντος τοῦ υἱοῦ Εὐσταθίου, τοῦ μετὰ ταῦτα
Argyros Leo the son of-Eustathios the(-one) after these(-things)

μαγίστρου γεγονότος καὶ δομεστίκου τῶν σχολῶν. ὁ δὲ
magistros having-become and domestic of-the scholae — and
 Μελίας εἰς Εὐφράτειαν καθεζόμενος, ὅποτε προεβλήθη
Melias at Euphrateia sitting when was-appointed
 Κωνσταντῖνος ὁ δούξ εἰς τὸ Χαρσιανόν, κατήλθεν οὗτος ὁ
Constantine the Doux to — Charsianon came-down this the
 προρρηθεὶς Μελίας, καὶ τὸ παλαιὸν κάστρον τὴν Λυκανδὸν
aforesaid Melias and the ancient fortress — Lykandos
 ἐκράτησε, καὶ ἔκτισεν αὐτὸ καὶ ὠχυροποίησε, καὶ ἐκέισε
took and built it and fortified(-it) and there
 ἐκαθέσθη, καὶ ὠνομάσθη παρὰ Λέοντος τοῦ φιλοχρίστου
settled and was-named by Leo the Christ-loving
 βασιλέως κλεισοῦρα. καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο διεπέρασεν ἀπὸ
emperor (a)-clisura and after this he-crossed from
 Λυκανδοῦ εἰς τὸ ὄρος τῆς Τζαμανδοῦ, καὶ ἐκέισε τὸ νῦν
Lykandos to the mountain — of-Tzamandos and-there the now
 ὄν κάστρον ἔκτισε· καὶ ὡσαύτως καὶ ἐκεῖνο κλεισοῦρα
being fortress he-built and likewise that-too (a)-clisura
 ἐκαλεῖτο. ἐκράτησε δὲ καὶ τὸ Συμπόσιον, ποιήσας αὐτὸ
was-called he-took and also — Symposion having-made it
 τουρμαρχάτον. ἐπὶ δὲ Κωνσταντίνου τοῦ φιλοχρίστου
(a)-tourmarchate under and Constantine the Christ-loving
 δεσπότη, τοῦτο πρῶτον, συνούσης αὐτῷ καὶ Ζωῆς
lord this first being-with him also Zoe
 τῆς μητρὸς αὐτοῦ, γέγονεν ἡ Λυκανδὸς στρατηγίς, καὶ
the mother his became — Lykandos (a)-command and
 πρῶτος Λυκανδοῦ στρατηγὸς ὠνομάσθη ὁ πατρίκιος
first of-Lykandos general was-named the patrician
 Μελίας, δηλονότι τῷ τότε καιρῷ αὐτοῦ κλεισουριάρχου ἐν
Melias evidently at-the then time him clisurarch at
 Λυκανδῷ τυγχάνοντος. ὁ δὲ αὐτὸς Μελίας διὰ τε τὴν
Lykandos being the and same Melias because-of both the

συνουῶσαν αὐτῷ πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα τῶν Ῥωμαίων πίστιν
being-with him toward the emperor of-the Romans faith
 καὶ τὰς πολλὰς καὶ ἀπείρους αὐτοῦ κατὰ Σαρακηνῶν
and the many and boundless his against Saracens
 ἀνδραγαθίας μετέπειτα μάγιστρος ἐτιμῆθη.

brave-deeds afterward (as)-magistros was-honored

Ἰστέον ὅτι ἡ Ἄβαρα τοῦρμα ἦν ὑπὸ τὸ θέμα
(one)-must-know that — Abara (a)-tourma was under the theme
 Σεβαστείας, ἐπὶ δὲ Ῥωμανοῦ δεσπότης γέγονε κλεισοῦρα.

of-Sebasteia under and Romanos (the)-lord it-became (a)-clisura

Ἰστέον ὅτι τύπος ἐκράτησε παλαιὸς τὸν κατεπάνω
(one)-must-know that (a)-rule has-prevailed ancient the katepano

Μαρδαϊτῶν Ἀτταλίας παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως δηλονότι
of-(the)-Mardaites of-Attaleia by the emperor evidently

προβάλλεσθαι· διὸ καὶ παρὰ Λέοντος τοῦ μακαριωτάτου
to-be-appointed therefore also by Leo the most-blessed

βασιλέως κατεπάνω προεβλήθη Σταυράκιος ὁ Πλατὺς
emperor (as)-katepano was-appointed Staurakios the Platys

ἐπονομαζόμενος, ὃς χρόνους μὲν διέτριψεν ἱκανούς, οὐχὶ
surnamed who years indeed spent considerable not

καλῶς δὲ καὶ τὰ τέλη διέθηκε. τοῦ γὰρ πρωτοσπαθαρίου
well and also the end disposed the for protospatharius

Εὐσταθίου καὶ ἀσηκρήτις ἐν τῷ τῶν Κιβυρραιωτῶν
Eustathios and asekreitis to the of-the Kibyrrhaiotai

θέματι ἐκ προσώπου ἀποσταλέντος φθόνοι τινὲς ἀναμεταξύ
theme by proxy having-been-sent envies some between

τούτων καὶ μάχαι γεγόνασιν· ὃ τε γὰρ Σταυράκιος ὁ
these and battles arose — both for Staurakios the

Πλατὺς εἰς τὸν πατρίκιον Ἡμέριον καὶ λογοθέτην τοῦ
Platys in the patrician Himerios and logothete of-the

δρόμου θαρρῶν ὥς ἅ τε παρ' αὐτοῦ εἰς τὸν βασιλέα
course trusting as inasmuch as by him to the emperor

μεσιτευθείς, τῷ ἐκ προσώπου Εὐσταθίῳ ἀντέπιπτε καὶ
having-been-sponsored to-the by proxy Eustathios opposed and
 μάλιστα ἐναντίως εἶχεν ἐν οἷς αὐτὸν ἑώρα ἔξω τοῦ
especially contrarily was-disposed in which him he-saw beyond the
 δέοντός τι διαπραττόμενον ἢ καὶ προστάττοντα· ὃ τε
needful something doing or also commanding he both
 δὲ πάλιν ὁ ἐκ προσώπου Εὐστάθιος πρὸς τὸν Σταυράκιον
and again the by proxy Eustathios toward — Staurakios
 διέκειτο ἐχθρῶδως, καὶ πολλὰς κατ' αὐτοῦ ἐπιθέσεις καὶ
was-disposed hostilely and many against him attacks and
 μηχανὰς ἐπλάττετο. ὅθεν αἰτίας ὁ προρρηθεὶς Εὐστάθιος
devices fabricated whence charges the aforesaid Eustathios
 κατὰ τοῦ Σταυρακίου ἀνήγαγεν, ὡς τὸ τῶν Κιβυρραιωτῶν
against — Staurakios referred that the of-the Kibyrrhaiotai
 θέμα δύο στρατηγούς ἔχειν οὐ δύναται, δηλονότι ἐμὲ καὶ
theme two generals to-have not is-able evidently me and
 τὸν Σταυράκιον τὸν κατεπάνω Μαρδαϊτῶν· ἄλλα γὰρ
— Staurakios the katepano of-(the)-Mardaites some-things for
 ἐμοῦ προστάττοντος καὶ διοικεῖν ἐθέλοντος, ἄλλα ποιεῖν
I commanding and to-administer wishing other-things to-do
 ὁ κατεπάνω Μαρδαϊτῶν βούλεται, καὶ αὐτεξούσιος ὢν
the katepano of-(the)-Mardaites wishes and independent being
 τὰ αὐτῷ δοκοῦντα μανικῶς διαπράττεται. ἀνήγαγε δὲ
the-(things) to-him seeming madly does he-referred and
 καὶ ἄλλας ψευδολογίας τινάς, καὶ πολλὰς μηχανὰς κατ'
also other false-tales some and many devices against
 αὐτοῦ συνερράπιστο, τὰς μὲν πιθανῶς συνθείς, τὰς
him stitched-together the indeed plausibly having-composed the
 δὲ συκοφαντικῶς τε καὶ μανικῶς ἀναπλάσάμενος. καὶ
and calumniously both and madly having-fabricated and
 οὗτος δηλονότι τῷ πατρικίῳ Ἡμερίῳ καὶ λογοθέτῃ τοῦ
he evidently in-the patrician Himerios and logothete of-the

δρόμου θαρρῶν ταῦτα ἔγραψεν. ἐπὶ δὲ τῷ τότε καιρῷ
course trusting these(-things) wrote at and the then time
 φίλος Εὐσταθίου μᾶλλον ἦν ὁ πατρίκιος Ἡμέριος ἥπερ
(a)-friend of-Eustathios rather was the patrician Himerios than
 Σταυρακίου, κἂν ὕστερον ἐχθρανθέντες ἀμφοτέροι ἔχθρας
of-Staurakios even-if later having-become-enemies both of-enmity
 ἀνάμεστοι καὶ μανίας πλήρεις γεγόνασι. τὴν οὖν τοιαύτην
full and of-madness full became the then such
 ἀναφορὰν Εὐσταθίου δεξάμενος ὁ βασιλεὺς, καὶ τῇ αἰτήσει
report of-Eustathios having-received the emperor and by-the request
 τοῦ πατρικίου Ἡμερίου πεισθεὶς, δέδωκε τὴν τοῦ
of-the patrician Himerios having-been-persuaded gave the of-the
 τοιούτου κατεπάνω ἐξουσίαν τῷ πρωτοσπαθαρίῳ Εὐσταθίῳ
such katepano authority to-the protospatharius Eustathios
 τῷ ἐκ προσώπου. τοῦ δὲ μακαρίου βασιλέως τὸν βίον ἀπὸ
the by proxy the and blessed emperor the life from
 τῶν κάτω πρὸς τὰ ἄνω μετῆλλαχότος, Ἀλέξανδρος
the(-things) below to the(-things) above having-exchanged Alexander
 ὁ ἀδελφὸς αὐτοῦ τῆς αυτοκράτορος ἀρχῆς ἐγκρατῆς
the brother his of-the autocratic rule master
 γεγονώς, ὡς πάντας τοὺς ὑπὸ τοῦ μακαρίου βασιλέως καὶ
having-become as all those by the blessed emperor and
 ἀδελφοῦ αὐτοῦ προβληθέντας ἔν τισιν ἀρχαῖς διεδέξατο,
brother his appointed in some offices he-replaced
 χαιρεκάκοις καὶ κακοβούλοις ἀνδράσι πεισθεὶς, οὕτω
by-malicious and ill-counseling men having-been-persuaded thus
 δὴ καὶ τὸν προρρηθέντα Εὐστάθιον διεδέξατο καὶ ἀντ'
indeed also the aforesaid Eustathios he-replaced and in-place-of
 αὐτοῦ πεποίηκεν ἕτερον. ὁ γὰρ Χασὲ ἐκεῖνος ὁ ἐκ
him made another — for Chase that the(-one) from
 Σαρακηνῶν τῷ γένει ὀρμώμενος, Σαρακηνὸς δὲ τῷ ὄντι
Saracens by-the race sprung (a)-Saracen and in-the reality

τῇ γνώμῃ καὶ τῷ τρόπῳ καὶ τῇ λατρείᾳ διατελῶν, ὁ
in-the mind and in-the manner and in-the worship continuing the
 τοῦ πατρικίου Δαμιανοῦ δοῦλος, ἐπεὶ πολλὴν παρρησίαν
of-the patrician Damianos slave since much freedom-of-speech
 εἶχε τῷ τότε καιρῷ ὁ πρωτοσπαθάριος οὗτος Χασὲ
had at-the then time the protospatharius this Chase
 πρὸς τὸν κῦριν Ἀλέξανδρον τὸν βασιλέα, ὡσάντως καὶ ὁ
toward the lord Alexander the emperor likewise also the
 πρωτοσπαθάριος Νικήτας ὁ ἀδελφὸς τοῦ Χασέ, ὁ καὶ
protospatharius Niketas the brother — of-Chase the(-one) also
 τῶν Κιβυρραιωτῶν στρατηγὸς γεγωνῶς παρὰ τοῦ αὐτοῦ
of-the Kibyrrhaiotai general having-become by the same
 κυροῦ Ἀλεξάνδρου τοῦ βασιλέως. ὁ Νικήτας οὖν οὗτος
lord Alexander the emperor — Niketas then this
 ὁ ἀδελφὸς τοῦ προρρηθέντος Χασὲ τὸν βασιλέα ἠτήσατο
the brother of-the aforesaid Chase the emperor asked
 ὅτι ὡς ἀρχαῖόν σου φίλον εὐεργετῆν με πρέπον ἐστίν,
that as (an)-old your friend to-benefit me fitting it-is
 ἐν δὲ πρὸς τὴν βασιλείαν σου αἴτημα ἔχω, καὶ δίκαιόν
one and to the majesty your request I-have and just
 ἐστὶν εἰσακοῦσαί μου. τοῦ δὲ βασιλέως διαπορουμένου καὶ
it-is to-bear me the and emperor being-at-a-loss and
 ἀντερωτῶντος τί ἂν εἴη τοῦτο τὸ αἴτημα, καὶ ὅπερ
asking-in-return what — might-be this the request and whatever
 ἐάν ἐστιν ὑπακοῦσαι ὑποσχομένου, ὁ προρρηθεὶς Νικήτης
if it-is to-beed having-promised the aforesaid Niketas
 ἠτήσατο ὅτι τὸν υἱόν μου αἰτοῦμαι ἵνα ποιήσῃ ἡ βασιλεία
asked that the son my I-ask that make the majesty
 σου κατεπάνω τῶν Μαρδαϊτῶν Ἀτταλίας· οὗ τινὸς
your katepano of-the Mardaites of-Attaleia of-whom some
 ὁ βασιλεὺς τῇ αἰτήσῃ πεισθεὶς, ἐπὶ προελεύσεως
the emperor by-the request having-been-persuaded at (a)-procession

εἰσαγαγὼν ἐπὶ τοῦ Χρυσотρικλίνου τὸν υἱὸν τοῦ
having-brought(-him)-in into the Chrysotriklinos the son of-the
 πρωτοσπαθαρίου Νικήτα τὸν σπαθαροκανδιδάτον Ἀβέρκιον,
protospatharius Niketas the spatharocandidatus Aberkios
 προεβάλετο αὐτὸν κατεπάνω τῶν Μαρδαϊτῶν Ἀτταλίας,
appointed him katepano of-the Mardaites of-Attaleia
 καθὼς καὶ ὁ μακάριος Λέων ὁ βασιλεὺς πρότερον
as also the blessed Leo the emperor formerly
 Σταυράκιον τὸν Πλατὺν ἐπονομαζόμενον. καὶ ὁ ἐξ
Staurakios the Platys surnamed and the from
 ἀρχῆθεν παλαιὸς ἔχων τύπος, καθὼς ἐν ἀρχαῖς εἴρηται,
(the)-beginning ancient having rule as at (the)-beginnings has-been-said
 ὑπὸ τοῦ βασιλέως προβάλλεσθαι τὸν κατεπάνω Μαρδαϊτῶν.
by the emperor to-be-appointed the katepano of-(the)-Mardaites
 Ἰστέον ὅτι ἐπὶ βασιλέως τοῦ Θεοφίλου παρακοιμώμενος
(one)-must-know that under (the)-emperor — Theophilos parakoimomenos
 γέγονε Σχολαστικός ὁστιάριος, ἐπὶ δὲ Μιχαὴλ υἱοῦ
became Scholastikios (the)-ostiarios under and Michael son
 Θεοφίλου παρακοιμώμενος Δαμιανὸς πατρίκιος· καὶ μετὰ
of-Theophilos parakoimomenos Damianos (the)-patrician and after
 τοῦτον ἐπὶ τοῦ αὐτοῦ γέγονε παρακοιμώμενος Βασίλειος ὁ
him under the same became parakoimomenos Basil the
 φιλόχριστος βασιλεὺς. ἐπὶ δὲ τοῦ Βασιλείου φιλοχρίστου
Christ-loving emperor under and — Basil Christ-loving
 δεσπότητος παρακοιμώμενος οὐ γέγονε δι' ὅλης αὐτοῦ
lord parakoimomenos not there-was through whole his
 τῆς βασιλείας. ἐπὶ δὲ Λέοντος τοῦ φιλοχρίστου δεσπότητος
the reign under and Leo the Christ-loving lord
 παρακοιμώμενος γέγονε Σαμωνᾶς ὁ πατρίκιος, καὶ μετὰ
parakoimomenos became Samonas the patrician and after
 τοῦτον ἐπὶ τοῦ αὐτοῦ βασιλέως γέγονε Κωνσταντῖνος
him under the same emperor became Constantine

ὁ πατρίκιος. ἐπὶ δὲ Ἀλεξάνδρου τοῦ βασιλέως γέγονε
the patrician under and Alexander the emperor became
 παρακοιμώμενος πατρίκιος Βαρβάτος. ἐπὶ δὲ Κωνσταντίνου
parakoimomenos (the)-patrician Barbatos under and Constantine
 τοῦ φιλοχρίστου δεσπότη γέγονε πάλιν Κωνσταντίνος
the Christ-loving lord became again Constantine
 πατρίκιος ὁ προρρηθείς ἐπὶ Λέοντος δεσπότη, ἐπὶ
(the)-patrician the(-one) aforesaid under Leo (the)-lord under
 δὲ Ῥωμανοῦ δεσπότη Θεοφάνης πατρίκιος· ἐπὶ δὲ
and Romanos (the)-lord Theophanes (the)-patrician under and
 Κωνσταντίνου τὸ δεύτερον γέγονε Βασίλειος πατρίκιος.
Constantine the second(-time) became Basil (the)-patrician
 Ἰστέον ὅτι ἐπὶ Λέοντος τοῦ φιλοχρίστου καὶ ἀειμνήστου
(one)-must-know that under Leo the Christ-loving and ever-memorable
 βασιλέως ἦν ὁ Κτενᾶς ἐκεῖνος, γέρων κληρικὸς πάνν
emperor was — Ktenas that old cleric very
 πλούσιος, ὅστις ἦν καὶ δομέστικος εἰς τὴν νέαν ἐκκλησίαν·
rich who was also domestic at the New Church
 ὑπῆρχε δὲ τεχνίτης εἰς τὸ ᾠσμα, οἷος τῷ τότε καιρῷ
he-was and (an)-artist in the chant such-as at-the then time
 ἕτερος οὐκ ἦν. ὁ δὲ αὐτὸς Κτενᾶς τὸν πατρίκιον
another not was the and same Ktenas the patrician
 Σαμωνᾶν ἐδυσώπησε, τῷ τότε καιρῷ παρακοιμωμένου
Samonas entreated at-the then time parakoimomenos
 αὐτοῦ ὄντος, μεσιτεῦσαι αὐτὸν εἰς τὸν βασιλέα τοῦ γενέσθαι
him being to-mediate him to the emperor of-the to-become
 πρωτοσπαθᾶριον καὶ φορεῖν ἐπικούτζουλον καὶ προέρχεσθαι
protospatharius and to-wear (the)-epikoutzoulon and to-go-forth
 εἰς τὸν Λαυσιακὸν καὶ καθέζεσθαι ὡς πρωτοσπαθᾶριον
into the Lausiakos and to-sit as protospatharius
 καὶ ῥογεῖσθαι αὐτὸν λίτραν μίαν, καὶ ὑπὲρ τῆς τοιαύτης
and to-be-paid him pound one and for the such

ἀντιλήψεως δοῦναι τῷ βασιλεῖ λίτρας τεσσαράκοντα. ὁ δὲ
support to-give to-the emperor pounds forty the and
 βασιλεὺς οὐκ ἠνέσχετο τοῦτο ποιῆσαι, λέγων τῶν ἀδυνάτων
emperor not endured this to-do saying of-the impossible(-things)
 τυγχάνειν καὶ εἰς μεγάλην ἀδοξίαν τῆς βασιλείας μου
to-be and to great disgrace of-the majesty my
 κληρικὸν γενέσθαι πρωτοσπαθάριον. ἀκούσας δὲ ὁ αὐτὸς
(a)-cleric to-become protospatharius having-heard and the same
 Κτενᾶς παρὰ τοῦ πατρικίου Σαμωνᾶ ταῦτα προσέθηκεν
Ktenas from the patrician Samonas these(-things) added
 εἰς τὰς τεσσαράκοντα λίτρας καὶ σχολαρίκια ζυγὴν μίαν,
to the forty pounds also ear-pendants pair one
 ἐκτιμηθεῖσαν λίτρας δέκα, καὶ τραπεζίου ἀσίμιν ἑνζῶδον
valued pounds ten and of-table silver figured
 διάχρυσον ἀνάγλυφον, ἐκτιμηθὲν καὶ αὐτὸ λίτρας δέκα. καὶ
gilded embossed valued also it pounds ten and
 δυσωπηθεὶς ὁ βασιλεὺς τῇ παρακλήσει τοῦ πατρικίου
having-been-entreated the emperor by-the plea of-the patrician
 Σαμωνᾶ καὶ παρακοιμωμένου ἀνελάβετο τὰς τεσσαράκοντα
Samonas and parakoimomenos took the forty
 τοῦ χρυσοῦ λίτρας καὶ τὴν ζυγὴν τὰ σχολαρίκια καὶ
of-the gold pounds and the pair the ear-pendants and
 τοῦ τραπεζίου τὸ ἀνάγλυφον καὶ διάχρυσον ἀσίμιν, ὥς
of-the table the embossed and gilded silver so-that
 γενέσθαι τὸ πᾶν δόμα τοῦ αὐτοῦ Κτενᾶ λίτρας ἑξήκοντα.
to-be the whole gift of-the same Ktenas pounds sixty
 τότε ἐποίησεν αὐτὸν ὁ βασιλεὺς πρωτοσπαθάριον καὶ
then made him the emperor protospatharius and
 ἐρογέυθη τῷ καιρῷ ἐκείνῳ λίτραν μίαν. ἔζησε δὲ ὁ αὐτὸς
he-was-paid at-the time that pound one lived and the same

Κτενᾶς μετὰ τὸ τιμηθῆναι αὐτὸν πρωτοσπαθάριον ἔτη δύο
Ktenas after the to-be-honored him (as)-protospatharius years two
 καὶ ἐτελεύτησεν, ἐρογέυθη δὲ τὰ δύο ἔτη ἀνὰ λίτραν μίαν.
and died was-paid and the two years each pound one

LI · THE IMPERIAL DROMONS

Leo the Wise first built imperial dromons to carry more officials. The protospatharius of the Phiale judged the rowers. The chapter follows the captains who served, among them Barkalas, who cut Symeon's barriers on the river so the Turks could cross, and how the captain of the dromon came to command all the imperial rowers. Levies from the western themes follow.

περὶ τοῦ τίνι τρόπῳ γέγονε τὸ βασιλικὸν δρομώνιον,
concerning the in-what way came-about the imperial dromon
 καὶ περὶ τῶν πρωτοκαράβων τοῦ αὐτοῦ δρομωνίου, καὶ
and concerning the chief-captains of-the same dromon and
 ὅσα περὶ τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου τῆς φιάλας.
(the-things)-which concerning the protospatharius of-the Phiale
 Ἰστέον ὅτι μέχρι τῆς βασιλείας Λέοντος τοῦ αἰοιδίμου
(one)-must-know that until the reign of-Leo the celebrated
 καὶ σοφωτάτου βασιλέως οὐκ ἦν βασιλικὸν δρομώνιον
and most-wise emperor not was (an)-imperial dromon
 ἐν ᾧ εἰσῆρχετο ὁ βασιλεὺς, ἀλλ' εἰς ρούσιον ἀγρᾶριον
in which embarked the emperor but on (a)-red agrarion
 εἰσῆρχετο. πλὴν ἐπὶ Βασιλείου τοῦ φιλοχρίστου δεσπότης,
he-embarked except under Basil the Christ-loving lord
 ὅτε ἐπῆλθεν ὁ αὐτὸς βασιλεὺς εἰς τὰ Θέρμα τῆς Προύσης,
when went the same emperor to the Therma — of-Prousa
 καὶ πάλιν ὅτε ἀπῆλθε θεάσασθαι τὸ γεφύριον τοῦ Ῥηγίου
and again when he-went-away to-see the bridge — of-Rhigion

δηλονότι τῇ κελεύσει αὐτοῦ καὶ προνοίᾳ κτιζόμενον,
evidently by-the order his and providence being-built
 εἰς δρομώνιον εἰσῆλθε, καὶ ἕτερον δρομώνιον ἡκολούθει
on (a)-dromon he-embarked and another dromon followed
 ὀπισθεν. οἱ δὲ ἐν αὐτῷ εἰσελθόντες ἐλάται ὑπῆρχον ἀπὸ
behind those and on it having-embarked rowers were from
 τοῦ βασιλικοῦ ἀγραρίου καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν Στενιτῶν πλωϊμων.
the imperial agrarion and from the Stenite seamen
 τὸ γὰρ παλαιὸν εἶχε τὸ Στενὸν χελάνδια βασιλικὰ
in-the for old(-days) had the Stenon warships imperial
 πλωϊμα μέχρι τῶν δέκα. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ μακάριος βασιλεὺς ὅλα
of-the-fleet up-to the ten since and the blessed emperor all
 τὰ πλείονα αὐτοῦ μεταστασίματα εἰς τὰς Πηγὰς ἐποίει
the most his removals to the Pegai made
 διὰ τὸ καὶ ὑπ' αὐτοῦ κτισθῆναι τὰ τοιαῦτα παλάτια,
because-of the also by him to-have-been-built the such palaces
 ὁμοίως καὶ εἰς τὸ Ἑβδομον καὶ εἰς τὴν Ἱερίαν καὶ εἰς τὴν
likewise also to — Hebdomon and to — Hieria and to —
 Βρύαν, εἰσῆρχετο εἰς τὸ ἀγράριον κατὰ τὸν παλαιὸν
Bryas he-embarked on the agrarion according-to the old
 τύπον. ὅτε δὲ εἰς μακρότερον ἀπήει πρόκενσον, οἷον εἰς
custom when but on (a)-longer he-went-away excursion such-as to
 τὰ Θέρμα τῆς Προύσης καὶ εἰς ἐπιτήρησιν τοῦ Ῥηγίου τῆς
the Therma — of-Prousa and to inspection — of-Rbregion of-the
 γεφύρας, εἰσῆει, καθὼς προεῖρηται, εἰς δρομώνιον, καὶ
bridge he-embarked as has-been-said-before on (a)-dromon and
 ἡκολούθει ἕτερον δρομώνιον, διότι καὶ πλείονας ἄρχοντας
followed another dromon because also more officers
 εἰσέρχεσθαι μετὰ τοῦ βασιλέως, καὶ τοὺς ὑπολοίπους εἰς τὸ
to-embark with the emperor and the remaining on the
 δεύτερον δρομώνιον. ὁ δὲ αἰδιδμος καὶ σοφώτατος Λέων
second dromon the and celebrated and most-wise Leo

ὁ βασιλεὺς φιλοτιμότερόν πως πρὸς τοὺς μαγίστρους
the emperor more-generously somehow toward the magistroi
 καὶ πατρικίους καὶ οἰκείους συγκλητικούς διακέκμενος καὶ
and patricians and own senators disposed and
 θέλων ἀεὶ τοῦτο συγχαίρεσθαι, λογισάμενος μὴ ἐπαρκεῖν
wishing always this to-rejoice-together having-reckoned not to-suffice
 εἰς ὑποδοχὴν πλειόνων ἀρχόντων τὸ ἀγράριον, ἐποίησε
for reception of-more officers the agrarian made
 δρομώνιον, καὶ δὴ ἀπαύστως εἰσήρχετο ἐν αὐτῷ ὅπουδ' ἂν
(a)-dromon and indeed unceasingly he-embarked on it wherever
 ἐβούλετο ἀπελθεῖν. συνήρχοντο δὲ μετὰ αὐτοῦ οἷους
he-wished to-go-away went-with and with him whichever
 ἂν ἐβούλετο τῶν ἀρχόντων, ἀπὸ τε μαγίστρων καὶ
— he-wished of-the officers from both magistroi and
 πατρικίων· κατὰ τύπον γὰρ ἐν τῷ ἀγραρίῳ οὐδεὶς ἕτερος
patricians by rule for on the agrarian no-one other
 εἰσήρχετο μετὰ τοῦ βασιλέως εἰ μὴ ὁ δρουγγάριος τῆς
embarked with the emperor if not the drungarius of-the
 βίγλης καὶ ὁ δρουγγάριος τοῦ πλωΐμου καὶ ὁ λογοθέτης
watch and the drungarius of-the fleet and the logothete
 τοῦ δρόμου καὶ ὁ ἐταιρειάρχης καὶ ὁ μυστικὸς καὶ
of-the course and the betaereiarh and the mystikos and
 ὁ τῶν δεήσεων, καὶ ὅτε παρῆν ἐν τῇ πόλει καὶ
the-(one) of-the petitions and when he-was-present in the city also
 ὁ δομέστικος τῶν σχολῶν, καὶ ὁ παρακοιμώμενος, καὶ
the domestic of-the scholae and the parakoimomenos and
 ὁ πρωτοβεστιάριος, καὶ ἐκ τῶν κοιτωνίτων οὗς ἂν
the protovestiarious and of the chamberlains whom-ever —
 ἐκέλευσεν ὁ βασιλεὺς. δι' οὖν τὸν τρόπον τοῦτον
ordered the emperor because-of then the way this
 ἐποίησε Λέων ὁ αἰῶνιμος καὶ σοφώτατος βασιλεὺς τὸ
made Leo the celebrated and most-wise emperor the

δρομώνιον, καὶ μετὰ τινα καιρὸν ἐποίησε καὶ ἕτερον
dromon and after some time made also another
 δρομώνιον, ὃ καὶ δεύτερον προσηγορεύθη καὶ ἀκολουθῶς
dromon which also second was-called and accordingly
 ὠνομάσθη. καὶ γὰρ εἰς μακρόκενσα ἀπῆει ὁ μακάριος
was-named and for on long-excursions went-away the blessed
 οὗτος βασιλεὺς, οἷον εἰς Νικομήδειαν, εἰς τὸν Ὀλυμπον,
this emperor such-as to Nicomedia to the Olympus
 εἰς τὰ Πύθια· καὶ διὰ τοῦτο ἐπετηδύσατο τὰ δύο
to the Pythia and because-of this he-contrived the two
 δρομώνια εἰς ὑπηρεσίαν καὶ ἀνάπαισιν αὐτοῦ τε καὶ τῶν
dromons for service and rest his both and of-the
 ἀρχόντων αὐτοῦ. πολλάκις γὰρ ἐξερχομένου αὐτοῦ εἰς
officers his often for going-out him to
 τὰ πλησίον πρόκενσα, τὴν μίαν οὐσίαν κατελείμπανεν εἰς
the near excursions the one squadron he-left at
 τὸν Ἱππόδρομον πρὸς φύλαξιν τοῦ παλατίου, διὰ τὸ
the Hippodrome for guarding of-the palace because-of the
 τάγμα τοῦ ἀριθμοῦ κατὰ τὸν ἐπικρατήσαντα παλαιὸν
regiment of-the Arithmos according-to the having-prevailed old
 τύπον μετὰ τοῦ δομεστικοῦ τῶν σχολῶν ταξιδεύειν, καὶ
custom with the domestic of-the scholae to-campaign and
 ἐναπομένοντες εἰς τὸν Ἱππόδρομον συνεξιῶσι κατὰ
those-remaining at the Hippodrome go-out-with according-to
 τύπον τοῖς βασιλεῦσιν εἰς τὰ πρόκενσα.
custom the emperors on the excursions
 Ὅτι ἐξ ἀρχῆς καὶ ἄνωθεν βασιλικὸν ὀφφίκιον ἦν τῷ
that from (the)-beginning and from-of-old imperial (an)-office was to-the
 πρωτοσπαθαρίῳ τῆς φιάλης· οὗτος δὲ ὁ πρωτοσπαθάριος
protospatharius of-the Phiale this and the protospatharius
 τῆς φιάλης ἐπεκράτει καὶ εἶχεν ὑπ' αὐτὸν πάντας τοὺς
of-the Phiale held-power and had under him all the

ἐλάτας τῶν βασιλικῶν ἀγραρίων ρουσίων τε καὶ μαύρων,
rowers of-the imperial agraria red both and black
 ἄνευ τῶν ἀγραρίων τῆς Αὐγούστης· τὰ γὰρ ἀγράρια
except the agraria of-the Augusta the for agraria
 τῆς Αὐγούστης τὰ τε ρούσια καὶ μαῦρα ἐπεκράτει καὶ
of-the Augusta the both red and black controlled and
 ἐξουσίαζεν ὁ τῆς τραπέζης τῆς Αὐγούστης. ἐπὶ
had-authority-over the(-one) of-the table of-the Augusta under
 δὲ τῆς βασιλείας Λέοντος τοῦ αἰοδίδμου καὶ σοφωτάτου
and the reign of-Leo the celebrated and most-wise
 βασιλέως καινουργηθέντα τὰ δρομώνια κελεύσει βασιλικῇ
emperor newly-made the dromons by-order imperial
 εἶχεν ὁ αὐτὸς πρωτοσπαθάριος τῆς φιάλης καὶ τῶν
had the same protospatharius of-the Phiale also of-the
 τοιούτων δρομωνίων τοὺς ἐλάτας ὑπὸ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ ἐξουσίαν.
such dromons the rowers under the his-own authority
 ὁ οὖν προρρηθεὶς πρωτοσπαθάριος τῆς φιάλης καθ'
the then aforesaid protospatharius of-the Phiale by
 ἑκάστην ἡμέραν καὶ καθ' ἑκάστην δειλὴν ἀπὸ παλαιοῦ
each day and by each evening from old
 τύπου κατήρχετο καὶ ἐκαθέζετο ἐν τῇ φιάλῃ (διὰ τοῦτο
custom came-down and sat in the Phiale because-of this
 γὰρ καὶ ἐλέγετο πρωτοσπαθάριος τῆς φιάλης) καὶ τὰς
for also he-was-called protospatharius of-the Phiale and the
 ἀναμεταξὺ δίκας τῶν ἐλατῶν τῶν τε ἀγραρίων καὶ τῶν
among(-them) suits of-the rowers of-the both agraria and of-the
 δρομωνίων τῶν παρ' αὐτοῦ ἐξουσιαζομένων ἔκρινε καὶ
dromons those by him being-governed he-judged and
 κατὰ τὸ δίκαιον ἐδίκαζέ τε καὶ ἐδιοίκει· καὶ ἡνίκα
according-to the just judged both and administered and when
 παρὰ τὸ δέον εὔρισκέ τινα ἢ ἐργαζόμενον ἢ τινα
contrary-to the needful be-found anyone either working or anyone

ἀδικοῦντα ἢ εἰς τὴν ἰδίαν δουλείαν βαγέοντα, τοῦτον διὰ
wronging or in the own service idling him with
 μαγκλαβίων σφοδρῶν ἐπεξήρχετο. καὶ καθ' ὃν εἴρηται
whips violent be-punished and in which has-been-said
 τρόπον, πάντες οἱ τῶν δρομωνίων ἐλάται καὶ οἱ τῶν τοῦ
way all the of-the dromons rowers and those of-the of-the
 βασιλέως ἀγραρίων, τῶν ρουσίων καὶ τῶν μαύρων, ὑπὸ
emperor agraria the red and the black under
 τὴν χεῖρα καὶ τὴν θεωρίαν ὑπῆρχον τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου
the hand and the inspection were of-the protospatharius
 τῆς φιάλης. τὰ δὲ τῆς Αὐγούστης ἀγράρια τά τε ρούσια
of-the Phiale the and of-the Augusta agraria the both red
 καὶ μαῦρα ὑπὸ τὴν χεῖρα καὶ τὴν ἐφορείαν ὑπῆρχον
and black under the hand and the oversight were
 τοῦ τῆς τραπέζης τῆς Αὐγούστης, δηλονότι τὸν λόγον
of-the(-one) of-the table of-the Augusta evidently the account
 τῶν ἀγραρίων τούτων ποιοῦντος τοῦ τῆς τραπέζης
of-the agraria these making the(-one) of-the table
 οὐχὶ πρὸς τὴν Αὐγούστην ἀλλὰ πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα. ἐπὶ
not to the Augusta but to the emperor under
 δὲ Λέοντος τοῦ αἰοιδίμου καὶ σοφωτάτου βασιλέως ἦν
and Leo the celebrated and most-wise emperor was
 πρωτοσπαθάριος τῆς φιάλης ὁ Ἰωάννης, οὗ τὸ ἐπίκλην
protospatharius of-the Phiale — John whose the surname
 ὁ Θαλάσσω, καὶ μετ' αὐτὸν γέγονεν ὁ πρωτοσπαθάριος
the Thalasson and after him became the protospatharius
 ὁ Ποδάρων, καὶ μετ' ἐκείνον ὁ πρωτοσπαθάριος Λέων ὁ
— Podaron and after that-one the protospatharius Leo the
 Ἀρμένιος ὁ τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου Ἀρσενίου καὶ μαγκλαβίτου
Armenian the of-the protospatharius Arsenios and manglabites
 πατὴρ. οὗτοι δέ, ὅ τε ὁ πρωτοσπαθάριος Ποδάρων καὶ
father these and the both the protospatharius Podaron and

ὁ Λέων ὁ Ἀρμένης, πρωτελάται γεγόνασι τοῦ πατρικίου
 — *Leo the Armenian chief-rowers became of-the patrician*
 Νάσαρ καὶ δρουγγαρίου τοῦ πλωΐμου, καὶ ἐπὶ Βασιλείου
Nasar and drungarius of-the fleet and under Basil
 τοῦ φιλοχρίστου δεσπότη ἀνῆξαν ἀπὸ τοῦ πλωΐμου καὶ
the Christ-loving lord they-went-up from the fleet and
 γεγόνασι πρωτελάται τοῦ ἀγραρίου τοῦ βασιλέως· ἐπὶ
became chief-rowers of-the agrarian of-the emperor under
 δὲ τῆς βασιλείας Λέοντος τοῦ αἰοδύμου καὶ σοφωτάτου
and the reign of-Leo the celebrated and most-wise
 βασιλέως, ἥνικα καὶ τὰ δρομώνια ἐποίησε, διὰ τὴν
emperor when also the dromons he-made because-of the
 ἀνδρίαν αὐτῶν καὶ τὴν ἐμπειρίαν τῆς θαλάσσης ἐποίησεν
bravery their and the experience of-the sea he-made
 αὐτοὺς πρωτοκαράβους. καὶ περιστάσεως γενομένης
them chief-captains and (a)-crisis having-arisen
 εἰσήγαγεν ὁ βασιλεὺς τῶν δύο δρομωνίων τοὺς ἐλάτας
put the emperor of-the two dromons the rowers
 μετὰ τῶν δύο πρωτοκαράβων τοῦ πρώτου δρομωνίου εἰς
with the two chief-captains of-the first dromon on
 χελάνδια πλωΐμα, δὸς αὐτοῖς ἐξόπλισιν πολλὴν καὶ
warships of-the-fleet having-given them equipment much and
 ἀναγκαίαν, οἷον σκουτάρια δόρκας κλιβάνια κάλλιστα,
necessary such-as shields hides corselets very-fine
 καὶ ἄλλα ὅσα ἐπιδέονται πλωΐμοι στρατιῶται
and other(-things) as-many-as need seagoing soldiers
 ἐπιφέρεισθαι· καὶ ἀνελάβετο αὐτοὺς ὁ πατρικίος Εὐστάθιος
to-carry and took them the patrician Eustathios
 καὶ δρουγγάριος τοῦ πλωΐμου μετὰ τοῦ βασιλικοῦ στόλου,
and drungarius of-the fleet with the imperial fleet
 καὶ ἀπῆγε κατὰ τῶν ἐναντίων. τοῦτο δὲ ὅλον ἐποίησεν ὁ
and went-away against the adversaries this and all did the

βασιλεὺς διὰ τὸ ἀποβλέπειν τὸν πατρίκιον Εὐστάθιον καὶ
emperor because-of the to-look the patrician Eustathios and
 δρουγγάριον τοῦ πλωΐμου πρὸς πόλεμον τῶν ἐναντίων. καὶ
drungarius of-the fleet to war of-the adversaries and
 αὐτ' ἐκείνων ἐκυβέρνα τὸ βασιλικὸν δρομώνιον Μιχαῆλ
in-place-of those piloted the imperial dromon Michael
 ὁ γέρων καὶ συνετὸς ἐκείνος, ὄντων αὐτῶν τῷ τότε
the old-man and intelligent that being them at-the then
 καιρῷ πρωτελατῶν. οἱ δὲ ἐλαύνοντες εἰς τὰ δρομώνια
time chief-rowers those and rowing in the dromons
 ἕως τῆς ἐλεύσεως τῶν βασιλικῶν ἐλατῶν ὑπῆρχον
until the coming of-the imperial rowers were
 Στενῖται ἐκ τῶν οὐσιῶν τοῦ Στενοῦ. ὅτε δὲ ὑπέστρεψαν
Stenites from the squadrons of-the Stenon when and they-returned
 ἐκ τοῦ ταξιδίου, πάλιν ἦσαν εἰς τὴν ἰδίαν δουλείαν
from the campaign again they-were in the own service
 καθὼς καὶ προὔπῆρχον. τότε οἷονεὶ φιλοτιμούμενος ὁ
as also they-had-been-before then as-it-were honoring the
 βασιλεὺς τὸν πρωτοσπαθάριον τὸν Ποδάρωνα διὰ τὸ
emperor the protospatharius — Podaron because-of the
 ἀνδραγαθῆσαι αὐτὸν καὶ εὐδοκιμῆσαι ὑπὲρ πάντας
to-have-been-brave him and to-have-distinguished-himself above all
 εἰς τὸν πόλεμον καὶ μαρτυρηθῆναι καὶ παρὰ τοῦ πατρικίου
in the war and to-have-been-testified also by the patrician
 Εὐσταθίου καὶ δρουγγαρίου τοῦ πλωΐμου ἕτερον τοιοῦτον
Eustathios and drungarius of-the fleet another such
 μὴ εἶναι εἰς τὸ πλωΐμον ἐπὶ τε ἀνδρίᾳ καὶ διεγέρσει
not to-be in the fleet in both bravery and alertness
 καὶ ταῖς λοιπαῖς ἀρεταῖς καὶ μάλιστα τῇ πρὸς τὸν
and the other virtues and especially the toward the
 βασιλέα εὐνοία καὶ ὀρθῇ πίστει, δέδωκεν αὐτῷ καὶ τὴν
emperor goodwill and upright faith gave to-him also the

ἐξουσίαν τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου τῆς φιάλης. διὰ τε
authority of-the protospatharius of-the Phiale because-of and
 τὸ εἶναι αὐτὸν ἀγράμματον, προστάξει τοῦ βασιλέως
the to-be him unlettered by-command of-the emperor
 κατήρχετο κριτῆς ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἱπποδρόμου καὶ συνεκαθέζετο
came-down (a)-judge from the Hippodrome and sat-with
 μετὰ αὐτοῦ ἐν τῇ φιάλῃ καὶ ἔκρινε τοὺς ἐλάτας. τὰ
with him in the Phiale and judged the rowers the
 δὲ αὐγουστιακὰ ἀγράρια, καθὼς προεῖρηται, ἐπεκράτει
and Augusta's agraria as has-been-said-before controlled
 ὁ τῆς τραπέζης τῆς Αὐγούστης. μετὰ τοῦτο δὲ
the(-one) of-the table of-the Augusta after this and
 προεβάλετο ὁ βασιλεὺς τὸν τε Ποδάρωνα καὶ τὸν
appointed the emperor — both Podaron and —
 Λέοντα τὸν Ἀρμένην τοποτηρητὰς τοῦ βασιλικοῦ πλωΐμου·
Leo the Armenian topoteretai of-the imperial fleet
 πρωτοκαράβους δὲ τοῦ δρομωνίου αὐτοῦ προεβάλετο τὸν
chief-captains and of-the dromon his he-appointed —
 Μιχαὴλ ἐκεῖνον τὸν γέροντα, πρωτελάτην τῷ τότε καιρῷ
Michael that the old-man chief-rower at-the then time
 δρομωνίου τυγχάνοντα, δευτεροελάτην δὲ γεγονότα τοῦ
of-(the)-dromon being second-rower and having-been of-the
 ἀγραρίου Βασιλείου τοῦ φιλοχρίστου δεσπότη, καὶ τὸν
agrarian of-Basil the Christ-loving lord and the
 ἕτερον Μιχαὴλ, οὗ τὸ ἐπὶ κλην Βαρκαλᾶς, ὅστις ἦν
other Michael whose the surname Barkalas who was
 πρότερον εἰς τὸ πλωΐμον πρωτελάτης τοῦ δρουγγαρίου
formerly in the fleet chief-rower of-the drungarius
 Εὐσταθίου καὶ πατρικίου, ὅτε ἐπέρασε τοὺς Τούρκους
Eustathios and patrician when he-ferried-across the Turks
 καὶ κατεπολέμησε τὸν Συμεὼν τὸν ἄρχοντα Βουλγαρίας.
and warred-down — Symeon the prince of-Bulgaria

οὗτος οὖν ὁ Συμεὼν ὁ ἄρχων Βουλγαρίας μαθὼν τὴν
this then — Symeon the prince of-Bulgaria having-learned the
 τοῦ πλωΐμου πρὸς τὸν ποταμὸν ἄφιξιν, καὶ ὅτι μέλλει
of-the fleet to the river arrival and that is-about
 τὸ πλωΐμον τοὺς Τούρκους κατ' αὐτοῦ περᾶσαι, ἐποίησε
the fleet the Turks against him to-ferry made
 λέσας ἥτοι πλοκάς ἰσχυράς πάνυ καὶ στερεμνίους, ὥστε
wattles that-is plaitings strong very and solid so-that
 μὴ δύνασθαι τοὺς Τούρκους ἀντιπερᾶν δι' ἣν ἐπίνοιαν
not to-be-able the Turks to-cross-over by which device
 καὶ ἐκωλύθησαν οἱ Τοῦρκοι τὸ πρῶτον περᾶσαι. ὁ οὖν
also were-bindered the Turks the first(-time) to-cross the then
 προρρηθεὶς Μιχαὴλ ὁ Βαρκαλᾶς μετὰ καὶ ἄλλων δύο
aforesaid Michael — Barkalas with also other two
 πλωΐμων ἀναλαβόμενοι τὰ σκουτάρια καὶ σπαθία αὐτῶν,
seamen having-taken the shields and swords their
 ἀνδρείῳ καὶ ῥωμαλέῳ ὁρμήματι ἐκπηδήσαντες τοῦ
with-(a)-brave and strong rush having-leapt from-the
 χελανδίου κατέκοψαν τὰς λέσας ἥτοι τοὺς πλοκοὺς, καὶ
warship cut-down the wattles that-is the plaitings and
 ἥνοιξαν τὸν πόρον Τούρκοις. τοῦτον οὖν τὸν Βαρκαλᾶν οἱ
opened the passage to-(the)-Turks this then — Barkalas the
 Τοῦρκοι ἰδόντες καὶ τὸ ἀνδρεῖον αὐτοῦ ὑπερθαυμάσαντες,
Turks having-seen and the bravery his having-greatly-admired
 ὅτι μόνος τῶν δύο προπορευόμενος πλωΐμων πρῶτος
that alone of-the two going-ahead seamen first
 κατέκοψε τὸν πλοκόν, θαυμάσαντες εἶπον ὅτι τοῦτον
he-cut-down the plaiting having-wondered said that this-man
 ἔπρεπεν ὀνομάζεσθαι πατρίκιον καὶ εἶναι κεφαλὴν τοῦ
it-befitted to-be-named patrician and to-be head of-the
 πλωΐμου. τὴν οὖν τοῦ Βαρκαλοῦ ἀνδρειότητα ἀκούσας ὁ
fleet the then — of-Barkalas bravery having-beard the

βασιλεὺς ἐποίησεν αὐτὸν δευτεροελάτην εἰς τὸ δρομώνιον
emperor made him second-rower in the dromon
 βασιλικόν. εἴθ' οὕτως τοῦ Ποδάρωνος καὶ τοῦ Λέοντος
imperial then thus — Podaron and — Leo
 γενομένων τοποτηρητῶν προεβλήθη ὁ Μιχαὴλ ὁ γέρον
having-become topoteretai was-appointed — Michael the old-man
 καὶ οὗτος ὁ Βαρκαλᾶς πρωτοκάραβοι τοῦ δρομωνίου.
and this — Barkalas chief-captains of-the dromon
 Ὅτι ὁ προρρηθεὶς Λέων ὁ Ἀρμένης, ὁ πατὴρ
that the aforesaid Leo the Armenian the father
 τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου Ἀρσενίου καὶ μαγγλαβίτου τοῦ
of-the protospatharius Arsenios and manglabites the
 τελευτήσαντος, τελευτᾷ τοποτηρητῆς ὦν εἰς τὸ πλώϊμον.
deceased dies topoteretes being in the fleet
 ὁ δὲ πρωτοσπαθάριος ὁ Ποδάρων μετὰ τινὰς χρόνους
the and protospatharius — Podaron after some years
 προεβλήθη στρατηγὸς ἐν τῷ θέματι τῶν Κιβυρραιωτῶν.
was-appointed general in the theme of-the Kibyrrhaiotai
 Ὅτι τοῦ Ποδάρωνος γεγονότος τοποτηρητοῦ προεβλήθη
that — Podaron having-become topoteretes was-appointed
 πρωτοσπαθάριος τῆς φιάλης ὁ πρωτοσπαθάριος
protospatharius of-the Phiale the protospatharius
 Θεοφύλακτος ὁ Βυμβιλίδης, ἀνεψιὸς τυγχάνων τοῦ
Theophylaktos the Bimbilides nephew being of-the
 πρωτοσπαθαρίου Ἰωάννου, οὗ τὸ ἐπὶ κλην θαλάσσω,ν,
protospatharius John whose the surname Thalasson
 καὶ διήρκεσεν ἐν ἔτεσί τισι τῆς πρώτης αὐτοκρατορίας
and he-lasting for years some of-the first autocracy
 Κωνσταντίνου τοῦ πορφυρογενήτου καὶ φιλοχρίστου
of-Constantine the porphyrogenetos and Christ-loving
 δεσπότου. τούτου οὖν τελευτήσαντος, διὰ τὸ
lord him then having-died because-of the

ὑπεργηράσαι τὸν προρρηθέντα Μιχαὴλ τὸν γέροντα
to-have-grown-very-old the aforesaid Michael the old-man
 καὶ εἰς πολλῶν ἐτῶν περιόδους διατρῦσαι ἐν τῇ
and in of-many years cycles to-have-spent in the
 τοῦ πρωτοκαράβου ὑπουργία ἐτιμήθη τῇ τοῦ
of-the chief-captain service he-was-honored with-the of-the
 πρωτοσπαθαρίου ἀξία καὶ προεβλήθη καὶ πρωτοσπαθάριος
protospatharius dignity and was-appointed also protospatharius
 τῆς φιάλης. καὶ εἰσερχομένου τοῦ βασιλέως ἐν τῇ φιάλῃ
of-the Phiale and embarking the emperor at the Phiale
 ἐν τῷ δρομωνίῳ καὶ ἀπιόντος εἴτε ἐν προκένσῳ εἴτε
on the dromon and departing whether on excursion or
 ἀλλαχοῦ, ἴστατο ὁ καλὸς ἐκεῖνος γέρων καὶ ἀείμνηστος
elsewhere stood the good that old-man and ever-memorable
 κατὰ τὴν τῆς θαλάσσης ἐμπειρίαν μέσον τοῦ
according-to the of-the sea experience in-(the)-middle of-the
 δρομωνίου, προθυμοποιῶν καὶ προτρεπόμενος τοὺς τοῦ
dromon encouraging and urging the of-the
 δρομωνίου ἐλάτας γενναιώτερον καὶ ἀνδρειότερον ἐλαύνειν
dromon rowers more-nobly and more-bravely to-row
 τε καὶ κωπηλατεῖν, ἅμα δὲ καὶ τοῖς τότε πρωτοκαράβοις
both and to-ply-oars together and also to-the then chief-captains
 ὑποτιθέμενος κατὰ τὴν δυσκρασίαν καὶ πνεῦσιν τῶν
advising according-to the inclemency and blowing of-the
 ἀνέμων τὴν βασιλείον ναῦν πηδαλιουχεῖν τε καὶ κυβερνᾶν.
winds the imperial ship to-steer both and to-pilot
 τούτου οὖν τελευτήσαντος, διὰ τὸ νήπιον τυγχάνειν τὸν
him then having-died because-of the infant to-be the
 βασιλέα καὶ τὸ ἀδιάκριτον τοῦ πατρικίου Κωνσταντίνου καὶ
emperor and the indiscretion of-the patrician Constantine and
 παρακοιμωμένου γέγονεν ὁ Θεόδοτος ἐκεῖνος πρωτοκάραβος,
parakoimomenos became — Theodotos that chief-captain

τῷ τότε καιρῷ πρωτελάτης ὢν, τιμηθεὶς κατὰ
at-the then time chief-rower being having-been-honored at
 διαφόρους καιροὺς κاندιδάτος, στράτωρ, σπαθάριος,
various times candidatus strator spatharius
 σπαθαροκандιδάτος καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα πρωτοσπαθάριος
spatharocandidatus and after these(-things) protospatharius
 καὶ πρωτοσπαθάριος τῆς φιάλης· ὃς ἦν γαμβρὸς τοῦ
and protospatharius of-the Phiale who was son-in-law of-the
 προρρηθέντος Μιχαὴλ τοῦ γέροντος. οὐδὲ γὰρ ἀπὸ
aforesaid Michael the old-man not-even for from
 παλαιοῦ τύπου ποτὲ ἐγεγόνει ἢ ἐτιμήθη πρωτοκάραβος τοῦ
old custom ever had-been or was-honored (a)-chief-captain of-the
 βασιλέως πρωτοσπαθάριος, ἀλλ' οὐδὲ σπαθαροκандιδάτος,
emperor protospatharius but not-even spatharocandidatus
 ἀλλ' ἢ κандιδάτος ἢ στράτωρ ἢ τὸ πολὺ σπαθάριος. ἐπὶ
but only candidatus or strator or the most spatharius under
 δὲ Λέοντος τοῦ αἰοδίου καὶ σοφωτάτου βασιλέως οὗτος
and Leo the celebrated and most-wise emperor this
 μόνος ὁ Μιχαὴλ ἐτιμήθη σπαθάριος καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα
alone — Michael was-honored spatharius and after these(-things)
 σπαθαροκандιδάτος. διὰ δὲ τὸ ἀδιάκριτον τοῦ πατρικίου
spatharocandidatus because-of and the indiscretion of-the patrician
 Κωνσταντίνου παρακοιμωμένου γεγόνασιν οἱ πρωτοκάραβοι
Constantine parakoimomenos became the chief-captains
 σπαθαροκандιδάτοι καὶ οὗτος ὁ Μιχαὴλ πρωτοσπαθάριος.
spatharocandidati and this — Michael protospatharius
 τοῦ δὲ βασιλέως τοῦ κυροῦ Ῥωμανοῦ ἀνελθόντος ἐν τῷ
the and emperor the lord Romanos having-gone-up into the
 παλατίῳ καὶ τῆς βασιλείας οὐκ οἶδ' ὅπως εἶπεν ἐγκρατοῦς
palace and of-the empire not I-know how to-say master
 γενομένου, τὸν μὲν Θεόδοτον διὰ τὴν πρὸς Κωνσταντῖνον
having-become — indeed Theodotos because-of the toward Constantine

τὸν φιλόχριστον δεσπότην καὶ βασιλέα εὖνοιαν οὐ μόνον
the Christ-loving lord and emperor goodwill not only
 διεδέξατο, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὴν διὰ δαρμοῦ καὶ κουρᾶς ὑπέξηλθε
replaced but also the by flogging and tonsure he-underwent
 τιμωρίαν, καὶ ἐν διηνεκῇ παρέπεμπεν ἔξορίᾳ, ἐν ᾗ
punishment and into continual sent(-him) exile in which
 καὶ τῷ τέλει τοῦ βίου ἐχρήσατο, ἑάσας τὸν σὺν αὐτῷ
also the end of-the life he-met having-let the with him
 πρωτοκάραβον Κωνσταντῖνον ἐκείνον τὸν Λωρικάτον
chief-captain Constantine that the Lorikatos
 διὰ τὸ διὰ φόβου εὐνοϊκῶς διακεῖσθαι πρὸς αὐτόν,
because-of the through fear well-disposed to-be toward him
 καὶ ὄρκῳ ἰδιοχείρῳ ἑξαρησάμενον τὴν πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα
and by-oath handwritten having-renounced the toward the emperor
 Κωνσταντῖνον εὖνοιαν καὶ ἀγάπην· ὃν πρῶτον μὲν
Constantine goodwill and love whom first indeed
 σπαθαροκανδιδᾶτον ἐτίμησε, καὶ πρῶτον πρωτοκάραβον
(with)-spatharocandidatus he-honored and first chief-captain
 ποιήσας, καὶ πρωτοσπαθᾶριον τῆς φιάλης προβαλόμενος
having-made and protospatharius of-the Phiale having-appointed
 μετὰ ὀλίγον καὶ πρωτοσπαθᾶριον ἐτίμησεν. οὗτος οὖν δι'
after little also (with)-protospatharius honored he then by
 ὑπομνήσεως τοῦ κληρικοῦ Ἰωάννου καὶ κατὰ συγχώρησιν
(the)-prompting of-the cleric John and by permission
 θεοῦ ραίκτωρος γεγονότος ὑπέθετο τῷ μακαρίτῃ τῷ
of-God raiktor having-become suggested to-the late the
 βασιλεῖ κυρῷ Ῥωμανῷ ὅτι ὁ πρωτοσπαθᾶριος Θεοφύλακτος
emperor lord Romanos that the protospatharius Theophylaktos
 καὶ τῆς τραπέζης τῆς Αὐγούστης, ἐπεὶ προβολὴ καὶ
also of-the table of-the Augusta since (an)-appointment and
 ἀντίληψις τῆς μητρὸς τοῦ βασιλέως τυγχάνει καὶ αὐτοῦ
protégé of-the mother of-the emperor he-is and of-the-very

τοῦ βασιλέως, ἀνάγκη καὶ πρὸς τοὺς ἰδίους δεσπότης καὶ
the emperor necessity also toward the own lords and
 εὐεργέτας προσπαθεῖν. καὶ τίς ἢ χρεία τὸν λαὸν τῶν
benefactors to-be-partial and what the need the people of-the
 ἀγρारीων τῆς φιάλης ἐν δυσὶν ἐξουσίαις διαιρεῖσθαι;
agraria of-the Phiale under two authorities to-be-divided
 δύναται γὰρ ὁ τῆς τραπέζης τῆς Αὐγούστης, τῇ
is-able for the(-one) of-the table of-the Augusta by-the
 πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα καὶ τὴν Αὐγούστην εὐνοία κρατούμενος,
toward the emperor and the Augusta goodwill being-held
 ἐξαπατῆσαι τοὺς ὑπ' αὐτοῦ κρατουμένους αὐγουστιατικούς
to-deceive those by him held Augusta's
 ἀγρारीώτας, πολλάκις δὲ καὶ τοὺς τῶν δρομωνίων ἐλάτας,
agrarian-men often and also the of-the dromons rowers
 καὶ μελετήσωσί τινα ἐπανάστασιν κατὰ τῆς βασιλείας
and they-might-plan some rising against the majesty
 σου. ταῦτα εἰπὼν πείθει τὸν κακὸν ἐκείνον καὶ
your these(-things) having-said he-persuades the bad that and
 σκολιὸν ραϊκτωρα καὶ δι' αὐτοῦ τὸν βασιλέα· εὐκόλον
crooked raiktor and through him the emperor easy
 γὰρ ἡ κουφότης καὶ ἀδιάκριτος γνώμη πρὸς ἅπαν τὸ
for the levity and undiscerning mind toward all the(-thing)
 κακούργως λεγόμενον καὶ ὑποτιθέμενον ἀποπλανᾶσθαι καὶ
maliciously said and suggested to-be-led- astray and
 ἐκκυλίεσθαι. καὶ εἰπὼν πείθει, καὶ πείσας δίδεται
to-be-rolled-away and having-spoken he-persuades and having-persuaded is-given
 αὐτῷ καὶ ἡ τῶν αὐγουστιατικῶν ἀγρारीων ἐξουσία· καὶ
to-him also the of-the Augusta's agraria authority and
 ἔκτοτε ἐπεκράτησε τὸ τὸν πρωτοκάραβον τοῦ βασιλικοῦ
from-then prevailed the the chief-captain of-the imperial
 δρομωνίου ἐπέχειν καὶ ἐξουσιάζειν πάντας τοὺς ἐλάτας
dromon to-control and to-have-authority-over all the rowers

τῶν τε δρομωνίων βασιλικῶν τε καὶ αὐγουστιατικῶν
of-the both dromons imperial both and Augusta's
 ἀγρारीων, καὶ εἶναι καὶ πρωτοσπαθάριον τῆς φιάλης.
agraria and to-be also protospatharius of-the Phiale
 Ἰστέον ὅτι ἐπὶ Λέοντος τοῦ ἀειμνήστου καὶ φιλοχρίστου
(one)-must-know that under Leo the ever-memorable and Christ-loving
 βασιλέως ἐγένετο ἀπὸ τῶν τῆς δύσεως θεμάτων λογαρίου
emperor there-was from the of-the west themes of-cash
 ἀπαίτησις διὰ τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου Λέοντος καὶ γεγονότος
(a)-levy through the protospatharius Leo and having-become
 στρατηγοῦ τοῦ Τζικάνη ἐκ τῶν αἰρουμένων μὴ ταξιθεύειν.
general — Tzikanes from those choosing not to-campaign
 Ἰστέον ὅτι καὶ πάλιν ἐπὶ τοῦ αὐτοῦ φιλοχρίστου
(one)-must-know that also again under the same Christ-loving
 καὶ ἀειμνήστου Λέοντος ἐγένετο ἀπὸ τῶν τῆς δύσεως
and ever-memorable Leo there-was from the of-the west
 θεμάτων λογαρίου ἀπαίτησις διὰ τοῦ μαγίστρου Ἰωάννου
themes of-cash (a)-levy through the magistros John
 τοῦ Ἑλαδᾶ, τῷ τότε πατρικίου αὐτοῦ ὄντος.
the Eladas at-the then(-time) patrician him being
 Ἰστέον ὅτι καὶ πάλιν ἐπὶ Ῥωμανοῦ δεσπότου,
(one)-must-know that also again under Romanos (the)-lord
 βουλευθέντος ταξιθεύσαι τοὺς Πελοποννησίους ἐν
having-wished to-campaign the Peloponnesians in
 Λογουβαρδία, τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου Ἰωάννου τοῦ
Lombardy the protospatharius John the
 Πρωτεύοντος ἐν Πελοποννήσῳ τότε στρατηγούντος,
Proteuon in Peloponnese then being-general
 ἤρετίσαντο οἱ αὐτοὶ Πελοποννήσιοι μὴ ταξιθεύσαι ἀλλὰ
chose the same Peloponnesians not to-campaign but
 δοῦναι ἵππάρια χίλια ἐστρωμένα καὶ χαλινωμένα καὶ
to-give horses thousand saddled and bridled and

λογάριον κεντηνάριον ἔν· ἅπερ μετὰ πολλῆς προθυμίας
cash centenarium one which with much eagerness
 παρέσχον.
they-furnished

LII · THE LEVY OF HORSES IN THE PELOPONNESE

The chapter lists the horses demanded from the bishops, officials, and monasteries of the Peloponnese under the lord Romanos, the holders of imperial dignities, seamen, purple-fishers, and paper-makers who gave none, and the five nomismata required from each soldier, which made up a centenarium of coin.

ἡ γενομένη ἀπαίτησις τῶν ἱππαρίων ἐν τῷ θέματι
the having-been-made levy of-the horses in the theme
 Πελοποννήσου ἐπὶ Ῥωμανοῦ δεσπότου, καθὼς προεῖρήται.
of-Peloponnese under Romanos (the)-lord as has-been-said-before
 Ὁ μητροπολίτης Κορίνθου ἱππάρια τέσσαρα, ὁ
the metropolitan of-Corinth horses four the
 μητροπολίτης Πατρῶν ἱππάρια τέσσαρα, οἱ ἐπίσκοποι
metropolitan of-Patras horses four the bishops
 πάντες τοῦ θέματος ἀνὰ ἱππάρια δύο, οἱ πρωτοσπαθάριοι
all of-the theme each horses two the protospatharii
 ἀνὰ ἱππάρια τρία, οἱ σπαθαροκανδιᾶτοι ἀνὰ ἱππάρια
each horses three the spatharocandidati each horses
 δύο, οἱ σπαθάριοι, οἱ στράτωρες ἀνὰ ἱππαρίου ενός,
two the spatharii the stratores each horse one
 τὰ βασιλικά καὶ πατριαρχικά μοναστήρια ἀνὰ ἱππάρια
the imperial and patriarchal monasteries each horses
 δύο, τὰ τῶν ἀρχιεπισκόπων μητροπόλεων καὶ ἐπισκόπων
two the of-the archbishops of-metropolises and of-bishops
 μοναστήρια ἀνὰ ἱππάρια δύο, τὰ ἄπορα μοναστήρια
monasteries each horses two the poor monasteries

σύνδυο ἰππάριον ἔν. οἱ δὲ ἔχοντες βασιλικὰ ἀξιώματα,
two-together horse one those and having imperial dignities
 πλώϊμοι κογχυλευταὶ χαρτοποιοί, ἰπάρια οὐ δεδώκασιν.
seamen purple-fishers paper-makers horses not have-given
 Ἰστέον ὅτι καὶ πᾶς ὁ στρατὸς Πελοποννήσου
(one)-must-know that also all the army of-Peloponnese
 ἀπητήθησαν ὑπὲρ τοῦδε τοῦ ταξιδίου ἀνὰ νομίσματα ε', οἱ
were-required for this the campaign each nomismata 5 those
 δὲ παντελῶς ἄποροι σύνδυο νομίσματα ε', ἐξ ὧν συνέστη
and utterly poor two-together nomismata 5 from which was-made-up
 καὶ τὸ προρρηθὲν διὰ χαράγματος κεντηνάριον ἔν.
also the aforesaid through coin centenarium one

LIII • THE HISTORY OF CHERSON

Under Diocletian the Chersonites helped the Romans by taking Bosporus, and were rewarded with freedom and exemption from tax; under Constantine they fought for him beyond the Ister and were granted annonae as ballistarii. They later defeated two Sauromatai; Pharnakos killed the second in single combat by a trick, and the kingdom of the Sauromatai at Bosporus ended. Gykia learned through her maid that her Bosporan husband had hidden two hundred men in her house to burn the city, and she had the house burned over them. The citizens honored her with statues; when she feigned death to test their oath, they carried her outside the walls, and she rose and shamed them into swearing again. The chapter ends with naphtha springs and how Cherson can be brought to heel if it rebels.

ἱστορία περὶ τοῦ κάστρου Χερσῶνος.
(a)-history concerning the fortress of-Cherson
 Βασιλεύοντος Διοκλητιανοῦ ἐν Ῥώμῃ, ἐν δὲ τῇ
reigning Diocletian in Rome in and the
 Χερσωνιτῶν στεφανηφοροῦντος καὶ πρωτεύοντος
of-(the)-Chersonites(-land) wearing-the-crown and being-first

Θεμιστοῦ τοῦ Θεμιστοῦ, Σαυρόματος ὁ ἐκ
Themistos the(-son) of-Themistos Sauromatos the(-one) from
 τῶν Βοσποριανῶν, Κρισκωνόρου δὲ παῖς γενόμενος,
the Bosporans of-Kriskonoros and son having-been
 συναθροίσας Σαρμάτας τὴν Μαιώτιδα λίμνην οἰκοῦντας
having-gathered Sarmatians the Maeotis lake inhabiting
 ἐστρατοπεδεύσατο κατὰ Ῥωμαίων, καὶ καταλαβὼν τὴν
encamped against (the)-Romans and having-reached the
 τῶν Λαζῶν χώραν καὶ πολεμήσας τοὺς ἐκεῖσε φθάζει
of-the Lazi land and having-warred-upon those there arrives
 καὶ ἕως τοῦ Ἄλυσ ποταμοῦ. μαθὼν δὲ τοῦτο
even up-to the Halys river having-learned and this
 ὁ βασιλεὺς Διοκλητιανός, πορθεῖσθαι τὴν τῶν Λαζῶν
the emperor Diocletian to-be-sacked the of-the Lazi
 χώραν καὶ τὴν Ποντικήν, ἀπέστειλεν ἐκεῖσε στρατὸν
land and the Pontic(-land) sent there (an)-army
 ἀντιπαρατάξασθαι Σαρμάταις βουλόμενος· ἦν δὲ ἑξαρχος
to-oppose (the)-Sarmatians wishing was and commander
 τοῦ στρατοῦ Κώνστας τριβούνος. καὶ καταλαβὼν τὸν
of-the army Constans (a)-tribune and having-reached the
 Ἄλυν ὁ Κώνστας σὺν τῷ στρατῷ κατέστη ἐκεῖσε,
Halys — Constans with the army took-position there
 κωλύων Σαρμάτας ἀντιπερᾶσαι τὸν Ἄλυν. καὶ μὴ
preventing (the)-Sarmatians to-cross-over the Halys and not
 δυναμένου αὐτοῦ ἀντιπαρατάξασθαι αὐτοῖς, ἐβουλεύετο
being-able him to-oppose them took-counsel
 καθ' ἑαυτὸν ὁ Κώνστας μηδαμῶς ἄλλως δύνασθαι
by himself — Constans in-no-way otherwise to-be-able
 τοὺς Σαρμάτας ἐκδιῶξαι, εἰ μή τί γε ἐκ τῶν
the Sarmatians to-drive-out if not something at-least from the
 πλησιοχώρων τῆς Βοσποριανῶν καὶ τῆς Μαιώτιδος
neighbors of-the(-land) of-(the)-Bosporans and of-the Maeotis

λίμνης τινὰς κατ' αὐτῶν ἐκπεμφθῆναι εἰς πόλεμον καὶ
lake some against them be-sent to war and
 τὰς τούτων φαμιλίας ἐκπορβεῖσθαι, ὅπως ταῦτα ἀκούσας
the their households be-sacked so-that these(-things) having-heard
 ὁ Σαυρομάτας ὑποστρέψῃ ἐκ τοῦ πολέμου· καὶ ταῦτα
 — *Sauromatos may-return from the war and these(-things)*
 μὴνύσῃ τῷ βασιλεῖ, ἐφ' ᾧ τε ἀπέστειλε κατὰ τῶν
may-report to-the emperor on (condition)-that he-should-send to the
 Χερσωνιτῶν, καὶ τούτους διήγειρε κατὰ τῶν Σαρμάτων
Chersonites and them should-rouse against the Sarmatians
 ὡς πλησιοχώρων αὐτῶν ὄντων, καὶ πολεμήσαι τὰς αὐτῶν
as neighbors their being and to-war-upon the their
 φαμιλίας πρὸς τὸ τὸν Σαυρομάταν ἀκούσαντα τὸ τάχος
households for the — Sauromatos having-heard the speed
 ὑποστρέψαι ἐκ τοῦ πολέμου. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς Διοκλητιανὸς
to-return from the war the and emperor Diocletian
 ταῦτα ἀκούσας ἀπέστειλεν εὐθέως κατὰ τῶν Χερσωνιτῶν,
these(-things) having-heard sent at-once to the Chersonites
 προτρεπόμενος συμμαχεῖσθαι αὐτῷ καὶ ἀπελθόντας τὴν
urging to-fight-alongside him and having-gone-away the
 Βοσποριανῶν καὶ Σαρμάτων χώραν ἐκπορθεῖσθαι καὶ τὰς
of-Bosporans and of-Sarmatians land to-sack and the
 τούτων φαμιλίας αἰχμαλωτῖσαι. στεφανηφοροῦντος δὲ τότε
their households to-take-captive wearing-the-crown and then
 καὶ πρωτεύοντος τῆς Χερσωνιτῶν χώρας Χρήστου τοῦ
and being-first of-the of-(the)-Chersonites land Chrestos the(-son)
 Παπίου, οἱ Χερσωνῖται τοῖς τοῦ βασιλέως ῥήμασιν ἀσμένως
of-Papias the Chersonites to-the of-the emperor words gladly
 ὑπακούσαντες ἐμηχανῶντο λοιπὸν ποίῳ τρόπῳ δυνηθεῖν
having-obeyed contrived then in-what way they-might-be-able
 τὴν τε τοῦ Σαυρομάτου πόλιν Βόσπορον καὶ τὰ τῆς
the both — of-Sauromatos city Bosporus and the of-the

Μαιώτιδος καστέλλια παραλαβείν. καὶ συναθροίσαντες τοὺς
Maeotis castles to-take and having-gathered the
 τῶν πλησιοχώρων καστελλίων ἄνδρας καὶ κατασκευάσαντες
of-the neighboring castles men and having-made
 ἄρματα πολεμικὰ καὶ ἐνθέντες ἐν αὐτοῖς τὰς λεγομένας
chariots war and having-placed on them the called
 χειροβολίστρας παρεγένοντο κατὰ τὴν Βοσποριανῶν πόλιν,
hand-ballistae came against the of-(the)-Bosporans city
 καὶ ποιήσαντες ἐγκρύμματα διὰ τῆς νυκτὸς ὀλίγιστοι
and having-made ambushes through the night very-few
 προσῆψαν τὸν πόλεμον τῇ πόλει, καὶ τειχομαχήσαντες
joined the battle with-the city and having-fought-at-the-wall
 ἀπὸ ὄρθρου ἕως ὥρας τρίτης ἐτεκμήραντο τοῦ φυγεῖν,
from dawn until (the)-hour third they-feigned of-the to-flee
 μὴ προσδέξαντες τὰς ἐν τοῖς ἅρμασι κατεσκευασμένας
not having-awaited the on the chariots constructed
 χειροβολίστρας. καὶ δὴ τῶν ἐν τῇ Βοσπόρῳ νομισάντων
hand-ballistae and indeed those in — Bosporus having-supposed
 ὥς δι' ὀλιγότητα ἡττημένους φεύγειν τοὺς Χερσωνίτας,
that because-of fewness defeated to-be-fleeing the Chersonites
 καταθαρρήσαντες ἑαυτῶν ἐξήεσαν πρὸς δίωξιν αὐτῶν. οἱ δὲ
having-taken-courage themselves went-out for pursuit of-them the and
 Χερσωνῖται ἡρέμα, φησί, φεύγοντες ταῖς χειροβολίστραις
Chersonites quietly he-says fleeing with-the hand-ballistae
 τοὺς διώκοντας ἀνήλισκον Βοσποριανούς. ἀναστάντες δὲ
the pursuing destroyed Bosporans having-risen and
 καὶ οἱ ἐνεδρεύοντες Χερσωνῖται, καὶ περικυκλώσαντες
also the lying-in-ambush Chersonites and having-surrounded
 τοὺς Βοσποριανούς, πάντας αὐτοὺς κατέσφαξαν. καὶ
the Bosporans all them slaughtered and
 ὑποστρέψαντες κατέλαβον τὴν Βόσπορον, ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ
having-returned took — Bosporus likewise and also

τὰ πρὸς τὴν Μαιώτιδα λίμνην καστέλλια καὶ πάσας
the toward the Maeotis lake castles and all
 τὰς φαμίλιας τῶν Σαυροματῶν, καὶ ἐκαθέζοντο ἐν τῇ
the households of-the Sauromatai and they-sat in —
 Βοσπόρῳ, μηδένα τοῦ λοιποῦ κατασφάζοντες πλὴν τῶν
Bosporus no-one of-the rest slaughtering except those
 πολεμησάντων. καὶ ἔχόμενοι τὴν Βόσπορον ἐφύλαττον
having-fought and holding — Bosporus guarded
 αὐτήν. ἡμερῶν δὲ τινῶν διαγενομένων λέγει Χρῆστος ὁ
it days and some having-passed says Chrestos the(-son)
 τοῦ Παπίου ταῖς τῶν Σαυροματῶν γυναιξιν ὅτι ἡμεῖς οὐκ
— of-Papias to-the of-the Sauromatai women that we not
 ἔχομεν χρεῖαν ὑμᾶς πολεμεῖν, ἀλλ' ἐπειδὴ ὁ Σαυρόματος
have need you to-war-upon but since — Sauromatos
 ἀπῆλθε τὴν τῶν Ῥωμαίων χώραν πορθῆσαι, τούτου χάριν
went-away the of-the Romans land to-sack of-this for-the-sake
 προτραπέντες ἡμεῖς παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων ὡς
having-been-urged we by the emperor of-(the)-Romans as
 ὑπήκοοι αὐτοῦ ὄντες ἐπολεμήσαμεν ὑμᾶς. ἐὰν οὖν θέλητε
subjects his being warred-upon you if then you-wish
 ζῆσαι ἐν τῇ πόλει ὑμῶν, δεῦτε ἀποστέλλωμεν πρέσβεις πρὸς
to-live in the city your come let-us-send envoys to
 τὸν κύριον ὑμῶν Σαυρόματον ἐφ' ᾧτε αὐτὸν ποιῆσαι
the lord your Sauromatos on (condition)-that he make
 εἰρήνην μετὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἐπ' ὅψεσι τῶν πρέσβειων
peace with the Romans in (the)-sight of-the envoys
 ἡμῶν καὶ ἀναχωρῆσαι τῶν ἐκεῖσε, καὶ ἡμεῖς ἀφίεμεν
our and withdraw from-the(-places) there and we let
 ὑμᾶς καὶ ἀπερχόμεθα ἐν τῇ πόλει ἡμῶν, οὕτω μέντοι,
you(-go) and go-away to the city our thus however
 προπέμποντος Σαυρόματος ἐνταῦθα τοὺς πρέσβεις ἡμῶν,
sending-ahead Sauromatos here the envoys our

καὶ μετὰ τῶν ἰδίων ἀνθρώπων μηνύων ἡμῖν τὰ τῆς
and with the own men announcing to-us the(-terms) of-the
 εἰρήνης, καὶ οὕτως ἀφίωμεν ὑμᾶς καὶ ἀναχωροῦμεν. εἰ δὲ
peace and thus let-us-let you(-go) and we-withdraw if and
 καὶ δοκιμάσῃ Σαυρόματος δόλῳ τινὶ ἔρχεσθαι ὡς νομίζων
also attempts Sauromatos by-guile some to-come as supposing
 ἡμᾶς ἐνταῦθα συγκλείσαι καὶ πολεμῆσαι, καὶ γινώμεν τοῦτο
us here to-shut-in and to-war-upon and we-know this
 διὰ τῶν σκουλκατόρων ἡμῶν, πάντας ὑμᾶς ἀπὸ μικροῦ
through the scouts our all you from small
 ἕως μεγάλου κατασφάξομεν, καὶ οὕτως ἀναχωροῦμεν
to great we-will-slaughter and thus we-withdraw
 τῶν ἐντεῦθεν· καὶ τί τὸ λοιπὸν Σαυρομάτῳ ὄφελος
from-the(-places) here and what the then to-Sauromatos profit
 τῆς φαμιλίας αὐτοῦ πάσης καὶ τῆς πόλεως ἀπολλυμένης;
of-the household his all and of-the city perishing
 αἱ δὲ γυναῖκες Σαυρομάτου ταῦτα ἀκούσασαι σπουδαίως
the and women of-Sauromatos these(-things) having-heard eagerly
 τοῦτο γενέσθαι παρεσκεύασαν. καὶ δὴ ἀποστέλλουσιν οἱ
this to-come-about arranged and indeed send the
 Χερσωνῖται μετὰ Βοσποριανῶν καὶ ἰδίους πέντε πρέσβεις
Chersonites with Bosporans also own five envoys
 πρὸς Σαυρόματον, μηνύοντες αὐτῷ τὰ γενόμενα
to Sauromatos announcing to-him the(-things) having-happened
 καὶ λεχθέντα. καὶ δὴ τῶν πρέσβειων καταλαβόντων
and said and indeed the envoys having-reached
 τὸν Σαυρόματον κατὰ τοὺς τοῦ Ἄλυσος ποταμοῦ τόπους,
— Sauromatos at the of-the Halys river places
 ἀνήγγειλαν αὐτῷ πάντα τὰ γενόμενα κατὰ τῶν
reported to-him all the(-things) having-happened against the
 Βοσποριανῶν παρὰ τῶν Χερσωνιτῶν. ὁ δὲ ἐν πολλῇ
Bosporans by the Chersonites he and in much

στενωώσει γενόμενος, ὡς δῆθεν, φησί, βουλόμενος τοὺς
distress having-come as forsooth he-says wishing the
 τῶν Χερσωνιτῶν πρέσβεις ἐκ τῆς ὁδοιπορίας ἀναπαῦσαι,
of-the Chersonites envoys from the journey to-rest
 λέγει αὐτοῖς “ἐπειδὴ κοπώμενοί ἐστέ, θέλω ὑμᾶς ὀλίγας
says to-them since tired you-are I-wish you few
 ἡμέρας ἀναπαῆναι, καὶ εἴθ’ οὕτως πάντα τὰ ὑφ’
days to-rest and then thus all the(-things) by
 ὑμῶν λεχθέντα ποιήσω. ἐντεῦθεν ἀπέλθετε πρὸς τοὺς
you said I-will-do from-here go-away to the(-men)
 Ῥώμης, καὶ μάθετε παρ’ αὐτῶν, καὶ πείθεσθε ὅτι ἀληθεύω
of-Rome and learn from them and be-persuaded that I-speak-truth
 ὑμῖν καὶ μὴ ψεύδομαι.” τῶν δὲ Χερσωνιτῶν ἀπελθόντων
to-you and not I-lie the and Chersonites having-gone-away
 πρὸς Κώνσταντα μετὰ καὶ πρέσβειων τοῦ Σαυρομάτου,
to Constans with also envoys — of-Sauromatos
 ἐπύθοντο τὰ μεταξὺ αὐτῶν γενόμενα. ἀνήγγειλαν δὲ
inquired the(-things) between them having-happened they-reported and
 τῷ Κώνστᾳ καὶ πάντα τὰ ὑπ’ αὐτῶν κατὰ τῶν
— to-Constans also all the(-things) by them against the
 Βοσποριανῶν καὶ τὴν Μαιώτιδα λίμνην γενόμενα, καὶ τὸ
Bosporans and the Maeotis lake having-happened and the
 πῶς τὰς φαμιλίας Σαυρομάτου παρέλαβον, καὶ ὅτι τῇ
how the households of-Sauromatos they-had-taken and that by-the
 ἀνάγκῃ ταύτῃ εἰς εἰρήνην ἦλθεν ὁ Σαυρόματος. ἀκούσας
necessity this to peace came — Sauromatos having-heard
 δὲ ταῦτα ὁ Κώνστας πᾶν ἐλυπήθη, καὶ λέγει τοῖς
and these(-things) — Constans greatly was-grieved and says to-the
 Χερσωνίταις “καὶ τί μοι τὸ ὄφελος λοιπὸν τῆς ὑμετέρας
Chersonites and what to-me the profit then of-the your
 συμμαχίας, ἀφ’ ἧς ἐγὼ ἐποίησα πάκτα δοῦναι αὐτοῖς
alliance from which I made tributes to-give to-them

χρυσίον τοσοῦτον;” λέγουσιν αὐτῷ οἱ Χερσωνῖται “μὴ
gold so-much say to-him the Chersonites not
 λυπηθῆς, δέσποτα, καὶ ἐὰν θέλῃς, ἡμεῖς ἀναλύομεν τὸ
be-grieved master and if you-wish we undo the
 περὶ τῆς δόσεως πάκτον.” λέγει αὐτοῖς ὁ Κώνστας “καὶ
concerning the giving tribute says to-them — Constans and
 πῶς δυνατόν;” λέγουσιν αὐτῷ οἱ Χερσωνῖται “δήλωσον
how (is-it)-possible say to-him the Chersonites declare
 καὶ αὐτὸς τῷ Σαυρομάτῳ ὅτι τὰ μὲν ἤδη μεταξὺ
also yourself — to-Sauromatos that the indeed already between
 ἡμῶν γενόμενα πάκτα κεκράτηνται· ἐπεὶ οὖν τῇ αἰτίᾳ
us having-been-made tributes have-been-held since then by-the cause
 τῇ σῇ καγὼ ἀναλώματα καὶ ζημίας πολλὰς ἐποίησα
the your I-too expenses and losses many made
 σὺν τῷ στρατῷ ἀπὸ Ῥώμης ἕως ὧδε, δός μοι καὶ
with the army from Rome up-to here give to-me also
 σὺ ταῦτα, καγὼ σοι ἀποδίδωμι τὰς φαμιλίας σου
you these(-things) and-I to-you restore the households your
 πάσας καὶ τὴν πόλιν σου.” περιχαρὴς δὲ γενόμενος
all and the city your overjoyed and having-become
 ὁ Κώνστας ἐμήνυσε ταῦτα τῷ Σαυρομάτῳ. ὁ δὲ
— Constans announced these(-things) — to-Sauromatos — and
 Σαυρόματος ἀκούσας καὶ λυπηθεὶς σφόδρα μηνύει τῷ
Sauromatos having-heard and having-been-grieved greatly sends-word —
 Κώνστα λέγων ὅτι οὐ θέλω δοῦναι τί ποτ’ οὖν οὐδὲ
to-Constans saying that not I-wish to-give anything ever then nor
 λαβεῖν· ἀλλὰ μόνον ἀπόστειλόν μοι τοὺς Χερσωνίτας, ἵνα
to-receive but only send me the Chersonites so-that
 τῶν ἐντεῦθεν ἀναχωρήσω. λέγουσιν οἱ Χερσωνῖται
from-the(-places) here I-may-withdraw say the Chersonites
 τῷ Κώνστα “μὴ ἀπολύσῃς ἡμᾶς ἕως ἂν πάντας τοὺς
— to-Constans not release us until — all the

αἰχμαλώτους ἀπολάβῃς.” τότε μηνύει ὁ Κώνστας τῷ
captives you-receive-back then sends-word — Constans —
 Σαυρομάτῳ λέγων ὅτι ἀπόστειλόν μοι πάντας οὓς ἂν
to-Sauromatos saying that send me all whom —
 ἔχεις αἰχμαλώτους, καὶ ἀπολύω τοὺς Χερσωνίτας. ὁ δὲ
you-have captives and I-release the Chersonites — and
 Σαυρόματος ταῦτα ἀκούσας ἄκων καὶ μὴ βουλόμενος
Sauromatos these(-things) having-heard unwilling and not wishing
 ἀπέλυσεν ἅπαντας οὓς ἂν εἶχεν αἰχμαλώτους ἕως ενός.
released all whom — he-had captives to one
 ἀπολαβὼν οὖν ὁ Κώνστας ἅπαντας τοὺς πραιδευθέντας,
having-received then — Constans all those plundered
 δύο τῶν Χερσωνιτῶν πρέσβεις κατασχὼν παρ’ ἑαυτῷ,
two of-the Chersonites envoys having-kept with himself
 τοὺς ἄλλους ἀπέστειλε πρὸς τὸν Σαυρόματον· ὅστις
the others he-sent to — Sauromatos which
 Σαυρόματος παραλαβὼν αὐτοὺς προαπέστειλεν ἐκ τῆς
Sauromatos having-taken them sent-ahead from the
 τῶν Λαζῶν χώρας μετὰ καὶ τῶν ἰδίων ἀνθρώπων
of-the Lazi land with also the own men
 πρὸς τὸ παραδοῦναι αὐτοῖς τὴν τε Βόσπορον καὶ τὰς
for the to-hand-over to-them — both Bosporus and the
 φαμιλίας αὐτῶν. αὐτὸς δὲ Σαυρόματος τὴν πορείαν
households their he and Sauromatos the journey
 μετὰ τοῦ ἔθνους αὐτοῦ ἐν καταστάσει ἐποιεῖτο πρὸς τὸ
with the nation his in order made for the
 ἀθρόους τοὺς Χερσωνίτας παραδοῦναι τὰς φαμιλίας καὶ
all-together the Chersonites to-hand-over the households and
 ἀναχωρῆσαι. οἱ δὲ Χερσωνῖται τοὺς οἰκείους πρέσβεις
to-withdraw the and Chersonites the own envoys
 ὑποδεξάμενοι ἐν τῇ Βοσπόρῳ, καὶ μεμαθηκότες τὰ
having-received in — Bosporus and having-learned the(-things)

γεγόμενα ἅπαντα ὑπὸ Κώνσταντος καὶ τοῦ Σαυρομάτου,
having-happened all by Constans and — Sauromatos
 παρέδωκαν τοῦ Σαυρομάτου ἀνθρώπῳ τὴν τε Βόσπορον
handed-over — of-Sauromatos to-(the)-man — both Bosphorus
 καὶ τὰ τῆς Μαιώτιδος καστέλλια καὶ τὰς φαμιλίας πάσας
and the of-the Maeotis castles and the households all
 ἀβλαβεῖς, καὶ κατέλαβον ἐν εἰρήνῃ τὴν Χερσωνιτῶν.
unharmd and reached in peace the of-(the)-Chersonites(-land)
 ὁ δὲ Κώνστας ἀναχωρήσαντος τοῦ Σαυρομάτου ἐκ τῶν
— and Constans having-withdrawn — Sauromatos from the
 Ῥωμαϊκῶν τόπων καὶ αὐτὸς ἀνέζευξεν ἐπὶ τὴν Ῥώμην, καὶ
Roman places also he marched-back to — Rome and
 ἀνήγγειλε πάντα τῷ βασιλεῖ τὰ ὑπὸ τῶν Χερσωνιτῶν
reported all to-the emperor the(-things) by the Chersonites
 γεγόμενα, προσαγαγὼν καὶ τοὺς δύο αὐτῶν πρέσβεις,
done having-brought-forward also the two their envoys
 οὓστινας ἰδὼν ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ φιλοφρόνως ἀποδεξάμενος
whom having-seen the emperor and kindly having-received
 καὶ τὰ μέγιστα εὐχαριστήσας εἶπεν αὐτοῖς “τί θέλετε
and the greatest having-thanked said to-them what do-you-wish
 παράσχω ὑμῖν τε καὶ τῇ πόλει ὑμῶν ὑπὲρ τῆς τοιαύτης
I-may-furnish to-you both and to-the city your for the such
 εὐνοίας τε καὶ συμμαχίας;” οἱ δὲ εἶπον τῷ βασιλεῖ ὅτι
goodwill both and alliance they and said to-the emperor that
 ἡμεῖς, δέσποτα, οὐδὲν ἕτερον θέλομεν, εἰ μὴ τί γε
we master nothing other wish if not something at-least
 τοῦτο μόνον αἰτοῦμεν, ἐφ’ ᾧ τε δεξιὰς ἐλευθερίας καὶ
this only we-ask on (condition)-that pledges of-freedom and
 ἀτελείας παρασχέσθαι ἡμῖν ὑπὸ τοῦ κράτους ὑμῶν. ὁ δὲ
of-exemption be-furnished to-us by the might your the and
 βασιλεὺς ἀσμένως ὑποκύψας τῇ αἰτήσῃ αὐτῶν ἀφθόνως
emperor gladly having-bowed to-the request their abundantly

παρέσχεν αὐτοῖς τὰς τοιαύτας τῆς ἐλευθερίας καὶ ἀτελείας
furnished to-them the such of-the freedom and of-exemption
 δεξιάς, ἀποστείλας αὐτοὺς μετὰ καὶ δώρων πλείστων κατὰ
pledges having-sent them with also gifts very-many to
 τὴν Χερσωνιτῶν ὡς γνησίους ὄντας αὐτοὺς ὑπηκόους
the of-(the)-Chersonites(-land) as genuine being them subjects
 τῆς Ῥωμαίων βασιλείας. ὁ δὲ Κώνστας μεγάλως καὶ
of-the of-(the)-Romans empire — and Constans greatly also
 αὐτὸς ὑποδεχθεὶς παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως Διοκλητιανοῦ
he having-been-received by the emperor Diocletian
 ὡς ἀνδρείως παραταξάμενος κατὰ τὸν τῶν Σαυρομάτων
as bravely having-drawn-up in the of-the Sauromatai
 πόλεμον καὶ περιφανῆς καὶ ἔνδοξος γενόμενος, μετ'
war and distinguished and glorious having-become after
 ὀλίγον τινὰ χρόνον τῆς Ῥωμαίων ἀνεδέχθη βασιλείας,
little some time the of-(the)-Romans received empire
 Διοκλητιανοῦ ἐπὶ τὴν Νικομήδειαν ἐπαναγαγόντος.
Diocletian to — Nicomedia having-gone-back
 Κώνστα δὲ τελευτήσαντος ἐν Ῥώμῃ ἐβασίλευσε
Constans and having-died in Rome reigned
 Κωνσταντίνος ὁ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ· καὶ ἐρχομένου αὐτοῦ ἐπὶ
Constantine the son his and coming him to
 τὸ Βυζάντιον ἀντιστάσεως αὐτῷ ὑπὸ τινων ἐν τῇ
— Byzantium resistance to-him by some in —
 Σκυθία γενομένης, ὑπεμνήσθη τὸ ὑπὸ τοῦ πατρὸς
Scythia having-arisen he-remembered the(-thing) by the father
 αὐτοῦ Κώνστα λεχθὲν περὶ τῆς τῶν Χερσωνιτῶν
his Constans said concerning the of-the Chersonites
 εὐνοίας τε καὶ συμμαχίας, καὶ ἀπέστειλε κατὰ τὴν τῶν
goodwill both and alliance and sent to the of-the
 Χερσωνιτῶν πρέσβεις ἐφ' ᾧτε ἐλθεῖν κατὰ τὴν
Chersonites envoys on (condition)-that to-come to the

τῶν Σκυθῶν χώραν καὶ μαχήσασθαι τοῖς ἀνθεστηκόσιν
of-the Scythians land and to-fight the(-ones) having-opposed
 αὐτῷ. στεφανηφοροῦντος δὲ τότε καὶ πρωτεύοντος τῆς
him wearing-the-crown and then and being-first of-the
 Χερσωνιτῶν Διογένους τοῦ Διογένους, οἱ Χερσωνῖται
of-(the)-Chersonites(-land) Diogenes the(-son) of-Diogenes the Chersonites
 τὴν κέλευσιν ἀσμένως πειθαρχήσαντες, πάσῃ σπουδῇ
the order gladly having-obeyed with-all eagerness
 κατασκευάσαντες τὰ τε πολεμικὰ ἄρματα καὶ τὰς
having-made the both war chariots and the
 χειροβολίστρας καταλαμβάνουσι τὸν Ἰστρον ποταμόν, καὶ
hand-ballistae reach the Ister river and
 τοῦτον περάσαντες ἀντεπαρατάξαντο τοῖς ἀνθεστηκόσι
it having-crossed drew-up-against the(-ones) having-opposed
 καὶ ἐτροπώσαντο αὐτούς. μαθὼν δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς τὴν
and routed them having-learned and the emperor the
 ὑπ' αὐτῶν γενομένην τροπὴν ἐκέλευσεν αὐτοὺς κατὰ
by them having-come-about rout ordered them to
 τὴν ἐνεγκαμένην ἀπιέναι· τοὺς δὲ τούτων πρωτεύοντας
the having-borne(-them) to-go-away the and their first-men
 προσκαλεσάμενος κατὰ τοῦ Βυζαντίου καὶ εὐχαριστήσας
having-summoned to — Byzantium and having-thanked(-them)
 τὰ μέγιστα ἔφη αὐτοῖς “ἐπειδὴ καὶ νῦν εὐνοϊκῶς ὑπὲρ
the greatest said to-them since also now loyally on-behalf-of
 ἡμῶν ἐκάμετε καθὼς καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν εὐσεβῶν προγόνων τῆς
us you-labored as also under the pious ancestors of-the
 ἡμετέρας θεϊότητος, ἰδοὺ καὶ ἡμεῖς ἐπικυροῦντες τὰς ἤδη
our divinity behold also we confirming the already
 ἐπ' ἐλευθερίᾳ καὶ ἀτελείᾳ δοθείσας ὑμῖν ἐν τῇ Ῥωμαίων
for freedom and exemption given to-you in the of-(the)-Romans(-land)
 ἐκ τῆς ἡμετέρας βασιλείας δεξιᾶς, παρέχομεν ὑμῖν καὶ
from the our majesty pledges furnish to-you also

ἡμεῖς ἀνδριάντα χρυσοῦν μετὰ καὶ χλαμύδος βασιλικῆς καὶ
we (a)-statue golden with also (a)-cloak imperial and
 φιβλατούρας καὶ στέφανον χρυσοῦν πρὸς εὐπρέπειαν τῆς
(a)-brooch and (a)-crown golden for adornment of-the
 ὑμετέρας πόλεως, μετὰ καὶ ἐγγράφου ἡμῶν ἐλευθερίας καὶ
your city with also written our of-freedom and
 ἀτελείας ὑμῶν τε καὶ τῶν πλωϊμῶν ὑμῶν· καὶ πρὸς τὴν
of-exemption your both and of-the seamen your and for the
 γνησιότητα τῆς ὑμῶν εὐνοίας δίδομεν ὑμῖν καὶ δακτυλίους
genuineness of-the your goodwill we-give to-you also rings
 χρυσοῦς ἐκτυποῦντας τὰς ἡμετέρας εὐσεβεῖς εἰκόνας, δι'
golden bearing-the-image-of the our pious images by
 ὧν τὰς κατὰ καιρὸν μελλούσας ἀποστέλλεσθαι ἡμῖν
which the in time about to-be-sent to-us
 παρ' ὑμῶν ἀναφοράς τε καὶ δεήσεις σφραγίζοντες ταύτας
by you reports both and petitions sealing these
 γνωρίμους ἡμῖν ἀποδείκνυτε τοὺς ἑαυτῶν πρέσβεις. πρὸς
recognizable to-us you-show the your-own envoys besides
 ἐπὶ τούτοις δὲ παρέχομεν ὑμῖν καθ' ἕκαστον ἔτος νεῦρόν
upon these and we-furnish to-you by each year sinew
 τε καὶ κánaβον σίδηρόν τε καὶ ἔλαιον ὑπὲρ κατασκευῆς
both and bemp iron both and oil for construction
 τῶν βαλιστρῶν ὑμῶν, καὶ δίδομεν ὑμῖν πρὸς ἀποτροφήν
of-the ballistae your and we-give to-you for maintenance
 ὑμῶν χιλίας ἀννόνας ἐφ' ᾧτε εἶναι ὑμᾶς βαλισταρίους,
your thousand annonaē on (condition)-that to-be you ballistarii
 λεγόμενον ὡς τὰς τοιαύτας σιτήσεις τε καὶ συνηθείας
called as the such rations both and customary-allowances
 πάσας καθ' ἕκαστον ἔτος τῶν ἐντεῦθεν μέλλομεν ὑμῖν
all by each year from-the(-places) here we-are-about to-you
 ἀποστέλλειν κατὰ τὴν Χερσωνιτῶν.” οἱ δὲ Χερσωνῖται
to-send to the of-(the)-Chersonites(-land) the and Chersonites

τὰς τοιαύτας εἰληφότες ἀννόνας, εἰς ἑαυτοὺς τε καὶ τὰ
the such having-received annona among themselves both and the
 τούτων τέκνα διαμερίσαντες τὸν ἀριθμὸν συνεστήσαντο·
their children having-divided the roll established
 διὰ τὸ καὶ ἕως τοῦ νῦν τὰ τούτων τέκνα κατὰ
because-of the also until the now the their children according-to
 τῶν γονέων τῆς στρατείας συμπλήρῳσιν ἐν τῷ ἀριθμῷ
the parents of-the service (the)-complement in the roll
 κατατάσσονται. ἐφοδίοις δὲ καὶ δώροις πλείστοις τότε
are-enrolled with-provisions and also with-gifts very-many then
 τιμηθέντων ὑπὸ τοῦ θεοφιλοῦς βασιλέως Κωνσταντίνου
having-been-honored by the God-loving emperor Constantine
 τοῦ τε Διογέους καὶ τῶν σὺν αὐτῷ, κατέλαβον τὴν
— both Diogenes and those with him reached the
 Χερσωνιῶν ἀποκομίσαντες καὶ τὰς θείας φιλοτιμίας.
of-(the)-Chersonites(-land) having-carried-back also the divine favors
 Μετὰ δὲ χρόνους τινὰς τοῦ ταῦτα γεγονέναι
after and years some of-the these(-things) to-have-happened
 Σαυρόματος ὁ ἑγγονος Σαυρομάτου τοῦ Κρισκορόνου
Sauromatos the grandson of-Sauromatos the(-son) of-Kriskonoros
 τοῦ πολεμήσαντος τὴν Λαζικὴν, συναθροίσας πόλεμον
the(-one) having-warred-upon — Lazike having-gathered (a)-host
 ἐκ τῆς Μαιώτιδος λίμνης ἐπανάστη τοῖς Χερσωνίταις,
from the Maeotis lake rose-up against-the Chersonites
 βουλόμενος, φησί, τὴν τῆς αἰχμαλωσίας ὕβριν τοῦ οἰκείου
wishing he-says the of-the captivity insult of-the own
 πάππου ἐκδικῆσαι τὴν παρ' αὐτῶν ἐπὶ Διοκλητιανοῦ τοῦ
grandfather to-avenge the(-one) by them under Diocletian the
 βασιλέως γενομένην. μαθόντες δὲ τοῦτο οἱ Χερσωνῖται,
emperor having-happened having-learned and this the Chersonites
 στεφανηφοροῦντος τότε καὶ πρωτεύοντος τῆς Χερσῶνος
wearing-the-crown then and being-first — of-Cherson

Βύσκου τοῦ Σουπολίχου, ἀντιπαταξάμενοι καὶ αὐτοὶ
Byskos the(-son) of-Soupolichos having-drawn-up also they
 ὑπήντησαν τῷ Σαυρομάτῳ ἔξω ἐν τοῖς τοῦ λεγομένου
met — Sauromatos outside in the of-the called
 Καφᾶ τόποις, καὶ πολεμήσαντες μετὰ αὐτοῦ, τοῦ θεοῦ τοῖς
Kaphas places and having-warred with him — God to-the
 Χερσωνίταις βοηθοῦντος, ἐνίκησαν τὸν Σαυρόματον καὶ
Chersonites helping conquered — Sauromatos and
 ἐδίωξαν, θήσαντες καὶ ὁροθεσίας ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ λεγομένῳ
pursued(-him) having-set also boundary-marks in the same called
 Καφᾶ, ἐν ᾧ τόπῳ πολεμήσαντες τὸν Σαυρόματον
Kaphas in which place having-warred — Sauromatos
 ἐνίκησαν· ἐν ᾧ καὶ ὄρκους ἐπέτελεσεν ὁ αὐτὸς Σαυρόματος
they-conquered in which also oaths performed the same Sauromatos
 καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ ὑπολειφθέντες τοῦ μηκέτι αὐτοὺς χάριν
and those with him left-behind of-the no-longer them for-the-sake
 πολέμου ὑπερβαίνειν τὰς μεταξὺ αὐτῶν τεθείσας ὁροθεσίας,
of-war to-cross the between them set boundary-marks
 ἀλλ' ἕκαστον αὐτῶν τοὺς ἰδίους ἔχει τόπους πρὸς
but each of-them the own to-have places toward
 τὰς τεθείσας ὁροθεσίας. καὶ οὕτως ἀνεχώρησεν ἐπὶ τὴν
the set boundary-marks and thus withdrew to —
 Βόσπορον ὁ Σαυρόματος καὶ οἱ Χερσωνῖται εἰς τὰ ἴδια.
Bosporus — Sauromatos and the Chersonites to the own(-places)
 Καὶ δὴ τούτων οὕτω γενομένων πάλιν μετὰ χρόνου
and indeed these thus having-happened again after years
 τινὰς ἕτερος Σαυρόματος ἀναστὰς καὶ σὺν αὐτῷ πλῆθος
some another Sauromatos having-risen and with him (a)-multitude
 ἀνδρῶν ἐκ τῆς Μαιώτιδος λίμνης παρετάξατο πόλεμον
of-men from the Maeotis lake drew-up war
 κατὰ τῶν Χερσωνιτῶν, καὶ παρελθὼν τὰς μεθ' ὄρκου
against the Chersonites and having-passed the with oath

τεθείας ὁροθεσίας ἐν τῷ Καφᾷ ὑπὸ τοῦ πρώτου
set boundary-marks in — Kapbas by the first
 γενομένου Σαυρομάτου τοῦ μηδένα ποτὲ ἐπιχειρῆσαι
having-been Sauromatos of-the no-one ever to-attempt
 τῶν Βοσποριανῶν πολέμου χάριν ταύτας ὑπερβῆναι,
of-the Bosporans of-war for-the-sake these to-overstep
 οὗτος ὁ Σαυρόματος ὑπερέβη ὡς οἶα βουλόμενος
this — Sauromatos overstepped as such-as wishing
 τὴν μετὰ βίας αὐτῷ ἀφαιρεθεῖσαν γῆν ἐκδικῆσαι καὶ
the with force from-him taken-away land to-avenge and
 ἀπολαβεῖν. καὶ δὴ ἐν τοῖς τότε καιροῖς στεφανηφοροῦντος
to-recover and indeed in the then times wearing-the-crown
 καὶ πρωτεύοντος τῆς Χερσωνιτῶν Φαρνάκου τοῦ
and being-first of-the of-(the)-Chersonites(-land) Pharnakos the(-son)
 Φαρνάκου ἀντιπαρετάξαντο καὶ οἱ Χερσωνῖται τῷ
of-Pharnakos drew-up-against also the Chersonites —
 Σαυρομάτῳ, καὶ ἀπαντήσαντες ἀλλήλοις ἐν τοῖς τοῦ
Sauromatos and having-met each-other in the of-the
 προειρημένου Καφᾷ τόποις ἔστησαν ἐκάτερα τὰ μέρη ἐν
aforesaid Kapbas places stood each the parts on
 τοῖς ὄρεσιν. ὁ δὲ Σαυρόματος ὢν μέγας τὴν ἡλικίαν
the mountains — and Sauromatos being great in-the stature
 ἐθάρρηνεν ἐαυτῷ καὶ ἐμεγαλύνχει κατὰ τῶν Χερσωνιτῶν
took-courage in-himself and boasted against the Chersonites
 φρναττόμενος, θαρρῶν ἅμα καὶ ἐπὶ τῷ ἀπείρῳ
snorting trusting at-the-same-time also in the boundless
 πλήθει τῷ μετ' αὐτοῦ ὄντι. ὁ δὲ Φάρνακος μικρὸς ἦν
multitude the(-one) with him being — and Pharnakos small was
 τῇ ἡλικίᾳ κατὰ τὸν Σαυρόματον, καὶ ἰδὼν τὸ πλῆθος
in-the stature compared-to — Sauromatos and having-seen the multitude
 τοῦ Σαυρομάτου ἐσκέψατο μετὰ τοῦ ἰδίου στρατοῦ ἐφ'
— of-Sauromatos considered with the own army on

ὥτε μονομαχήσαι αὐτὸν μετὰ τοῦ Σαυρομάτου καὶ
(condition)-that to-fight-in-single-combat him with — Sauromatos and
 μὴ ἄπειρον πλῆθος ἀπολέσθαι. καὶ δὴ σκέψεως τοιαύτης
not (a)-boundless multitude to-perish and indeed consideration such
 γενομένης δηλοῖ ὁ Φάρνακος τῷ πλήθει Σαυρομάτου,
having-happened makes-known — Pharnakos to-the multitude of-Sauromatos
 λέγων ὅτι τίς χρεία ἐστὶ τοσούτου ὄχλου γενέσθαι
saying that what need is of-so-great (a)-crowd to-come-about
 ἀπώλειαν; οὐ γὰρ ὑμεῖς οἰκεία προαιρέσει πρὸς τὸν πόλεμον
destruction not for you by-own choice to the war
 ἐτράπητε, ἀλλὰ Σαυρόματος ὑμᾶς προετρέψατο. θελήσατε
turned but Sauromatos you urged be-willing
 οὖν τοῦτον παρακαλέσαι τοῦ μονομαχήσαι μετ' ἐμοῦ καὶ
then him to-exhort of-the to-fight-in-single-combat with me and
 εἰὰν διὰ τοῦ θεοῦ δυνηθῶ αὐτόν, ὑμεῖς ἀναχωρεῖτε εἰς τὰ
if through — God I-overcome him you withdraw to the
 ἴδια ἀβλαβῶς, καὶ αὐτὸς καὶ ἡ πόλις αὐτοῦ ὑπέπεσάν
own(-places) unharmed and he and the city his have-fallen
 μοι. εἰ δὲ καὶ δυνηθῇ με αὐτός, καὶ οὕτως ὑμεῖς ἀναχωρεῖτε
to-me if and also overcomes me he also thus you withdraw
 εἰς τὰ ἴδια, καὶ αὐτὸς ἐπέβη ἐν τοῖς ἐμοῖς. ὁ
to the own(-places) and he has-stepped into the my(-places) the
 δὲ ὄχλος τῶν Σαυροματῶν ἡδέως τοῦτο ἀποδεξάμενος
and crowd of-the Sauromatai gladly this having-accepted
 προετρέψατο τὸν Σαυρόματον μονομαχήσαι μετὰ τοῦ
urged — Sauromatos to-fight-in-single-combat with —
 Φαρνάκου. ὁ οὖν Σαυρόματος μαθὼν μικρὸν πάνυ
Pharnakos — then Sauromatos having-learned small very
 ὄντα τῇ ἡλικίᾳ τὸν Φάρνακον, ἑαυτὸν δὲ ὑπερμεγέθη,
being in-the stature — Pharnakos himself and very-large
 ἐχάρη ἐπὶ τούτῳ, πεποιθὼς τῇ οἰκείᾳ δυνάμει καὶ οἷς
rejoiced at this having-trusted in-the own strength and with-which

ἐκέχρητο ὅπλοις κατατεθωρακισμένος. καὶ τούτων
he-had-provided-himself arms fully-armored and these
 οὕτως δοξάντων λέγει ὁ Φάρνακος τῷ ἰδίῳ στρατῷ
thus having-been-resolved says — Pharnakos to-the own army
 ὅτι ὅταν κατέλθω διὰ τοῦ θεοῦ εἰς τὸ μονομαχῆσαι,
that when I-go-down through — God for the to-fight-in-single-combat
 καὶ ἴδητε ὅτι ὁ Σαυρόματος τὰ νῶτα αὐτοῦ εἶχε πρὸς
and you-see that — Sauromatos the back his had toward
 ὑμᾶς καὶ τὴν ὄψιν πρὸς τοὺς ἰδίους, ἐγὼ δὲ τὴν ὄψιν
you and the face toward the own(-men) I and the face
 μου πρὸς ὑμᾶς καὶ τὰ νῶτά μου πρὸς τοὺς ἐναντίους,
my toward you and the back my toward the opponents
 ἅπαντες ὑμεῖς βάλλετε μίαν κραυγὴν, καὶ μόνον λέγοντες
all you cast one shout and only saying
 τὸ ἄ ἄ, καὶ μὴ δευτερώσητε ἐπὶ τῇ κραυγῇ. καὶ διή
the ab ab and not repeat at the shout and indeed
 κατελθόντων αὐτῶν ἀμφοτέρων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ πρὸς τὴν
having-gone-down them both into the plain for the
 μονομαχίαν καὶ τρακτεούντων ἑαυτοὺς, καὶ τοῦ Φαρνάκου
single-combat and maneuvering themselves and — Pharnakos
 γενομένου εἰς τὸ τοῦ Σαυρομάτου μέρος καὶ Σαυρομάτου
having-come to the — of-Sauromatos side and Sauromatos
 εἰς τὸ τοῦ Φαρνάκου, ἔδωκεν ὁ τοῦ Φαρνάκου στρατὸς
to the — of-Pharnakos gave the — of-Pharnakos army
 μίαν φωνὴν τὸ ἄ ἄ. ὁ δὲ Σαυρόματος τῆς τοιαύτης
one cry the ab ab — and Sauromatos the such
 φωνῆς ἀκούσας περιστράφη ἰδεῖν ἐναγώνιος τίς ἢ
cry having-beard turned-round to-see anxious what the
 γενομένη κραυγὴ· ἐν δὲ τῷ περιστρέψαι τὸν Σαυρόματον
having-happened shout in and the to-turn-round — Sauromatos
 τὴν ἑαυτοῦ ὄψιν εἰς τὰ ὀπίσω διηνοιχθῆ μικρὸν τὸ
the his-own face to the back(-parts) was-opened (a)-little the

τοῦ κασσιδίου αὐτοῦ πέταλον, καὶ εὐθέως ἐπιδραμὼν ὁ
of-the helmet his plate and at-once having-run-at —
 Φάρνακος ἔδωκε τῷ κόντῳ τὸν Σαυρόματον καὶ ἀνείλεν
Pharnakos struck with-the lance — Sauromatos and killed
 αὐτόν. πεσόντος δὲ τοῦ Σαυρομάτου κατελθὼν ὁ
him having-fallen and — Sauromatos having-dismounted —
 Φάρνακος τοῦ ἵππου ἀπεκεφάλισεν αὐτόν, καὶ γενόμενος
Pharnakos from-the horse beheaded him and having-become
 ἐγκρατὴς τοῦ πολέμου τὸ μὲν πλῆθος τῆς Μαιωτίδος
master of-the war the indeed multitude of-the Maeotis
 ἀπέλυσε, τοὺς δὲ τῆς Βοσπόρου αἰχμαλώτους λαβὼν καὶ
he-released the and — of-Bosporus captives having-taken and
 τὴν γῆν αὐτῶν ἀφελόμενος ἐν Κυβερνικῷ ἄνω τῆς τῶν
the land their having-taken-away at Kybernikon above of-the of-the
 Χερσωνιτῶν ὁροθεσίας ἔστησεν, ἄχρι τεσσαράκοντα καὶ
Chersonites boundary-mark he-set up-to forty and
 μόνον μιλίων γῆν αὐτοῖς ἐάσας· αἵτινες ὁροθεσῖαι μέχρι
only miles land to-them having-left which boundary-marks until
 τοῦ νῦν διαμένουσιν, αἱ δὲ εἰρημέναι πρῶται ὁροθεσῖαι ἐν
the now remain the and said first boundary-marks at
 Καφᾷ εἰσὶν ἀποκείμεναι. ὀλίγους δὲ τινὰς κατασχὼν παρ'
Kaphas are laid-up few and some having-kept with
 ἑαυτῷ τῶν Βοσποριανῶν ὁ Φάρνακος γεωργῶν ἔνεκα,
himself of-the Bosporans — Pharnakos of-farmers for-the-sake
 τοὺς ἄλλους ἅπαντας οἴκτου ἀξιώσας ἀπέλυσε κατὰ
the others all of-pity having-deemed-worthy he-released to
 τῶν Βοσποριανῶν ἀπελθεῖν· οἷτινες ἀπολυθέντες ὑπὸ τοῦ
the Bosporans to-go-away who having-been-released by —
 Φαρνάκου ὑπὲρ τῆς τοιαύτης εὐεργεσίας καὶ φιλανθρωπίας
Pharnakos for the such benefaction and humanity
 αὐτοῦ τῆς εἰς αὐτοὺς γενομένης στήλην αὐτῷ ἤγειραν
his the toward them having-come (a)-stele to-him raised

ἐν τῇ Βοσπόρῳ. ἔκτοτε οὖν λοιπὸν ἢ τῶν Σαυρομάτων
in — Bosporus from-then then henceforth the of-the Sauromatai
 ἐν τῇ Βοσπόρῳ βασιλεία κατελύθη.
in — Bosporus kingdom was-dissolved
 Τούτων δὲ οὕτω γενομένων, Λαμάχου στεφανηφοροῦντος
these and thus having-happened Lamachos wearing-the-crown
 καὶ πρωτεύοντος τῆς τῶν Χερσωνιτῶν, Ἀσάνδρου δὲ τῆς
and being-first of-the of-the Chersonites(-land) Asandros and the
 Βοσποριανῶν βασιλεύοντος, κακία πολλῇ μεμεστωμένοι
of-Bosporans(-land) reigning with-wickedness much filled
 οἱ Βοσποριανοὶ κατὰ τῶν Χερσωνιτῶν καὶ μηδαμῶς
the Bosporans against the Chersonites and in-no-way
 δυνάμενοι τῇ πονηρίᾳ ἡρεμεῖν ἔσπευδον ἀεὶ τρόπῳ
being-able in-the malice to-be-quiet hastened always in-way
 τινὶ τὴν ἀνταμοιβὴν τῶν αἰχμαλωσιῶν τοῖς Χερσωνίταις
some the requital of-the captivities to-the Chersonites
 ἀποδοῦναι· καὶ δὴ μεμαθηκότες ἔχειν θυγατέρα μονογενῇ
to-pay and indeed having-learned to-have (a)-daughter only-begotten
 τὴν Γυκίαν, ἔχοντος δὲ καὶ τοῦ Ἀσάνδρου υἱούς,
— Gykia having and also — Asandros sons
 ἐμηχανῶντο ἐπιγαμβρίαν ποιήσασθαι, ὅπως διὰ τούτου
they-contrived (a)-marriage-alliance to-make so-that through this
 ἀδεῶς ἐπιβαίνοντες τῇ Χερσωνιτῶν ἀμύνασθαι. καὶ
fearlessly setting-foot on-the of-(the)-Chersonites(-land) to-take-revenge and
 δὴ ἀποστέλλουσι πρέσβεις κατὰ τὴν Χερσωνιτῶν
indeed they-send envoys to the of-(the)-Chersonites(-land)
 παρακαλοῦντες, ἐὰν οἶδαμεν ὅτι ἀγάπη ἀληθῆς μεταξὺ ἡμῶν
exhorting if we-know that love true between us
 ἐστὶν καὶ ἀδόλως πρὸς ἀλλήλους ἔχομεν, ἐπιγαμβρεύσομεν
is and without-guile toward each-other we-are we-will-ally-by-marriage
 ἑαυτοῖς· καὶ δότε ἡμῖν εἰς νύμφην τὴν θυγατέρα Λαμάχου
ourselves and give us for (a)-bride the daughter of-Lamachos

τοῦ πρώτου ὑμῶν ἔνεκεν τοῦ υἱοῦ Ἀσάνδρου τοῦ κυρίου
the first your for-the-sake of-the son of-Asandros the lord
 ἡμῶν, ἣ λάβετε αὐτὸν αὐτόθι εἰς γαμβρόν, καὶ οἶδαμεν ὅτι
our or take him there for son-in-law and we-know that
 πιστὰ ἔχομεν εἰς ἀλλήλους, τοῦ υἱοῦ τοῦ βασιλεύοντος
pledges we-have toward each-other of-the son of-the reigning(-one)
 μεθ' ὑμῶν. λέγουσιν αὐτοῖς οἱ Χερσωνῖται ὅτι ἡμεῖς
with you say to-them the Chersonites that we
 πρὸς ὑμᾶς θυγατέρα ἡμῶν δοῦναι οὐκ ἀνεχόμεθα· εἰ
to you (a)-daughter our to-give not endure if
 δὲ ἐκ τῶν υἱῶν Ἀσάνδρου τοῦ βασιλέως ὑμῶν θέλετε
and from the sons of-Asandros the king your you-wish
 δοῦναι ἡμῖν εἰς γαμβρόν, δεχόμεθα, οὕτω μέντοι, μὴ
to-give us for son-in-law we-accept thus however not
 δυναμένου ἔτι τοῦ υἱοῦ Ἀσάνδρου, τοῦ ἀρχομένου
being-able any-longer the son of-Asandros the(-one) beginning
 πρὸς ἡμᾶς ἐπιγαμβρεύσασθαι, καιρῷ ποτὲ ἢ χρόνῳ
to us to-ally-by-marriage at-season any or time
 πειραθῆναι τοῦ ὑποστρέψαι κατὰ τὴν τῶν Βοσποριανῶν
to-attempt of-the to-return to the of-the Bosporans(-land)
 χάριν ἐπισκέψεως ἢ προσηγορίας τοῦ οἰκείου πατρός·
for-the-sake of-visit or of-greeting of-the own father
 εἰ δὲ τοῦτο βούλει, πάντως ὅτι τῇ ὥρᾳ ἀποθνήσκει,
if and this he-wishes surely that in-the hour he-dies
 τῶν δὲ πρέσβων ἀπολυθέντων καὶ καταλαβόντων τὴν
the and envoys having-been-released and having-reached the
 Βοσποριανῶν καὶ ταῦτα ἀναγγελλόντων, ἀπέστειλε πάλιν
of-Bosporans(-land) and these(-things) reporting sent again
 ὁ Ἀσανδρος πρέσβεις, λέγων τοῖς Χερσωνίταις ὅτι ἐὰν
— Asandros envoys saying to-the Chersonites that if
 ἀληθῶς λέγετε καὶ πιστοποιεῖτέ με ὅτι Λάμαχος ἀνέχεται
truly you-speak and assure me that Lamachos consents

ζεύξαι τὴν θυγατέρα αὐτοῦ τῷ μειζοτέρῳ μου υἱῷ,
to-yoke the daughter his to-the elder my son
 ἀποστέλω ὑμῖν αὐτὸν ἐκείνον αὐτόθι ἐπιγαμβρεύσασθαι.
I-will-send to-you him himself there to-ally-by-marriage
 ἦν δὲ Λάμαχος τοῖς τότε καιροῖς, ὡς λόγος, πλούτῳ
was and Lamachos in-the then times as (the)-account in-wealth
 πολλῷ κομῶν ἔν τε χρυσίῳ καὶ ἀργυρίῳ παισί τε
much abounding in both gold and silver in-menservants both
 καὶ παιδίσκαις καὶ ἀλόγοις διαφόροις καὶ κτήμασι πολλοῖς,
and maidservants and beasts various and possessions many
 καὶ τέσσαρσι δὲ ῥεγέωσι τὸν οἶκον αὐτοῦ ἐπικρατεῖν ἐν
and over-four and quarters the house his to-bold-sway in
 πλάτει καὶ μήκει, ἕως κάτω τῶν λεγομένων Σουσῶν,
breadth and length as-far-as below the called Sousai
 ἐν οἷς καὶ ἰδίαν πύλην εἶχεν ἐν τῷ τείχει, καὶ τέσσαρας
in which also (an)-own gate he-had in the wall and four
 πυλεῶνας μεγάλους εἰς τὴν εἴσοδον καὶ τὴν ἔξοδον,
gateways great for the entrance and the exit
 σὺν ἑτέροις δὲ παραπυλίοις σεμνοῖς ὥστε εἰσερχομένων
with other and side-gates stately so-that entering
 τῶν ἀλόγων αὐτοῦ ἐν τῇ πόλει ἐκάστην ἀγέλην ζώων,
the beasts his into the city each herd of-animals
 ἵππων τε καὶ φορβάδων, βοῶν καὶ δαμάλεων, προβάτων
of-horses both and of-brood-mares of-oxen and of-beifers of-sheep
 τε καὶ ὄνων, καὶ δι' ἰδίας πύλας εἰσέναι καὶ εἰς
both and of-asses also through own gates to-enter and to
 ἰδίαν στάσιν ἀπέναι. παρεκάλεσαν οὖν οἱ Χερσωνῖται
own stall to-go-away exhorted then the Chersonites
 τὸν Λάμαχον ἐφ' ᾧτε ἐπιγαμβρεύσεσθαι αὐτὸν τὸν
— Lamachos on (condition)-that to-take-as-son-in-law him the
 τοῦ Ἀσανδρου υἱόν. τοῦ δὲ Λαμάχου ἐπινεύσαντος τῇ
— of-Asandros son — and Lamachos having-assented to-the

παρακλήσει αὐτῶν ἦλθεν ὁ τοῦ Ἀσάνδρου υἱὸς ἐν τῇ
exhortation their came the — of-Asandros son into —
 Χερσῶνι καὶ ἔγημε τὴν γυναῖκα. καὶ διετοῦς μικροῦ
Cherson and married the woman and two-years little
 χρόνου διαγενομένου ἐτελεύτησεν ὁ Λάμαχος· ἡ γὰρ
time having-passed died — Lamachos the for
 μήτηρ τῆς Γυκίας προτελευτήσασα ἦν. ἡ οὖν Γυκία
mother — of-Gykia had-died-before was — then Gykia
 μετὰ τὴν τοῦ ἐνιαυτοῦ περαίωσιν τῆς τοῦ πατρὸς ταφῆς
after the of-the year completion of-the of-the father burial
 τῆς ἐνιαυσιαίας ἡμέρας ἐνστάσης, τὴν μνήμην θέλουσα
the anniversary day having-come the memory wishing
 φαιδρῦναι τοῦ ἰδίου πατρός, στεφανηφοροῦντος τότε
to-brighten of-the own father wearing-the-crown then
 καὶ πρωτεύοντος τῆς Χερσῶνος Ζήθου τοῦ Ζήθωνος,
and being-first — of-Cherson Zetbos the(-son) of-Zetbon
 παρεκάλεσε τοῖς προύχουσι τῆς πόλεως ἐφ' ᾧ τε
exhorted to-the leading-men of-the city on (condition)-that
 ἄνευ ὕβρεως ἀναχθῆναι αὐτοὺς τοῦ λαβεῖν παρ' αὐτῆς
without insult to-be-brought-up them of-the to-receive from her
 σὺν παντὶ τῷ δήμῳ οἶνόν τε καὶ ἄρτους καὶ ἔλαιον κρέα
with all the people wine both and loaves and oil meats
 τε καὶ ὄρνεα καὶ ὄψα καὶ εἴ τι ἕτερον πρὸς τὴν τῆς
both and birds and relishes and if anything other for the of-the
 εὐφρασίας χρεῖαν, πρὸς τὸ τὴν ἡμέραν τῆς μνήμης τοῦ
merriment need for the the day of-the memory —
 Λαμάχου ἅπαντας τοὺς πολίτας σὺν γυναίξιν καὶ τέκνοις
of-Lamachos all the citizens with wives and children
 καὶ πάσῃ τῇ φαμίλιᾳ αὐτῶν εὐφρανθῆναι καὶ ἀγάλλεσθαι
and all the household their to-make-merry and to-exult
 ἕκαστον ἐν τῷ ἰδίῳ ῥεγεῶνι καὶ δημοσίᾳ χορεύειν καὶ
each in the own quarter and publicly to-dance and

ἔργου τινὸς τὸ σύνολον μὴ ἄψασθαι, συνταξαμένη τοῖς
of-work any the at-all not to-touch having-arranged with-the
 πολίταις ἐν ὄρκῳ ἐφ' ᾧ τε ἅπαντα τὸν χρόνον τῆς
citizens on oath on (condition)-that all the time of-the
 ζωῆς αὐτῆς οὕτω τὰ τῆς εὐφρασίας καθ' ἕκαστον
life her thus the(-things) of-the merriment by each
 χρόνον διδόναι αὐτοῖς ἐν τῇ αὐτῇ τοῦ Λαμάχου μνήμη.
year to-give them on the same — of-Lamachos memorial
 τούτων δὲ οὕτω γενομένων καὶ ἐν ὄρκῳ ὑπ' αὐτῆς
these and thus having-happened and on oath by her
 παγιωθέντων, ὁ ταύτης ἀνὴρ ὁ τοῦ Ἀσάνδρου υἱὸς ἔχων
having-been-made-firm the her husband the — of-Asandros son having
 ἐν κρυπτῷ τὸν δόλον καὶ ἐπιζητῶν καιρὸν προδοσίας,
in secret the guile and seeking (an)-occasion of-treachery
 ἀκούσας ταῦτα τὰ παρὰ τῆς Γυκίας λεχθέντα
having-heard these(-things) the(-things) by — Gykia said
 καὶ ἐν ὄρκῳ παγιωθέντα, ἐθαύμασε καὶ ἐπῆνεσε τὴν
and on oath made-firm wondered and praised —
 Γυκίαν ἐπὶ τῇ ἐνὸρκῳ συντάξει ὡς γνησίως περὶ τοὺς
Gykia for the sworn arrangement as genuinely toward the
 γονεῖς ἔχουσιν, συνθέμενος δὲ καὶ αὐτός, φησί, χαίρειν
parents being having-agreed and also he he-says to-rejoice
 καὶ σπένδειν ἐπὶ τῇ τοιαύτῃ συντάξει. καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο
and to-pour-libation at the such arrangement and after this
 παρελθούσης τῆς μνήμης καὶ τῆς εὐφρασίας δηλοῖ
having-passed the memorial and the merriment he-makes-known
 τοῖς ἐν Βοσπόρῳ δι' οἰκείου παιδός, λέγων αὐτοῖς ὅτι
to-those in Bosporus through own servant saying to-them that
 εὑρον μέθοδον δι' ἧς ἀκόπως τὴν Χερσῶνα μέλλομεν
I-have-found (a)-method through which without-toil — Cherson we-are-about
 παραλαβεῖν. ὑμεῖς οὖν ἐκ διαλειμμάτων ἀποστέλλετε μοι
to-take you then at intervals send me

δέκα ἢ δώδεκα νεωτέρους χρησίμους ἐκτὸς τῶν ἐν τῷ
ten or twelve young-men useful besides those on the
 καράβῳ ἐλαυνόντων ὡς δῆθεν ξενία μοι πέμποντες, ἐν
boat rowing as forsooth gifts to-me sending at
 συμβόλῳ δὲ παραβαλλόντων τῶν ἐρχομένων καράβων
Symbolon and putting-in the coming boats
 ὑμῶν καὶ ἐκεῖ μενόντων, ἐμοῦ δὲ πέμποντος καὶ δι'
your and there remaining I and sending and on
 ἵππων φέροντος τοὺς ἐρχομένους νεωτέρους ἐν τῇ πόλει
horses bringing the coming young-men into the city
 καὶ τὰ πεμπόμενα. καὶ δὴ τῷ τρόπῳ τούτῳ ἐπὶ
and the(-things) sent and indeed in-the way this for
 διετῇ χρόνον ἐκ τοῦ κατὰ μέρος ἐρχομένων τῶν
(a)-two-year time from the by part coming the
 Βοσποριανῶν μετὰ τῶν ξενίων, πρὸς τὸ μὴ γνωσθῆναι
Bosporans with the gifts for the not to-be-known
 τῇ πόλει τὸν δόλον ἔφερε μὲν αὐτοὺς πεζικῶς ἐκ τοῦ
to-the city the guile he-brought indeed them on-foot from the
 συμβόλου ὁ τοῦ Ἀσάνδρου υἱός, καὶ μετὰ ἡμέρας τινὰς
Symbolon the — of-Asandros son and after days some
 πάλιν ἐπὶ πάντων πρὸς ἑσπέραν ἀπέλυεν αὐτούς, φησίν,
again before all toward evening he-released them he-says
 ἐπὶ τὰ ἔξω, ὡς δῆθεν βραδέστερον διὰ τὴν ὥραν·
to the outside as forsooth rather-late because-of the hour
 οἱ δὲ ἐξερχόμενοι ἐκ τῆς χώρας ἄχρι τριῶν μιλίων
they and going-out from the country up-to three miles
 σκοτιᾶς βαθείας γενομένης ὑπέστρεφον καὶ ἤρχοντο ἐν τῷ
darkness deep having-come returned and came to the
 λεγομένῳ λίμνῳ καὶ ἐκεῖθεν διὰ καράβου ἔφερεν αὐτοὺς
called lake and from-there by boat he-brought them
 ἐν ταῖς Σώσαις, καὶ διὰ τοῦ παραπυλίου, ὃ εἶχεν ἐν
into the Sousai and through the side-gate which he-had in

τῷ τείχει, εἰσέφερεν αὐτοὺς ἐν τῷ οἴκῳ αὐτοῦ μηδενὸς
the wall brought them into the house his no-one
 εἰδότης, εἰ μὴ τί γε τρεῖς τῶν παίδων αὐτοῦ τῶν
knowing if not something at-least three of-the servants his the
 Βοσποριανῶν καὶ μόνον πιστῶν αὐτοῦ ὄντων, ἐνὸς μὲν
Bosporans and only trustworthy his being one indeed
 τοῦ ἐν συμβόλῳ ἀπερχομένου καὶ μηνύοντος ἀναχωρεῖν
the(-one) at Symbolon going-away and announcing to-withdraw
 τοὺς καράβους, ἄλλου δὲ τοῦ ὑποστρέφοντος τοὺς
the boats another and the(-one) bringing-back the
 Βοσποριανούς καὶ φέροντος ἐν λιμῶνι, ἑτέρου δὲ τοῦ
Bosporans and bringing(-them) to (the)-harbor another and the(-one)
 ἐκ λιμῶνος μετὰ καράβου ἀποκομίζοντος ἐν ταῖς Σώσαις
from (the)-harbor with boat carrying(-them) into the Sousai
 καὶ ἀποκαθιστῶντος ἐν τῷ τοῦ Λαμάχου οἴκῳ, καὶ δι'
and settling(-them) in the — of-Lamachos house and through
 ὧν ἀπέτρεφεν αὐτοὺς ἐν ταῖς ἀποθήκαις αὐτοῦ, μῆτε
whom he-fed them in the storehouses his not-even
 τῆς Γυκίας εἰδούσης τὸν δόλον, προσδοκῶν, καθὰ εἴρηται,
— Gykia knowing the guile expecting as has-been-said
 κατὰ τὴν ἐνιαυσίαν ἡμέραν τῆς τοῦ Λαμάχου μνήμης,
on the anniversary day of-the — of-Lamachos memorial
 τῆς πόλεως πάσης εὐφραينوμένης τε καὶ ἀποκοιμωμένης,
the city all making-merry both and falling-asleep
 αὐτὸν τὴν νύκτα ἐπαναστῆναι μετὰ τῶν Βοσποριανῶν
he the night to-rise-up with the Bosporans
 τε καὶ οἰκείων καὶ ἐμπρῆσαι τὴν πόλιν καὶ πάντας
both and household and to-burn the city and all
 κατασφάζει. συναχθέντων δὲ ἐν τῷ διετεῖ χρόνῳ ἐν τῷ
to-slaughter having-been-gathered and in the two-year time in the
 τῆς Γυκίας οἴκῳ ἄχρι διακοσίων Βοσποριανῶν, καὶ τῆς
— of-Gykia house up-to two-hundred Bosporans and the

μνήμης τοῦ Λαμάχου ἤδη λοιπὸν ἐγγιζούσης, ἐγένετο
memorial — of-Lamachos already then approaching it-happened
 παιδίσκην τῆς Γυκίας κουβουκλαρέαν, πάνυ αὐτῇ οὖσαν
(a)-maidservant — of-Gykia chamber-maid very to-her being
 προσφιλέστατον, πταίσασαν ἀπὸ ὄψεως αὐτῆς γενέσθαι
dearest having-offended out-of (the)-sight her to-be
 καὶ ἀποκλεισθῆναι αὐτήν. ἐν ᾧ δὲ οἴκῳ ἀπεκλείσθη
and to-be-shut-up she in which and house was-shut-up
 ἡ παιδίσκη, ὑποκάτωθεν αὐτοῦ ἦσαν οἱ Βοσποριανοὶ
the maidservant beneath it were the Bosporans
 ἀποτρεφόμενοι. τῆς δὲ παιδίσκης καθεζομένης καὶ νηθούσης
being-fed the and maidservant sitting and spinning
 τὸ λίνον, ἐγένετο τὸ σφοντύλιw τῆς ἀτράκτου πεσεῖν καὶ
the flax it-happened the whorl of-the spindle to-fall and
 κυλισθῆν εἰσελθεῖν εἰς βαθυτάτην ὀπήν πρὸς τὸν τοίχον· ἡ
having-rolled to-go into (a)-very-deep hole by the wall she
 δὲ ἀναστᾶσα πρὸς τὸ ἐπᾶραι αὐτὸ ὀρᾶ αὐτὸ ἐν βαθυτάτῃ
and having-risen for the to-pick-up it sees it in (a)-very-deep
 ὀπῇ ὄν· καὶ μὴ δυναμένης αὐτῆς ἐκσπάσαι αὐτὸ διὰ
hole being and not being-able she to-pull-out it because-of
 τὸ βάθος, ἠναγκάσθη ἐκ τοῦ πάτου πρὸς τὸν τοίχον
the depth was-compelled from the floor by the wall
 ἀνασπάσαι ἓνα βήσαλον πρὸς τὸ τοῦτο ἐπᾶραι· καὶ ὀρᾶ
to-pull-up one brick for the it to-pick-up and sees
 διὰ τῆς ὀπῆς κάτω ἐν τῷ ὑπογέῳ οἴκῳ τὸ πλῆθος τῶν
through the hole below in the underground room the multitude of-the
 ὄντων ἀνδρῶν. καὶ ἰδοῦσα εὐφυῶς πάλιν ἀπέθετο ἐν τῷ
being men and having-seen cleverly again put in the
 τόπῳ τὸ βήσαλον πρὸς τὸ μὴ γνωσθῆναι τοῖς κάτω· καὶ
place the brick for the not to-be-known to-those below and
 λαθραίως ἀποστείλασα μίαν τῶν παίδων προσεκαλεῖτο τὴν
secretly having-sent one of-the servants summoned the

κυρίαν αὐτῆς τοῦ ἐλθεῖν πρὸς αὐτήν, ὀφείλουσάν τι
 mistress her of-the to-come to her (as)-needing something
 ἀναγκαῖον ἀκοῦσαι καὶ ἰδεῖν. ἡ δὲ Γυκία ὑπὸ τοῦ θεοῦ
 necessary to-hear and to-see — and Gykia by — God
 κατανυγείσα ἀπῆλθε πρὸς τὴν παιδίσκην· καὶ εἰσελθούσης
 pricked-in-heart went-away to the maidservant and having-come
 αὐτῆς κατὰ μόνας ἐν τῷ οἰκίματι καὶ κλεισάσης τὴν
 she in private into the room and having-shut the
 θύραν, πεσοῦσα ἡ παιδίσκη πρὸς τοὺς πόδας αὐτῆς εἶπε
 door having-fallen the maidservant at the feet her said
 “δέσποινα, ἔξουσίαν ἔχεις τὴν ἀχρείαν σου δούλην·
 lady authority you-have-over the unprofitable your slave-woman
 πλὴν βούλομαι τῇ κυρία μου ξένον τι καὶ παράδοξον
 but I-wish to-the mistress my strange something and incredible
 πρᾶγμα δεῖξαι.” ἡ δὲ Γυκία εἶπεν αὐτῇ “ἀφόβως εἰπέ,
 (a)-thing to-show — and Gykia said to-her fearlessly speak
 δεῖξον· καὶ τί τὸ τοιοῦτον;” ἡ δὲ παιδίσκη ἀπαγαγούσα
 show and what the such(-thing) the and maidservant having-led
 αὐτὴν πρὸς τὸν τοίχον, καὶ εὐφυῶς ἐπάρασα τὸ βῆσαλον,
 her to the wall and cleverly having-lifted the brick
 λέγει αὐτῇ “ὄρᾳς διὰ τῆς ὀπῆς, δέσποινα, τὸν κάτω
 says to-her do-you-see through the hole lady the below
 κρυπτόμενον ὄχλον τῶν Βοσποριανῶν.” ἡ δὲ Γυκία
 bidden crowd of-the Bosporans — and Gykia
 ἰδοῦσα καὶ ἐκπλαγεῖσα ἐπὶ τῷ πράγματι ἔφη “οὐκ
 having-seen and having-been-astounded at the thing said not
 ἄργον τὸ σκέμμα τοῦτο.” καὶ λέγει τῇ παιδίσκῃ “πῶς
 idle the scheme this and says to-the maidservant how
 εὔρες τὸ πρᾶγμα τοῦτο;” ἡ δὲ παιδίσκη λέγει “πάντως,
 did-you-find the thing this the and maidservant says surely
 δέσποινα, ὅτι ἐκ θελήματος θεοῦ ἔπεσε τὸ σφοντύλι
 lady that by (the)-will of-God fell the whorl

ἐκ τῆς ἀτράκτου μου καὶ κυλισθὲν εἰσῆλθεν ἐν τῇ ὀπῇ
from the spindle my and having-rolled went into the hole
 ταύτῃ, καὶ μὴ δυναμένης μου ἐπᾶραι αὐτὸ ἡναγκάσθην
this and not being-able I to-pick-up it I-was-compelled
 τὸ βήσαλον ἀνασπάσαι, καὶ τότε εἶδον αὐτούς.” ἡ δὲ
the brick to-pull-up and then I-saw them she and
 ἐκέλευσε τῇ παιδίσκῃ ἀποθέσθαι τὸ βήσαλον εὐφυῶς ἐν
ordered to-the maidservant to-put-back the brick cleverly in
 τῷ τόπῳ αὐτοῦ, καὶ ἐπιλαβομένη αὐτῆς καὶ περιπλακείσα
the place its and having-taken-hold-of her and having-embraced(-her)
 κατεφίλησε γνησίως, καὶ εἶπεν αὐτῇ· “μηδὲν πτοηθῆς,
kissed(-her) genuinely and said to-her nothing be-afraid
 τέκνον. συγκεχώρηταί σου τὸ παῖσμα· ὁ γὰρ θεὸς
child has-been-forgiven your the offense — for God
 ἠθέλησέ σε παῖσαι, ἵνα τὸν δόλον ἡμῖν φανερῶς.
willed you to-offend so-that the guile to-us he-might-reveal
 βλέπε οὖν ὅση δυνάμει φυλάξαι τὸ πρᾶγμα, καὶ μὴ
see then with-what power to-guard the thing and not
 τολμήσης τινὶ τὸ σύνολον τοῦτο θαρρήσαι.” καὶ λοιπὸν
dare to-anyone the at-all this to-confide and thereafter
 εἶχεν αὐτὴν δι’ ὅλου μεθ’ ἑαυτῆς πλέον τοῦ πρώτου
she-kept her through all with herself more than-the first(-time)
 ὥς πιστὴν αὐτὴν οὖσαν. καὶ προσκαλεσαμένη ἡ Γυκία
as faithful her being and having-summoned — Gykia
 δύο τινὰς τῶν συγγενῶν αὐτῆς, πιστοὺς αὐτῇ ὄντας πάνυ,
two some of-the kinsmen her faithful to-her being very
 λέγει αὐτοῖς ἐν τοῖς ἰδιάζουσιν “ἀπελθόντες συνάγετε
says to-them in the private(-rooms) having-gone-away gather
 καθ’ ἑαυτοὺς ἐν μυστηρίῳ τοὺς πρωτεύοντας καὶ εὐγενεῖς
by yourselves in secret the first-men and nobles
 τῆς πόλεως, καὶ ἐκλεξάτωσαν τρεῖς ἄνδρας πιστοὺς,
of-the city and let-them-choose three men faithful

δυναμένους φυλάξαι μυστήριον καὶ πράγμα ποιῆσαι, καὶ
 able to-keep (a)-secret and (a)-thing to-do and
 πιστοποιήσουσιν αὐτοὺς οἱ πάντες ἐνόρκως πρὸς τὸ
 will-assure them the all on-oath for the
 καὶ αὐτοὺς ἐμὲ πληροφορῆσαι ἐν οἷς μέλλω
 also them me to-satisfy in (the-things)-which I-am-about
 ἐπερωτᾶν αὐτούς, καὶ ἀποστειλάτωσαν αὐτοὺς πρὸς με ἐν
 to-ask them and let-them-send them to me in
 μυστηρίῳ, καὶ ἔχω αὐτοῖς ἀναγκαῖόν τι καὶ ὠφέλιμον
 secret and I-have for-them necessary something and useful
 τῇ πόλει θαρρῆσαι. μόνον διὰ τάχους ποιήσατε ὃ
 to-the city to-confide only with speed do what
 λέγω ὑμῖν.” ἀπελθόντων δὲ τῶν συγγενῶν αὐτῆς καὶ ἐν
 I-tell you having-gone-away and the kinsmen her and in
 μυστηρίῳ ταῦτα τοῖς πρωτεύουσιν εἰρηκότων, εὐθέως
 secret these(-things) to-the first-men having-told at-once
 ἐξελέξαντο τρεῖς ἄνδρας, οὓς ᾔδεσαν αὐτοὶ πιστοὺς εἶναι,
 they-chose three men whom knew they faithful to-be
 καὶ πιστοποιήσαντες αὐτοὺς πάντες ἐν ὄρκῳ ὅτι εἴ τι
 and having-assured them all on oath that if anything
 συνθῶνται τῇ Γυκίᾳ εἴτε ποιῆσαι εἴτε δοῦναι, μὴ
 they-agree — with-Gykia whether to-do or to-give not
 ἀκυρώσαι τοὺς λόγους αὐτῶν, ἀλλ’ εἰς πέρας ἀγαγεῖν
 to-annul the words their but to (the)-end to-bring
 τὰ ὑπ’ αὐτῶν συνταττόμενα αὐτῇ. τούτων δὲ πρὸς
 the(-things) by them arranged with-her these and to
 τὴν Γυκίαν ἐν μυστηρίῳ ἀπελθόντων, ἐδέξατο αὐτοὺς καὶ
 — Gykia in secret having-gone-away she-received them and
 λέγει αὐτοῖς “δύνασθέ με ἐν ὄρκῳ πληροφορῆσαι περὶ
 says to-them can-you me on oath satisfy concerning
 ὧν μέλλω ἐπερωτᾶν ὑμᾶς, ὅτι ποιεῖτε ταῦτα;”
 (the-things)-which I-am-about to-ask you that you-do these(-things)

οἱ δὲ εἶπον αὐτῇ “ναί, κυρία, ἐτοίμως ἔχομεν περὶ
they and said to-her yes lady ready we-are concerning
 ὧν μέλλεις ἡμῖν ἐπιζητεῖν πληροφορησαί σε ὅτι
(the-things)-which you-are-about of-us to-seek to-satisfy you that
 εἰς πέρας ἄγονται οἱ λόγοι σου.” τότε λέγει αὐτοῖς ἡ
to (the)-end are-brought the words your then says to-them —
 Γυκία “πληροφορήσατέ με ὅτι ἂν ἀποθάνω ἐν μέσῳ
Gykia satisfy me that if I-die in (the)-middle
 τῆς πόλεώς με θάπτετε, καὶ λέγω ὑμῖν τὸ μυστήριόν μου.
of-the city me you-bury and I-tell you the secret my
 ἰδοῦ βαρὺ ὑμῖν τί ποτε οὐκ ἐπιζητῶ.” οἱ δὲ ἄνδρες
behold heavy to-you anything ever not I-seek the and men
 ἀκούσαντες τοῦτο μετὰ πάσης προθυμίας ἐπληροφόρησαν
having-heard this with all eagerness satisfied
 αὐτὴν ἐν ὄρκῳ, λέγοντες ὅτι ἂν τελευτήσης ἐν μέσῳ
her on oath saying that if you-die in (the)-middle
 τῆς πόλεώς σε θάψομεν καὶ οὐκ ἐξάξομέν σε ἔξω τῶν
of-the city you we-will-bury and not we-will-carry you outside the
 τειχῶν. ἡ δὲ Γυκία πεισθεῖσα τοῖς ὅρκοις αὐτῶν
walls — and Gykia having-been-persuaded by-the oaths their
 λέγει αὐτοῖς “ἐφ’ οἷς ἐπληροφορήσατέ με, καὶ γὰρ λοιπὸν
says to-them upon which you-have-satisfied me I-too then
 ἐμφαίνω ὑμῖν τὸ μυστήριόν μου. ἰδοὺ εἰδέναι ὑμᾶς θέλω
reveal to-you the secret my behold to-know you I-wish
 ὅτι ὁ ἀνὴρ μου τὸ ἔμφυτον κακὸν τῆς πόλεως αὐτοῦ
that the husband my the inborn evil of-the city his
 ἔχων, τὸ τοῦ δόλου καὶ φθόνου καθ’ ἡμῶν, ὅχλον ἐκ
having the of-the guile and envy against us (a)-crowd from
 τοῦ κατὰ μέρος Βοσποριανῶν ἐν κρυφῇ εἰσαγαγὼν ἐν τῷ
the by part Bosporans in secret having-brought-in into the
 οἴκῳ μου ἄχρις διακοσίων ψυχῶν ἐνόπλων διατρέφει, ἐμοῦ
house my up-to two-hundred souls armed feeds I

μὴ εἰδυίας τὸ πρᾶγμα· ἀλλ' ὁ θεὸς νῦν διὰ προφάσεως
not knowing the thing but — God now through (an)-occasion
 ἐφάνέρωσε μοι αὐτό. αὐτὸς οὖν ταύτην ἔχει τὴν σκέψιν
revealed to-me it he then this has the scheme
 ἐφ' ᾧ τε, φησὶν, εἰς τὴν μνήμην τοῦ πατρός μου
on (condition)-that he-says on the memorial of-the father my
 διδούσης μου τὴν εὐφρασίαν τῇ πόλει καὶ εὐφρανθέντων
giving I the merriment to-the city and having-made-merry
 ὑμῶν ἀποκοιμωμένων αὐτὸν τὴν νύκτα ἐπαναστῆναι μετὰ
you falling-asleep he the night to-rise-up with
 τῶν συνόντων αὐτῷ Βοσποριανῶν τε καὶ οἰκείων, καὶ
the(-ones) being-with him Bosporans both and household and
 βαλεῖν ἐμπρησμὸν ἐν τοῖς οἴκοις ὑμῶν καὶ κατασφάζει
to-throw fire in the houses your and to-slaughter
 πάντας ὑμᾶς. ἰδοὺ λοιπὸν φθάζει καὶ ἡ μνήμη τοῦ πατρός
all you behold then arrives also the memorial of-the father
 μου, καὶ δέον μὲν ἐστὶ πρὸς τὸν ὄρκον μου δοῦναι
my and needful indeed it-is according-to the oath my to-give
 ὑμῖν κατὰ τὸ ἔθος μου τὰ τῆς εὐφρασίας· πάντα
you according-to the custom my the(-things) of-the merriment all
 γὰρ ἐτοίμως ἔχω. θελήσατε οὖν πάντες προσδραμεῖν
for ready I-have be-willing then all to-run-up
 χαίροντες καὶ ζητῆσαι καὶ λαβεῖν πάντα προθύμως,
rejoicing and to-ask and to-take all eagerly
 πρὸς τὸ μήπω νοῆσαι αὐτὸν ὅτι ἔγνωμεν τὸ πρᾶγμα,
for the not-yet to-perceive him that we-have-known the thing
 καὶ ἄφνω ἐμφύλιος πόλεμος γένηται. θελήσατε οὖν καὶ
and suddenly civil war arise be-willing then also
 δημοσίως κατὰ τὸ ἔθος εὐφραίνεσθαι, συμμέτρως δέ, καὶ
publicly according-to the custom to-make-merry moderately but and
 χορεύειν ἐν ταῖς πλατείαις. ἐτοιμάσατε δὲ ἕκαστος ἐν τοῖς
to-dance in the streets prepare and each in the

οἴκοις ὑμῶν ξύλα τε καὶ φορτία καὶ δᾶδας στεγνὰς πρὸς
houses your wood both and loads and torches dry for
 τὸ μισοποιούντων ὑμῶν τὰς εὐφρασίας καὶ τοὺς χοροὺς
the half-finishing you the merriments and the dances
 δόξασθαι πρὸς ἀνάπαυσιν ὑμῶν ἀπιέναι. καὶ ἐμοῦ δὲ
to-be-thought for rest your to-go-away and I and
 ταχέστερον μισοποιησάσης καὶ κελευούσης ἀσφαλισθῆναι
more-quickly having-half-finished and ordering to-be-secured
 τοὺς πυλεωνάς μου, ὑμεῖς εὐθέως ἐν ἡσυχίᾳ πολλῇ σὺν
the gateways my you at-once in quiet much with
 παισὶ καὶ παιδίσκαις ὑμῶν πανοικὶ παρενεγκόντες
servants and maidservants your with-all-the-household having-brought
 τὰ ξύλα καὶ φορτία καὶ δᾶδας παράθετε ταῦτα ἐν τοῖς
the wood and loads and torches set these at the
 πυλεώσί μου καὶ παραπυλίοις καὶ κύκλῳ τῆς οἰκίας πάσης,
gateways my and side-gates and around the house all
 ἐπιχέαντες καὶ ἔλαιον τοῖς ξύλοις πρὸς τὸ τάχιον ἀφθῆναι.
having-poured also oil on-the wood for the more-quickly to-be-kindled
 καὶ ἥνικα ἐξέλθω ἐγὼ καὶ εἴπω ὑμῖν, εὐθέως λάβετε τὴν
and when go-out I and say to-you at-once take the
 πυράν, καὶ ὑμεῖς δὲ ἐν ὅπλοις παρεστήκετε κύκλῳ τῆς
fire and you and in arms stand-by around the
 οἰκίας, ἵνα ὅπου τινὰς θεωρήσητε ἐκπηδώντας ἐκ τοῦ
house so-that where anyone you-behold leaping-out from the
 οἴκου διὰ θυρίδος τούτους κατασφάζητε. ἀπελθόντες οὖν
house through (a)-window these you-may-slaughter having-gone-away then
 τὸ μυστήριον τοῦτο λαλήσατε, καὶ ἐτοιμάσατε πάντα ἃ
the secret this tell and prepare all-things which
 εἶπον ὑμῖν.” οἱ δὲ πολῖται ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες ἀπὸ τῶν
I-said to-you the and citizens these(-things) having-beard from the
 τριῶν ἀνδρῶν ἐποίησαν πάντα ἐν συντομίᾳ κατὰ τὸν
three men did all-things in haste according-to the

λόγον τῆς Γυκίας. ἐνστάσης δὲ τῆς μνημοσύνου ἡμέρας,
word — of-Gykia having-come and the memorial day
 ὡς δῆθεν χαιρομένη ἡ Γυκία μετεπέμψατο τοὺς τῆς
as forsooth rejoicing — Gykia sent-for the of-the
 πόλεως ἄνδρας, προτρεπομένη τοῦ λαβεῖν αὐτοὺς τὰ
city men urging(-them) of-the to-take them the(-things)
 τῆς εὐφρασίας· συνέτρεχε δὲ καὶ ὁ ἀνὴρ αὐτῆς ἐπὶ
of-the merriment ran-together and also the husband her for
 τοῦτο, καὶ παρεκάλει πλεῖον οἶνον δοθῆναι αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ
this and urged more wine to-be-given them for
 τῇ εὐφρασίᾳ. οἱ δὲ πολῖται ἀσμένως πάντα δεξάμενοι
the merriment the and citizens gladly all-things having-received
 ὑψοφραίνοντο καθὼς παρηγγέλθησαν, καὶ ἐχόρευον τὴν
made-merry as they-had-been-charged and danced the
 πᾶσαν ἡμέραν· φθασάσης δὲ τῆς ἐσπέρας ἤρξαντο
whole day having-come and the evening began
 μισοποιεῖν οἱ πολῖται καὶ ἀπιέναι ἐν τοῖς οἴκοις αὐτῶν
to-half-finish the citizens and to-go-away to the houses their
 εἰς τὸ ἀναπαῆναι. ὑψοφραίνοντο δὲ πανοικί. καὶ ἡ
for the to-rest made-merry and with-all-the-household also —
 Γυκία ἐν τῷ οἴκῳ αὐτῆς προτρεπομένη πάντας τοὺς αὐτῆς
Gykia in the house her urging all those her
 ἀδεῶς πίνειν πρὸς τὸ μεθυσθέντας αὐτοὺς τάχιον
fearlessly to-drink for the having-been-made-drunk them more-quickly
 κοιμηθῆναι, μόνον ταῖς κουβικουλαρίαις αὐτῆς παρήγγειλε
to-fall-asleep only to-the chamber-maids her she-charged
 τοῦ νήφειν καὶ ἐαυτὴν τοῦ οἴνου ἐφύλαττεν. εἰρούσα
of-the to-be-sober and herself from-the wine she-guarded having-found
 γὰρ ποτήριον πορφυροῦν δέδωκε τῇ κουβικουλαρέᾳ αὐτῆς
for (a)-cup purple she-gave to-the chamber-maid her
 τῇ τὸ πρᾶγμα εἰδούσῃ, καὶ παρήγγειλεν αὐτῇ ἐν αὐτῷ
the(-one) the thing knowing and charged her in it

αὐτὴν κινρᾶν σὺν ὕδατι· ὁ δὲ ἀνὴρ αὐτῆς θεωρῶν τὸ
her to-mix with water the and husband her seeing the
 πορφυροῦν ποτήριον οὐχ ὑπενόει σὺν ὕδατι αὐτὴν πίνειν.
purple cup not suspected with water her to-drink
 τῆς δὲ ἑσπέρας φθασάσης καὶ τῶν πολιτῶν, ὥς ἤδη
the and evening having-come and the citizens as already
 εἶπον, μισοποιησάντων, λέγει τῷ ἀνδρὶ αὐτῆς ἡ Γυκία
I-said having-half-finished says to-the husband her — Gykia
 “εὐφρανθέντων ἡμῶν δεῦρο λοιπὸν ἀναπαυθῶμεν καὶ
having-made-merry we come now let-us-rest also
 ἡμεῖς.” ὁ δὲ ὁ ἀνὴρ αὐτῆς ἀκούσας μᾶλλον ἐχάρη,
we which indeed the husband her having-heard more rejoiced
 καὶ ἔπεσε τοῦ κοιμηθῆναι· οὐ γὰρ ἠδύνατο ἀφ’ ἑαυτοῦ
and fell of-the to-sleep not for he-was-able of himself
 εἰπεῖν τοῦτο, μήπως ὑπόνοιαν δῶ τῇ γυναικὶ περὶ
to-say this lest suspicion he-give to-the wife about
 οὗ ἐβουλευέτο δόλου. κελεύει οὖν ἡ Γυκία ἀσφαλισθῆναι
which he-was-planning guile orders then — Gykia to-be-secured
 τοὺς πυλεῶνας καὶ πάντα τὰ παραθύρια καὶ ἐνεχθῆναι
the gateways and all the side-doors and to-be-brought
 αὐτῇ τὰς κλεῖς κατὰ τὸ ἔθος· καὶ τούτου γενομένου
to-her the keys according-to the custom and this having-happened
 λέγει ἐν τῷ λεληθότι τῇ πιστῇ αὐτῆς κουβικουλαρέᾳ
she-says in the having-escaped-notice to-the faithful her chamber-maid
 τῇ τὸν δόλον εἰδούσῃ ὅτι θέλησον σὺν ταῖς λοιπαῖς
the(-one) the guile knowing that be-willing with the other
 κουβικουλαρέαις εὐφυῶς ἐπᾶραι πάντα τὰ κόσμιά μου καὶ
chamber-maids cleverly to-take-up all the ornaments my and
 τὸ χρυσίον καὶ εἴ τι χρήσιμον δύνασθε ἐγκολπίσασθαι,
the gold and if anything useful you-are-able to-put-in-your-bosom
 καὶ ἐτοιμάσατε ἑαυτὰς ἵνα ὅταν εἴπω ὑμῖν, ἀκολουθήσατέ
and prepare yourselves so-that when I-say to-you follow

μοι. αἱ δὲ ποιήσασαι κατὰ τὴν κέλευσιν αὐτῆς ἦσαν
me they and having-done according-to the order her were
 ἔτοιμαι. τοῦ δὲ ἀνδρὸς αὐτῆς δῆθεν ἀνακλιθέντος τοῦ ἐκ
ready the and husband her forsooth having-lain-down of-the from
 συντόμου κοιμηθῆναι διὰ τάχους αὐτὸν πάλιν ἀναστῆναι
short to-sleep with speed him again to-rise
 πρὸς ἐπιβουλὴν τῆς πόλεως, ἡ δὲ Γυκία παρέσυρε τοῦ
for plot of-the city — and Gykia drew-on(-him) of-the
 καθευδήσαι ἕως ἂν πᾶσα ἡ φαμιλία αὐτῶν ἐκοιμήθη·
to-sleep until — all the household their bad-fallen-asleep
 ὁ δὲ ἀνὴρ αὐτῆς ἐκ τοῦ πολλοῦ πότου ἀφύπνωσεν. ἡ
the and husband her from the much drinking fell-fast-asleep —
 δὲ Γυκία ἰδοῦσα τοῦτον κοιμηθέντα εὐφυῶς τὸν κοιτῶνα
and Gykia having-seen him asleep cleverly the bedchamber
 τῷ κλειδίῳ ἡσφαλίσατο, ἀποκλείσασα τὸν ἄνδρα, καὶ
with-the key secured having-shut-in the husband and
 κατελθοῦσα ἐκ τοῦ οἴκου σὺν ταῖς κουβικουλαρέαις αὐτῆς,
having-gone-down from the house with the chamber-maids her
 ἐξελθοῦσα τῶν παραπυλίων ἡσύχως καὶ κλείσασα,
having-gone-out-of the side-gates quietly and having-shut(-them)
 εὐθέως ἐπέτρεψε τοῖς τῆς πόλεως διὰ τάχους ἐμβληθῆναι
at-once she-committed to-those of-the city with speed to-be-thrown
 τὸ πῦρ κύκλῳ τοῦ οἴκου. βληθέντος δὲ τοῦ πυρὸς
the fire around the house having-been-thrown and the fire
 καὶ τοῦ οἴκου ἀναφθέντος, εἴ πού τις τῶν ἔσωθεν
and the house having-been-kindled if anywhere anyone of-those inside
 ὄντων ἐκπηδῆσαι ἐδυνήθη ἢ ἑαυτὸν ρῖψαι, ὑπὸ τῶν
being to-leap-out was-able or himself to-throw by the
 πολιτῶν κατεσφάγη. τοῦ δὲ οἴκου παντὸς καὶ τῶν ἐν
citizens he-was-slaughtered the and house all and those in
 αὐτῷ ἕως ἐδάφους καταφλεχθέντων διέσωσεν ὁ θεὸς τὴν
it to (the)-ground having-been-burned-down saved — God the

Χερσωνιτῶν πόλιν ἐκ τῶν ἐπιβούλων Βοσποριανῶν. ἡ δὲ
of-(the)-Chersonites city from the plotting Bosporans — and
 Γυκία βουλομένων τῶν πολιτῶν τὴν καταφλεχθεῖσαν αὐτῆς
Gykia wishing the citizens the burned-down her
 οἰκίαν ὀρύξαι καὶ καθᾶραι τὸν τόπον πρὸς οἰκοδομὴν οὐκ
house to-dig and to-clear the place for building not
 εἶασεν, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἐπέτρεψε πάσῃ πόλει φέρειν ἕκαστον
allowed but rather committed to-all (the)-city to-bring each
 αὐτῶν καὶ ἐγχέειν αὐτόθι τὴν πᾶσαν αὐτῶν κοπρίαν πρὸς
of-them and to-pour-in there the whole their dung for
 τὸ ἐν αὐτοῖς καταχωσθῆναι τὴν πᾶσαν αὐτῆς οἴκησιν
the in them to-be-buried the whole her dwelling
 ὡς πρὸς ἐπιβουλήν τῆς πόλεως γενομένην· διὸ καὶ
as for plot of-the city having-been(-used) therefore also
 ἐκλήθη ὁ τόπος Λαμάχου σκοπὴ ἕως τῆς σήμερον.
was-called the place of-Lamachos (the)-lookout until the today
 Τούτων οὖν ἀπάντων γενομένων, ἰδόντες οἱ Χερσωνῖται
these then all having-happened having-seen the Chersonites
 τὴν τοιαύτην ἄπειρον ὑπὸ τῆς Γυκίας εἰς αὐτοὺς μετὰ
the such boundless by — Gykia to them after
 θεὸν γενομένην εὐεργεσίαν, καὶ ὅτι οὐδενὸς τῶν αὐτῆς
God having-come benefaction and that none of-the her(-things)
 τὸ σύνολον ἐφείσατο ἀλλὰ τὴν σωτηρίαν τῆς πόλεως
the at-all she-spared but the safety of-the city
 προετιμήσατο, ὑπὲρ τῆς τοιαύτης μισθαποδοσίας δύο χαλκοῦς
preferred for the such repayment two bronze
 ἀνδριάντας πρὸς τιμὴν αὐτῆς ἐν τῇ πλατείᾳ τῆς πόλεως
statues for honor her in the square of-the city
 ἀνήγειραν, νεάζουσιν αὐτὴν τῇ ἡλικίᾳ δεικνύοντες, καθ' ὃν
raised youthful her in-the age showing at which
 καιρὸν ἦν τότε συμβαίνουσα, ἐν τούτοις δεικνύοντες καὶ
time she-was then happening(-to-be) in these showing also

τὴν αὐτῆς ἄφατον εὐεργεσίαν καὶ στοργὴν περὶ τοὺς πολίτας,
the her unspeakable benefaction and affection toward the citizens
 ὅτι καὶ ἐν ἡλικίᾳ νέᾳ οὕτως ἐφρόνησε τὴν ἰδίαν
that also in age young being thus she-was-minded the own
 πατρίδα μετὰ θεὸν περισώσαι. ἐν μὲν γὰρ τῇ μιᾷ στήλῃ
fatherland after God to-save in indeed for the one statue
 σωφρόνως αὐτὴν κεκαλλωπισμένην στήσαντες, καὶ τὰ
modestly her adorned having-set and the(-things)
 τῆς ἐπιβουλῆς τοῦ οἰκείου ἀνδρὸς τοῖς πολίταις ἐμφαίνουσιν,
of-the plot of-the own husband to-the citizens revealing
 ἐν δὲ τῇ ἐτέρᾳ ἐναγώνιον αὐτὴν καὶ ἐπαμνομένην κατὰ
in and the other anxious her and defending-herself against
 τῶν τῆς πόλεως ἐπιβούλων ἀποδεικνύοντες· ἐν οἷς καὶ
the of-the city plotters showing in which also
 ἐπέγραψαν ἐν τῇ τοῦ ἀνδριάντος αὐτῆς βάσει ἅπασαν τὴν
they-inscribed on the of-the statue her base all the
 ὑπ' αὐτῆς μετὰ θεὸν γενομένην τοῖς πολίταις εὐεργεσίαν.
by her after God having-come to-the citizens benefaction
 εἵπερ μέλλει τις εἶναι φιλόκαλος, τῆς αὐτῆς συνεχῶς
if is-about anyone to-be lover-of-the-beautiful of-the same continually
 κατὰ καιρὸν τὴν βάσιν ἀποσιμῇ πρὸς τὴν τῶν ἐν αὐτῇ
at times the base he-scours for the of-the(-things) on it
 γενομένων ἀνάγνωσιν τε καὶ ὑπόμνησιν τῶν ὑπ'
having-been(-written) reading both and remembrance of-the(-things) by
 αὐτῆς γενομένων, ἔλεγχον δὲ τῶν ἐπιβούλων Βοσποριανῶν.
her done refutation and of-the plotting Bosporans
 Μετὰ δὲ χρόνους τινὰς στεφανηφοροῦντος καὶ πρωτεύοντος
after and years some wearing-the-crown and being-first
 τῶν Χερσωνιτῶν Στρατοφίλου τοῦ Φιλομούσου, πάντων
of-the Chersonites Stratophilos the(-son) of-Philomousos very
 σοφωτάτῃ οὕτως ἢ Γυκίᾳ καὶ θέλουσα δοκιμάσαι τοὺς
most-wise being — Gykia and wishing to-test the

Χερσωνίτας καὶ γινῶναι εἰ ἄρα ἀληθῶς μέλλωσι τὴν τοῦ
Chersonites and to-know if then truly they-are-about the of-the
 ὄρκου ὑπόσχεσιν ἐκπληροῦν καὶ θάπτειν αὐτὴν ἐν μέσῳ
oath promise to-fulfill and to-bury her in (the)-middle
 τῆς πόλεως, συλλογισαμένη μετὰ τῶν παιδισκῶν αὐτῆς
of-the city having-reasoned with the maidservants her
 ἐποίησεν ἑαυτὴν τινα ἀηδιζομένην καὶ ἀποθανοῦσαν· καὶ
made herself as-it-were ailing and having-died and
 κηδεύσασαι αὐτὴν αἱ παιδίσκαι ἐμήνυσαν τοῖς πολίταις,
having-laid-out her the maidservants announced to-the citizens
 λέγουσαι ὅτι ἡ κυρία ἡμῶν ἐτελεύτησε, καὶ ἐν ποίῳ τόπῳ
saying that the mistress our has-died and in what place
 μέλλει θάπτεσθαι, ὑποδείξατε ἡμῖν. οἱ δὲ Χερσωνῖται
she-is-about to-be-buried show us the and Chersonites
 ἀκούσαντες ὅτι τέθνηκεν ἡ Γυκία, σκεψάμενοι καθ' ἑαυτοὺς
having-heard that has-died — Gykia having-considered among themselves
 οὐκέτι τὸ ἱκανὸν τοῦ ὄρκου ἔσπευσαν ποιῆσαι ὥστε ἐν
no-longer the sufficient(-part) of-the oath hastened to-do so-that in
 μέσῳ τῆς πόλεως αὐτὴν ταφῆναι, ἀλλὰ ἄραντες αὐτὴν
(the)-middle of-the city she to-be-buried but having-lifted her
 ἐξήνεγκαν ἔξω τῆς πόλεως αὐτὴν ταφῆναι. ἀποτεθέντος
carried(-her)-out outside the city her to-be-buried having-been-set-down
 δὲ τοῦ κραβάτου πρὸς τὸ μνήμα ἀνακαθίσασα ἡ Γυκία,
and the bier at the tomb having-sat-up — Gykia
 καὶ περιβλεψαμένη πάντας τοὺς πολίτας, λέγει “αὕτη ὑμῶν
and having-looked-round-at all the citizens says this your
 ἐστὶν ἡ μετὰ ὄρκου ὑπόσχεσις; οὕτως ἀληθεύετε περὶ
is the with oath promise thus you-speak-truth about
 πάντων; ἀβάλα λοιπὸν τῷ πιστεύοντι Χερσωνίτῃ πολίτῃ.”
all-things alas then to-the trusting Chersonite citizen
 οἱ δὲ Χερσωνῖται ἰδόντες τὴν ὑπ' αὐτῆς γενομένην αὐτῶν
the and Chersonites having-seen the by her having-come their

χλεύην, αἰσχυρθέντες· *mockery having-been-ashamed* *greatly* ἐπὶ τῷ γεγονότι τῆς *at the having-happened of-the*
 παραβάσεως πράγματι, *transgression matter* παρεκάλουν αὐτὴν πολλὰ τοῦ *begged her much of-the*
 ἡσυχάσαι καὶ παραχωρῆσαι αὐτοῖς τὸ πταῖσμα καὶ μὴ *to-be-quiet and to-forgive them the offense and not*
 ἐπὶ πλεῖον ὀνειδίζειν αὐτοῖς. *to more to-reproach them then* λοιπὸν *with-second* δευτέροις ὅρκοις αὐτὴν *oaths her*
 ἐπιστώσαντο ὥστε *they-assured so-that* μηκέτι *no-longer* ἔξω τῆς πόλεως *outside the city* θάψαι αὐτήν, *to-bury her*
 ἀλλ' ἐν μέσῳ τῆς πόλεως. *but in (the)-middle of-the city* ὃ δὴ καὶ ἐποίησαν· *which indeed also they-did*
 καὶ γὰρ αὐτῆς ζώσης *and for her living* ἔτι ἐν ᾧ τόπῳ *still in which place* ἡρετίσατο τὴν *she-chose the*
 σορὸν αὐτῆς ἐστήσαντο, *coffin her they-set-up* καὶ ἀνδριάντα *also (a)-statue* χαλκὸν καὶ ἕτερον *bronze and another*
 ἤγειραν, *they-raised* καὶ τοῦτον *and this-one* χρυσώσαντες *having-gilded* ἔστησαν *set* πρὸς τῇ ταφῇ *by the tomb*
 αὐτῆς πρὸς περισσοτέραν *her for* πίστωσιν. *greater assurance*

Ἰστέον ὅτι ἔξω τοῦ κάστρου Ταμάταρχα *(one)-must-know that outside the fortress Tamatarcha* πολλὰ *many*
 πηγαὶ ὑπάρχουσιν ἄφθαν ἀναδιδούσαι.

springs are naphtha sending-up

Ἰστέον ὅτι ἐν Ζηχία πρὸς τὸν τόπον τῆς Πάγης τῆς *(one)-must-know that in Zichia toward the place — of-Page the(-one)*
 οὔσης πρὸς τὸ μέρος τῆς Παπαγίας, ἐν ᾧ κατοικοῦσι *being toward the part — of-Papagia in which dwell*

Ζηχοί, ἐννέα πηγαὶ εἰσὶν ἄφθαν ἀναδιδούσαι· *Zichians nine springs are naphtha sending-up* πλην οὐχ *but not*

όμοχροοῦσι τῶν ἐννέα πηγῶν τὰ ἔλαια, ἀλλὰ τὰ μὲν ἐξ
are-of-one-color of-the nine springs the oils but the indeed of
 αὐτῶν εἰσὶν ἐρυθρὰ τὰ δὲ ξανθὰ τὰ δὲ μελανώτερα.

them are red the(-others) and yellow the(-others) and blacker

Ἰστέον ὅτι ἐν Ζηχία ἐν τῷ τόπῳ τῷ καλουμένῳ
(one)-must-know that in Zichia in the place the(-one) called

Πάπαγι, ἐν ᾧ καὶ πλησίον ἔστι χωρίον ἐπονομαζόμενον
Papagi in which also near is (a)-village named

Σαπαξί, ὃ ἐρμηνεύεται κονιορτός, ἔστιν ἐκεῖσε βρύσις
Sapaxi which is-interpreted dust there-is there (a)-fountain
 ἄφθαν ἀναδιδοῦσα.

naphtha sending-up

Ἰστέον ὅτι καὶ ἑτέρα βρύσις ἔστιν ἐκεῖσε ἄφθαν
(one)-must-know that also another fountain is there naphtha

ἀναδιδοῦσα ἐν τῷ χωρίῳ τῷ καλουμένῳ Χαμούχ.
sending-up in the village the(-one) called Chamouch

τὸ δὲ Χαμούχ ἔστιν ὄνομα τοῦ συστησαμένου ἀρχαίου
— and Chamouch is (the)-name of-the having-founded ancient

ἀνδρὸς τὸ χωρίον· τὸ οὖν χωρίον ἐκείνο διὰ τοῦτο
man the village the then village that because-of this

ἐκλήθη Χαμούχ. ἀπέχουσι δὲ οἱ τοιοῦτοι τόποι ἀπὸ τῆς
was-called Chamouch are-distant and the such places from the
 θαλάσσης ὁδὸν ἰδιοκαβάλλου ἡμέρας μιᾶς.

sea (a)-journey of-single-horseman of-day one

Ἰστέον ὅτι ἐν τῷ θέματι Δερζηνῆς, πλησίον τοῦ
(one)-must-know that in the theme of-Derzene near the

χωρίου τὰ Σαπικίου καὶ τοῦ χωρίου τοῦ ὀνομαζομένου
village — Sapikiou and the village the(-one) named

Ἐπισκοπίου, ἔστι πηγὴ ἄφθαν ἀναδιδοῦσα.

Episkopion is (a)-spring naphtha sending-up

Ἰστέον ὅτι ἐν τῷ θέματι τοῦ Τζιλιάπερτ ὑπὸ τὸ
 (one)-must-know that in the theme — of-Tziliapert under —
 Σρεχιαβαράξ ἔστιν ἐκεῖσε πηγὴ ἄφθαν ἀναδιδούσα.
 Srechiabarax there-is there (a)-spring naphtha sending-up
 Ἰστέον ὅτι εἰ ἀντάρωσί ποτε οἱ τοῦ κάστρου
 (one)-must-know that if rebel ever those of-the fortress
 Χερσῶνος ἢ ἐναντία τῶν βασιλικῶν κελεύσεων βουληθῶσι
 of-Cherson or contrary-to the imperial orders wish
 διαπράξασθαι, ὀφείλουσι τηνικαῦτα ὅσα εὔρεθῶσιν ἐν
 to-act they-ought then as-many-as be-found in
 τῇ πόλει Χερσωνιτικὰ καράβια μετὰ τοῦ γόμου αὐτῶν
 the city Chersonite ships with the cargo their
 εἰσκομίζεσθαι· οἱ δὲ ναῦται καὶ ἐπιβάται Χερσωνῖται ἵνα
 to-be-confiscated the and sailors and passengers Chersonites that
 δεσμεύονται καὶ ἐναποκλείωνται εἰς τὰ ἐργαλεῖα, εἰθ'
 they-be-bound and shut-up in the workhouses then
 οὕτως ὀφείλουσιν ἀποσταλῆναι τρεῖς βασιλικοί, εἰς μὲν ἐν
 thus ought to-be-sent three imperial-agents one indeed on
 τῇ παραλίᾳ τοῦ θέματος τῶν Ἀρμενιακῶν, ἕτερος δὲ ἐν
 the coast of-the theme of-the Armeniakoi another and on
 τῇ παραλίᾳ τοῦ θέματος Παφλαγονίας, καὶ ἄλλος ἐν τῇ
 the coast of-the theme of-Paphlagonia and another on the
 παραλίᾳ τοῦ θέματος τῶν Βουκελλαρίων, ἵνα πάντα τὰ
 coast of-the theme of-the Boukellarioi that all the
 Χερσωνιτικὰ καράβια κρατῶσι, καὶ τὸν μὲν γόμον καὶ τὰ
 Chersonite ships they-seize and the indeed cargo and the
 καράβια εἰσκομίζωσι, τοὺς δὲ ἀνθρώπους δεσμεύωσι καὶ
 ships confiscate the and men bind and
 ἐναποκλείωσιν εἰς δημοσίους φυλακάς, καὶ ἀναγάγωσι περὶ
 shut-up in public prisons and refer about
 τούτων καὶ ὥς ἂν δέξωνται. πρὸς τούτοις ἵνα
 these(-things) and as — they-receive(-orders) in-addition-to these that

οἱ τοιοῦτοι βασιλικοὶ κωλύωσι καὶ τὰ Παφλαγονικὰ καὶ
the such imperial-agents prevent also the Paphlagonian and
 Βουκελλαρικὰ πλοῖα καὶ πλαγιτικὰ τοῦ Πόντου τοῦ μὴ
Boukellarian vessels and coastal(-craft) of-the Pontus of-the not
 διαπερᾶν ἐν Χερσῶνι μετὰ σίτου ἢ οἴνου ἢ οἷας δῆποτε
to-cross to Cherson with grain or wine or of-what soever
 χρείας ἢ πράγματος. εἴθ' οὕτως ὀφείλει δέξασθαι καὶ
need or merchandise then thus ought to-receive(-orders) also
 ὁ στρατηγὸς τοῦ κόψαι καὶ τὰς δέκα λίτρας τὰς
the general of-the to-cut-off also the ten pounds the(-ones)
 διδομένας ἀπὸ τοῦ δημοσίου εἰς τὸ κάστρον Χερσῶνος
given from the treasury to the fortress of-Cherson
 καὶ τὰς δύο τοῦ πάκτου, καὶ τηνικαῦτα ἀναχωρῆσαι
and the two of-the tribute and then to-withdraw
 ἀπὸ Χερσῶνος τὸν στρατηγόν, καὶ ἀπελθεῖν ἐν ἑτέρῳ
from Cherson the general and to-go-away to another
 κάστρῳ, καὶ καθεσθῆναι ἐκεῖσε.

fortress and to-sit there
 Ὅτι ἐὰν οὐ ταξιδεύσωσιν οἱ Χερσωνῖται εἰς Ῥωμανίαν
that if not they-voyage the Chersonites to Romania
 καὶ πιπράσκωσι τὰ βυρσάρια καὶ τὰ κηρία, ἅπερ ἀπὸ
and sell the hides and the wax which from
 τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν πραγματεύονται, οὐ δύνανται ζῆσαι.

the Pechenegs they-trade not they-are-able to-live
 Ὅτι ἐὰν μὴ ἀπὸ Ἀμινσοῦ καὶ ἀπὸ Παφλαγονίας καὶ τῶν
that if not from Amisos and from Paphlagonia and the
 Βουκελλαρίων καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν πλαγίων τῶν Ἀρμενιакῶν
Boukellarioi and from the coasts of-the Armeniakoi
 περάσωσι γεννήματα, οὐ δύνανται ζῆσαι οἱ Χερσωνῖται.
cross produce not are-able to-live the Chersonites

